

*MASTER NEGATIVE*  
*NO. 93-81340-2*

MICROFILMED 1993

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES/NEW YORK

as part of the  
"Foundations of Western Civilization Preservation Project"

Funded by the  
NATIONAL ENDOWMENT FOR THE HUMANITIES

Reproductions may not be made without permission from  
Columbia University Library

# **COPYRIGHT STATEMENT**

**The copyright law of the United States - Title 17, United States Code - concerns the making of photocopies or other reproductions of copyrighted material.**

**Under certain conditions specified in the law, libraries and archives are authorized to furnish a photocopy or other reproduction. One of these specified conditions is that the photocopy or other reproduction is not to be "used for any purpose other than private study, scholarship, or research." If a user makes a request for, or later uses, a photocopy or reproduction for purposes in excess of "fair use," that user may be liable for copyright infringement.**

**This institution reserves the right to refuse to accept a copy order if, in its judgement, fulfillment of the order would involve violation of the copyright law.**

*AUTHOR:*

SMITH, WILLIAM, SIR

*TITLE:*

THE STUDENT'S LATIN  
GRAMMAR

*PLACE:*

LONDON

*DATE:*

1863



Master Negative #

93-81340-2

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES  
PRESERVATION DEPARTMENT

BIBLIOGRAPHIC MICROFORM TARGET

Original Material as Filmed - Existing Bibliographic Record

877.5

Sm51

Smith, Sir William, 1813-1893.

The student's Latin grammar; a grammar of the  
Latin language, by William Smith... the syntax by  
Theophilus D. Hall... London, Murray, 1863.  
xi, 378 p. 18 $\frac{1}{2}$  cm.

387556

Restrictions on Use:

TECHNICAL MICROFORM DATA

FILM SIZE: 35 mm

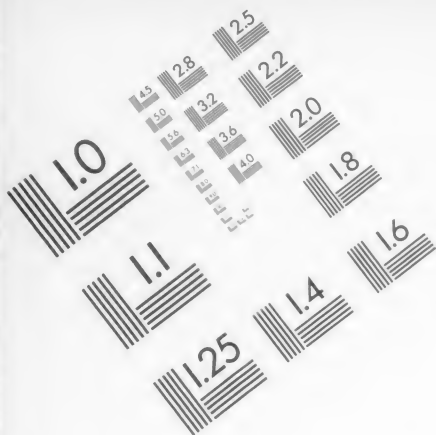
REDUCTION RATIO: 11x

IMAGE PLACEMENT: IA IIA IB IIB

DATE FILMED: 4/29/93

INITIALS BAP

FILMED BY: RESEARCH PUBLICATIONS, INC WOODBRIDGE, CT

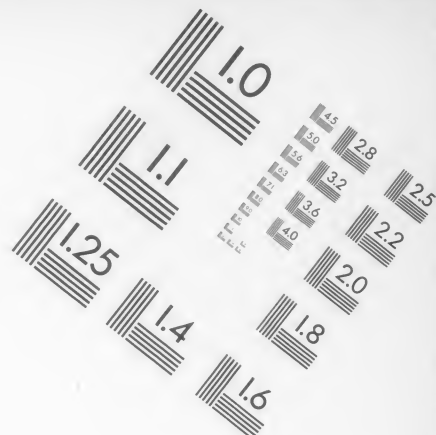


**AIIM**

**Association for Information and Image Management**

1100 Wayne Avenue, Suite 1100,  
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910

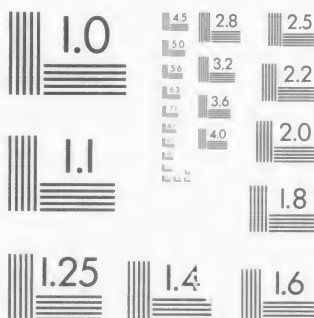
301/587-8202



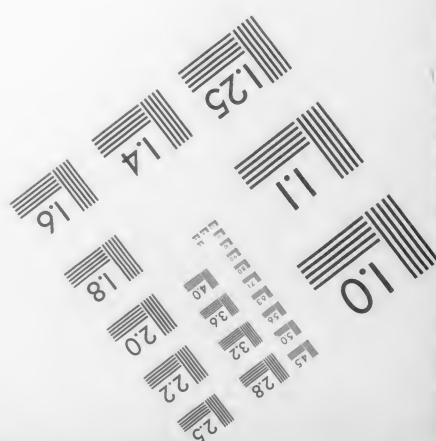
Centimeter



Inches



MANUFACTURED TO AIIM STANDARDS  
BY APPLIED IMAGE, INC.



877.5

Sm 51

Columbia University  
in the City of New York  
LIBRARY



GIVEN BY

Dr. Henry Drisler

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES

below, or at



*The Student's Latin Grammar.*

A GRAMMAR  
OF  
THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D.,

CLASSICAL EXAMINER IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON, AND EDITOR OF  
THE CLASSICAL AND LATIN DICTIONARIES.

For the Use of Colleges and the Upper Forms in Schools.

THE SYNTAX BY THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A.

LONDON:  
JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

1863.

*Uniform with the present Work,*  
**THE STUDENT'S GREEK GRAMMAR.**

BY DR. GEORGE CURTIUS,  
PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LEIPZIG.

7s. 6d.

*For the Middle and Lower Forms in Schools.*  
**A SMALLER LATIN GRAMMAR.**

BY DR. WILLIAM SMITH.

3s. 6d.

**A SMALLER GREEK GRAMMAR.**

BY DR. GEORGE CURTIUS.

3s. 6d.

LONDON: PRINTED BY W. CLOWES AND SONS, STAMFORD STREET,  
AND CHANCING CROSS.

**P R E F A C E.**

THE present Latin Grammar was commenced several years ago with a twofold object.

1. In common with many other Teachers and Examiners, I had long felt the want of a Latin Grammar, holding an intermediate place between the larger works of Zumpt and Madvig, and the elementary treatises which still continue to be used even in the higher forms of our public and private schools. It has been found by experience that so much time is taken up by the Student in finding out in Zumpt and Madvig the information which he requires, as greatly to discourage him in that constant recourse to the Grammar which the judicious Teacher knows to be essential to a correct knowledge of the language. Moreover, in reading through one of the more voluminous Grammars, the Student is prevented by the very amplitude and comprehensiveness of the treatment, from obtaining a clearly defined conception of those outlines of structure, without which he cannot acquire the mastery of a symmetrical language like the Latin. The grammars of Zumpt and Madvig are, indeed, suitable only for the advanced and critical Student, for whom the present work is not designed. My object has been to provide a Manual of convenient size, and easy of reference for the class-room, presenting a fuller account of the forms and structure of the language than the ordinary grammars, and yet con-

a 2

237108

taining, as far as possible, all that is really needful for the Student.

2. The second object which I have had in view has been to introduce into Latin Grammar some of the results of the linguistic discoveries of modern philologists. It is certainly a surprising fact that, while few sciences have made greater progress during the last forty years than the science of language, our great public schools should, with a few honourable exceptions, continue to use antiquated grammars, written in Latin more than three hundred years ago. Every one would regard it as an absurdity for teachers of chemistry to adhere to the text-books even of illustrious chemists of a former generation; and yet classical schools cling to Grammars which ignore all the researches of eminent modern philologists, such as Bopp, Pott, Curtius, Max Müller, and others, who have thrown a new light upon the structure of the classical languages. It is surely high time that our schools should share in the progress that has been made, and should obtain some insight into the results of the improved philology of the present day. I am not insensible to the difficulties attending a reform in our Latin Grammars. Professor Curtius, in the Preface to his Greek Grammar, which is published at the same time as the present Work, has pointed out reasons which render it inexpedient to attempt the construction of a Latin Grammar on the same strictly scientific principles as can safely be adopted in reference to a Greek Grammar. In addition to this, the present arrangement and nomenclature of the Accidence have been so long and so generally established, that any important deviation from it would be too violent a shock to long-established habits. Moreover, it is important that pupils who have been trained in the old fashioned Grammars should be able to pass on to a more advanced and philosophical work, without encountering too sweeping a change in

the general form and structure of the Grammar. I have therefore considered it wiser to retain the usual arrangement of the Declensions and Conjugations, and have only introduced alterations when some clear and positive advantage was to be gained; as, for instance, in the classification of Substantives of the Third Declension according to the final letter of the Stem, instead of the one in the ordinary Grammars, which occasions so much difficulty and perplexity. I may have erred from an unnecessary fear of innovation, but my object has been Reform and not Revolution. On the other hand, though the matter might have been presented in a more scientific form, I have not intentionally allowed anything to remain which the pupil would afterwards have to *unlearn*; and I have in the Observations on the Declensions, and in the Chapter on the Formation of Tenses, been careful to distinguish between the Stem and the Inflexion, and to explain the forms in accordance with the views of modern philology. Much important information respecting the changes of letters, and their influence upon the Inflexions, is given in the Appendix upon the Alphabet (pp. 329—356), which is designed chiefly for Teachers and more advanced Students.

After the Accidence and the Chapters on the Formation of Words had been several years in type, I found that my other literary engagements, more especially the labour connected with the preparation of the English-Latin Dictionary, precluded the hope of my being able to complete the book myself in any reasonable time. Being unwilling to delay its publication for an indefinite period, I entrusted the preparation of the Syntax to my friend Mr. Theophilus D. Hall, M.A., who had obtained the highest classical honours in the University of London. He has drawn up this part of the work in accordance with my original plan, and it has undergone a careful revision on my part. Pains have been taken to present such an explanation of the structure of

the language as experience has shown to be most suitable to Students, and in particular to give as clear and satisfactory treatment as possible of that tentamen of all capacity for Latin Scholarship—the Subjunctive Mood. In treating of the Cases, it has been felt to be injudicious to attempt to carry out in a practical work a philosophical and philological adherence to the original laws of the Inflexions. The Case-System of the Latin language is a fragmentary one, the several uses of the different Cases being influenced by empirical considerations; and to refer every particular usage back to the original force of the case, though an interesting study for the philologist, is not necessary, and is sometimes confusing, to the student of grammar.

It has been thought desirable to arrange the Syntax in two parts: the ordinary, and the extraordinary or *Syntaxis Ornata*. The latter subject furnishes an opportunity for noticing various peculiarities of construction or style which ought to be known to the accurate Student, while the substantial structure of the language is, for the most part, independent of them. In this portion many valuable sections have been derived from one of the most accomplished productions of recent German scholarship, the *Stilistik* of Nügelbach. To this part of the Work are added a few short chapters on the styles of the principal Prose writers. Hitherto the young Student has had no guide to enable him to distinguish what is special and individual in the author, and what belongs not to the author, but to the genius of the language in which he writes.

Free use has been made of the labours of preceding Grammarians, especially of Zumpt and Madvig. But I have consulted most of the Latin Grammars in general use both in this country and Germany, and have endeavoured to incorporate in the present Work any special advantages which each seemed to possess. In the Prosody I have been specially indebted to an excellent little treatise by

Habenicht, published in 1860. The Appendix on the Alphabet is derived from Corssen's admirable work 'Ueber Aussprache, Vokalismus, und Betonung der Lateinischen Sprache' (2 vols. 1858—1859), which is a perfect storehouse of information respecting the forms of the Latin language.

Although this Grammar is intended primarily for those who have already learned the rudiments of the language, it has been thought advisable to set forth the inflexions as simply and fully as in a purely elementary work. I know, by long experience as an Examiner, how dangerous it is to presume upon the previous knowledge of a Student; and I would strongly recommend all who may use this book to go through the Accidence again from beginning to end. Moreover, the Accidence and Syntax have been so arranged that pupils, if it is thought desirable, may begin the study of Latin with the present work, by omitting the Observations in smaller type, and the second and third books of the Syntax. But a more elementary Grammar will probably be deemed more suitable for the lower forms of schools; and for that purpose an Abridgment is published simultaneously with this Work.

My object throughout the Book has been a practical one; and I have therefore taken the advice of many experienced teachers respecting the general form and arrangement of the Work. I am indebted, among other friends, to Mr. John Robson, for many valuable suggestions in the Accidence.

WM. SMITH.

London, March 25, 1863.



## CONTENTS.

### PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

CHAP.	PAGE
I. THE ALPHABET .. .. .	1
II. PARTS OF SPEECH, INFLEXION, STEM .. .. .	3
III. THE SUBSTANTIVE .. .. .	4
IV. THE FIRST DECLENSION .. .. .	5
V. THE SECOND DECLENSION .. .. .	6
VI. THE THIRD DECLENSION .. .. .	8
VII. REMARKS ON THE CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (INCLUDING ADJECTIVES) .. .. .	17
VIII. GREEK SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION .. .. .	20
IX. THE FOURTH DECLENSION .. .. .	22
X. THE FIFTH DECLENSION .. .. .	23
XI. IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES .. .. .	24
XII. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .	26
XIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .	29
XIV. THE NUMERALS .. .. .	32
XV. THE PRONOUNS .. .. .	36
XVI. THE VERB .. .. .	41
XVII. THE VERB SUM AND THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS .. .. .	44
XVIII. DEPONENT VERBS .. .. .	64
XIX. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION .. .. .	66
XX. STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND PECULIAR FORMS .. .. .	67
XXI. IRREGULAR VERBS .. .. .	74
XXII. DEFECTIVE VERBS .. .. .	82
XXIII. IMPERSONAL VERBS .. .. .	84
XXIV. ADVERBS .. .. .	85
XXV. PREPOSITIONS .. .. .	91
XXVI. CONJUNCTIONS .. .. .	93
XXVII. INTERJECTIONS .. .. .	94
XXVIII. APPENDIX A.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES .. .. .	95
XXIX. APPENDIX B.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES OF VERBS .. .. .	102

PART I.—ACCIDENCE—*continued*.

CHAP.	PAGE
XXX. FORMATION OF WORDS. DERIVATION OF SUBSTANTIVES .. .. .	121
XXXI. DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .	127
XXXII. DERIVATION OF VERBS .. .. .	130
XXXIII. DERIVATION OF ADVERBS .. .. .	132
XXXIV. COMPOSITION OF WORDS .. .. .	133

## PART II.—SYNTAX.

## BOOK I.

XXXV. OF SENTENCES .. .. .	135
XXXVI. CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT .. .. .	137
XXXVII. THE NOMINATIVE CASE .. .. .	142
XXXVIII. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE .. .. .	143
XXXIX. THE GENITIVE .. .. .	152
XL. THE DATIVE .. .. .	162
XLI. THE ABLATIVE .. .. .	170
XLII. THE VOCATIVE .. .. .	179
XLIII. ADJECTIVES .. .. .	180
XLIV. PRONOUNS .. .. .	185
XLV. THE VERB: INDICATIVE MOOD .. .. .	193
XLVI. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD .. .. .	198
XLVII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD .. .. .	200
XLVIII. THE INFINITIVE MOOD .. .. .	223
XLIX. PARTICIPLES .. .. .	228
L. THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE .. .. .	231
LI. THE SUPINES .. .. .	234
LII. ADVERBS .. .. .	235
LIII. PREPOSITIONS .. .. .	237
LIV. CONJUNCTIONS .. .. .	248

## BOOK II.—SYNTAXIS ORNATA.

LV. PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF SUBSTANTIVES .. .. .	255
LVI. DITTO OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .	260
LVII. DITTO OF PRONOUNS .. .. .	261
LVIII. DITTO OF VERBS .. .. .	266
LIX. DITTO DITTO { OF ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS } .. .. .	271
LX. CONJUNCTIONS AND OTHER WORDS AS PARTICLES .. .. .	273
LXI. ON THE ORDER OF WORDS .. .. .	276

## BOOK III.—STYLES OF AUTHORS.

CHAP.	PAGE
LXII. STYLE OF SALLUST .. .. .	284
LXIII. STYLE OF CAESAR .. .. .	287
LXIV. STYLE OF CICERO .. .. .	288
LXV. STYLE OF LIVY .. .. .	290
LXVI. STYLE OF TACITUS .. .. .	292

## PART III.—PROSODY.

LXVII. QUANTITY .. .. .	297
„ METRE .. .. .	305

## APPENDICES.

I. THE ALPHABET .. .. .	329
II. LATIN AUTHORS .. .. .	357
III. THE CALENDAR .. .. .	360
IV. MONEY .. .. .	363
V. ROMAN NAMES .. .. .	364
VI. ABBREVIATIONS .. .. .	365
INDEX .. .. .	367

## ERRATA.

- P. 6, l. 4, for *ir* read *īr*.  
P. 123, No. 9, after 1), read and *trūm*.  
P. 157, l. 5, *dele* 2.  
P. 168, middle, for ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES read ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.  
P. 173, l. 10, for *Jāsōnem* read *Jāsōnem*.  
P. 213, l. 16 from bottom, for *contūmēliae* read *contūmēliae*.

# THE STUDENT'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

## PART I.—ACCIDENCE.

### CHAPTER I.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 1. The Latin Language was the language of *Latium*, of which Rome was the chief city. The conquests of the Romans caused it to spread over the rest of Italy, and over the greater part of France and Spain. The Latin Language is no longer spoken, but the French, Italian, Spanish, and Portuguese languages are mainly derived from it.

§ 2. The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, being the same as the English without *H*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,  
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,  
Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.  
q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

*Obs.* 1. Originally *i* was used to express also the semivowel *j*, and *v* to denote both the vowel sound *u* and the semivowel sound *v*.

*Obs.* 2. The letters *y* and *z* do not belong to the old Latin alphabet, and occur only in words borrowed from the Greek.

§ 3. The letters are divided into Vowels, which can be sounded by themselves; and Consonants, which cannot be sounded without a Vowel.

§ 4. The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*.

§ 5. Consonants are divided into Mutes, Liquids, Sibilants, and Semivowels.

The *Mutes* are divided according to the vocal organ which is chiefly employed in pronouncing them.

	Sharp or Thin.	Flat or Medial.	Aspirated.
<i>Labials</i> (lip-letters)	<i>p</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>f</i>
<i>Gutturals</i> (throat-letters)	<i>c</i> ( <i>k, q</i> )	<i>g</i>	<i>h</i>
<i>Dentals</i> (teeth-letters)	<i>t</i>	<i>d</i>	(none).

The *Liquids* are *l, m, n, r*.

The *Sibilants* are *s, x, and z*. *X* is compounded of *cs* or *gs*: *as, dux* = *ducs, a leader*; *rex* = *regs, a king*. *X* and *z* are sometimes called double consonants.

The *Semivowels* are *j* and *v*.

*Obs.* 1. *K* is used only before *a* at the beginning of a few words: *as, Kūlendaē, the Calends*.

*Obs.* 2. *Q* is used only before *u*: *as, sēquor, I follow*.

§ 6. A *Diphthong* is the blended sound of two vowels meeting in one syllable. The diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use; and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

*Obs.* The diphthongs *ae (æ), oe (œ)*, are pronounced as *ē*.

§ 7. A *Syllable* consists of one or more letters pronounced together, and having only one vowel sound.

A Syllable is either *short, long, or doubtful*, according as the vowel belonging to it is pronounced rapidly, or slowly, or sometimes rapidly and sometimes slowly. This characteristic of a vowel or syllable is called its *quantity*.

A *short vowel* is marked by (˘): *as, pater, a father*.

*Obs.* A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: *as, pater, a boy*.

A *long vowel* is marked by (ˉ), and may be either long by nature: *as, māter, a mother*; or long by position: *as, mēnsa, a table; dūx, a leader*. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants or by a double consonant.

*Obs.* 1. These marks of Quantity were not used by the Latin writers; serving only for grammatical purposes.

*Obs.* 2. All diphthongs are long by nature: *as, aurāe, breezes*.

A *doubtful vowel* is sometimes short, sometimes long: *as, amō or amō, I love, tenēbrae or tenēbrae, darkness*.

*Obs.* A vowel is doubtful when followed by a mute and a liquid, especially *l* or *r*: *as, dūplex or duplex, twofold; tenēbrae or tenēbrae, darkness*.

§ 8. *Accent*.—In words of two syllables the accent is on the first syllable: *as, mūsa, a muse, dōlus, deceit*.

In words of three or more syllables the accent is on the last syllable but one, if this syllable is long: *as, Rōmānus, a Roman*; or on the last syllable but two, if the last syllable but one is short: *as, dōminus, a lord*.

## CHAPTER II.—PARTS OF SPEECH. INFLEXION. STEM.

§ 9. There are eight parts of speech:

I. The *NOUN SUBSTANTIVE*, or simply *SUBSTANTIVE*, is the name (*Nōmen*) of a person or thing: *as, Caesār, Caesar; vir, a man; dōmūs, a house; virtūs, valour*.

*Obs.* Names of persons and places are called *Proper Nouns*: all other Substantives are called *Common Nouns* or *Appellatives*.

II. The *NOUN ADJECTIVE*, or simply *ADJECTIVE* (*Adjectivum, joined to*), is joined to a Substantive to express its quality or nature: *as, bōnus vir, a good man*.

III. The *PRONOUN* (*Prōnōmen*) is used instead of a Substantive: *as, ego, I; tū, thou*.

IV. The *VERB* (*Verbū, word*) is the word by which we make an assertion about something: *as, cūqus currit, the horse runs; vir sēdet, the man sits*.

V. The *ADVERB* (*Adverbium*) is joined to Verbs, Adjectives, and other Adverbs, to qualify their meaning: *as, celeriter currit, he runs quickly; māgis pius, more dutiful; sātis diū, long enough*.

VI. The *PREPOSITION* (*Praepōsitio*) is placed before Substantives to mark their relation to other words: *as, in, in; habito in urbē, I dwell in the city*.

VII. The *CONJUNCTION* (*Conjunctio*) unites words and sentences: *as, et, and; ūt, in order that: vir et femina, the man and the woman; edimūs ūt vivāmus, we eat in order that we may live*.

VIII. The *INTERJECTION* (*Interjectio*) is a word of exclamation: *as, heu, alas!*

§ 10. There is no article in the Latin language: thus *dōmus* may be translated by either *house*, or *a house*, or *the house*.

§ 11. Substantives, Adjectives, Pronouns, and Verbs are inflected: that is, their final syllables are changed in order to mark their number or relation to other words.

The inflexion of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns is called *Declension* (*Dēclensio*): the inflexion of Verbs is called *Conjugation* (*Conjūgatio*).

Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are not inflected, and are frequently called *PARTICLES*.

§ 12. The *Stem* of inflected words is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away: thus, in *trab-s, a plank*, *trab-is, of a plank*, *trab-i, to a plank*, the Stem is *trāb*: and in *lēg-o, I read*, *lēg-is, thou readest*, the Stem is *lēg*.

## CHAPTER III.—THE SUBSTANTIVE.

§ 13. There are three *Genders*: the *Masculine* (Masculinum), the *Feminine* (Femininum), and the *Neuter* (Neutrum).

*Obs.* Substantives which are either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*. The rules for the Genders are collected in §§ 141-148.

§ 14. There are two *Numbers* (Nūmēri): the *Singular* (Singulāris), which designates one, and the *Plural* (Plūralis), which designates more than one.

§ 15. There are six *Cases* (Cāsūs):

I. The *Nominative* (Nōmīnātīvus) Case answers the question *Who?* or *What?* denoting the Subject of a sentence: as, māgister dōcēt, *the master teaches*; dōmus est amplā, *the house is large*.

II. The *Genitive* (Gēmītīvus) Case answers the question *Whose?* or *of What?* as, māgistri dōmus, *the master's house*; fōlia arbōrum, *the leaves of trees*.

III. The *Dative* (Dātīvus) Case answers the question *To* or *for whom?* *To* or *for what?* as, do librum māgistro, *I give the book to the master*.

IV. The *Accusative* (Accūsātīvus) Case answers the question *Whom?* or *What?* as, amo māgistrum, *I love the master*. It also signifies motion *towards*: as, eo Rōmam, *I go to Rome*.

V. The *Vocative* (Vōcātīvus) Case is used for addressing: as, O māgister, *O master!*

VI. The *Ablative* (Ablātīvus) Case answers the questions *By* or *with what?* *When?* &c.: as, Hastā interfectūs est, *he was killed with a spear*; aestātē, *in the summer*. It also signifies motion or separation *from*: as, abeo Rōmā, *I depart from Rome*.

§ 16. All the Substantives in the Latin language are arranged in five classes, called Declensions, which may be distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case Singular.

The Genitive Singular of the 1st Declension ends in *ae*

"	"	2nd	"	"	ī
"	"	3rd	"	"	is
"	"	4th	"	"	ūs
"	"	5th	"	"	eī

The *Stems* of Substantives can generally be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural.

## CHAPTER IV.—THE FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 17. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the First Declension, with the exception of a few Greek nouns, ends in *ā*.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Mens-ā,	a table	Mens-ae, tables
Gen. Mens-ae,	of a table	Mens-ārum, of tables
Dat. Mens-ae,	to or for a table	Mens-is, to or for tables
Acc. Mens-am,	a table	Mens-as, tables
Voc. Mens-ā,	O table [table.	Mens-ae, O tables
Abl. Mens-ā,	by, with, or from a	Mens-is, by, with, or from tables.

*Obs.* The meanings here and in subsequent examples assigned to the *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Ablative* cases are the usual ones; but it must not be supposed that these cases can always be thus translated.

GENDER.—All Substantives of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: as, nauta (masc.), *a sailor*.

Examples for Declension.			
āla,	a wing.	hōra,	an hour.
barba,	a beard.	poena,	a punishment.
causa,	a cause.	fēmīna,	a woman.
coena,	a supper.	porta,	a gate.
		silva,	a wood.
		stella,	a star.
		vīa,	a way.
		victōria,	a victory.

*Obs.* 1. The stems of all substantives of the first declension end in *a*.

*Obs.* 2. The *Genitive Singular* ended originally in *ās* (a contraction of *a-is*). This ending is kept in *fāmīlia*, when compounded with *pāter*, *māter*, *frīus* or *frīlia*: as, *pāterfāmīliās*, *the father of a family*; *Gen. patrīs fāmīliās*; *Dat. patrī fāmīliās*, &c. In poetry the old form of the Genitive *ai* instead of *ais*, is sometimes found: as, *aquāi*, *of the water*; *terrāi*, *of the earth*.

*Obs.* 3. The *Genitive Plural* of some substantives ends in *um* instead of *arum*. The ending in *um* is found in the compounds of *cōla* and *gēnā*: as *coelēcōlum* from *coelēcōla*, *an inhabitant of heaven*; *terrigēnum* from *terrigēna*, *earth-born*; also in *drachnum*, *amphōrum*, from *drachma*, *amphōra* (with numerals); and in Greek patronymics: as, *Aeneādum*, from *Aeneādēs*, *a descendant of Aeneas*.

*Obs.* 4. The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* of some words end in *abus*: as, *deābus* from *dea*, *a goddess*; *frīiābus* from *frīlia*, *a daughter*. This ending distinguishes them from corresponding masculine substantives of the second declension: as, *deīs* from *deus*, *a god*; *frīiīs* from *frīius*, *a son*. So likewise *duābus* from *duae*, *two*; *ambābus* from *ambae*, *both*. See § 68.

## § 18. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin end in *ē*, *ās*, *ēs* in the Nominative Singular, and are thus declined:—

Feminine.	Masculine.	Masculine.
Nom. Ēptōm-ē, <i>abridgment</i>	Aenē-ās (proper name)	Anchīs-ēs (proper name)
Gen. Ēptōm-ēs	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Dat. Ēptōm-ae	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
Acc. Ēptōm-ēn	Aenē-ān (am)	Anchīs-ēn (am)
Voc. Ēptōm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ā, ā)
Abl. Ēptōm-ē	Aenē-ā	Anchīs-ē (ā).

## CHAPTER V.—THE SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 19. The Nominative Singular of Masculine Substantives of the Second Declension ends in *ūs* and *ēr* (ir), and of Neuter Substantives in *um*.

## A. Masculine.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Dōmīn-ūs, <i>a lord</i>	Dōmīn-I, <i>lords</i>	
Gen. Dōmīn-I, <i>of a lord</i>	Dōmīn-ōrum, <i>of lords</i>	
Dat. Dōmīn-ō, <i>to or for a lord</i>	Dōmīn-is, <i>to or for lords</i>	
Acc. Dōmīn-um, <i>a lord</i>	Dōmīn-ōs, <i>lords</i>	
Voc. Dōmīn-ē, <i>O lord</i> [ <i>a lord</i> ]	Dōmīn-I, <i>O lords</i> [ <i>lords</i> ]	
Abl. Dōmīn-ō, <i>by, with, or from</i>	Dōmīn-is, <i>by, with, or from</i>	

Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom. Māgistr-ēs, <i>a master</i>	Māgistr-I, <i>masters</i>	
Gen. Māgistr-I, <i>of a master</i>	Māgistr-ōrum, <i>of masters</i>	
Dat. Māgistr-ō, <i>to or for a master</i>	Māgistr-is, <i>to or for masters</i>	
Acc. Māgistr-um, <i>a master</i>	Māgistr-ōs, <i>masters</i>	
Voc. Māgistr-ē, <i>O master</i>	Māgistr-I, <i>O masters</i>	
Abl. Māgistr-ō, <i>by, with, or from a master.</i>	Māgistr-is, <i>by, with, or from masters.</i>	

Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom. Puēr, <i>a boy</i>	Puēr-i, <i>boys</i>	
Gen. Puēr-I, <i>of a boy</i>	Puēr-ōrum, <i>of boys</i>	
Dat. Puēr-ō, <i>to or for a boy</i>	Puēr-is, <i>to or for boys</i>	
Acc. Puēr-um, <i>a boy</i>	Puēr-ōs, <i>boys</i>	
Voc. Puēr, <i>O boy</i> [ <i>boy</i> ]	Puēr-I, <i>O boys</i>	
Abl. Puēr-ō, <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Puēr-is, <i>by, with, or from boys.</i>	

## B. Neuter.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Regn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Regn-ā, <i>kingdoms</i>
Gen. Regn-I, <i>of a kingdom</i>	Regn-ōrum, <i>of kingdoms</i>
Dat. Regn-ō, <i>to or for a kingdom</i>	Regn-is, <i>to or for kingdoms</i>
Acc. Regn-um, <i>a kingdom</i>	Regn-ā, <i>kingdoms</i>
Voc. Regn-um, <i>O kingdom</i>	Regn-ā, <i>O kingdoms</i>
Abl. Regn-ō, <i>by, with, or from a kingdom.</i>	Regn-is, <i>by, with, or from kingdoms.</i>

GENDER.—1. A few Substantives in *us* of the Second Declension are Feminine; the names of Trees, Towns, and Countries: as, pīrus, *a pear-tree*, Cōrinthus, *Corinth*; and a few other words: as, hūmus, *the ground*, alvus, *the belly*, cōlus, *a distaff*, vannus, *a winnowing fan*.

2. Three in *us* are Neuter: virus, *poison*; pēlāgus, *the ocean*; and vulgus, *the multitude*. The last is sometimes Masculine.

3. All Neuter Substantives have the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Cases alike in each Number; and in the Plural these Cases always end in *ā*.

## Examples for Declension like dōmīnūs.

cibus, <i>food.</i>	annus, <i>a year.</i>	nidus, <i>a nest.</i>
lūpus, <i>a wolf.</i>	rāmus, <i>a branch.</i>	hortus, <i>a garden.</i>
nūmērus, <i>a number.</i>	fluvius, <i>a stream.</i>	cervus, <i>a stag.</i>
mālus (f.), <i>an apple-tree.</i>	ulmus (f.), <i>an elm.</i>	prunus (f.), <i>a plum-tree.</i>

## Examples for Declension like māgistr-ēs.

āger, <i>a field.</i>	caner, <i>a crab.</i>	fāber, <i>a smith.</i>
āper, <i>a boar.</i>	cāper, <i>a he-goat.</i>	līber, <i>a book.</i>

## Examples for Declension like puēr.

sōcer, <i>a father-in-law.</i>	gēner, <i>a son-in-law.</i>	Līber, <i>Bacchus.</i>
vesper, <i>evening.</i>	ādulter, <i>an adulterer.</i>	litēri (pl.), <i>children.</i>

NOTE 1. The above are the only Substantives in *er* which preserve the *e* in all the cases. The Adjectives which preserve the *e* are given in § 56, Obs. 1.

NOTE 2. Vesper is irregular. See § 53, Obs. 2.

## Examples for Declension like regnum.

dōnum, <i>a gift.</i>	scūtum, <i>a shield.</i>	bellum, <i>war.</i>
tectum, <i>a roof.</i>	vīnum, <i>wine.</i>	templum, <i>a temple.</i>

Obs. 1. The stems of all substantives of the second declension end in *o*, as dōmīno, regno, puēro, māgistrō. The Nominative Singular originally ended in *ōs*, and the Accusative in *om*: as, dōmīnō-s, dōmīno-m: puēro-s, puēro-m. In the older writers and poets the *o* is usually found after *r*: as servō-s, servo-m, *a slave*.

Obs. 2. When the Genitive Singular ends in *ii*, it is often contracted into *i*: as, fili instead of filiī, *of a son*; ōti instead of ōtiī, *of leisure*.

Obs. 3. The Vocative Singular of filius, *a son*, gēnius, *a guardian spirit*, and of Proper Names in *ius* ends in *i*: as, fili, *O son*; gēnī, *O guardian spirit*; Laeli, *O Laelius*; Tulli, *O Tullius*.

Obs. 4. The Genitive Plural of some words ends in *um* instead of *ōrum*. This is especially the case with words signifying money, weights, measures, and trades: as, nummum from nummus, *a piece of money*; sestertium from sestertius, *a sesterce*, *a silver coin* (about 2d.); mōdium from mōdius, *a Roman corn-measure*, *a peck*; fabrum, from fāber, *a smith*.

Obs. 5. The only substantives of the second declension ending in *ir* are vīr, *a man*, Gen. vīr-i, &c., with its compounds, triumvīr, &c.; and levīr, *tri*, *a husband's brother*, *a brother-in-law*.

Obs. 6. Deūs, *God*, is declined in the following manner:

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Deūs, <i>God</i>	Dei, Diī, or Di, <i>Gods</i>
Gen. Dei, <i>of God</i>	Deōrum or Deūm, <i>of Gods</i>
Dat. Deō, <i>to God</i>	Deīs, Diīs, or Dis, <i>to Gods</i>
Acc. Deum, <i>God</i>	Deōs, <i>Gods</i>
Voc. Deūs, <i>O God</i>	Dei, Diī, or Di, <i>O Gods</i> [ <i>Gods</i> ]
Abl. Deō, <i>by, with, or from</i>	Deīs, Diīs, or Dis, <i>by, with, or from</i>

The forms Dei (pl.) and Deīs are rarely used.

## § 20. DECLENSION OF GREEK SUBSTANTIVES.

Greek Substantives of this declension employed in Latin differ from the ordinary declension in the following points:—

1. Greek Substantives in *ēs* frequently have the Greek endings *ēs* and *ōn* instead of the Latin *ēs* and *um* in the *Nom.* and *Acc. Sing.*

2. Greek Substantives in *ēs* (*as*) of the Attic Second Declension generally retain the Greek declension, but they sometimes have in the *Gen.* *ī* as well as *o*:

<i>Nom.</i> Dēlōs	Andrōgēōs
<i>Gen.</i> Dēlī	Andrōgēī, Andrōgēō
<i>Dat.</i> Dēlō	Andrōgēō
<i>Acc.</i> Dēlōn, Dēlum	Andrōgēōn, Andrōgēō
<i>Voc.</i> Dēlē	Andrōgēō
<i>Abl.</i> Dēlō	Andrōgēō

*Obs.* Substantives in *ēs* sometimes form their Accusatives in *ōnā*: as, Andrōgēōnā: so, *Nom.* Athōs, *Acc.* Athōnā.

3. Greek Substantives in *eus* (*eūs*) of the Third Declension sometimes follow the Second Declension (except in the Nominative and Vocative), but frequently preserve the Greek declension:

<i>Nom.</i> Orphēus	Orphēus
<i>Gen.</i> Orphēī, Orphēī	Orphēōs
<i>Dat.</i> Orphēō	Orphēī, Orphēī
<i>Acc.</i> Orphēum	Orphēa
<i>Voc.</i> Orphēū	Orphēū
<i>Abl.</i> Orphēō	

4. The *Genitive Plural* in some titles of books has the Greek ending *ōn* instead of the Latin *rum* or *um*: as, Geōrgēōn libri, *the books of the Georgics*.

## CHAPTER VI.—THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 21. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

## A. Masculine and Feminine Substantives.

I. Substantives the stems of which end in the labial mutes *p*, *b*, and in the labial liquid *m*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Trab-s (f.), a beam	Trāb-ēs, beams	
<i>Gen.</i> Trāb-is, of a beam	Trāb-um, of beams	
<i>Dat.</i> Trāb-ī, to or for a beam	Trāb-ībūs, to or for beams	
<i>Acc.</i> Trāb-em, a beam	Trāb-ēs, beams	
<i>Voc.</i> Trāb-s, O beam [beam]	Trāb-ēs, O beams	
<i>Abl.</i> Trāb-ē, by, with, or from a	Trāb-ībūs, by, with, or from beams.	

Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Princip-s (m.), a chief	Princīp-ēs, chiefs	
<i>Gen.</i> Princīp-is, of a chief	Princīp-um, of chiefs	
<i>Dat.</i> Princīp-ī, to or for a chief	Princīp-ībūs, to or for chiefs	
<i>Acc.</i> Princīp-em, a chief	Princīp-ēs, chiefs	
<i>Voc.</i> Principes, O chief [a chief]	Princīp-ēs, O chiefs [chiefs]	
<i>Abl.</i> Princīp-ē, by, with, or from	Princīp-ībūs, by, with, or from	

Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Hiem-s (f.), winter	Hiēm-ēs, winters	
<i>Gen.</i> Hiēm-is, of winter	Hiēm-um, of winters	
<i>Dat.</i> Hiēm-ī, to or for winter	Hiēm-ībūs, to or for winters	
<i>Acc.</i> Hiēm-em, winter	Hiēm-ēs, winters	
<i>Voc.</i> Hiem-s, O winter [winter]	Hiēm-ēs, O winters [ters]	
<i>Abl.</i> Hiēm-ē, by, with, or from	Hiēm-ībūs, by, with, or from winters	

Sing.	4.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Urb-s (f.), a city	Urb-ēs, cities	
<i>Gen.</i> Urb-is, of a city	Urb-ium, of cities	
<i>Dat.</i> Urb-ī, to or for a city	Urb-ībūs, to or for cities	
<i>Acc.</i> Urb-em, a city	Urb-ēs, cities	
<i>Voc.</i> Urb-s, O city [city]	Urb-ēs, O cities	
<i>Abl.</i> Urb-ē, by, with, or from a	Urb-ībūs, by, with, or from cities.	

*Obs.* 1. When a monosyllabic Stem ends in two consonants, the *Gen. pl.* ends in *ium*, not *um*: as urb-ium. So also below: arx, *Gen. Pl.* arc-ium; mons, *Gen. Pl.* mont-ium.

*Obs.* 2. When a Stem of more than one syllable has *ē* in the last syllable, that *ē* is changed into *ī* when another syllable follows: as, *Stem* princēp, *Gen.* princīp-is. So also below: *Stem* iūdēc, *Gen.* iūdēc-is; *Stem* mīlēt, *Gen.* mīlēt-is; *Stem* nōmēn, *Gen.* nōmēn-is.

§ 22. II. Substantives the stems of which end in the guttural mutes *c*, *g*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Dux (c.g.), a leader	Dūc-ēs, leaders	
<i>Gen.</i> Dūc-is, of a leader	Dūc-um, of leaders	
<i>Dat.</i> Dūc-ī, to or for a leader	Dūc-ībūs, to or for leaders	
<i>Acc.</i> Dūc-em, a leader	Dūc-ēs, leaders	
<i>Voc.</i> Dux, O leader [leader]	Dūc-ēs, O leaders	
<i>Abl.</i> Dūc-ē, by, with, or from a	Dūc-ībūs, by, with, or from leaders.	

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom. Lex (f.), a law	Lēg-ēs,	lairs	
Gen. Lēg-is, of a law	Lēg-um,	of lairs	
Dat. Lēg-i, to or for a law	Lēg-ibūs,	to or for lairs	
Acc. Lēg-em, a law	Lēg-ēs,	lair	
Voc. Lex, O law	Lēg-ēs,	O lairs	
Abl. Lēg-ē, by, with, or from a law	Lēg-ibūs,	by, with, or from lairs	

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom. Jūdex (c.), a judge	Jūdic-ēs,	judges	
Gen. Jūdic-is, of a judge	Jūdic-um,	of judges	
Dat. Jūdic-i, to or for a judge	Jūdic-ibūs,	to or for judges	
Acc. Jūdic-em, a judge	Jūdic-ēs,	judges	
Voc. Jūdex, O judge	Jūdic-ēs,	O judges	[judges]
Abl. Jūdic-ē, by, with, or from a judge	Jūdic-ibūs,	by, with, or from judges	

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom. Arc (f.), a citadel	Arc-ēs,	citadels	
Gen. Arc-is, of a citadel	Arc-um,	of citadels	
Dat. Arc-i, to or for a citadel	Arc-ibūs,	to or for citadels	
Acc. Arc-em, a citadel	Arc-ēs,	citadels	
Voc. Arc, O citadel	Arc-ēs,	O citadels	
Abl. Arc-ē, by, with, or from a citadel	Arc-ibūs,	by, with, or from citadels	

## Examples for Declension.

nux (f.),	nūc-is,	a nut.	grex (m.),	grēg-is,	a flock.
fax (f.),	fāc-is,	a torch.	rēmex (m.),	rēmīg-is,	a rover.
pax (f.),	pāc-is,	peace.	pollex (m.),	pollīc-is,	the thumb.
fornax (f.),	fornāc-is,	an oven.	index (c.),	indīc-is,	an informer.
vox (f.),	vōc-is,	a voice.	vertex (m.),	vertīc-is,	an eddy.
rālix (f.),	rādīc-is,	a root.	falx (f.),	falc-is,	a sickle.
rex (m.),	rēg-is,	a king.	merx (f.),	merc-is,	merchandise.

Obs. Cs and gs are contracted into x: as, dux instead of duc-s, lex instead of leg-s. In nix, snow, Gen. niv-is, Dat. niv-i, &c., the Nom. ends in x, because the Stem originally ended in a guttural.

§ 23. III. Substantives the Stems of which end in the dental mutes t, d.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Aetā-s (f.), an age	Aetāt-ēs,	ages	
Gen. Aetāt-is, of an age	Aetāt-um,	of ages	
Dat. Aetāt-i, to or for an age	Aetāt-ibūs,	to or for ages	
Acc. Aetāt-em, an age	Aetāt-ēs,	ages	
Voc. Aetā-s, O age	Aetāt-ēs,	O ages	
Abl. Aetāt-ē, by, with, or from an age	Aetāt-ibūs,	by, with, or from ages	

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom. Lāpī-s (m.), a stone	Lāpīd-ēs,	stones	
Gen. Lāpīd-is, of a stone	Lāpīd-um,	of stones	
Dat. Lāpīd-i, to or for a stone	Lāpīd-ibūs,	to or for stones	
Acc. Lāpīd-em, a stone	Lāpīd-ēs,	stones	
Voc. Lāpī-s, O stone	Lāpīd-ēs,	O stones	
Abl. Lāpīd-ē, by, with, or from a stone	Lāpīd-ibūs,	by, with, or from stones	

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom. Milē-s (c.), a soldier	Milit-ēs,	soldiers	
Gen. Milit-is, of a soldier	Milit-um,	of soldiers	
Dat. Milit-i, to or for a soldier	Milit-ibūs,	to or for soldiers	
Acc. Milit-em, a soldier	Milit-ēs,	soldiers	
Voc. Milē-s, O soldier	Milit-ēs,	O soldiers	[diere.]
Abl. Milit-ē, by, with, or from a soldier	Milit-ibūs,	by, with, or from soldiers	

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom. Mon-s (m.), a mountain	Mont-ēs,	mountains	
Gen. Mont-is, of a mountain	Mont-um,	of mountains	
Dat. Mont-i, to or for a mountain	Mont-ibūs,	to or for mountains	
Acc. Mont-em, a mountain	Mont-ēs,	mountains	
Voc. Mon-s, O mountain	Mont-ēs,	O mountains	
Abl. Mont-ē, by, with, or from a mountain	Mont-ibūs,	by, with, or from mountains	

## Examples for Declension.

civitas (f.),	civitat-is,	a state.	obsēs (c.),	obstl-is,	a hostage.
virtus (f.),	virtut-is,	virtue.	pars (f.),	part-is,	a part.
sacerdos (c.),	sacerdot-is,	a priest.	serpens (c.),	serpent-is,	a serpent.
		priestess.	ars (f.),	art-is,	an art.
cassis (f.),	cassid-is,	a helmet.	frons (f.),	front-is,	a forehead.
comēs (c.),	comit-is,	a companion.			

Obs. 1. T and d are dropped before s: as, aetā-s, lāpī-s, milē-s, mon-s, instead of aetat-s, lapid-s, millet-s, mont-s.

Obs. 2. In nox, noct-is, night, the Stem is noct: in the Nom. t is dropped before s, and the letters cs are contracted into x: noct-s = noc-s = nox.

§ 24. IV. Substantives the Stems of which end in the liquids l, r, and the sibilant s.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Consūl (m.), a consul	Consul-ēs,	consuls	
Gen. Consul-is, of a consul	Consul-um,	of consuls	
Dat. Consul-i, to or for a consul	Consul-ibūs,	to or for consuls	
Acc. Consul-em, a consul	Consul-ēs,	consuls	
Voc. Consul, O consul	Consul-ēs,	O consuls	
Abl. Consul-ē, by, with, or from a consul	Consul-ibūs,	by, with, or from consuls	



	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Clāmōr (m.), a shout	Clāmōr-ēs, shouts	
Gen.	Clāmōr-is, of a shout	Clāmōr-um, of shouts	
Dat.	Clāmōr-i, to or for a shout	Clāmōr-ibūs, to or for shouts	
Acc.	Clāmōr-em, a shout	Clāmōr-ēs, shouts	
Voc.	Clāmōr, O shout [a shout.	Clāmōr-ēs, O shouts [shouts.	
Abl.	Clāmōr-ē, by, with, or from	Clāmōr-ibūs, by, with, or from	

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Ansēr (m.), a goose	Ansēr-ēs, geese	
Gen.	Ansēr-is, of a goose	Ansēr-um, of geese	
Dat.	Ansēr-i, to or for a goose	Ansēr-ibūs, to or for geese	
Acc.	Ansēr-em, a goose	Ansēr-ēs, geese	
Voc.	Ansēr, O goose [a goose.	Ansēr-ēs, O geese	
Abl.	Ansēr-ē, by, with, or from	Ansēr-ibūs, by, with, or from geese.	

	Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom.	Pāter, a father	Patr-ēs, fathers	
Gen.	Patr-is, of a father	Patr-um, of fathers	
Dat.	Patr-i, to or for a father	Patr-ibūs, to or for fathers	
Acc.	Patr-em, a father	Patr-ēs, fathers	
Voc.	Pāter, O father [father.	Patr-ēs, O fathers	
Abl.	Patr-ē, by, with, or from a	Patr-ibūs, by, with, or from fathers.	

	Sing.	5.	Plur.
Nom.	Flōs (m.), a flower	Flōr-ēs, flowers	
Gen.	Flōr-is, of a flower	Flōr-um, of flowers	
Dat.	Flōr-i, to or for a flower	Flōr-ibūs, to or for flowers	
Acc.	Flōr-em, a flower	Flōr-ēs, flowers	
Voc.	Flōs, O flower [flower.	Flōr-ēs, O flowers	
Abl.	Flōr-ē, by, with, or from a	Flōr-ibūs, by, with, or from flowers.	

## Examples for Declension.

sōl (m.), sōl-is, the sun.	aggēr (m.), aggēr-is, a mound.
exsūl (c.), exsūl-is, an exile.	carcēr (m.), carcēr-is, a prison.
cōlōr (m.), cōlōr-is, colour.	mūliēr, mūliēr-is, a woman.
tīmōr (m.), tīmōr-is, fear.	māter, mātr-is, a mother.
mōs (m.), mōr-is, a custom.	frātēr, frātr-is, a brother.

Obs. 1. In some Substantives ending in ēr, the ē is dropped in all cases except the Nom. and Voc. Sing.: as pāter, māter, etc.

Obs. 2. The s of the Stem is changed into r, when another syllable follows: as, Stem and Nom. flōs, Gen. flōr-is; Stem and Nom. pulvis, dust, Gen. pulvēr-is.

## § 25. V. Substantives the Stems of which end in on.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Leo (m.), a lion	Leōn-ēs, lions	
Gen.	Leōn-is, of a lion	Leōn-um, of lions	
Dat.	Leōn-i, to or for a lion	Leōn-ibūs, to or for lions	
Acc.	Leōn-em, a lion	Leōn-ēs, lions	
Voc.	Leo, O lion [lion.	Leōn-ēs, O lions	
Abl.	Leōn-ē, by, with, or from a	Leōn-ibūs, by, with, or from lions.	

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	Virgo, a maiden	Virgīn-ēs, maidens	
Gen.	Virgīn-is, of a maiden	Virgīn-um, of maidens	
Dat.	Virgīn-i, to or for a maiden	Virgīn-ibūs, to or for maidens	
Acc.	Virgīn-em, a maiden	Virgīn-ēs, maidens	
Voc.	Virgo, O maiden [maiden.	Virgīn-ēs, O maidens [maidens.	
Abl.	Virgīn-ē, by, with, or from a	Virgīn-ibūs, by, with, or from	

## Examples for Declension.

sermo (m.), sermōn-is, a discourse.	hōmo (c.), hōmīn-is, a man or wo-
pūgīo (m.), pūgīōn-is, a dagger.	grando (f.), grandīn-is, hail, [man.
lātro (m.), lātrōn-is, a robber.	ordo (m.), ordin-is, a rank.
præco (m.), præcōn-is, a crier.	īmāgo (f.), īmāgīn-is, a likeness.
ōrātiō (f.), ōrātiōn-is, a speech.	hīrundo (f.), hīrundīn-is, a swallow.
pāvo (m.), pāvōn-is, a peacock.	ārundo (f.), ārundīn-is, a reed.

Obs. 1. If the Stem ends in ōn (short), the ō is changed into ī, when another syllable follows: as, Stem virgōn, Gen. virgīn-is. Comp. § 21, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Cāro (Stem cārōn) flesh, drops the ō in all cases except the Nom. and Voc. Sing.: as, Nom. cāro, Gen. carn-is, Dat. carn-i, &c.

## § 26. VI. Substantives the Stems of which end in i.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Host-is (c.), an enemy	Host-ēs, enemies	
Gen.	Host-is, of an enemy	Host-ium, of enemies	
Dat.	Host-i, to or for an enemy	Host-ibūs, to or for enemies	
Acc.	Host-em, an enemy	Host-ēs, enemies	
Voc.	Host-is, O enemy [enemy.	Host-ēs, O enemies [mies.	
Abl.	Host-ē, by, with, or from an	Host-ibūs, by, with, or from ene-	

## Examples for Declension.

cīvīs (c.), a citizen.	ovīs (f.), a sheep.	vestīs (f.), a garment
āvīs (f.), a bird.	fūlīs (f.), a cat.	classīs (f.), a fleet.

Some Stems end in *i* or *e*, and are thus declined:—

Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom. Nūb-ēs, a cloud	Nūb-ēs, clouds	
Gen. Nūb-is, of a cloud	Nūb-ium, of clouds	
Dat. Nūb-i, to or for a cloud	Nūb-ibūs, to or for clouds	
Acc. Nūb-em, a cloud	Nūb-ēs, clouds	
Voc. Nūb-ēs, O cloud [cloud.	Nūb-ēs, O clouds	
Abl. Nūb-ē, by, with, or from a	Nūb-ibūs, by, with, or from clouds.	

Examples for Declension.

clātes, a descent.	rūpēs, a rock.	sēlēs, a seat.
--------------------	----------------	----------------

B. Neuter Substantives.

§ 27. The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of Substantives of the Third Declension are properly the same as the Stem. The Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural always end in *ā*, as in the Second Declension.

§ 28. I. Substantives the Stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Nōmēn, a name	Nōmīn-ā, names	
Gen. Nōmīn-is, of a name	Nōmīn-um, of names	
Dat. Nōmīn-i, to or for a name	Nōmīn-ibūs, to or for names	
Acc. Nōmēn, a name	Nōmīn-ā, names	
Voc. Nōmēn, O name [name.	Nōmīn-ā, O names [names.	
Abl. Nōmīn-ē, by, with, or from a	Nōmīn-ibūs, by, with, or from	

Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom. Fulgūr, lightning	Fulgūr-ā, lightnings	
Gen. Fulgūr-is, of lightning	Fulgūr-um, of lightnings	
Dat. Fulgūr-i, to or for lightning	Fulgūr-ibūs, to or for lightnings	
Acc. Fulgūr, lightning	Fulgūr-ā, lightnings	
Voc. Fulgūr, O lightning	Fulgūr-ā, O lightnings	
Abl. Fulgūr-ē, by, with, or from lightning.	Fulgūr-ibūs, by, with, or from lightnings.	

Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom. Crūs, a leg	Crūr-ā, legs	
Gen. Crūr-is, of a leg	Crūr-um, of legs	
Dat. Crūr-i, to or for a leg	Crūr-ibūs, to or for legs	
Acc. Crūs, a leg	Crūr-ā, legs	
Voc. Crūs, O leg [leg.	Crūr-ā, O legs	
Abl. Crūr-ē, by, with, or from a	Crūr-ibūs, by, with, or from legs.	

Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom. Ōpūs, a work	Ōpēr-ā, works	
Gen. Ōpēr-is, of a work	Ōpēr-um, of works	
Dat. Ōpēr-i, to or for a work	Ōpēr-ibūs, to or for works	
Acc. Ōpūs, a work	Ōpēr-ā, works	
Voc. Ōpūs, O work [work.	Ōpēr-ā, O works	
Abl. Ōpēr-ē, by, with, or from a	Ōpēr-ibūs, by, with, or from works.	

Sing.	5.	Plur.
Nom. Corpūs, a body	Corpōr-ā, bodies	
Gen. Corpōr-is, of a body	Corpōr-um, of bodies	
Dat. Corpōr-i, to or for a body	Corpōr-ibūs, to or for bodies	
Acc. Corpūs, a body	Corpōr-ā, bodies	
Voc. Corpūs, O body [body.	Corpōr-ā, O bodies [bodies.	
Abl. Corpōr-ē, by, with, or from a	Corpōr-ibūs, by, with, or from	

Sing.	6.	Plur.
Nom. Cāpūt, a head	Cāpīt-ā, heads	
Gen. Cāpīt-is, of a head	Cāpīt-um, of heads	
Dat. Cāpīt-i, to or for a head	Cāpīt-ibūs, to or for heads	
Acc. Cāpūt, a head	Cāpīt-ā, heads	
Voc. Cāpūt, O head [head.	Cāpīt-ā, O heads	
Abl. Cāpīt-ē, by, with, or from a	Cāpīt-ibūs, by, with, or from heads.	

NOTE.—A few Substantives ending in *en* and *us* are not Neuter: as, flāmēn, *Inis m.*, a special priest; Vēnūs, *ēris*, the goddess of love; lēpus, *ōris (m.)*, a hare.

Examples for Declension.

fāmēn, <i>Inis</i> , a river.	fūnūs, <i>ēris</i> , a funeral.
carmēn, <i>Inis</i> , a song.	lātūs, <i>ēris</i> , a side.
fulmēn, <i>Inis</i> , a thunderbolt.	sītūs, <i>ēris</i> , a constellation.
sēmēn, <i>Inis</i> , a seed.	vulnūs, <i>ēris</i> , a wound.
murmūr, <i>ūris</i> , a murmur.	littū, <i>ōris</i> , a shore.
guttur, <i>ūris</i> , a throat.	pignūs, <i>ōris</i> , a pledge.
os, <i>ōris</i> , a mouth.	tempūs, <i>ōris</i> , a time.
gēnūs, <i>ēris</i> , a race.	nēmūs, <i>ōris</i> , a grove.
foedūs, <i>ēris</i> , a treaty.	pectūs, <i>ōris</i> , a breast.

Obs. 1. The substitution of *r* for the final *s* of the Stem, when another syllable follows, is an euphonic change: as, crūs, crūr-is, instead of crūs-is; ōpēs, ōpēr-is, instead of ōpēs-is; corpūs, corpōr-is, instead of corpūs-is.

Obs. 2. The *u* in *ūs* of the Nom. Sing. is only an euphonic change of the *ē* and *ō* of the Stem: as, Stems ōpēs, corpūs; Nom. ōpūs, corpūs.

Obs. 3. In cāpūt, cāpīt-is, the *ā* of the Stem is changed into *ī* when another syllable follows, like the *ē* in nōmēn, nōmīn-is. See § 21, Obs. 2.

§ 29. II. Substantives the Stems of which end in *i* (the *Nom.* in *e, al, ar*).

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Măr-ē, <i>the sea</i>	Măr-īā, <i>seas</i>	
<i>Gen.</i> Măr-īs, <i>of the sea</i>	Măr-īum, <i>of seas</i>	
<i>Dat.</i> Măr-i, <i>to or for the sea</i>	Măr-ībūs, <i>to or for seas</i>	
<i>Acc.</i> Măr-ē, <i>the sea</i>	Măr-īā, <i>seas</i>	
<i>Voc.</i> Măr-ē, <i>O sea</i> [ <i>sea</i> ]	Măr-īā, <i>O seas</i>	
<i>Abl.</i> Măr-i, <i>by, with, or from the</i>	Măr-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from seas.</i>	

Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Animāl, <i>an animal</i>	Animāl-īā, <i>animals</i>	
<i>Gen.</i> Animāl-īs, <i>of an animal</i>	Animāl-īum, <i>of animals</i>	
<i>Dat.</i> Animāl-i, <i>to or for an animal</i>	Animāl-ībūs, <i>to or for animals</i>	
<i>Acc.</i> Animāl, <i>an animal</i>	Animāl-īā, <i>animals</i>	
<i>Voc.</i> Animāl, <i>O animal</i>	Animāl-īā, <i>O animals</i>	
<i>Abl.</i> Animāl-i, <i>by, with, or from an animal.</i>	Animāl-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from animals.</i>	

Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Calcār, <i>a spur</i>	Calcār-īā, <i>spurs</i>	
<i>Gen.</i> Calcār-īs, <i>of a spur</i>	Calcār-īum, <i>of spurs</i>	
<i>Dat.</i> Calcār-i, <i>to or for a spur</i>	Calcār-ībūs, <i>to or for spurs</i>	
<i>Acc.</i> Calcār, <i>a spur</i>	Calcār-īā, <i>spurs</i>	
<i>Voc.</i> Calcār, <i>O spur</i> [ <i>spur</i> ]	Calcār-īā, <i>O spurs</i>	
<i>Abl.</i> Calcār-i, <i>by, with, or from a</i>	Calcār-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from spurs.</i>	

#### Examples for Declension.

rēṭē, <i>a net.</i>	mōnīlē, <i>a necklace.</i>	cervicāl, <i>a pillow.</i>
ōvīlē, <i>a sheepfold.</i>	vectīgāl, <i>a tax.</i>	exemplār, <i>an example.</i>

*Obs. 1.* The Stems of *mārē* and similar Substantives end in *i*, the final *ē* of the *Nom.* being only an euphonic change of the *i*: as, *Stem mārī, Nom. mārē.*

*Obs. 2.* The Stems of words whose Nominatives end in *āl* and *ār*, end in *ālī* and *ārī*, the *i* being dropped and the *a* shortened in the *Nom. Sing.*: as, *Stem ānimālī, Nom. ānimāl; Stem calcārī, Nom. calcār.* Hence the *Abl.* in *i*, see §§ 32, 33.

§ 30. The following irregular Substantives are thus declined:

Sing.	Bōs (c.), an ox or cow.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Bōs		Bōv-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> Bōv-īs		Bōv-um or bō-um
<i>Dat.</i> Bōv-i		Bō-būs or bū-būs
<i>Acc.</i> Bōv-em		Bōv-ēs
<i>Voc.</i> Bōs		Bōv-ēs
<i>Abl.</i> Bōv-ē		Bō-būs or būbūs.

Sēnex, an old man.	Jūptēr (=Jōv-pītēr, i. e. pātēr), the god.
Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> Sēnex	Sēn-ēs
<i>Gen.</i> Sēn-īs	Sēn-um
<i>Dat.</i> Sēn-i	Sēn-ībūs
<i>Acc.</i> Sēn-em	Sēn-ēs
<i>Voc.</i> Sēnex	Sēn-ēs
<i>Abl.</i> Sēn-ē	Sēn-ībūs

## CHAPTER VII.—REMARKS ON THE CASES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (INCLUDING ADJECTIVES).

### § 31. Accusative Singular in *im*.

The *Acc. Sing.* of many Substantives, of which the *Nom.* ends in *is* has *im*, not *em*:

1. Always in the five words:—

āmussīs, rāvīs, sītīs, tussīs, vīs,

and in the names of cities and rivers; as, *Hispālīs, Seville; Tī-bērīs, the Tiber.*

āmussīs (f.), <i>a rule.</i>	tussīs (f.), <i>a cough.</i>
rāvīs (f.), <i>hoarseness.</i>	vīs (f.), <i>violence.</i>
sītīs (f.), <i>thirst.</i>	

2. Generally in the six words:

febrīs, pelvīs, puppīs,  
restīs, turris, sēcūris.

febrīs (f.), <i>fever.</i>	restīs (f.), <i>a rope.</i>
pelvīs (f.), <i>a basin.</i>	turris (f.), <i>a tower.</i>
puppīs (f.), <i>the stern of a ship.</i>	sēcūris (f.), <i>an axe.</i>

3. Sometimes in the three words:

clāvīs, messīs, nāvīs.

clāvīs (f.), *a key.* | messīs (f.), *a harvest.* | nāvīs (f.), *a ship.*

### § 32. Ablative Singular in *i*.

The *Abl. Sing.* has *i*, not *ē*:

1. In all words of which the Accusative ends in *im* only: as, *sītī, Tībērī.*

2. In Neuters in *ē, āl*, and *ār*, (*Gen. āris*): as, *mārī, ānimālī, calcārī.*

Obs. 1. Sometimes, but very rarely, these Substantives have *ē* in the Ablative: as, *mārē* (Varr., Lucr.).

Obs. 2. Names of towns in *e* always have *ē* in the Abl.: as, Praenestē.

Obs. 3. Substantives in *ar*, the Gen. of which is not *āris*, have *ē* in the Abl.: as, *fār*, *farris*, *spelt*; *baccār*, *baccāris*, *a sweet herb*; *jūbār*, *jūbāris*, *a sun-beam*; *nectār*, *nectāris*, *nectar*.

3. In Adjectives ending in *is*, *e*, and *er*, *is*, *e*: as, *fācili* from *facilis*, *easy*; *ācri* from *acer*, *sharp*.

### § 33. *Allative Singular in ī and ē.*

The *All. Sing.* has both *ī* and *ē*:

1. In most words the Acc. of which ends both in *im* and *em*: as, *puppi* and *puppē*.

Also in *ignīs*, *āvīs*, *imbēr*, *vesper*, *sūpellex*.

*ignīs* (*m.*), *fire*.

*āvīs* (*f.*), *a bird*.

*imbēr*, *n.* (Abl. *imbiī* &

*imbiē*), *rain*.

*sūpellex*, *f.* (Abl. *sūpellectīī*, or *sūpel-*  
*lectīē*), *household utensils*.

*vesper*, *m.* (Abl. *vespēī* or *vespēē*),  
*evening*.

Obs. *Restis* has only *restē*; *sēcūris* only *sēcūri*.

2. In Adjectives of one termination and in the Comparatives: as, *prudenti* and *prudentē* from *prudens*, *experienced*; *altiori* and *altiorē* from *altior*, *higher*. The Comparatives usually have *ē*.

Obs. 1. The following Adjectives have *ē* only:

*paupēr*, *pūbēs*, *dēsēs*,  
*compōs*, *impōs*, *caelebs*,  
princeps and *sūperstēs*.

*paupēr*, *ēris*, *poor*.  
*pūbēs* (*ēr*) *ēris*, *an adult*.  
*dēsēs*, *ldis*, *lazy*.  
*compōs*, *ōtis*, *having the*  
*mastery of*.

*impōs*, *ōtis*, *not master of*.  
*caelebs*, *lōis*, *unmarried*.  
princeps, *lōis*, *chief*.  
*sūperstēs*, *lōis*, *surviving*.

Obs. 2. *Pār*, *equal*, and *mēmōr*, *mindful*, have only *ī*. But *pār*, *a pair* (subst.), has *ē* also.

Obs. 3. The Participles in *ns* generally have *ī* when used as Adjectives, but otherwise *ē*.

### § 34. *Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural in īā.*

The *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc. Plur.* of Neuter Nouns have *īā*:

1. In Substantives, the *Nom. Sing.* of which end in *e*, *a*, *ar* (Gen. *āris*): as, *māriā*, *ānimālīā*, *calcāriā*.

2. In Adjectives which have the *Abl. Sing.* either in *ī* alone, or in *ī* and *ē*, except the Comparatives: as, *grāvīā*, *ācriā*, *prudentīā*; but *altiorā*.

Obs. Except *vētīā*, *old*, which has *vētīrā*. *Complūrēs*, *several*, has both *complūrā* and *complūrīā*.

### § 35. *Genitive Plural in īum.*

The *Gen. Plur.* has *īum*, not *um*:

1. In Substantives the *Nom. Sing.* of which ends in *is* or *ēs*: as, *hostis*, *hostium*; *acdēs*, *aedium*.

#### Exceptions.

*Ambāgēs*, *struēs*, *jūvēns*,  
*Vātēs*, *cānis*, *vōlderis*,  
In genitive have *um*,  
While *āpis*, *mensis*, *sēdēs*,  
Have either *um* or *īum*.

<i>ambāgēs</i> * ( <i>f.</i> ),	<i>a winding</i> .	<i>vōlderis</i> ( <i>f.</i> ),	<i>a bird</i> .
<i>struēs</i> ( <i>f.</i> ),	<i>a heap</i> .	<i>āpis</i> ( <i>f.</i> ),	<i>a bee</i> .
<i>jūvēns</i> ( <i>c.</i> ),	<i>a youth</i> .	<i>mensis</i> ( <i>m.</i> ),	<i>a month</i> .
<i>vātēs</i> ( <i>c.</i> ),	<i>a prophet</i> .	<i>sēdēs</i> ( <i>f.</i> ),	<i>a seat</i> .
<i>cānis</i> ( <i>c.</i> ),	<i>a dog</i> .		

\* See § 52, Obs. 3.

2. In the words:

*Imbēr*, *ūtēr*, *lintēr*,  
*Insūbēr*, *cāro*, *ventēr*:

as, *imbrīum*, *carnīum*, &c.

<i>imbēr</i> ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>rain</i> .	<i>Insūlēr</i> ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>name of a Gallic tribe</i> .
<i>ūtēr</i> ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a bag made of leather</i> .	<i>cāro</i> ( <i>f.</i> ), <i>flesh</i> .
<i>lintēr</i> ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>a cherry</i> . [ <i>ther</i> ].	<i>ventēr</i> ( <i>m.</i> ), <i>the belly</i> .

3. In monosyllabic words, the stems of which end in two consonants: as, *urbs*, *urb-ium*; *arx*, *arc-ium*; *mons*, *mont-ium*. So also *os* (*Stem oss*, *n.*, *a bone*, *Gen. Pl. oss-ium*; as (*Stem ass*), *m.*, *a small coin*, *Gen. Pl. ass-ium*.

4. Also in the following monosyllabic words in which the stem ends in a single consonant:

*Līs*, *glīs*, and *vīs*,  
*Mūs*, *mās*, and *nix*,  
Add *faux* and *strix*.

<i>līs</i> ( <i>lītium</i> ), <i>f.</i>	<i>a lawsuit</i> .	<i>mās</i> ( <i>mārium</i> ),	<i>a male</i> .
<i>glīs</i> ( <i>glīrium</i> ), <i>m.</i>	<i>a dormouse</i> .	<i>nix</i> ( <i>nīvium</i> ), <i>f.</i>	<i>snow</i> .
<i>vīs</i> ( <i>vīrium</i> ), <i>f.</i>	<i>force</i> .	<i>faux</i> ( <i>faucium</i> ), <i>f.</i>	<i>the throat</i> .
<i>mūs</i> ( <i>mūrium</i> ), <i>m.</i>	<i>a mouse</i> .	<i>strix</i> ( <i>stīgium</i> ), <i>f.</i>	<i>an owl</i> .

Obs. The *Nom. faux* is not used. See § 52, Obs. 3.

5. In all neuter substantives which have the *Nom. Pl.* in *īa*: as, *mārium*; *ānimālīum*; *calcārium*.

### § 36. *Genitive Plural in īum (rarely um).*

The *Gen. Plur.* generally ends in *īum*, rarely in *um*:

1. In words of more than one syllable, the *Nom. Sing.* of which

ends in *ns*: as, *cliens* (clientium, rarely clientum), *a client*; *adolescens* (adolescens, rarely adolescentum), *a young man*; *prudens* (prudens, rarely prudentum), *prudent*.

2. In national names: as, *Quirīs* (Quiritium), *a Roman*; *Arpīnēs* (Arpinatium), *a native of Arpinum*. Also *Pēnātēs* (Pēnātium), *the household gods*; *optimātēs* (optimatium), *the nobles*.

### § 37. Accusative Plural in *is* and *ēs*.

The *Acc. Plur.* of most masculine and feminine nouns, the *Gen. Pl.* of which ends in *ium*, has *is* as well as *ēs*: as, *hostis* and *hostēs*; *artis* and *artēs*; *praesentis* and *praesentēs*.

*Obs.* The words which have in the *Sing.* the case-endings *im* and *i*, and in the *Plural* the case-endings *ia*, *ium*, and *is*, generally have Stems ending in *i*. The cases are thus formed according to the analogy of words of other declensions of which the Stems end in a vowel: as,

<i>Acc. Sing.</i>	<i>puppi-m</i>	like	<i>gradu-m</i> ;
<i>Abl. Sing.</i>	<i>puppi</i>	"	<i>gradu</i> ;
<i>Nom. Pl.</i>	<i>mari-ū</i>	"	<i>genu-ū</i> ;
<i>Gen. Pl.</i>	<i>mari-um</i>	"	<i>genu-um</i> ;
<i>Acc. Pl.</i>	<i>puppi-s</i>	"	<i>nandū-s</i> .

But many such words follow the analogy of words of the third declension, the Stems of which end in a consonant: thus we have also the forms *puppem*, *puppē*, *puppēs*, &c. The *i* of the Stem is frequently dropped in the *Nom. Sing.*: see § 29, *Obs.* 2.

## CHAPTER VIII.—GREEK SUBSTANTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

### § 38. Nominative Singular.

The *Nom. Sing.* of many Proper Names ends in the Greek *ōn* (ων) as well as the Latin *ō*: as, *Agamemnōn*, rarely *Agamemno*.

### § 39. Genitive Singular.

1. The *Gen. Sing.* of Proper Names in *ēs* ends in *i* more frequently than in *is*: as, *Nom. Pēriclēs*, *Gen. Pēricl-i* and *Pēricl-is*.

2. The *Gen. Sing.* of Proper Names in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ōs* (ος) instead of in the Latin *s*: as, *Thētis*, *Gen. Thētidōs*; *Pallās*, *Gen. Pallād-ōs*.

3. The *Gen. Sing.* of Feminine Names in *ō* generally ends in the Greek *ōs* (ως) instead of in the Latin *ōnis*: as, *Sapphō*, *Gen. Sapphūs*. The *Dat.*, *Acc.*, and *Abl.* are usually *Sapphō*, rarely *Sapphōn-i*, -em, -ē.

### § 40. Accusative Singular.

1. The *Acc. Sing.* frequently ends in the Greek *ā* instead of in the Latin *em*: as, *āēr*, *Acc. āēr-ā*; *Agamemnōn*, *Acc. Agamemnōn-ā*.

2. The *Acc. Sing.* of Substantives in *is* (with the Stem in *ē*) ends either in *im* or in the Greek *in* (ιν): as, *poēsīs*, *Acc. poēsīm* and *poēsīn*; *Chārybdīs*, *Acc. Chārybdīm* and *Chārybdīn*.

3. The *Acc. Sing.* of Proper Names in *ēs* frequently ends in the Greek *ēn* (ην), which is the *Acc.* of the first Greek Declension: as, *Aeschīnēs*, *Acc. Aeschīnēn* and *Aeschīnem*.

### § 41. Vocative Singular.

1. The *Voc. Sing.* of Substantives in *is*, *ys* (vs), *eus* (eys), and *as* (Gen. *antis*), ends, as in Greek, without *s*: as, *Phyllis*, *Voc. Phyllī*; *Cōtys*, *Voc. Cōtŷ*; *Orpheus*, *Voc. Orpheu* (see § 20); *Calchās*, *Voc. Calchā*.

2. The *Voc. Sing.* of Proper Names in *ēs*, *Gen. īs*, ends in *ēs*, *ēs*, and *ē*: as *Sōcrātēs*, *Sōcrātēs*, and *Sōcrātē*.

### § 42. Nominative Plural.

The *Nom. Plur.* in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ēs* (ες) instead of in the Latin *ēs*: as, *Arcādēs*.

### § 43. Genitive Plural.

The *Gen. Plur.* in *ōn* (ων) is found in the titles of books only: as, *Mētāmorphōseōn librī*.

### § 44. Accusative Plural.

The *Acc. Plur.* in the poets frequently ends in the Greek *ās* instead of in the Latin *ēs*: as, *Arcād-ās*.

### § 45. Dative and Ablative Plural.

The *Dat.* and *Abl. Plur.* of Greek Substantives in *ma*, *Gen. mātis*, frequently end in *is* (according to the Second Declension) instead of in *ibus*: as, *poēmāt-is* from *poēma* (ποίημα).

#### Examples.

Sing.		Sing.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Pēriclēs</i>	<i>Pallās</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Pēriclīs</i> , <i>Pēriclī</i>	<i>Pallādīs</i> , <i>Pallādos</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Pēriclī</i>	<i>Pallādī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Pēriclem</i> , <i>Pēriclē</i>	<i>Pallādem</i> , <i>Pallādā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Pēriclē</i> , <i>Pēriclēs</i> , <i>Pēriclē</i>	<i>Pallās</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Pēriclē</i>	<i>Pallādē</i> .
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Pārīs</i>	<i>Sapphō</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Pārīdīs</i> , <i>Pārīdōs</i>	<i>Sapphūs</i> , <i>Sapphōnīs</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Pārīdī</i>	<i>Sapphō</i> , <i>Sapphōnī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Pārīdem</i> , <i>Pārīdā</i> , <i>Pārīn</i>	<i>Sapphō</i> , <i>Sapphōnem</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Parī</i>	<i>Sapphō</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Parīdē</i> .	<i>Sapphōnē</i> .

\*

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. chlāmýs, a cloak.	chlāmýdēs or -ēs
Gen. chlāmýdīs, chlāmýdūs	chlāmýdum
Dat. chlāmýdi	chlāmýdibūs
Acc. chlāmýdem, chlāmýdīā	chlāmýdēs, chlāmýdās
Abl. chlāmýdē.	chlāmýdibūs.

## CHAPTER IX.—THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 46. The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Substantives of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Substantives in *u*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom. Grād-ūs, a step	Grād-ūs,	steps
Gen. Grād-ūs, of a step	Grād-uum,	of steps
Dat. Grād-ūi, to or for a step	Grād-ībūs,	to or for steps
Acc. Grād-um, a step	Grād-ūs,	steps
Voc. Grād-ūs, O step	Grād-ūs,	O steps
Abl. Grād-ū, by, with, or from a	Grād-ībūs,	by, with, or from steps.

Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom. Gēn-ū, a knee	Gēn-ūā,	knees
Gen. Gēn-ūs, of a knee	Gēn-ūum,	of knees
Dat. Gēn-ūi, to or for a knee	Gēn-ībūs,	to or for knees
Acc. Gēn-ū, a knee	Gēn-ūā,	knees
Voc. Gēn-ū, O knee	Gēn-ūā,	O knees
Abl. Gēn-ū, by, with, or from a	Gēn-ībūs,	by, with, or from knees.

GENDER.—Substantives in *us* of the Fourth Declension are masculine, with the exception of the names of trees and the words mentioned below.

## Examples for Declension.

## Masculine.

fructus, fruit.	mōtus, a movement.	passus, a pace.
currus, a chariot.	ūsus, a use.	cursus, a running.
sensus, a sense.	cāsus, a fall.	cantus, a song.

## Feminine.

mānus, a hand.	nūrus, a daughter-in-law.
tribus, a tribe (a division of the	socrus, a mother-in-law.
ācus, a needle. [Roman people.]	ānus, an old-woman.
porticus, a portico.	idus (pl.), the Ides (a division of the
dōmus, a house.	Roman month).

## Neuter.

cornu, a horn.		vēru, a spit.
----------------	--	---------------

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fourth Declension end in *u*.

Obs. 2. The Gen. Sing. *ūs* is a contraction of *uis*: as, grādūs from grādūis.

Obs. 3. The Dat. Sing. *ūi* is often contracted into *ū*: as, grādūi, grādū.

Obs. 4. The Dat. and Abl. Plur. of the following words end in *ūbūs*, but portus and vēru have also *ībūs*:—

quercus (f.), an oak.	lācus (m.), a lake, tank.	artus (m.), a joint.
ācus (f.), a needle.	spēcus (m. f.) a cave.	portus (m.), a harbour.
arcus (m.), a bow.	& n.)	pēcū (n.), cattle.
vēru (n.), a spit.	tribus (f.), a tribe.	partus (m.), a birth.

Obs. 5. Dōmus, a house, belongs partly to the Second, partly to the Fourth Declension.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Dōm-ūs	Dōm-ūs
Gen. Dōm-ūs	Dōm-ūum or dōm-ōrum
Dat. Dōm-ūi	Dōm-ībūs
Acc. Dōm-um	Dōm-ūs (rarely dōm-ās)
Voc. Dōm-ūs	Dōm-ūs
Abl. Dōm-ū	Dōm-ībūs.

Hence the memorial line:

Tollē mē, mū, mī, mīs,  
Si declinārē dōmus vīs.

i. e. leave out the endings *mē, mū, mī, mīs*, if you wish to decline *dōmūs*.

Dōmī is used only with the meaning *at home*, and is probably a dative.

## CHAPTER X.—THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 47. The Nominative Singular of Substantives of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Dī-ēs, a day	Dī-ēs, days
Gen. Dī-ēi, of a day	Dī-ērum, of days
Dat. Dī-ēi, to or for a day	Dī-ēbūs, to or for days
Acc. Dī-em, a day	Dī-ēs, days
Voc. Dī-ēs, O day	[day.] Dī-ēs, O days
Abl. Dī-ē, by, with, or from a	Dī-ēbūs, by, with, or from days.

GENDER.—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine: excepting *dies*, which in the Singular is sometimes Masculine and sometimes Feminine, and in the Plural always Masculine: also *meridies* (m.), *noon*, which is a compound of *dies*.

## Examples for Declension.

rēs, a <i>thing</i> .	effigies, a <i>likeness</i> .	spēciēs, appearance.
aciēs, a <i>point</i> .	fides, <i>faith</i> .	spēs, <i>hope</i> .
faciēs, a <i>face</i> .	sēriēs, a <i>series</i> .	mēridies (m.), <i>noon</i> .

Obs. 1. The Stems of all Substantives of the Fifth Declension end in *e*.

Obs. 2. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *e* in *eī* is long after a vowel, but short after a consonant: as, dī-eī, faci-eī; but, rēi, fidēi.

Obs. 3. In the *Gen.* and *Dat. Sing.* the *ei* is sometimes contracted into *ē*: as, diē, fidē.

Obs. 4. Rēs and diēs are the only words of this Declension which have a complete Plural. The words aciēs, faciēs, effigies, sēriēs, spēciēs, and spēs occur in the Plural only in the *Nom.*, *Acc.*, and *Voc.* cases. No other words of the Declension have any Plural.

## CHAPTER XI.—IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 48. Some Substantives are not declined: as, fās, *permitted by divine law*; nēfās, *opposed to divine law*; nihil, *nothing*; instār, *resemblance*.

§ 49. Some Substantives have no Plural: as, justitia, *justice*; fāmēs, *hunger*; aurum, *gold*.

§ 50. Some Substantives have no Singular: as, nuptiae, *a marriage*; fēriæ, *holidays*; tēnebræ, *darkness*; libērī, *children*; armā, *arms*.

§ 51. Some Substantives have a different meaning in the Singular and the Plural: as,

Sing.	Plur.
Aedēs, a <i>temple</i> ;	aedēs, a <i>house</i> .
Āqua, <i>water</i> ;	āquæ, <i>medicinal springs</i> .
Auxilium, <i>help</i> ;	auxilia, <i>auxiliary forces</i> .
Carcēr, a <i>prison</i> ;	carcērēs, a <i>starting-place</i> .
Castrum, a <i>fort</i> ;	castrā, a <i>camp</i> .
Cōmitium, the <i>place of Assembly</i> ;	Cōmitiā, the <i>Assembly itself</i> .
Cōpia, <i>plenty</i> ;	cōpiæ, <i>forces</i> .
Fortūna, <i>fortune</i> ;	fortūnæ, the <i>gifts of fortune</i> ,
Grātia, <i>favour</i> ;	grātiæ, <i>thanks</i> . [property.]
Impēdimentum, a <i>hindrance</i> ;	impēdimentā, <i>baggage</i> .
Littera, a <i>letter of the alphabet</i> ;	litteræ, an <i>epistle</i> .
Lūdus, <i>play, school</i> ;	lūdī, <i>public games</i> .
Ōpera, <i>exertion</i> ;	ōpæ, <i>workmen</i> .
Ōpis (Gen.), <i>help</i> ;	ōpēs, <i>power, wealth</i> .
Pars, a <i>portion</i> ;	partes, a <i>part in a play</i> .
Rostrum, a <i>beak</i> ;	rostrā, the <i>platform for speakers in the Roman forum (adorned with the beaks of ships)</i> .
Tābula, a <i>board, picture</i> ;	tābulæ, <i>writing tablets</i> .

§ 52. Some Substantives want one or more Cases.

1. The following Substantives have no Nominative Singular:

(daps), dāpis (f.),	a <i>feast</i> .
(ditiō) ditiōnis (f.),	dominion.
(frux) frūgis (f.),	fruit.
(internēcio) internēciōnis (f.),	destruction.

2. The following Substantives have only certain cases:

fors (f.), <i>chance</i> . Only <i>Nom.</i> and <i>Abl. Sing.</i> fortē (without Plural).	
(ops) ōpis (f.), <i>help</i> . Only <i>Gen.</i> , <i>Acc.</i> , <i>Abl.</i> , <i>Sing.</i> ōpis, ōpem, ōpē. Full Plural.	
(prex, prēcīs) (f.), <i>prayer</i> . Only <i>Dat.</i> , <i>Acc.</i> , and <i>Abl. Sing.</i> Full Plural.	
(viciēs), <i>change</i> . Only <i>Gen.</i> , <i>Acc.</i> , <i>Abl. Sing.</i> viciēs, vicem, vicē. Full Plural, except <i>Gen.</i>	
vīs (f.), <i>force</i> . Only <i>Nom.</i> , <i>Acc.</i> , <i>Abl. Sing.</i> vīs, vim, vī. Full Plural	
virēs, virium, viribūs, virēs, virēs, viribūs.	

3. The following Substantives have in the Singular the Ablative only, but a full Plural:—

ambāgē (f.), a *circuit*. | faucē (f.), the *throat*. | verbērē (n.), a *stripe*.

4. One word has only the Ablative Singular, and no Plural:—spontē (f.), by *inclination*.

§ 53. Some Substantives are *Heřerōclitā*, that is, have a two-fold Declension.

1. In the Second Declension some Substantives end in *us* and *um*: as, callus and callum, *hardened skin*; commentārius and commentārium, a *note-book*.

2. Some Substantives fluctuate between the First and Second Declensions: as, menda and mendum, a *fault*. Vespēr (also vespēra), the *evening*, has, according to the Second Declension, the *Acc.* vespērum, but the *Abl.* usually according to the Third Declension, vespērē, vespērī.

3. Some Substantives fluctuate between the First and Fifth Declensions: as, barbāria and barbāriēs, *barbarism*; mollitia and mollitiēs, *softness*; luxūria and luxūriēs, *luxury*; mātēria and mātēriēs, *timber*.

4. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Second and Fourth Declensions: as, dōmus, a *house* (see § 46, Obs. 5); lātus, a *bay-tree*; cūpressus, a *cypress*; ficus, a *fig-tree*; pinus, a *pine-tree*; ēventus (4) and ēventum, an *occurrence*; suggestūs (4) and suggestum, a *platform for speakers*.

5. Some Substantives fluctuate between the Third and Fifth Declensions: as, plebs, plēbis, and plēbēs, plēbēī, the *commonalty*; rēquies, rēquietiēs and rēquiei, *rest*.

6. Jūgērūm, an *acre*, is of the Second Declension in the *Sing.*, but of the Third in the *Plur.*: as, jūgērā, jūgērūm, jūgērībūs. Vās, vāsis, a *vessel*, is of the Third Declension in the *Sing.*, but of the Second in the Plural: as, vāsā, vāsōrum, vāsīs.

§ 54. Some Substantives are *Heřerōgēnēā*, that is, have a different gender in the Singular and the Plural.

Sing.	Plur.
jōcus (m.),	a <i>joke</i> .
lōcus (m.),	a <i>place</i> .
carbāsus (f.),	fine <i>linen</i> .
coelum (n.),	heaven.
jōci (m.), jōcē (n.)	
lōci (m.), lōcē (n.)	
carbāsā (n.),	sails.
coeli (m.) (rare).	



Sing.		Plur.
frēnum (n.),	a bit.	frēnī (m.), frēnā (n.)
Tartārus (m.),	the infernal regions.	Tartārā (n.)
diēs,*	a day.	diēs (m.)
rastrum (n.),	a rake.	rastrī (m.), rastrā (n.)

\* See § 47, note.

## CHAPTER XII.—DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 55. Adjectives are either of *Three Terminations* (one for each gender); of *Two Terminations* (one for the Masculine and Feminine, and the other for the Neuter); or of *One Termination* (for all genders).

§ 56. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS ARE DIVIDED INTO TWO CLASSES.

Adjectives of the first class end in *ūs, ā, um, or ēr, ā, um*, and are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Substantives of the First Declension: *as, bōnūs, bōnā, bōnum, good; nīgēr, nigrā, nigrum, black; tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērūm, tender.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
Gen.	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ī	Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum
Dat.	Bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō	Bōn-is	bōn-is	bōn-is
Acc.	Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā
Voc.	Bōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
Abl.	Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō	Bōn-is	bōn-is	bōn-is

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Nīgēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā
Gen.	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-is	nigr-is	nigr-is
Acc.	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā
Voc.	Nigr-ēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā
Abl.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-is	nigr-is	nigr-is

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā
Gen.	Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ī	Tēnēr-ōrum	tēnēr-ārum	tēnēr-ōrum
Dat.	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is
Acc.	Tēnēr-um	tēnēr-am	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-ōs	tēnēr-ās	tēnēr-ā
Voc.	Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-ī	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā
Abl.	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is

### Examples for Declension.

mālus, a, um,	bad.	sūperbus, a, um,	proud.
cārus, a, um,	dear.	sācer, a, rum,	sacred.
clārus, a, um,	bright.	aeger, a, rum,	sick.
plēnus, a, um,	full.	mācer, a, rum,	lean.
albus, a, um,	white.	pulcher, a, rum,	beautiful.
magnus, a, um,	great.	rūber, a, rum,	red.
parvus, a, um,	little.	sinister, a, rum,	left.

Obs. 1. The only Adjectives declined like *tēnēr* are the following:—

asper, ēra, ērum,	rough.	liber, ēra, ērum,	free.
lācer, ēra, ērum,	torn.	misser, ēra, ērum,	wretched.
prosper, ēra, ērum,	prosperous.		

With all Adjectives in *fer* and *ger*: *as*,

*lāniger, ēra, ērum, wool-bearing.* | *ōppler, ēra, ērum, help-bringing.*

All other Adjectives in *ēr* drop the *ē*, and are declined like *niger*.

*Dextēr* is declined in both ways, *dextērā* and *dextērūm* and *dextrum*.

Obs. 2. There is one Adjective in *ār, sātūr, sātūrā, sātūrūm, full of food, sated.*

## § 57. Irregular Declension in *us, a, um*, and *er, a, um*.

The following Adjectives and Pronouns,

*ūnūs, sōlus, tōtūs, ullūs, ūtēr, neutēr, altēr, nullūs, and āllūs,*

have in the Genitive Sing. *iūs* and in the Dative *ī*. For example—

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ull-ūs	ull-ā	ull-um	Ūt-ēr	utr-ā	utr-um
Gen.	Ull-iūs			Utr-īūs		
Dat.	Ull-ī			Utr-ī		
Acc.	Ull-um	ull-am	ull-um	Utr-um	utr-am	utr-um
Abl.	Ull-ō	ull-ā	ull-ō	Utr-ō	utr-ā	utr-ō

ūnus, one.	ullus, any.	neuter, neither of two.
sōlus, alone.	nullus, none.	alter, one of two.
tōtus, whole.	ūter, which of two.	āllus, one of any number, another.

Obs. 1. In prose the *ī* in the Gen. *iūs* is always long, except in *altērīūs*. The Gen. *āllūs* is a contraction of *āll-iūs*, and therefore always long. In the other words the *ī* in the Gen. *iūs* is short as well as long in poetry.

Obs. 2. The compounds of *ūter* are declined in the same way: *as, ūterquē, ūtervis, ūterlibet, ūtercunquē*: Gen. *utriusque, utriusvis, etc.*



§ 58. Adjectives of Three Terminations of the second class end in *er, ris, re*, and are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: in all other cases they have only two terminations: *as, ācēr, ācris, ācrē, sharp.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	
Nom.	Acēr	ācris	ācrē	Acrēs	ācriā	
Gen.	Acris	—	—	Acrium	—	
Dat.	Acri	—	—	Acribūs	—	
Acc.	Acrem	—	ācrē	Acrēs	ācriā	
Voc.	Acēr	ācris	ācrē	Acrēs	ācriā	
Abl.	Acri	—	—	Acribūs	—	

Obs. The termination *er* is sometimes, but very rarely, found in the *Nom. Sing. Fem.*

There are only thirteen Adjectives of this kind:

ācer, ālācer, campester,  
cēler, cēlēber, ēquester,  
pāter, vōlācer, terrester,  
pāluster, pēdester,  
sālūber, silvester.

ālācer,	<i>lively.</i>	vōlācer,	<i>winged.</i>
campester,	<i>level.</i>	terrester,	<i>pertaining to the earth.</i>
cēler,	<i>quick.</i>	pāluster,	<i>marshy.</i>
cēlēber,	<i>crowded.</i>	pēdester,	<i>peDESTrian.</i>
ēquester,	<i>equestrian.</i>	sālūber,	<i>healthful.</i>
pāter,	<i>rotten.</i>	silvester,	<i>woody.</i>

Obs. 1. Cēler, cēlēris, cēlērē is the only Adj. of this class that keeps the *e* before the *r*. Cēler has *um*, not *ium*, in the Gen. Pl.

Obs. 2. Sometimes these Adjectives have also the termination *ris* in the *Nom. Sing. Masc.*

§ 59. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: *as, tristis, tristē, sad; altior, altius, higher (§ 63).*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.	
Nom.	Trist-Is	trist-ē		Trist-ēs	trist-iā	
Gen.	Trist-Is	—		Trist-ium	—	
Dat.	Trist-I	—		Trist-ibūs	—	
Acc.	Trist-em	trist-ē		Trist-ēs	trist-iā	
Voc.	Trist-Is	trist-ē		Trist-ēs	trist-iā	
Abl.	Trist-I	—		Trist-ibūs	—	

Examples for Declension.

lēvis,	<i>light.</i>	brēvis,	<i>short.</i>	mollis,	<i>soft.</i>
lēvis,	<i>smooth.</i>	fortis,	<i>brave.</i>	facilis,	<i>easy.</i>
grāvis,	<i>heavy.</i>	turpis,	<i>disgraceful.</i>	vilis,	<i>cheap.</i>
dulcis,	<i>sweet.</i>	similis,	<i>like.</i>	humilis,	<i>low.</i>

§ 60. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension: *as, felix, fortunate; prudens, prudent.*

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.	
Nom.	Felix	felix		Felic-ēs	felic-iā	
Gen.	Felic-Is	—		Felic-ium	—	
Dat.	Felic-I	—		Felic-ibūs	—	
Acc.	Felic-em	felix		Felic-ēs	felic-iā	
Voc.	Felix	—		Felic-ēs	felic-iā	
Abl.	Felic-I or ē	—		Felic-ibūs	—	

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.	
Nom.	Prudens	prudens		Prudent-ēs	prudent-iā	
Gen.	Prudent-Is	—		Prudent-ium	—	
Dat.	Prudent-I	—		Prudent-ibūs	—	
Acc.	Prudent-em	prudens		Prudent-ēs	prudent-iā	
Voc.	Prudens	—		Prudent-ēs	prudent-iā	
Abl.	Prudent-I or ē	—		Prudent-ibūs	—	

Examples for Declension.

audax,	ācis,	<i>bold.</i>	pōtens,	entis,	<i>powerful.</i>
vērax,	ācis,	<i>truthful.</i>	ingens,	entis,	<i>huge.</i>
lōquax,	ācis,	<i>talkative.</i>	diligens,	entis,	<i>diligent.</i>
vēlox,	ōcis,	<i>swift.</i>	sāpens,	entis,	<i>wise.</i>
fērox,	ōcis,	<i>haughty.</i>	praesens,	entis,	<i>present.</i>

Obs. 1. On the *Abl. Sing.*, see §§ 32, 33. On the *Nom. Plur.* Neuter in *ia*, see § 34. On the *Gen. Plur.* in *ium*, see §§ 35, 36.

Obs. 2. Divēs, divītis, *rich*, has a contracted form: *Nom. dīs, ditē; Gen. dit-Is, &c.; Nom. Plur. Neut. dit-iā.*

Obs. 3. Some Adjectives are indeclinable: *as, nēquam, worthless; frūgi, honest* (properly the Dative of a Substantive): *as, frūgi hōmō, frūgi hōmīnem.*

## CHAPTER XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 61. Adjectives have three forms, which are usually called the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative Degrees: *as,*

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
altūs, <i>high.</i>	altiōr, <i>higher.</i>	altissimūs, <i>highest.</i>

§ 62. The Comparative is formed by adding *iōr*, and the Superlative by adding *issimūs*, to the Stem, any final vowel of which is dropped: *as,*

Nom.	Posit.	Stem.	Comp.	Sup.
altūs,	alto,	high,	alt-iōr,	alt-issimūs.
lēvis,	lēvi,	light,	lēv-iōr,	lēv-issimūs.
felix,	felic,	fortunate,	felic-iōr,	felic-issimūs.
prūdēns,	prudent,	prudent,	prudent-iōr,	prudent-issimūs.

§ 63. The Comparative is an Adjective of Two Terminations, having *ior* in the Nom. Sing. of the Masculine and Feminine, and *ius* in that of the Neuter. It is declined as follows:

	Sing.		Plur.
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.
Nom.	Altior	altius	Altior-ēs
Gen.	Altior-is	—	Altior-um
Dat.	Altior-i	—	Altior-ibūs
Acc.	Altior-em	altius	Altior-ēs
Voc.	Altior	altius	Altior-ēs
Abl.	Altior-ē rarely -i	—	Altior-ibūs

§ 64. The Superlative is an Adjective of Three Terminations, *us*, *a*, *um*: as, altissimūs, altissimā, altissimum.

#### § 65. EXCEPTIONS.

I. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rīmūs*: as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
pulchēr,	pulchr-iōr,	pulchr-rīmūs.
libēr,	libēr-iōr,	libēr-rīmūs.
ācēr,	ācēr-iōr,	ācēr-rīmūs.
cēlēr,	cēlēr-iōr,	cēlēr-rīmūs.

Also vētūs (Gen. vētēr-is), *old*, has a Superlative, vētēr-rīmūs.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *līmūs*: as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
facilis,	facil-iōr,	facil-līmūs.
difficilis,	difficil-iōr,	difficil-līmūs.
similis,	simil-iōr,	simil-līmūs.
dissimilis,	dissimil-iōr,	dissimil-līmūs.
gracilis,	gracil-iōr,	gracil-līmūs.
humilis,	humil-iōr,	humil-līmūs.

Obs. The substitution of *rimus* and *limus* for *simus* in these Superlatives is owing to the assimilation of *s* to the preceding liquids *r* and *l*.

III. Adjectives ending in *-dīcūs*, *-ficiūs*, and *-vōlūs* (derived from the verbs dico, facio, and vōlo) form their Comparatives in *entiōr*, and their Superlatives in *entissimūs* (as if from Positives ending in *ens*): as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
mālēdicūs,	mālēdicentiōr,	mālēdicentissimūs.
bēnēficiūs,	bēnēficiōr,	bēnēficentissimūs.
bēnēvōlūs,	bēnēvōlentiōr,	bēnēvōlentissimūs.

Obs. These Comparatives and Superlatives are formed as from the Participles, *dicens*, *saying*; *faciens*, *doing*; *volens*, *wishing*.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb *māgis*, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb *maximē*, *most*: as, noxiūs, *hurtful*, māgis noxiūs, *more hurtful*, maximē noxiūs, *most hurtful*.

Obs. Adjectives ending in *quus* form the *Comp.* and *Sup.* regularly, since the *u* in *qu* is not regarded as a vowel: as, antiquūs, *ancient*, antiquiōr, *more ancient*, antiquissimūs, *most ancient*.

#### § 66. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Some Adjectives are compared irregularly: as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
bōnūs,	good,	mēliōr,
mālūs,	bad,	pējōr.
magnūs,	great,	mājōr,
parvūs,	small,	mīnōr,
multūs,	much,	plūs (pl. plures, plura),
nēquam,	worthless,	nēquiōr,
frūgi (indecl.)	frugal,	frūgālior,

Obs. 1. Sometimes one or more of the Degrees of Comparison are wanting: as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
jūvenis, young,	jūniōr	(mīnimus natu)
sēnex, old,	sēniōr	(maximus natu)
—	dētēriōr,	dētērrimūs
—	ōciōr,	ōcissimūs
—	priōr,	prius, first
nōvūs, new,	—	nōvissimūs.

Obs. 2. Some Comparatives and Superlatives, expressing relations of time and place, either have no Positive (the corresponding Preposition taking its place), or the Positive has a different meaning: as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
(citra, on this side),	citēriōr, more on this side,	citīmūs, most on this side.
(ultra, on the farther side),	ultēriōr, farther,	ultīmūs, farthest.
(extra, on the outside, with- out),	extēriōr, outer,	extēmūs, outermost.

Note.—The Adjective extēri, ae, ā, signifies *foreign*.

(Infra, below), infēriōr, lower, infīmūs (imus), lowest.

Note.—Infērus is used only in Infērum Mārē, the *Lower Sea*, i. e. the sea south and west of Italy, and in the Plural Infēri, ae, ā, belonging to the lower world.

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
(intrā, within), (prōpē, near),	intēriōr, inner, prōpiōr, nearer,	intīmūs, or tmūs, innermost. proxīmūs, nearest.
Note.—In the Positive prōpinquus is used, of which the Comparative prōpinquior is rare.		
(post, after),	postēriōr, later,	postrēmūs, last.
Note.—The Positive postērūs signifies the next or following (in time), and the Substantive postēri, descendants.		
(suprā, above),	sūpēriōr, upper,	suprēmūs, or summus, uppermost.

Note.—Sūpērūs is used only in Sūpērum Mārē, the Upper Sea, i. e. the Adriatic, and in the Plural Sūpēri, ae, ā, belonging to the upper world.

#### CHAPTER XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

§ 67. Cardinal Numerals denote numbers simply or absolutely: as, ūnūs, one; duo, two; trēs, three.

§ 68. The first three Cardinal Numerals are declined as follows:

	1.			2.			3.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Ūn-ūs	ūn-ā	ūn-um	Ūn-i	ūn-ae	ūn-ā	Trēs	tri-ā	tri-ā
Gen.	Ūn-iūs	—	—	Ūn-ōrum	ūn-ārum	ūn-ōrum	Trium	—	—
Dat.	Ūn-i	—	—	Ūn-is	—	—	Tribūs	—	—
Acc.	Ūn-um	ūn-am	ūn-um	Ūn-ōs	ūn-ās	ūn-ā	Trēs or trīs	tri-ā	tri-ā
Abl.	Ūn-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō	Ūn-is	—	—	Tribūs	—	—

Obs. Ūnus is used in the Plural with Plural Substantives which have a singular meaning: as, ūnā castrā, one camp; ūnue aedēs, one house; ūnae littērae, one letter.

	2.			3.		
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
Nom.	Du-o	du-ae	duo	Trēs	tri-ā	tri-ā
Gen.	Du-ōrum	du-ārum	du-ōrum	Trium	—	—
Dat.	Du-ōbūs	du-ābūs	du-ōbūs	Tribūs	—	—
Acc.	Du-ōs	du-ās	du-o	Trēs or trīs	tri-ā	tri-ā
Abl.	Du-ōbūs	du-ābūs	du-ōbūs	Tribūs	—	—

Obs. Ambo, both, is declined like duo.

§ 69. The Cardinal Numerals from quattuor, four, to centum, a hundred, are indeclinable.

Dūcentī, ae, ā, two hundred, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Millē, a thousand, is an indeclinable Adjective; but in the Plural it is a declinable Substantive: as, Nom. milliā, Gen. millium, Dat. millibūs, Acc. milliā, Abl. millibūs.

Obs. 1. Millē is sometimes, but rarely, used as a Substantive in the Singular: as, millē hōmīnum, a thousand of men, the common form being millē hōmīnēs. In the Plural milliā is regularly followed by the Genitive: as, triā milliā hōmīnum, three thousand men. But if smaller Numerals follow, the Genitive is not used: as, triā milliā trēcentī hōmīnēs, three thousand three hundred men.

Obs. 2. The numbers between 20 and 100 are expressed either by the larger numeral first without *et*, or by the smaller numeral first with *et*: as, vīginti ūnūs, or ūnūs et vīginti, twenty-one. The numbers above 100 always have the larger number first: as, centum et sexāgintā sex, or centum sexāgintā sex, one hundred and sixty-six.

Obs. 3. The numbers 18, 19, 28, 29, 38, 39 have the smaller numeral first with the preposition *de* to indicate subtraction: as, duodēvīginti, undēvīginti, duodētrīgintā, undētrīgintā, &c.

§ 70. Ordinal Numerals denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series; and hence they have a relative signification: as, primūs, first; sēcundūs or altēr, second. They are declined regularly as adjectives; see § 56.

Obs. Dates of years are expressed by annūs with the ordinal numeral: as, annūs millesimūs octingentesimūs sexāgesimūs primūs, the year 1861.

§ 71. Distributive Numerals denote numbers regarded as constituting groups, each group being treated as a unit; and these Latin numerals may be translated in various ways: as, binī, two each, two together, two by two.

Obs. 1. Distributive Numerals are also used to give a plural signification to those Substantives the plural forms of which have otherwise a singular meaning: as, binā castrā, two camps; bināe aedēs, two houses; bināe littērae, two letters. Duo castra would be two forts; duae aedēs, two temples, etc. See § 51.

Obs. 2. Multiplicative Numerals end in -plex, Gen. plēx (from the verb plico, to fold), and, as their name implies, denote how many times any number or quantity is to be taken. Only the following are in use:

1. Simplex, onefold	4. Quadruplex, fourfold	10. Dēcēplex, tenfold
2. Duplex, twofold	5. Quīcuplex, fivefold	100. Centuplex, a hundredfold
3. Triplex, threefold	7. Septēplex, sevenfold	

Obs. 3. Proportional Numerals end in -plūs, plā, plum, and denote the number of times that one number or quantity contains another: as, tripla pars, a part three times as great as another. Only the following are in use, corresponding to the multiplicatives in the preceding list:

1. Simplūs	4. Quadruplūs	8. Octuplūs
2. Duplūs	5. Quīcuplūs	10. Dēcuplūs
3. Triplūs	7. Septuplūs	100. Centuplūs

§ 72. Numeral Adverbs denote the number of times that anything happens or is done: as, sēmēl, once; bis, twice; tēr, three times.

## § 73. NUMERALS.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.	ADVERBS.
1	I	unus	primus	singuli	sēncl.
2	II	duo	secundus or alter	binī	bis.
3	III	trēs	tertius	terni or trinī	tēr.
4	IV	quattuor, quattuor	quartus	quaterni	quinq̄ies.
5	V	quinque	quintus	quinī	sexies.
6	VI	sex	sextus	senī	septies.
7	VII	septem	septimus	septenī	octies.
8	VIII	octo	octavus	octonī	novies.
9	IX	novem	nonus	novenī	decies.
10	X	decem	decimus	denī	undecies.
11	XI	undecim	undecimus	undecenī	duodecies.
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duodenī	terdecies or tredēcies.
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	quaterni denī	quadnordecies.
14	XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quinī denī	quindēcies.
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus decimus	senī denī	sedēcies.
16	XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus	septenī denī	septiesdecies.
17	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	octonī denī	duodevicies.
18	XVIII	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus	undevicenī	undevicies.
19	XIX	undeviginti	undevicesimus	vicenī	vicies.
20	XX	viginti	vicesimus	vicenī singulī	sēncl et viciēs.
21	XXI	unus et viginti or viginti unus	præsesimus, or vicesimus primus	vicenī binī	bis et viciēs.
22	XXII	duo et viginti or viginti duo	alter et vicesimus, or vicesimus alter		

23	XXIII	tres et vīginti or vīginti tres	{ tertius et vicesimus, or } vicesimus tertius	vicenī ternī	tēr et viciēs.
24	XXIV	duodevīginti	duodevicesimus	duodevicesenī	duodevicies.
25	XXV	undevīginti	undevicesimus	undevicesenī	undevicies.
26	XXVI	trīginti	trigesimus	tricenī	tricies.
27	XXVII	quadragintā	quadragessimus	quadragenī	quadragies.
28	XXVIII	quingentā	quingessimus	quingecenī	quingagies.
29	XXIX	sexagintā	sexagesimus	sexagenī	sexagies.
30	XXX	sextuagintā	sextagesimus	sextuagenī	sextuagies.
31	XXXI	septuagintā	septuagesimus	septuagenī	septuagies.
32	XXXII	octogintā	octogesimus	octogenī	octogies.
33	XXXIII	nonagintā	nonagesimus	nonagenī	nonagies.
34	XXXIV	centum	centesimus	centenī	centies.
35	XXXV	centum et vīginti	centesimus et vīginti	centenī et viciēs	centies et viciēs.
36	XXXVI	centum et vīginti et unus	centesimus et vīginti et unus	centenī et viciēs et unus	centies et viciēs et unus.
37	XXXVII	centum et vīginti et duo	centesimus et vīginti et duo	centenī et viciēs et duo	centies et viciēs et duo.
38	XXXVIII	centum et vīginti et tres	centesimus et vīginti et tres	centenī et viciēs et tres	centies et viciēs et tres.
39	XXXIX	centum et vīginti et quattuor	centesimus et vīginti et quattuor	centenī et viciēs et quattuor	centies et viciēs et quattuor.
40	XL	centum et triginta	centesimus et triginta	centenī et triginta	centies et triginta.
41	XLI	centum et triginta et unus	centesimus et triginta et unus	centenī et triginta et unus	centies et triginta et unus.
42	XLII	centum et triginta et duo	centesimus et triginta et duo	centenī et triginta et duo	centies et triginta et duo.
43	XLIII	centum et triginta et tres	centesimus et triginta et tres	centenī et triginta et tres	centies et triginta et tres.
44	XLIV	centum et triginta et quattuor	centesimus et triginta et quattuor	centenī et triginta et quattuor	centies et triginta et quattuor.
45	XLV	centum et quadraginta	centesimus et quadraginta	centenī et quadraginta	centies et quadraginta.
46	XLVI	centum et quadraginta et unus	centesimus et quadraginta et unus	centenī et quadraginta et unus	centies et quadraginta et unus.
47	XLVII	centum et quadraginta et duo	centesimus et quadraginta et duo	centenī et quadraginta et duo	centies et quadraginta et duo.
48	XLVIII	centum et quadraginta et tres	centesimus et quadraginta et tres	centenī et quadraginta et tres	centies et quadraginta et tres.
49	XLIX	centum et quadraginta et quattuor	centesimus et quadraginta et quattuor	centenī et quadraginta et quattuor	centies et quadraginta et quattuor.
50	L	centum et quingenta	centesimus et quingenta	centenī et quingenta	centies et quingenta.
51	LI	centum et quingenta et unus	centesimus et quingenta et unus	centenī et quingenta et unus	centies et quingenta et unus.
52	LII	centum et quingenta et duo	centesimus et quingenta et duo	centenī et quingenta et duo	centies et quingenta et duo.
53	LIII	centum et quingenta et tres	centesimus et quingenta et tres	centenī et quingenta et tres	centies et quingenta et tres.
54	LIV	centum et quingenta et quattuor	centesimus et quingenta et quattuor	centenī et quingenta et quattuor	centies et quingenta et quattuor.
55	LV	centum et sexaginta	centesimus et sexaginta	centenī et sexaginta	centies et sexaginta.
56	LVI	centum et sexaginta et unus	centesimus et sexaginta et unus	centenī et sexaginta et unus	centies et sexaginta et unus.
57	LVII	centum et sexaginta et duo	centesimus et sexaginta et duo	centenī et sexaginta et duo	centies et sexaginta et duo.
58	LVIII	centum et sexaginta et tres	centesimus et sexaginta et tres	centenī et sexaginta et tres	centies et sexaginta et tres.
59	LIX	centum et sexaginta et quattuor	centesimus et sexaginta et quattuor	centenī et sexaginta et quattuor	centies et sexaginta et quattuor.
60	LX	centum et septuaginta	centesimus et septuaginta	centenī et septuaginta	centies et septuaginta.
61	LXI	centum et septuaginta et unus	centesimus et septuaginta et unus	centenī et septuaginta et unus	centies et septuaginta et unus.
62	LXII	centum et septuaginta et duo	centesimus et septuaginta et duo	centenī et septuaginta et duo	centies et septuaginta et duo.
63	LXIII	centum et septuaginta et tres	centesimus et septuaginta et tres	centenī et septuaginta et tres	centies et septuaginta et tres.
64	LXIV	centum et septuaginta et quattuor	centesimus et septuaginta et quattuor	centenī et septuaginta et quattuor	centies et septuaginta et quattuor.
65	LXV	centum et octoginta	centesimus et octoginta	centenī et octoginta	centies et octoginta.
66	LXVI	centum et octoginta et unus	centesimus et octoginta et unus	centenī et octoginta et unus	centies et octoginta et unus.
67	LXVII	centum et octoginta et duo	centesimus et octoginta et duo	centenī et octoginta et duo	centies et octoginta et duo.
68	LXVIII	centum et octoginta et tres	centesimus et octoginta et tres	centenī et octoginta et tres	centies et octoginta et tres.
69	LXIX	centum et octoginta et quattuor	centesimus et octoginta et quattuor	centenī et octoginta et quattuor	centies et octoginta et quattuor.
70	LXX	centum et nonaginta	centesimus et nonaginta	centenī et nonaginta	centies et nonaginta.
71	LXXI	centum et nonaginta et unus	centesimus et nonaginta et unus	centenī et nonaginta et unus	centies et nonaginta et unus.
72	LXXII	centum et nonaginta et duo	centesimus et nonaginta et duo	centenī et nonaginta et duo	centies et nonaginta et duo.
73	LXXIII	centum et nonaginta et tres	centesimus et nonaginta et tres	centenī et nonaginta et tres	centies et nonaginta et tres.
74	LXXIV	centum et nonaginta et quattuor	centesimus et nonaginta et quattuor	centenī et nonaginta et quattuor	centies et nonaginta et quattuor.
75	LXXV	centum et centum	centesimus et centum	centenī et centum	centies et centum.
76	LXXVI	centum et centum et unus	centesimus et centum et unus	centenī et centum et unus	centies et centum et unus.
77	LXXVII	centum et centum et duo	centesimus et centum et duo	centenī et centum et duo	centies et centum et duo.
78	LXXVIII	centum et centum et tres	centesimus et centum et tres	centenī et centum et tres	centies et centum et tres.
79	LXXIX	centum et centum et quattuor	centesimus et centum et quattuor	centenī et centum et quattuor	centies et centum et quattuor.
80	LXXX	centum et quingenta	centesimus et quingenta	centenī et quingenta	centies et quingenta.
81	LXXXI	centum et quingenta et unus	centesimus et quingenta et unus	centenī et quingenta et unus	centies et quingenta et unus.
82	LXXXII	centum et quingenta et duo	centesimus et quingenta et duo	centenī et quingenta et duo	centies et quingenta et duo.
83	LXXXIII	centum et quingenta et tres	centesimus et quingenta et tres	centenī et quingenta et tres	centies et quingenta et tres.
84	LXXXIV	centum et quingenta et quattuor	centesimus et quingenta et quattuor	centenī et quingenta et quattuor	centies et quingenta et quattuor.
85	LXXXV	centum et sexaginta	centesimus et sexaginta	centenī et sexaginta	centies et sexaginta.
86	LXXXVI	centum et sexaginta et unus	centesimus et sexaginta et unus	centenī et sexaginta et unus	centies et sexaginta et unus.
87	LXXXVII	centum et sexaginta et duo	centesimus et sexaginta et duo	centenī et sexaginta et duo	centies et sexaginta et duo.
88	LXXXVIII	centum et sexaginta et tres	centesimus et sexaginta et tres	centenī et sexaginta et tres	centies et sexaginta et tres.
89	LXXXIX	centum et sexaginta et quattuor	centesimus et sexaginta et quattuor	centenī et sexaginta et quattuor	centies et sexaginta et quattuor.
90	LXXXX	centum et septuaginta	centesimus et septuaginta	centenī et septuaginta	centies et septuaginta.
91	LXXXXI	centum et septuaginta et unus	centesimus et septuaginta et unus	centenī et septuaginta et unus	centies et septuaginta et unus.
92	LXXXXII	centum et septuaginta et duo	centesimus et septuaginta et duo	centenī et septuaginta et duo	centies et septuaginta et duo.
93	LXXXXIII	centum et septuaginta et tres	centesimus et septuaginta et tres	centenī et septuaginta et tres	centies et septuaginta et tres.
94	LXXXXIV	centum et septuaginta et quattuor	centesimus et septuaginta et quattuor	centenī et septuaginta et quattuor	centies et septuaginta et quattuor.
95	LXXXXV	centum et octoginta	centesimus et octoginta	centenī et octoginta	centies et octoginta.
96	LXXXXVI	centum et octoginta et unus	centesimus et octoginta et unus	centenī et octoginta et unus	centies et octoginta et unus.
97	LXXXXVII	centum et octoginta et duo	centesimus et octoginta et duo	centenī et octoginta et duo	centies et octoginta et duo.
98	LXXXXVIII	centum et octoginta et tres	centesimus et octoginta et tres	centenī et octoginta et tres	centies et octoginta et tres.
99	LXXXXIX	centum et octoginta et quattuor	centesimus et octoginta et quattuor	centenī et octoginta et quattuor	centies et octoginta et quattuor.
100	L	centum	centesimus	centenī	centies.
101	CI	centum et unus	centesimus et unus	centenī et unus	centies et unus.
102	CII	centum et duo	centesimus et duo	centenī et duo	centies et duo.
103	CIII	centum et tres	centesimus et tres	centenī et tres	centies et tres.
104	CIV	centum et quattuor	centesimus et quattuor	centenī et quattuor	centies et quattuor.
105	CV	centum et quinque	centesimus et quinque	centenī et quinque	centies et quinque.
106	CVI	centum et sex	centesimus et sex	centenī et sex	centies et sex.
107	CVII	centum et septem	centesimus et septem	centenī et septem	centies et septem.
108	CVIII	centum et octo	centesimus et octo	centenī et octo	centies et octo.
109	CVIX	centum et novem	centesimus et novem	centenī et novem	centies et novem.
110	CX	centum et decem	centesimus et decem	centenī et decem	centies et decem.
111	CXI	centum et undecim	centesimus et undecim	centenī et undecim	centies et undecim.
112	CXII	centum et duodecim	centesimus et duodecim	centenī et duodecim	centies et duodecim.
113	CXIII	centum et tredecim	centesimus et tredecim	centenī et tredecim	centies et tredecim.
114	CXIV	centum et quattuordecim	centesimus et quattuordecim	centenī et quattuordecim	centies et quattuordecim.
115	CXV	centum et quindēcim	centesimus et quindēcim	centenī et quindēcim	centies et quindēcim.
116	CXVI	centum et sēdecim	centesimus et sēdecim	centenī et sēdecim	centies et sēdecim.
117	CXVII	centum et septendecim	centesimus et septendecim	centenī et septendecim	centies et septendecim.
118	CXVIII	centum et duodeviginti	centesimus et duodeviginti	centenī et duodeviginti	centies et duodeviginti.
119	CXIX	centum et undeviginti	centesimus et undeviginti	centenī et undeviginti	centies et undeviginti.
120	CXX	centum et vīginti	centesimus et vīginti	centenī et vīginti	centies et vīginti.
121	CXXI	centum et vīginti et unus	centesimus et vīginti et unus	centenī et vīginti et unus	centies et vīginti et unus.
122	CXXII	centum et vīginti et duo	centesimus et vīginti et duo	centenī et vīginti et duo	centies et vīginti et duo.
123	CXXIII	centum et vīginti et tres	centesimus et vīginti et tres	centenī et vīginti et tres	centies et vīginti et tres.
124	CXXIV	centum et vīginti et quattuor	centesimus et vīginti et quattuor	centenī et vīginti et quattuor	centies et vīginti et quattuor.
125	CXXV	centum et vīginti et quinque	centesimus et vīginti et quinque	centenī et vīginti et quinque	centies et vīginti et quinque.
126	CXXVI	centum et vīginti et sex	centesimus et vīginti et sex	centenī et vīginti et sex	centies et vīginti et sex.
127	CXXVII	centum et vīginti et septem	centesimus et vīginti et septem	centenī et vīginti et septem	centies et vīginti et septem.
128	CXXVIII	centum et vīginti et octo	centesimus et vīginti et octo	centenī et vīginti et octo	centies et vīginti et octo.
129	CXXIX	centum et vīginti et novem	centesimus et vīginti et novem	centenī et vīginti et novem	centies et vīginti et novem.
130	CXXX	centum et triginta	centesimus et triginta	centenī et triginta	centies et triginta.
131	CXXXI	centum et triginta et unus	centesimus et triginta et unus	centenī et triginta et unus	centies et triginta et unus.
132	CXXXII	centum et triginta et duo	centesimus et triginta et duo	centenī et triginta et duo	centies et triginta et duo.
133	CXXXIII	centum et triginta et tres	centesimus et triginta et tres	centenī et triginta et tres	centies et triginta et tres.
134	CXXXIV	centum et triginta et quattuor	centesimus et triginta et quattuor	centenī et triginta et quattuor	centies et triginta et quattuor.
135	CXXXV	centum et triginta et quinque	centesimus et triginta et quinque	centenī et triginta et quinque	centies et triginta et quinque.
136	CXXXVI	centum et triginta et sex	centesimus et triginta et sex	centenī et triginta et sex	centies et triginta et sex.
137	CXXXVII	centum et triginta et septem	centesimus et triginta et septem	centenī et triginta et septem	centies et triginta et septem.
138	CXXXVIII	centum et triginta et octo	centesimus et triginta et octo	centenī et triginta et octo	centies et triginta et octo.
139	CXXXIX	centum et triginta et novem	centesimus et triginta et novem	centenī et triginta et novem	centies et triginta et novem.
140	CXL	centum et quadraginta	centesimus et quadraginta	centenī et quadraginta	centies et quadraginta.
141	CXLI	centum et quadraginta et unus	centesimus et quadraginta et unus	centenī et quadraginta et unus	centies et quadraginta et unus.
142	CXLII	centum et quadraginta et duo	centesimus et quadraginta et duo	centenī et quadraginta et duo	centies et quadraginta et duo.
143	CXLIII	centum et quadraginta et tres	centesimus et quadraginta et tres	centenī et quadraginta et tres	centies et quadraginta et tres.
144	CXLIV	centum et quadraginta et quattuor	centesimus et quadraginta et quattuor	centenī et quadraginta et quattuor	centies et quadraginta et quattuor.
145	CXLV	centum et quadraginta et quinque	centesimus et quadraginta et quinque	centenī et quadraginta et quinque	centies et quadraginta et quinque.
146	CXLVI	centum et quadraginta et sex	centesimus et quadraginta et sex	centenī et quadraginta et sex	centies et quadraginta et sex.
147	CXLVII	centum et quadraginta et septem	centesimus et quadraginta et septem	centenī et quadraginta et septem	centies et quadraginta et septem.
148	CXLVIII	centum et quadraginta et octo	centesimus et quadraginta et octo	centenī et quadraginta et octo	centies et quadraginta et octo.
149	CXLIX	centum et quadraginta et novem	centesimus et quadraginta et novem	centenī et quadraginta et novem	centies et quadraginta et novem.
150	CL	centum et quingenta	centesimus et quingenta	centenī et quingenta	centies et quingenta.
151	CLI	centum et quingenta et unus	centesimus et quingenta et unus	centenī et quingenta et unus	centies et quingenta et unus.
152	CLII	centum et quingenta et duo	centesimus et quingenta et duo	centenī et quingenta et duo	centies et quingenta et duo.
153	CLIII	centum et quingenta et tres	centesimus et quingenta et tres	centenī et quingenta et tres	centies et quingenta et tres.
154	CLIV	centum et quingenta et quattuor	centesimus et quingenta et quattuor	centenī et quingenta et quattuor	centies et quingenta et quattuor.
155	CLV	centum et quingenta et quinque	centesimus et quingenta et quinque	centenī et quingenta et quinque	centies et quingenta et quinque.
156	CLVI	centum et quingenta et sex	centesimus et quingenta et sex	centenī et quingenta et sex	centies et quingenta et sex.
157	CLVII	centum et quingenta et septem	centesimus et quingenta et septem	centenī et quingenta et septem	centies et quingenta et septem.
158	CLVIII	centum et quingenta et octo	centesimus et quingenta et octo	centenī et quingenta et octo	centies et quingenta et octo.
159	CLIX	centum et quingenta et novem	centesimus et quingenta et novem	centenī et quingenta et novem	centies et quingenta et novem.
160	CLX	centum et sexaginta	centesimus et sexaginta	centenī et sexaginta	centies et sexaginta.
161	CLXI	centum et sexaginta et unus	centesimus et sexaginta et unus	centenī et sexaginta et unus	centies et sexaginta et unus.
162	CLXII	centum et sexaginta et duo	centesimus et sexaginta et duo	centenī et sexaginta et duo	centies et sexaginta et duo.
163	CLXIII	centum et sexaginta et tres	centesimus et sexaginta et tres	centenī et sexaginta et tres	centies et sexaginta et tres.
164	CLXIV	centum et sexaginta et quattuor	centesimus et sexaginta et quattuor	centenī et sexaginta et quattuor	centies et sexaginta et quattuor.
165	CLXV	centum et sexaginta et quinque	centesimus et sexaginta et quinque	centenī et sexaginta et quinque	centies et sexaginta et quinque.
166	CLXVI	centum et sexaginta et sex	centesimus et sexaginta et sex	centenī et sexaginta et sex	centies et sexaginta et sex.
167	CLXVII	centum et sexaginta et septem	centesimus et sexaginta et septem	centenī et sexaginta et septem	centies et sexaginta et septem.
168	CLXVIII	centum et sexaginta et octo	centesimus et sexaginta et octo	centenī et sexaginta et octo	centies et sexaginta et octo.
169	CLXIX	centum et sexaginta et novem	centesimus et sexaginta et novem	centenī et sexaginta et novem	centies et sexaginta et novem.
170	CLXX	centum et septuaginta	centesimus et septuaginta	centenī et septuaginta	centies et septuaginta.
171	CLXXI	centum et septuaginta et unus	centesimus et septuaginta et unus	centenī et septuaginta et unus	centies et septuaginta et unus.
172	CLXXII	centum et septuaginta et duo	centesimus et septuaginta et duo	centenī et septuaginta et duo	centies et septuaginta et duo.
173	CLXXIII	centum et septuaginta et tres	centesimus et septuaginta et tres	centenī et septuaginta et tres	centies et septuaginta et tres.
174	CLXXIV	centum et septuaginta et quattuor	centesimus et septuaginta et quattuor	centenī et septuaginta et quattuor	centies et septuaginta et quattuor.
175	CLXXV	centum et septuaginta et quinque	centesimus et septuaginta et quinque	centenī et septuaginta et quinque	centies et septuaginta et quinque.
176	CLXXVI	centum et septuaginta et sex	centesimus et septuaginta et sex	centenī et septuaginta et sex	centies et septuaginta et sex.
177	CLXXVII	centum et septuaginta et septem	centesimus et septuaginta et septem	centenī et septuaginta et septem	centies et septuaginta et septem.
178	CLXXVIII	centum et septuaginta et octo	centesimus et septuaginta et octo	centenī et septuaginta et octo	centies et septuaginta et octo.
179	CLXXIX	centum et septuaginta et novem	centesimus et septuaginta et novem	centenī et septuaginta et novem	centies et septuaginta et novem.
180	CLXXX	centum et octoginta	centesimus et octoginta	centenī et octoginta	centies et octoginta.
181	CLXXXI	centum et octoginta et unus	centesimus et octoginta et unus	centenī et octoginta et unus	centies et octoginta et unus.
182	CLXXXII	centum et octoginta et duo	centesimus et octoginta et duo	centenī et octoginta et duo	centies et octoginta et duo.
183	CLXXXIII	centum et octoginta et tres	centesimus et octoginta et tres	centenī et octoginta et tres	centies et octoginta et tres.
184	CLXXXIV	centum et octoginta et quattuor	centesimus et octoginta et quattuor	centenī et octoginta et quattuor	centies et octoginta et quattuor.
185	CLXXXV	centum et octoginta et quinque	centesimus et octoginta et quinque	centenī et octoginta et quinque	centies et octoginta et quinque.
186	CLXXXVI	centum et octoginta et sex	centesimus et octoginta et sex	centenī et octoginta et sex	centies et octoginta et sex.
187	CLXXXVII	centum et octoginta et septem	centesimus et octoginta et septem	centenī et octoginta et septem	centies et octoginta et septem.
188	CLXXXVIII	centum et octoginta et octo	centesimus et octoginta et octo	centenī et octoginta et octo	centies et octoginta et octo.
189	CLXXXIX	centum et octoginta et novem	centesimus et octoginta et novem	centenī et octoginta et novem	centies et octoginta et novem.
190	LXXXX	centum et nonaginta	centesimus et nonaginta	centenī et nonaginta	centies et nonaginta.
191	LXXXXI	centum et nonaginta et unus	centesimus et nonaginta et unus	centenī et nonaginta et unus	centies et nonaginta et unus.
192	LXXXXII	centum et nonaginta et duo	centesimus et nonaginta et duo	centenī et nonaginta et duo	centies et nonaginta et duo.
193	LXXXXIII	centum et nonaginta et tres	centesimus et nonaginta et tres	centenī et nonaginta et tres	centies et nonaginta et tres.
194	LXXXXIV	centum et nonaginta et quattuor	centesimus et nonaginta et quattuor	centenī et nonaginta et quattuor	centies et nonaginta et quattuor.
195	LXXXXV	centum et nonaginta et quinque	centesimus et nonaginta et quinque	centenī et nonaginta et quinque	centies et nonaginta et quinque.
196	LXXXXVI	centum et nonaginta et sex	centesimus et nonaginta et sex	centenī et nonaginta et sex	centies et nonaginta et sex.
197	LXXXXVII	centum et nonaginta et septem	centesimus et nonaginta et septem	centenī et nonaginta et septem	centies et nonaginta et septem.
198	LXXXXVIII	centum et nonaginta et octo	centesimus et nonaginta et octo	centenī et nonaginta et octo	centies et nonaginta et octo.
199	LXXXXIX	centum et nonaginta et novem	centesimus et nonaginta et novem	centenī et nonaginta et novem	centies

## CHAPTER XV.—THE PRONOUNS.

§ 74. The *Pronouns* are :

1. Personal Pronouns.
2. Reflective Pronouns.
3. Possessive Pronouns.
4. Demonstrative Pronouns.
5. Determinative Pronouns.
6. Relative Pronouns.
7. Interrogative Pronouns.
8. Indefinite Pronouns.
9. Correlative Pronouns.

The Pronouns belonging to several of these classes are properly Adjectives.

## § 75. I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom. <i>Ēgō,</i>	<i>I</i>	Nōs,	<i>we</i>
Gen. <i>Mei,</i>	<i>of me</i>	Nostri and nostrum,	<i>of us</i>
Dat. <i>Mihī,</i>	<i>to or for me</i>	Nōbis,	<i>to or for us</i>
Acc. <i>Mē,</i>	<i>me</i>	Nōs,	<i>us</i> [ <i>from us</i> ]
Abl. <i>Mē,</i>	<i>by, with, or from me.</i>	Nōbis,	<i>by, with, or</i>

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom. <i>Tū,</i>	<i>thou</i>	Vōs,	<i>ye</i>
Gen. <i>Tui,</i>	<i>of thee</i>	Vestri and vestrum,	<i>of you</i>
Dat. <i>Tibi,</i>	<i>to or for thee</i>	Vōbis,	<i>to or for you</i>
Acc. <i>Tē,</i>	<i>thee</i>	Vōs,	<i>you</i>
Voc. <i>Tū,</i>	<i>O thou</i>	Vōs,	<i>O ye</i> [ <i>you</i> ]
Abl. <i>Tē,</i>	<i>by, with, or from thee.</i>	Vōbis,	<i>by, with, or from</i>

Obs. 1. The Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be strengthened by the addition of the syllables *mēt* or *tē* ; as, *ēgōmēt*, *I myself* ; *tūē*, *tātēmēt*, *thou thyself* ; *nosmēt*, *vosmēt*, *we ourselves*, *you yourselves*.

Obs. 2. The *Dat. mihī* is sometimes contracted into *mi*.

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it*, the Determinative Pronoun *is, eā, id* is usually employed. See § 79.

## § 76. II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUNS.

The Reflective Pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence, and therefore do not require a Nominative case.

The Reflective Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are the same as the First and Second Personal Pronouns ; but the Reflective Pronoun of the Third Person is thus declined :

	Sing. and Plur.
Nom. (wanting)	
Gen. <i>Sui,</i>	<i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Dat. <i>Sibi,</i>	<i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Acc. <i>Sē</i> or <i>sēsē,</i>	<i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Abl. <i>Sē</i> or <i>sēsē,</i>	<i>by himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>

Obs. *Sibi* and *sē* are strengthened by the addition of *mēt* : as, *sibimēt*, *sēmēt*.

## § 77. III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined regularly :

M.	F.	N.	
Meus,	meā,	meum,	<i>my or mine.</i>
Tuus,	tuā,	tuum,	<i>thy or thine.</i>
Nostēr,	nostrā,	nostrum,	<i>our.</i>
Vestēr,	vestrā,	vestrum,	<i>your.</i>
Suus,	suā,	suum,	<i>his, her, its, their.</i>

Obs. 1. The *Voc. Sing. Masc.* of *meus* is *mi*.

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* of the Possessive Pronouns is sometimes strengthened by the syllable *ptē* : as, *meoptē ingēniō*, *by my own ability*. *Mēt* is added to *suus* : as, *suāmēt scēlērā*, *his own crimes*.

Obs. 3. A Possessive Pronoun is also formed from the Relative : as, *cūjūs*, *cūjā*, *cūjum*, *whose* !

Obs. 4. From *nostēr*, *vestēr*, *cūjūs* (*ū, um*) are formed Adjectives ending in *ās* (Gen. *ātīs*), which signify *belonging to a country* : as,

<i>nostrās,</i>	<i>-ātīs,</i>	<i>of our country ;</i>
<i>vestrās,</i>	<i>-ātīs,</i>	<i>of your country ;</i>
<i>cūjās,</i>	<i>-ātīs,</i>	<i>of what country ?</i>

## § 78. IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

These are of the *First, Second, and Third Persons* : namely, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, *this near me* ; *istē*, *istā*, *istud*, *that near you* ; *illē*, *illā*, *illud*, *that near him, or that yonder*.

1. *Hic, haec, hoc, this near me.*

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F. N.
Nom. <i>Hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>		<i>Hī</i>	<i>hae haec</i>
Gen. <i>Hijūs</i>				<i>Hōrum</i>	<i>hārum hōrum</i>
Dat. <i>Huic</i>				<i>Hīs</i>	
Acc. <i>Hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>		<i>Hīs</i>	<i>hās hacc</i>
Abl. <i>Hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>		<i>Hīs</i>	

2. Istē, istā, istū, *that near you.*

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Istē	istā	istū	Istī	istae	istā
Gen. Istiūs			Istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat. Isti			Istis		
Acc. Istum	istam	istū	Istōs	istās	istā
Abl. Istō	istā	istō	Istis		

3. Illē, illā, illū, *that near him, that yonder.*

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Illē	illā	illū	Illī	illae	illā
Gen. Illiūs			Illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat. Illi			Illis		
Acc. Illum	illam	illū	Illōs	illās	illā
Abl. Illō	illā	illō	Illis		

Obs. 1. The cases of these three Pronouns are strengthened by the particle *cē* or *c*. This particle is inseparable from several of the cases of *hic*, but may be added to others also: as, *hūjuscē*, *hicē*, &c.

Istē with the particle *cē* or *c* is thus declined:

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Istic	istaec	istuc	Isticē	istaec	istaec
Gen. Istiuscē			Istōrunc	istārunc	istōrunc
Dat. Isti			Istiscē		
Acc. Istunc	istanc	istuc	Istoscē	istascē	istascē
Abl. Istōc	istāc	istōc	Istiscē		

Illē with the particle *cē* or *c* is declined in the same way: as, *illic*, *illae*, etc.

Obs. 2. Ecce or *en*, *behold*, are sometimes prefixed to *ille* and *iste*: as, *ecceillum* or *ecceistam*; which were of frequent use in ordinary life.

Obs. 3. Virgil often uses *illī* as a *Dat. Sing.* and *Nom. Pl.* instead of *illi*. The stem was originally *ol*, which appears in *ol-im*, *yonder*.

## § 79. V. DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

These are: *is*, *eā*, *id*, *this*, and *he*, *she*, *that*, referring to words in the context of a sentence; its compound, *idem*, *eādem*, *idem*, *the same*; and *ipsē*, *ipsā*, *ipsum*, *self*, *same*.

1. Is, eā, id, *this*, and *he*, *she*, *it*.

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Is	eā	id	Id	eae	eā
Gen. Ejūs			Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat. Ei			Eis or eis		
Acc. Eum	eam	id	Eos	eās	eā
Abl. Eō	eā	eō	Eis or eis		

2. Idem, eādem, idem, *the same*.

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Idem	eādem	idem	Idem	eādem	eādem
Gen. Ejusdem			Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat. Eidem			Eisdem or eisdem		
Acc. Eundem	eandem	idem	Eosdem	easdem	eādem
Abl. Eōdem	eādem	eōdem	Eisdem or eisdem		

3. Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, *self*, *same*.

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum	Ipsi	ipsae	ipsā
Gen. Ipsiūs			Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat. Ipsi			Ipsis		
Acc. Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
Abl. Ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	Ipsis		

Obs. 1. Ecce is frequently prefixed to *is*: as, *ecce*, *ecceum*, *ecceam*, *ecceos*, *ecceas*. See § 78, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Ipse compounded with some cases of *is* sometimes loses the *i*: as, *cumpse*, *campse*, *copse*, *capse*; also *reāpe* = *rē ipsā* or *rē eā ipsā*.

## § 80. VI. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quī, quae, quōd, *who* or *which*.

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Quī	quae	quōd	Quī	quae	quae
Gen. Cūjūs			Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat. Cui or cūi			Quibūs		
Acc. Quem	quam	quōd	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl. Quō	quā	quō	Quibūs		

Obs. 1. There is an older form in the *Gen. Sing.* *quōids*, in the *Dat. Sing.* *quoi*, in the *Abl. Sing.* *qui* (instead of *quō*), and in the *Dat. and Abl. Pl.* *quils* (instead of *quibūs*). The *Abl. quī* is usually found in combination with the preposition *cum*: as, *quicum* instead of *quōcum*.

Obs. 2. From *qui* are formed the two indefinite relatives *quicunquē* and *quisquē*, *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whichever*, *whatever*.

*Quicunquē*, *quaecunquē*, *quodcunquē* is declined like *quī*, *quae*, *quōd*, with the addition of the indeclinable *cunquē*: as, *Gen. cūjuscunquē*, &c.

Besides *quisquē*, the *Neut. quidquid* (or *quicquid*) and *Abl. quōquō* are the only forms in use.

*Quicunquē* is generally an Adjective; *quisquē* always a Substantive.

Obs. 3. The interrogative *utēr*, *utrā*, *utrum*, *which of the two?* is used as a relative with *cunquē*; as, *utercunquē*, *utrācunquē*, *utrumcunquē*, *whichever of the two*.

## § 81. VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quīs or quī, quae, quid or quōd, *who*, *which?* *what?*

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. Quīs or quī	quae	quid	Quī	quae	quae
Gen. Cūjūs		[or quōd]	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat. Cui		[or quōd]	Quibūs		
Acc. Quem	quam	quid	Quōs	quās	quae
Abl. Quō	quā	quō	Quibūs		

Obs. 1. *Quīs* is used both as a Substantive and as an Adjective; *quid* only as a Substantive; *qui* and *quid* as Adjectives: as, *quid commisit*, *what has he done?* *quōd faciūsus commisit*, *what deed has he done?*

Obs. 2. The *Abl. Sing.* *qui* is used only in the signification *how* ? as, *qui fit ? how does it happen ?*

Obs. 3. *Quis* and *qui* are strengthened by the addition of *nam* in emphatic interrogations : as, *quisnam* or *quīnam*, *quāenam*, *quidnam* or *quodnam*, *who then, what then ?*

Obs. 4. When the question refers to one of two, *utēr*, *utrū*, *utrum*, *which of the two*, is used. For the declension of *utēr* and its compounds see § 87, Obs. 2.

Obs. 5. Some derivatives of *quis* are also capable of being used interrogatively ; as, *quantus*, *how great ?* *quālis*, *of what sort ?* *quōt*, *how many ?* See § 83.

### § 82. VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

*Quis* is also used as an Indefinite Pronoun (= *any*), especially after the Conjunctions *si*, *if*, and *nē*, *lest*. Thus, *si quis* is "*if any one*"; *nē quis*, "*lest any one*," "*that no one*."

When *quis* is so used, it changes *quae* to *qua* wherever that form occurs. In other respects it is declined like the Interrogative *quis*.

Obs. 1. *Quid* is used as a Substantive, *quōd* as an Adjective : *quis* both as a Substantive and as an Adjective, *qui* usually as an Adjective.

Obs. 2. *Equis* (*ecquī*), *ecquā* (*ecquae*), *ecquid* (*ecquōd*), *any*, and, strengthened with the particle *nam*, *ecquisnam*, is formed from *quis*, and declined in the same manner.

Obs. 3. *Alquis*, *aliquid*, *any one, some one* (as Substantive), and *aliqui*, *aliquid*, *aliquid*, *any, some* (as Adjective), are declined like *quis* (*qui*), except that in the *Nom. Fem. Sing.* and in the *Neutr. Plur.* only the form *aliquā* is used.

Obs. 4. *Quisquam*, *quidquam* (*quicquam*), *any one*, has no Feminine and no Plural. *Gen. cuiusquam*, &c. It is used as a Substantive in negative sentences. The corresponding Adjective is *ullus*.

Obs. 5. The following Indefinite Pronouns are declined either like the Relative or the Interrogative ; the Neuters in *quid* being used Substantively, and those in *quōd* Adjectively :—

*Quidam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, *a certain one*.  
*Quispiam*, *quaequam*, *quodpiam* or *quidpiam*, *any one*.  
*Quivis*, *quaevis*, *quodvis* or *quidvis*, *any one you please*.  
*Quilibet*, *quaelibet*, *quodlibet* or *quidlibet*, *any one you please*.  
*Quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque* or *quidque*, *every one*.  
*Cuiusque*, *quaeque*, *quodque* or *quidque*, *Gen. cuiusque*, &c., *each one*.

Obs. 6. The following form the *Gen.* in *iūs* and the *Dat.* in *ī* : *ullus*, *any ; none* ; *nonnullus* (*usu. in pl.*) *some ; alius*, *one, another ; alter*, *the one or other of two ; neuter*, (a contraction of *ne uter*), *neither of two*. See § 57. In early Latin and sometimes in the best writers the *Gen.* is also found in *ī*, *ae*, and the *Dat.* in *o*, *ae* : as *nulli consilii*, *nullo consilio*, &c.

The compound *alteruter* is declined either in both words : as, *Gen. alterutrus* *utrius* : or only in the latter : as, *Dat. alterutrō*.

### § 83. IX. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Correlative Pronouns denote relation to one another by corresponding forms.

Demonstrative.	Relative and Interrogative.	Indefinite Relative.	Indefinite.
<i>Tālis</i> , <i>of such a kind.</i>	<i>Quālis</i> , <i>of such a kind as (rel.) ; of what kind ? (interr.)</i>	<i>Quālisecunquē</i> , <i>Quālisquālis</i> , <i>of what kind soever.</i>	<i>Quālislibet</i> , <i>of any kind you please.</i>
<i>Tantū</i> , <i>so great.</i>	<i>Quantū</i> , <i>so great as (rel.) ; how great ? (interr.)</i>	<i>Quantūsecunquē</i> , <i>Quantūquantus</i> , <i>how great soever.</i>	<i>Alīquantū</i> , <i>of a certain, considerable size.</i> <i>Quantūlibet</i> , <i>Quantūvis</i> , <i>of any size you please.</i>
<i>Tōt</i> (indecl.), <i>so many.</i> <i>Tōtūdem</i> (indecl.), <i>just so many.</i>	<i>Quōt</i> (indecl.), <i>so many as (rel.) ; how many ? (interr.)</i>	<i>Quotēcunquē</i> , <i>Quotquōt</i> , <i>how many soever.</i>	<i>Alīquōt</i> (indecl.), <i>some number.</i> <i>Quotlibet</i> (indecl.), <i>any number you please.</i>

### CHAPTER XVI.—THE VERB.

§ 84. VERBS are of two kinds :

1. TRANSITIVE VERBS, which govern an Accusative Case, representing the object of the action : as, *amo puērū*, *I love the boy*.

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS, which do not govern an Accusative Case : as, *sēdēo*, *I sit* ; *curro*, *I run*.

Transitive Verbs have Two VOICES :

(i.) THE ACTIVE VOICE, which denotes that the Nominative represents the *actor* (from *āgo*, *actūm*, *to do*) : as, *pātēr amat*, *the father loves*.

(ii.) THE PASSIVE VOICE, (from *pātior*, *passus*, *to suffer*), which denotes that the Nominative represents the *object* of the action : as, *pātēr amatur*, *the father is loved*.

Obs. 1. Some Verbs may have a *reflective* sense in the Passive Voice : as, *armōr*, *I arm myself* ; *vertōr*, *I turn myself* ; *lāvōr*, *I wash myself*.

Obs. 2. Intransitive Verbs have no Passive Voice, except in the Third Person Singular Impersonal : as, *currītūr*, *it is run (they run)*.



DEPONENT VERBS have a Passive form but an Active meaning, and are hence called Deponent, because they lay aside (*deponunt*) the Passive sense. They are either Transitive, Intransitive, or Reflective: as, hortor milites, *I exhort the soldiers*; milēs moritur, *the soldier is dying*; gloriōr, *I glorify myself* (or, more usually, *I boast*).

§ 85. Verbs have Four MOODS (Mōdi):

- I. The INDICATIVE MOOD declares a thing positively or unconditionally: as, amo, *I love*; scribit, *he writes*.
- II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD is subjoined to another Verb, and states what is conditional, relative, or contingent: as, scribo ut lēgāt, *I write that he may read*; lēgāt aliquis, *let some one read*.

Obs. The Subjunctive Mood however must frequently be translated as an Indicative; owing to the defectiveness of the English Verb.

- III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD commands or entreats: as, amā, *love*; nē occidito, *thou shalt not kill*.

- IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD expresses the action denoted by the Verb without reference to person or time: as, amārē, *to love*.

§ 86. Besides these four Moods three other forms are derived from and partake of the signification of Verbs.

1. The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective. There are four Participles:

*Active.*  
*Imperfect.* Amans, *loving.*  
*Future.* Amātūrus, *about to love.*

*Passive.*  
*Perfect.* Amātus, *loved.*  
*Gerundive.* Amandus, *fit to be loved.*

2. The SUPINE, which is strictly a Verbal Substantive of the fourth declension, having two cases only, the Accusative and the Ablative: as,

Amātum, *to love.*  
 Amātū, *in loving, to be loved.*

3. The GERUND, which is also a Verbal Substantive, having four Cases: as,

Gen. Amandī, *of loving*  
 Dat. Amando, *for loving*  
 Acc. Amandum, *a loving*  
 Abl. Amando, *by loving.*

Obs. The want of a Nominative Case to the Gerund is supplied by the Infinitive Mood.

§ 87. Verbs have six TENSES (Tempōrā) or times, three expressing *Imperfect* or unfinished action, and three expressing *Perfect* or finished action.

*Imperfect Tenses.*

- |                   |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Present. Amo,  | I love or I am loving. |
| 2. Past. Amābam,  | I was loving.          |
| 3. Future. Amābo, | I shall love.          |

Obs. The Present and Future Tenses are frequently Indefinite and not Imperfect. In Active Verbs the Future Tense is never Imperfect: amābo never signifies *I shall be loving*. Hence it is better to call these two tenses Present and Future simply.

*Perfect Tenses.*

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Present. Amāvī,  | I have loved.       |
| 2. Past. Amāvēram,  | I had loved.        |
| 3. Future. Amāvēro, | I shall have loved. |

Obs. The Present-Perfect has also the meaning of an Indefinite-Past: thus, Amāvī signifies *I loved* as well as *I have loved*; and in the former sense it is sometimes called the *Aorist*. As the tense has thus two meanings, it is better to call it *Perfect* simply.

§ 88. Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each Number: as,

	Sing.		Plur.
1. Amo,	<i>I love</i>		Amāmūs, <i>We love</i>
2. Amās,	<i>thou lovest</i>		Amātīs, <i>ye love</i>
3. Amāt,	<i>he loves.</i>		Amant, <i>they love.</i>

§ 89. Latin Verbs are arranged in four classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the ending of the Imperfect Infinitive Active; which in,

- I. The First Conjugation ends in āre: as, amārē, *to love*.
- II. The Second       ,,       ,,       ērē: { as, mōnērē, *to advise.*
- III. The Third       ,,       ,,       ērē: as, rēgērē, *to rule.*
- IV. The Fourth       ,,       ,,       irē: as, audirē, *to hear.*

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Imperfect Infinitive, and the Supine are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.



# CHAPTER XVII.—THE VERB SUM AND THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

§ 90. The Verb **Sum**, *I am*, is irregular, its inflexions differing in many respects from those of the Verbs belonging to the four Conjugations.

**Sum, fui, fütürüs, essē,—to be.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. <b>Sum,</b>	<i>I am</i>	Plur. <b>Sümüs,</b>	<i>We are</i>
<b>Es,</b>	<i>thou art</i>	<b>Estis,</b>	<i>ye are</i>
<b>Est,</b>	<i>he is.</i>	<b>Sunt,</b>	<i>they are.</i>

### 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

Sing. <b>Ēram,</b>	<i>I was</i>	Plur. <b>Ērämüs,</b>	<i>We were</i>
<b>Ērás,</b>	<i>thou wast</i>	<b>Ērätis,</b>	<i>ye were</i>
<b>Ērät,</b>	<i>he was.</i>	<b>Ērant,</b>	<i>they were.</i>

### 3. FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. <b>Ēro,</b>	<i>I shall be</i>	Plur. <b>Ērümüs,</b>	<i>We shall be</i>
<b>Ēris,</b>	<i>thou wilt be</i>	<b>Ērätis,</b>	<i>ye will be</i>
<b>Ērit,</b>	<i>he will be.</i>	<b>Ērunt,</b>	<i>they will be.</i>

### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. <b>Fui,</b>	<i>I have been, or</i> <i>I was</i>	Plur. <b>Fuimüs,</b>	<i>We have been, or</i> <i>we were</i>
<b>Fuisti,</b>	<i>thou hast been, or</i> <i>thou wast</i>	<b>Fuistis,</b>	<i>ye have been, or</i> <i>ye were</i>
<b>Fuit,</b>	<i>he has been, or</i> <i>he was.</i>	<b>Fuerunt</b> <i>or fuerē</i>	<i>they have been, or</i> <i>they were.</i>

### 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. <b>Fuëram,</b>	<i>I had been</i>	Plur. <b>Fuëramüs,</b>	<i>We had been</i>
<b>Fuërás,</b>	<i>thou hadst been</i>	<b>Fuërátis,</b>	<i>ye had been</i>
<b>Fuërá,</b>	<i>he had been.</i>	<b>Fuërant,</b>	<i>they had been.</i>

### 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Sing. <b>Fuëro,</b>	<i>I shall have been</i>	Plur. <b>Fuërimüs,</b>	<i>We shall have been</i>
<b>Fuëris,</b>	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	<b>Fuëritis,</b>	<i>ye will have been</i>
<b>Fuërit,</b>	<i>he will have been.</i>	<b>Fuërint,</b>	<i>they will have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

Sing. <b>Es,</b>	<i>Be thou.</i>	Plur. <b>Estē,</b>	<i>Be ye.</i>
------------------	-----------------	--------------------	---------------

### 2. FUTURE TENSE.

Sing. <b>Esto,</b>	<i>Thou shalt be</i>	Plur. <b>Estötē,</b>	<i>Ye shall be</i>
<b>Esto,</b>	<i>he shall be, or let</i> <i>him be.</i>	<b>Sunto,</b>	<i>they shall be, or let</i> <i>them be.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. <b>Sim,</b>	<i>I may be</i>	P. <b>Simüs,</b>	<i>We may be</i>
<b>Sis,</b>	<i>thou mayst be</i>	<b>Sitis,</b>	<i>ye may be</i>
<b>Sit,</b>	<i>he may be.</i>	<b>Sint,</b>	<i>they may be.</i>

### 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. <b>Essem</b> or <b>förem,</b>	<i>I might be</i>	P. <b>Essëmüs</b> or <b>föremüs,</b>	<i>We might be</i>
<b>Essēs</b> or <b>föres,</b>	<i>thou mightst be</i>	<b>Essëtis</b> or <b>företis,</b>	<i>ye might be</i>
<b>Essēt</b> or <b>föret,</b>	<i>he might be.</i>	<b>Essent</b> or <b>förent,</b>	<i>they might be.</i>

### 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. <b>Fütürüs sim,</b>	<i>I may</i>	P. <b>Fütüri simüs,</b>	<i>We may</i>
<b>Fütürüs sis,</b>	<i>thou mayst</i>	<b>Fütüri sitis,</b>	<i>ye may</i>
<b>Fütürüs sit,</b>	<i>he may</i>	<b>Fütüri sint,</b>	<i>they may</i>

### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. <b>Fuërim,</b>	<i>I may have been</i>	P. <b>Fuërimüs,</b>	<i>We may have been</i>
<b>Fuëris,</b>	<i>thou mayst have been</i>	<b>Fuëritis,</b>	<i>ye may have been</i>
<b>Fuërit,</b>	<i>he may have been.</i>	<b>Fuërint,</b>	<i>they may have been.</i>

### 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. <b>Fuissem,</b>	<i>I might</i>	P. <b>Fuissëmüs,</b>	<i>We might</i>
<b>Fuissēs,</b>	<i>thou mightst</i>	<b>Fuissëtis,</b>	<i>ye might</i>
<b>Fuissēt,</b>	<i>he might</i>	<b>Fuissent,</b>	<i>they might</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	<b>Essē,</b>	<i>to be.</i>
PERFECT.	<b>Fuissē,</b>	<i>to have been.</i>
FUTURE.	<b>Fütürum essē,</b> or <b>förē,</b>	<i>to be about to be.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE.	<b>Fütürüs, -a, -um,</b>	<i>about to be.</i>
---------	--------------------------	---------------------

Obs. 1. The Supine and Gerund are wanting: the Present Participle is found only in Absens from Absum, and Praesens from Praesum.

Obs. 2. The Verb has two Stems, *es* (whence *esum*, afterwards 'sum, and all the Imperfect Tenses), and *fu* (whence all the Perfect Tenses).

Obs. 3. Like Sum are conjugated its compounds:

Absum,	<i>I am away.</i>	Obsum,	<i>I am in the way.</i>
Adsum,	<i>I am present.</i>	Praesum,	<i>I am before.</i>
Dæsum,	<i>I am wanting.</i>	Præsum,	<i>I am serviceable.</i>
Insum,	<i>I am in.</i>	Subsum,	<i>I am under.</i>
Intersum,	<i>I am present at.</i>	Sûpersum,	<i>I am surviving.</i>

Præsum, however, takes *d* before *e*; as,

Sing. <b>Præsum,</b>	Plur. <b>Præsumüs,</b>	Past-Imp. <b>Prædëram.</b>
<b>Prædēs,</b>	<b>Prædestis,</b>	Future. <b>Prædëro.</b>
<b>Prædest,</b>	<b>Præsunt.</b>	Imp. Inf. <b>Prædëssē.</b>

Obs. 4. Possum, *I am able*, is a contraction of pötis (pot)-sum, but is irregular.

## § 91.—FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Amo, amāvi, amatum, amārē,—to love.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Am-o,</i>	<i>I love</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Am-amūs,</i>	<i>We love</i>
	<i>Am-as,</i>	<i>thou lovest</i>		<i>Am-ātis,</i>	<i>ye love</i>
	<i>Am-āt,</i>	<i>he loves.</i>		<i>Am-ant,</i>	<i>they love.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Am-ābam,</i>	<i>I was loving</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Am-ābāmūs,</i>	<i>We were loving</i>
	<i>Am-ābās,</i>	<i>thou wast loving</i>		<i>Am-ābātis,</i>	<i>ye were loving</i>
	<i>Am-ābāt,</i>	<i>he was loving.</i>		<i>Am-ābant,</i>	<i>they were loving.</i>

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Am-ābo,</i>	<i>I shall love</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Am-ābimūs,</i>	<i>We shall love</i>
	<i>Am-ābis,</i>	<i>thou wilt love</i>		<i>Am-ābitis,</i>	<i>ye will love</i>
	<i>Am-ābit,</i>	<i>he will love.</i>		<i>Am-ābunt,</i>	<i>they will love.</i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Am-āvi,</i>	<i>I have loved, or</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Am-āvīmūs,</i>	<i>We have loved,</i>
		<i>I loved</i>			<i>or we loved</i>
	<i>Am-āvistī,</i>	<i>thou hast loved,</i>		<i>Am-āvistis,</i>	<i>ye have loved,</i>
		<i>or thou lovedst</i>			<i>or ye loved</i>
	<i>Am-āvīt,</i>	<i>he has loved, or</i>		<i>Am-āverunt,</i>	<i>they have loved,</i>
		<i>he loved.</i>			<i>or am-āverē) or they loved.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Am-āvēram,</i>	<i>I had loved</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Am-āvērāmūs,</i>	<i>We had loved</i>
	<i>Am-āvērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst loved</i>		<i>Am-āvērātis,</i>	<i>ye had loved</i>
	<i>Am-āvērāt,</i>	<i>he had loved.</i>		<i>Am-āvērant,</i>	<i>they had loved.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Am-āvēro,</i>	<i>I shall have</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Am-āvērimūs,</i>	<i>We shall have</i>
	<i>Am-āvēris,</i>	<i>thou wilt have</i>		<i>Am-āvēritis,</i>	<i>ye will have</i>
	<i>Am-āvērit,</i>	<i>he will have.</i>		<i>Am-āvērint,</i>	<i>they will have.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Am-ā,</i>	<i>Love thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Am-ātē,</i>	<i>Love ye.</i>
--------------	--------------	-------------------	--------------	----------------	-----------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Am-āto,</i>	<i>Thou shalt love</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Am-ātōtē,</i>	<i>Ye shall love</i>
	<i>Am-āto,</i>	<i>he shall love, or</i>		<i>Am-anto,</i>	<i>they shall love, or</i>
		<i>let him love.</i>			<i>let them love.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S.</i>	<i>Am-em,</i>	<i>I may love</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>Am-ēmūs,</i>	<i>We may love</i>
	<i>Am-es,</i>	<i>thou mayst love</i>		<i>Am-ētis,</i>	<i>ye may love</i>
	<i>Am-ēt,</i>	<i>he may love.</i>		<i>Am-ent,</i>	<i>they may love.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i>	<i>Am-ārem,</i>	<i>I might love</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>Am-ārēmūs,</i>	<i>We might love</i>
	<i>Am-ārēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst love</i>		<i>Am-ārētis,</i>	<i>ye might love</i>
	<i>Am-ārēt,</i>	<i>he might love.</i>		<i>Am-ārent,</i>	<i>they might love.</i>

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>S.</i>	<i>Am-ātūrūs sim,</i>	<i>I may</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>Am-ātūrī simūs,</i>	<i>We may</i>
	<i>Am-ātūrūs sis,</i>	<i>thou mayst</i>		<i>Am-ātūrī sitis,</i>	<i>ye may</i>
	<i>Am-ātūrūs sit,</i>	<i>he may</i>		<i>Am-ātūrī sint,</i>	<i>they may</i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i>	<i>Am-āvērim,</i>	<i>I may have</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>Am-āvērimūs,</i>	<i>We may have</i>
	<i>Am-āvēris,</i>	<i>thou mayst have</i>		<i>Am-āvēritis,</i>	<i>ye may have</i>
	<i>Am-āvērit,</i>	<i>he may have.</i>		<i>Am-āvērint,</i>	<i>they may have.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i>	<i>Am-āvissem,</i>	<i>I might have</i>	<i>P.</i>	<i>Am-āvissēmūs,</i>	<i>We might have</i>
	<i>Am-āvissēs,</i>	<i>thou mightst have</i>		<i>Am-āvissētis,</i>	<i>ye might have</i>
	<i>Am-āvissēt,</i>	<i>he might have.</i>		<i>Am-āvissent,</i>	<i>they might have.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF.	<i>Am-ārē,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
PERFECT.	<i>Am-āvissē,</i>	<i>to have loved.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>Am-ātūrum</i>	<i>to be about</i>
	(am, um) essē,	<i>to love.</i>

## GERUND.

Gen.	<i>Am-andī,</i>	<i>of loving</i>
Dat.	<i>Am-ando,</i>	<i>for loving</i>
Acc.	<i>Am-andum,</i>	<i>the loving</i>
Abl.	<i>Am-ando,</i>	<i>by loving.</i>

## SUPINES.

<i>Am-atum,</i>	<i>to love.</i>
<i>Am-ātū,</i>	<i>to be loved.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF.	<i>Am-ans, antis,</i>	<i>loving.</i>
FUTURE.	<i>Am-ātūrūs, a, um,</i>	<i>about to love.</i>

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *ri* and *re* may be omitted before *s* and *r*: as,

<i>amāvisti</i> becomes <i>amasti</i>	<i>amāveram</i> becomes <i>amaram</i>
<i>amāvistis</i> " <i>amastis</i>	<i>amāvero</i> " <i>amāro</i>
<i>amāverunt</i> " <i>amarunt</i>	<i>amāverim</i> " <i>amārim</i>
(but <i>amāverē</i> does not become <i>amāre</i> , which would be confounded with the Imperf. Infan.)	<i>amāvissēm</i> " <i>amāssēm</i>
	<i>amāvissē</i> " <i>amāssē</i> .

## § 92.—SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōnēo, mōnūi, mōnītum, mōnērē, —to advise.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēo,	I advise	P. Mōn-ēmūs,	We advise
Mōn-ēs,	thou advisest	Mōn-ētīs,	ye advise
Mōn-ēt,	he advises.	Mōn-ent,	they advise.

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbam,	I was advising	P. Mōn-ēbāmūs,	We were advising
Mōn-ēbās,	thou wast advising	Mōn-ēbātīs,	ye were advising
Mōn-ēbāt,	he was advising.	Mōn-ēbant,	they were advising.

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbo,	I shall advise	P. Mōn-ēbimūs,	We shall advise
Mōn-ēbis,	thou wilt advise	Mōn-ēbitīs,	ye will advise
Mōn-ēbit,	he will advise.	Mōn-ēbunt,	they will advise.

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūi,	I have advised, or I advised	P. Mōn-ūimūs,	We have advised, or we advised
Mōn-nistī,	thou hast advised, or thou advisedst	Mōn-ūistīs,	ye have advised, or ye advised
Mōn-ūit,	he has advised, or he advised.	Mōn-ūerunt	they have advised, or -ūērē, } or they advised.

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūeram,	I had advised	P. Mōn-ūērāmūs,	We had advised
Mōn-ūērās,	thou hadst advised	Mōn-ūērātīs,	ye had advised
Mōn-ūērāt,	he had advised.	Mōn-ūerant,	they had advised.

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE

S. Mōn-ūēro,	I shall } have	P. Mōn-ūerimūs,	We shall } have
Mōn-ūerīs,	thou wilt } advised.	Mōn-ūeritīs,	ye will } advised.
Mōn-ūerīt,	he will }	Mōn-ūerint,	they will }

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ē,	Advise thou.	P. Mōn-ētē,	Advise ye.
-----------	--------------	-------------	------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēto,	Thou shalt advise	P. Mōn-ētōtē,	Ye shall advise
Mōn-ēto,	he shall advise, or let him advise.	Mōn-ento,	they shall advise, or let them advise.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-eam,	I may advise	P. Mōn-eāmūs,	We may advise
Mōn-eās,	thou mayst advise	Mōn-eātīs,	ye may advise
Mōn-eāt,	he may advise.	Mōn-eant,	they may advise.

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ērem,	I might advise	P. Mōn-ērēmūs,	We might advise
Mōn-ērēs,	thou mightst advise	Mōn-ērētīs,	ye might advise
Mōn-ērēt,	he might advise.	Mōn-erent,	they might advise.

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūrūs,	I may be about to sim,	P. Mōn-ītūrī,	We may be about to simūs,
Mōn-ītūrūs,	thou mayst be about sis,	Mōn-ītūrī,	ye may be about to sitīs,
Mōn-ītūrūs,	he may be about to sit,	Mōn-ītūrī,	they may be about sint,

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ūerim,	I may } have	P. Mōn-ūerimūs,	We may } have
Mōn-ūerīs,	thou mayst } advised.	Mōn-ūeritīs,	ye may } advised.
Mōn-ūerīt,	he may }	Mōn-ūerint,	they may }

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uissem,	I might } have	P. Mōn-uissēmūs,	We might } have
Mōn-uissēs,	thou mightst } advised.	Mōn-uissētīs,	ye might } advised.
Mōn-uissēt,	he might }	Mōn-uissent,	they might }

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF.	Mōn-ērē,	to advise.
PERFECT.	Mōn-uissē,	{ to have advised.
FUTURE.	Mōn-ītūrum	{ to be about (am, um) essē, } to advise.

## GERUND.

Gen. Mōn-endi,	of advising
Dat. Mōn-endo,	for advising
Acc. Mōn-endum,	the advising
Abl. Mōn-endo,	by advising.

## SUPINES.

Mōn-ītum,	to advise.
Mōn-itū,	to be advised.

## PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Mōn-ens, entis,	advising.
FUTURE. Mōn-ītūrūs, a, um,	about to advise.

## § 92.—SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōnēo, mōnūi, mōnitum, mōnērē,—to advise.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēo,	<i>I advise</i>	P. Mōn-ēmūs,	<i>We advise</i>
Mōn-ēs,	<i>thou advisest</i>	Mōn-ētis,	<i>ye advise</i>
Mōn-ēt,	<i>he advises.</i>	Mōn-ent,	<i>they advise.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbam,	<i>I was advising</i>	P. Mōn-ēbāmūs,	<i>We were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbās,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	Mōn-ēbātis,	<i>ye were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbāt,	<i>he was advising.</i>	Mōn-ēbant,	<i>they were advising.</i>

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbo,	<i>I shall advise</i>	P. Mōn-ēbīmūs,	<i>We shall advise</i>
Mōn-ēbis,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	Mōn-ēbitis,	<i>ye will advise</i>
Mōn-ēbit,	<i>he will advise.</i>	Mōn-ēbunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uī,	<i>I have advised, or</i>	P. Mōn-uīmūs,	<i>We have advised,</i>
	<i>I advised</i>		<i>or we advised</i>
Mōn-uistī,	<i>thou hast advised. or</i>	Mōn-uistis,	<i>ye have advised,</i>
	<i>thou advisedst</i>		<i>or ye advised</i>
Mōn-uīt,	<i>he has advised, or</i>	Mōn-uērunt,	<i>they have advised,</i>
	<i>he advised.</i>		<i>or -uērē, } or they advised.</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uēram,	<i>I had advised</i>	P. Mōn-uērāmūs,	<i>We had advised</i>
Mōn-uērās,	<i>thou hadst advised</i>	Mōn-uērātis,	<i>ye had advised</i>
Mōn-uērāt,	<i>he had advised.</i>	Mōn-uērant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE

S. Mōn-uēro,	<i>I shall } have</i>	P. Mōn-uērimūs,	<i>We shall } have</i>
Mōn-uēris,	<i>thou wilt } advised.</i>	Mōn-uēritis,	<i>ye will } advised.</i>
Mōn-uērit,	<i>he will }</i>	Mōn-uērint,	<i>they will }</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ē,	<i>Advise thou.</i>	P. Mōn-ētē,	<i>Advise ye.</i>
-----------	---------------------	-------------	-------------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēto,	<i>Thou shalt advise</i>	P. Mōn-ētōtē,	<i>Ye shall advise</i>
Mōn-ēto,	<i>he shall advise, or let</i>	Mōn-ento,	<i>they shall advise, or</i>
	<i>him advise.</i>		<i>let them advise.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-eam,	<i>I may advise</i>	P. Mōn-eāmūs,	<i>We may advise</i>
Mōn-eās,	<i>thou mayst advise</i>	Mōn-eātis,	<i>ye may advise</i>
Mōn-eāt,	<i>he may advise.</i>	Mōn-eant,	<i>they may advise.</i>

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-erem,	<i>I might advise</i>	P. Mōn-erēmūs,	<i>We might advise</i>
Mōn-erēs,	<i>thou mightst advise</i>	Mōn-erētis,	<i>ye might advise</i>
Mōn-erēt,	<i>he might advise.</i>	Mōn-erent,	<i>they might advise.</i>

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-itūrūs,	<i>I may be about to</i>	P. Mōn-itūrī,	<i>We may be about to</i>
sim,	<i>advise</i>	simūs,	<i>advise</i>
Mōn-itūrūs,	<i>thou mayst be about</i>	Mōn-itūrī,	<i>ye may be about to</i>
sis,	<i>to advise</i>	sitis,	<i>advise</i>
Mōn-itūrūs,	<i>he may be about to</i>	Mōn-itūrī,	<i>they may be about</i>
sit,	<i>advise.</i>	sint,	<i>to advise.</i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uērim,	<i>I may } have</i>	P. Mōn-uērimūs,	<i>We may } have</i>
Mōn-uēris,	<i>thou mayst } advised.</i>	Mōn-uēritis,	<i>ye may } advised.</i>
Mōn-uērit,	<i>he may }</i>	Mōn-uērint,	<i>they may }</i>

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uissem,	<i>I might } have</i>	P. Mōn-uissēmūs,	<i>We might } have</i>
Mōn-uissēs,	<i>thou mightst } advised.</i>	Mōn-uissētis,	<i>ye might } have</i>
Mōn-uissēt,	<i>he might }</i>	Mōn-uissent,	<i>they might }</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. Mōn-ērē,	<i>to advise.</i>
PERFECT. Mōn-uissē,	<i>{ to have</i>
	<i>{ advised.</i>
FUTURE. Mōn-itūrum	<i>{ to be about</i>
(am, um) essē,	<i>{ to advise.</i>

## GERUND.

Gen. Mōn-endī,	<i>of advising</i>
Dat. Mōn-endo,	<i>for advising</i>
Acc. Mōn-endum,	<i>the advising</i>
Abl. Mōn-endo,	<i>by advising.</i>

## SUPINES.

Mōn-itum,	<i>to advise.</i>
Mōn-itū,	<i>to be advised.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Mōn-ens, entis,	<i>advising.</i>
FUTURE. Mōn-itūrūs, a, um,	<i>about to advise.</i>

## § 93. THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē,—to rule.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-o,	I rule	P. Rēg-imūs,	We rule
Rēg-is,	thou rulest	Rēg-itīs,	ye rule
Rēg-it,	he rules	Rēg-unt,	they rule

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ēbam,	I was ruling	P. Rēg-ēbāmūs,	We were ruling
Rēg-ēbās,	thou wast ruling	Rēg-ēbātīs,	ye were ruling
Rēg-ēbāt,	he was ruling.	Rēg-ēbant,	they were ruling.

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-am,	I shall rule	P. Rēg-ēmūs,	We shall rule
Rēg-ēs,	thou wilt rule	Rēg-ētīs,	ye will rule
Rēg-ēt,	he will rule.	Rēg-ent,	they will rule

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-i,	I have ruled, or I ruled	P. Rex-imūs,	We have ruled, or we ruled
Rex-istī,	thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst	Rex-istīs,	ye have ruled, or ye ruled
Rex-īt,	he has ruled, or he ruled.	Rex-ērunt or -ērē,	they have ruled, or they ruled.

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-eram,	I had ruled	P. Rex-erāmūs,	We had ruled
Rex-erās,	thou hadst rul	Rex-erātīs,	ye had ruled
Rex-erāt,	he had ruled.	Rex-erant,	they had ruled.

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ero,	I shall have ruled	P. Rex-erimūs,	We shall have ruled
Rex-eris,	thou wilt have ruled	Rex-eritīs,	ye will have ruled
Rex-erit,	he will have ruled.	Rex-erint,	they will have ruled.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ē,	Rule thou.	P. Rēg-itē,	Rule ye
-----------	------------	-------------	---------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-ito,	Thou shalt rule	P. Rēg-ītōtē,	Ye shall rule
Rēg-ito,	he shall rule, or let him rule.	Rēg-unto,	they shall rule, or let them rule.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-am,	I may rule	P. Rēg-āmūs,	We may rule.
Rēg-ās,	thou mayst rule	Rēg-ātīs,	ye may rule
Rēg-āt,	he may rule.	Rēg-ant,	they may rule.

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērem,	I might rule	P. Rēg-ērēmūs,	We might rule
Rēg-ērēs,	thou mightst rule	Rēg-ērētīs,	ye might rule
Rēg-ērēt,	he might rule.	Rēg-erent,	they might rule.

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rect-ūrūs }	I may be about to rule	P. Rect-ūrī }	We may be about to rule
sim,		simūs,	
Rect-ūrūs }	thou mayst be about to rule	Rect-ūrī }	ye may be about to rule
sis,		sītīs,	
Rect-ī }	he may be about to rule.	Rect-ūrī }	they may be about to rule.
sīt,		sint,	

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-erim,	I may have ruled.	P. Rex-erimūs,	We may have ruled.
Rex-eris,	thou mayst have ruled.	Rex-eritīs,	ye may have ruled.
Rex-erit,	he may have ruled.	Rex-erint,	they may have ruled.

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-issem,	I might have ruled.	P. Rex-issēmūs,	We might have ruled.
Rex-issēs,	thou mightst have ruled.	Rex-issētīs,	ye might have ruled.
Rex-issēt,	he might have ruled.	Rex-issent,	they might have ruled.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. Rēg-ērē,	to rule.
PERFECT. Rex-issē,	{ to have ruled.
FUTURE. Rect-ūrūm	{ to be about to rule.
(am, um) essē,	

## GERUND.

Gen. Rēg-endi,	of ruling
Dat. Rēg-endo,	for ruling
Acc. Rēg-endum,	the ruling
Abl. Rēg-endo,	by ruling.

## SUPINES.

Rec-tum,	to rule.
Rec-tū,	to be ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Rēg-ens, entis,	ruling.
FUTURE. Rec-tūrus, a, um,	about to rule.

## § 94. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audivi, auditum, audiré,—to hear.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-io,	I hear	P. Aud-imūs,	We hear
Aud-is,	thou hearest	Aud-it's,	ye hear
Aud-it,	he hears.	Aud-iunt,	they hear.

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iēbam,	I was hearing	P. Aud-iēbāmūs,	We were hearing
Aud-iēbās,	thou wast hearing	Aud-iēbāt's,	ye were hearing
Aud-iēbāt,	he was hearing.	Aud-iēbant,	they were hearing.

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-iam,	I shall hear	P. Aud-iēmūs,	We shall hear
Aud-iēs,	thou wilt hear	Aud-iēt's,	ye will hear
Aud-iēt,	he will hear.	Aud-ient,	they will hear.

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivī,	I have heard, or	P. Aud-ivīmūs,	We have heard,
	I heard		or we heard
Aud-ivistī,	thou hast heard, or	Aud-ivist's,	ye have heard,
	thou heardst		or ye heard
Aud-ivīt,	he has heard, or	Aud-ivērunt,	they have heard,
	he heard.	or -ivērē,	or they heard.

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivēram,	I had heard	P. Aud-ivērāmūs,	We had heard
Aud-ivērās,	thou hadst heard	Aud-ivērāt's,	ye had heard
Aud-ivērāt,	he had heard.	Aud-ivērant,	they had heard.

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivēro,	I shall	P. Aud-ivērimūs,	We shall
Aud-ivērīs,	thou wilt	Aud-ivērīt's,	ye will
Aud-ivērīt,	he will	Aud-ivērint,	they will

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-I,	Hear thou.	P. Aud-itē,	Hear ye.
-----------	------------	-------------	----------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-ito,	Thou shalt hear	P. Aud-itōtē,	Ye shall hear
Aud-ito,	he shall hear, or	Aud-iunto,	they shall hear, or
	let him hear.		let them hear.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iam,	I may hear	P. Aud-iāmūs,	We may hear
Aud-iās,	thou mayst hear	Aud-iāt's,	ye may hear
Aud-iāt,	he may hear.	Aud-iant,	they may hear.

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irem,	I might hear	P. Aud-irēmūs,	We might hear
Aud-irēs,	thou mightst hear	Aud-irēt's,	ye might hear
Aud-irēt,	he might hear.	Aud-irent,	they might hear.

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-itūrūs	I may be about	P. Aud-itūrī	We may be about
sim,	to hear	simūs,	to hear
Aud-itūrūs	thou mayst be	Aud-itūrī	ye may be about
sis,	about to hear	sīt's,	to hear
Aud-itūrūs	he may be about	Aud-itūrī	they may be about
sit,	to hear.	sint,	to hear.

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivērim,	I may	P. Aud-ivērimūs,	We may
Aud-ivērīs,	thou mayst	Aud-ivērīt's,	ye may
Aud-ivērīt,	he may	Aud-ivērint,	they may

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivissem,	I might	P. Aud-ivissēmūs,	We might
Aud-ivissēs,	thou mightst	Aud-ivissēt's,	ye might
Aud-ivissēt,	he might	Aud-ivissent,	they might

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERF. Aud-irē,	to hear.
PERFECT. Aud-ivissē,	{ to have
	heard.
FUTURE. Aud-itūrum	{ to be about
(am, um) essē,	to hear.

## GERUND.

Gen. Aud-iendī,	of hearing
Dat. Aud-iendo,	for hearing
Acc. Aud-iendum,	the hearing
Abl. Aud-iendo,	by hearing.

## SUPINES.

Aud-itum,	to hear.
Aud-itū,	to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

IMPERF. Aud-iens, ientis,	hearing.
FUTURE. Aud-itūrūs, a, um,	about to hear.

Obs. In all the Perfect Tenses *r* is frequently omitted before *e* and *i*. The two *r*'s are often contracted into *z*: as,

audivistī becomes audiistī or audistī	audivērim becomes audiērim
audivistis „ audiistis or audistis	audivissem „ audiissem or
audivīt „ audīt	audissem
audivērunt „ audiērunt	audivissē „ audiissē or
audivēram „ audiēram	audissē.
audivēro „ audiēro	

## § 95. FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Amör, amätüs sum or fui, amäri,—to be loved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Am-ör,	I am loved	P. Am-amür,	We are loved
Am-äris or	thou art loved	Am-amini,	ye are loved
am-äre,	he is loved.	Am-antür,	they are loved.
Am-ätür,			

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-abär,	I was being loved	P. Am-abämür,	We were being loved
Am-abäris or	thou wast being loved	Am-abämini,	ye were being loved
am-abäre,	he was being loved.	Am-abantür,	they were being loved.
Am-abätür,			

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Am-abör,	I shall be loved	P. Am-abimür,	We shall be loved
Am-abäris or	thou wilt be loved	Am-abimini,	ye will be loved
am-abäre,	he will be loved.	Am-abuntür,	they will be loved.
Am-abütür,			

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ätüs sum	I have been loved, or was loved	P. Am-äti sümüs	We have been loved, or were loved
Am-ätüs es	thou hast been loved, or wast loved	Am-äti estis	ye have been loved, or were loved
Am-ätüs est	he has been loved, or was loved.	Am-äti sunt,	they have been loved, or were loved.

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ätüs eram	I had been loved	P. Am-äti eramüs	We had been loved
or fuëram,	thou hadst been loved	Am-äti eratis	ye had been loved
Am-ätüs eräs	he had been loved.	Am-äti erant	they had been loved.
or fuëräs,			
Am-ätüs erät			
or fuërät,			

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ätüs ero	I shall have been loved	P. Am-äti erimüs	We shall have been loved
or fuëro,	thou wilt have been loved	Am-äti eritis	ye will have been loved
Am-ätüs eris	he will have been loved.	Am-äti erunt	they will have been loved.
or fuëris,			
Am-ätüs erit			
or fuërit,			

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Am-äre,	Be thou loved.	P. Am-amini,	Be ye loved.
------------	----------------	--------------	--------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Am-ätör,	Thou shalt be loved	P. Am-antor,	They shall be loved, or let them be loved.
Am-ätör,	he shall be loved, or let him be loved.		

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Am-ër,	I may be loved	P. Am-ëmür,	We may be loved
Am-ëris or	thou mayst be loved	Am-ëmini,	ye may be loved
am-ëre,	he may be loved.	Am-ëntür,	they may be loved.
Am-ëtür,			

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ärër,	I might be loved	P. Am-ärëmür,	We might be loved
Am-ärëris or	thou mightst be loved	Am-ärëmini,	ye might be loved
am-ärëre,	he might be loved.	Am-ärentür,	they might be loved.
Am-äretür,			

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ätüs sim	I may have been loved	P. Am-äti simüs	We may have been loved
or fuërim,	thou mayst have been loved	Am-äti sitis	ye may have been loved
Am-ätüs sis	he may have been loved.	Am-äti sint	they may have been loved.
or fuëris,			
Am-ätüs sit			
or fuërit,			

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Am-ätüs essem	I might have been loved	P. Am-äti essëmüs	We might have been loved
or fuëissem,	thou mightst have been loved	Am-äti essëtis	ye might have been loved
Am-ätüs essës	he might have been loved.	Am-äti essent	they might have been loved.
or fuëssës,			
Am-ätüs essët			
or fuëssët,			

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Am-äri,	to be loved.
PERFECT.	Am-ätum (am, um) essë or fuissë,	to have been loved.
FUTURE.	Am-ätum iri,	to be about to be loved.

Obs. The form amätum in the Future-Infinitive is the Supine; and consequently the same for all genders.

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	Am-ätüs (a, um),	loved or having been loved.
GERUNDIVE.	Am-andüs (a, um),	fit to be loved.



## § 96. SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mōnēōr, mōnītūs sum or fui, mōnērī,—to be advised.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēōr,	I am advised	P. Mōn-ēmūr,	We are advised
Mōn-ēris or	thou art advised	Mōn-ēmīni,	ye are advised
mōn-ērē,	he is advised.	Mōn-entūr,	they are advised.
Mōn-ētūr,			

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbār,	I was being advised	P. Mōn-ēbāmūr,	We were being advised
Mōn-ēbāris or	thou wast being advised	Mōn-ēbāmīni,	ye were being advised
mōn-ēbārē,	he was being advised.	Mōn-ēbantūr,	they were being advised.
Mōn-ēbātūr,			

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbōr,	I shall be advised	P. Mōn-ēbīmūr,	We shall be advised
Mōn-ēbōris or	thou wilt be advised	Mōn-ēbīmīni,	ye will be advised
Mōn-ēbōrē,	he will be advised.	Mōn-ēbuntūr,	they will be advised.
Mōn-ēbītūr,			

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs sum	I have been advised, or was advised	P. Mōn-ītī sūmūs	We have been advised, or were advised
or fui,		or fuimūs,	
Mōn-ītūs ēs	thou hast been advised	Mōn-ītī estūs	ye have been advised, or were advised
or fuistī,		or fuistīs,	
Mōn-ītūs est	he has been advised, or was advised.	Mōn-ītī sunt,	they have been advised, or were advised.
or fuit,		fuērunt, or	
		fuērē,	

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs ēram	I had been advised	P. Mōn-ītī ērāmūs	We had been advised
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	
Mōn-ītūs ērās	thou hadst been advised	Mōn-ītī ērātīs	ye had been advised, or fuērātīs,
or fuērās,			
Mōn-ītūs ērāt	he had been advised.	Mōn-ītī ērant	they had been advised, or fuērant,
or fuērāt,			

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs ēro	I shall have been advised	P. Mōn-ītī ērimūs	We shall have been advised
or fuēro,		or fuērimūs,	
Mōn-ītūs ēris	thou wilt have been advised	Mōn-ītī ēritīs	ye will have been advised
or fuērīs,			
Mōn-ītūs ērit	he will have been advised.	Mōn-ītī ērunt	they will have been advised, or fuērint,
or fuērīt,			

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ērē,	Be thou advised.	P. Mōn-ēmīni,	Be ye advised.
-------------	------------------	---------------	----------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ētōr,	Thou shalt be advised	P. Mōn-entōr,	They shall be advised, or let them be advised.
Mōn-ētōr,	he shall be advised, or let him be advised.		

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-eār,	I may be advised	P. Mōn-eāmūr,	We may be advised
Mōn-eāris or	thou mayst be advised	Mōn-eāmīni,	ye may be advised
mōn-eārē,	he may be advised.	Mōn-eantūr,	they may be advised.
Mōn-eātūr,			

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ērēr,	I might be advised	P. Mōn-ērēmūr,	We might be advised
Mōn-ērēris or	thou mightst be advised	Mōn-ērēmīni,	ye might be advised
mōn-ērērē,	he might be advised.	Mōn-ērētūr,	they might be advised.
Mōn-ērētūr,			

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs sim	I may have been advised	P. Mōn-ītī simūs	We may have been advised
or fuērim,		or fuērimūs,	
Mōn-ītūs sis	thou mayst have been advised	Mōn-ītī sitīs	ye may have been advised
or fuērīs,		or fuērītīs,	
Mōn-ītūs sit	he may have been advised.	Mōn-ītī sint	they may have been advised.
or fuērīt,			

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs essem	I might have been advised	P. Mōn-ītī essēmūs	We might have been advised
or fuissem,		or fuissēmūs,	
Mōn-ītūs essēs	thou mightst have been advised	Mōn-ītī essētīs	ye might have been advised
or fuissēs,		or fuissētīs,	
Mōn-ītūs essēt	he might have been advised.	Mōn-ītī essent	they might have been advised.
or fuissēt,			

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT. Mōn-ērī,	to be advised.
PERFECT. Mōn-ītum (am, um), essē or fuissē,	to have been advised.
FUTURE. Mōn-ītum irī,	to be about to be advised.

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Mōn-ītūs (a, um),	advised or having been advised.
GERUNDIVE. Mōn-endūs (a, um),	fit to be advised.



## § 97. THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Rēgōr, rectus sum or fui, rēgī, —to be ruled.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ōr,	I am ruled	P. Rēg-īmur,	We are ruled
Rēg-ēris	or { thou art ruled	Rēg-īminī,	ye are ruled
rēg-ērē,		Rēg-untūr,	they are ruled.
Rēg-itūr,	he is ruled.		

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ēbār,	{ I was being ruled	P. Rēg-ēbāmūr,	{ We were being ruled
Rēg-ēbāris	or { thou wast being ruled	Rēg-ēbāmīnī,	{ ye were being ruled
rēg-ēbārē,		Rēg-ēbantūr,	{ they were being ruled
Rēg-ēbātūr,	{ he was being ruled.		

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-ār,	I shall be ruled	P. Rēg-ēmūr,	We shall be ruled
Rēg-ēris	or { thou wilt be ruled	Rēg-ēmīnī,	ye will be ruled
rēg-ērē,		Rēg-entūr,	they will be ruled.
Rēg-ētūr,	he will be ruled.		

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs sum	{ I have been ruled, or was ruled	P. Rec-tī sūmūs	{ We have been ruled, or were ruled
or fui,	or { thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled	Rec-tī estīs	{ ye have been ruled, or were ruled
Rec-tūs ēs		Rec-tī sunt,	{ they have been ruled, or were ruled.
fuiſtī,	ruled		
Rectūs est	or { he has been ruled, or was ruled.		
fuit,			

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēram	{ I had been ruled	Rec-tī ērāmūs	{ We had been ruled
or fuēram,	or { thou hadst been ruled	Rec-tī ērātīs	{ ye had been ruled
Rec-tūs ērās		Rec-tī ērant	{ they had been ruled.
or fuērās,	ruled		
Rec-tūs ērāt	or { he had been ruled.		
or fuērāt,			

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs ēro	{ I shall have been ruled	P. Rec-tī ērimūs	{ We shall have been ruled
or fuēro,	or { thou wilt have been ruled	Rec-tī ēritīs	{ ye will have been ruled
Rec-tūs ēris		Rec-tī ērint	{ they will have been ruled.
or fuēris,	ruled		
Rec-tūs ērit	or { he will have been ruled.		
or fuērit,			

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērē,	Be thou ruled.	P. Rēg-īminī,	Be ye ruled.
-------------	----------------	---------------	--------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Rēg-itōr,	Thou shalt be ruled	P. Rēg-untōr,	They shall be ruled, or let them be ruled.
Rēg-itōr,	he shall be ruled, or let him be ruled.		

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ār,	I may be ruled	P. Rēg-āmūr,	We may be ruled
Rēg-āris	or { thou mayst be ruled	Rēg-āmīnī,	ye may be ruled
rēg-ārē,		Rēg-antūr,	they may be ruled.
Rēg-ātūr,	he may be ruled.		

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērēr,	I might be ruled	P. Rēg-ērēmūr,	We might be ruled
Rēg-ērēris	or { thou mightst be ruled	Rēg-ērēmīnī,	ye might be ruled
rēg-ērērē,		Rēg-erētūr,	they might be ruled.
Rēg-erētūr,	he might be ruled.		

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs sim	{ I may have been ruled	P. Rec-tī simūs	{ We may have been ruled
or fuērim,	or { thou mayst have been ruled	Rec-tī sitīs	{ ye may have been ruled
Rec-tūs sis		Rec-tī sint	{ they may have been ruled.
or fuēris,	ruled		
Rec-tūs sit	or { he may have been ruled.		
fuērit,			

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tūs essem	{ I might have been ruled	P. Rec-tī essēmūs	{ We might have been ruled
or fuissem,	or { thou mightst have been ruled	Rec-tī essētīs	{ ye might have been ruled
Rec-tūs essēs		Rec-tī essēt	{ they might have been ruled.
or fuissēs,	ruled		
Rec-tūs essēt	or { he might have been ruled.		
or fuissēt,			

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Rēg-i,	to be ruled.
PERFECT.	Rec-tum (am, um) essē or fuissē,	to have been ruled.
FUTURE.	Rec-tum iri,	to be about to be ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	Rec-tūs (a, um),	ruled or having been ruled.
GERUNDIVE.	Rēg-endūs (a, um),	fit to be ruled.

## § 93. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Audīr, auditūs sum or fui, audiri,—to be heard.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iōr,	I am heard	P. Aud-imūr,	We are heard
Aud-iris or	} thou art heard	Aud-imīnī,	ye are heard
aud-irē,		Aud-iuntūr,	they are heard.
Aud-itūr,	he is heard.		

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iēbār,	{ I was being heard	P. Aud-iēbāmūr,	{ We were being heard
Aud-iēbāris or	} thou wast being heard	Aud-iēbāmīnī,	} ye were being heard
aud-iēbārē,		Aud-iēbantūr,	
Aud-iēbātūr,	he was being heard.		

## 3. FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-iār,	I shall be heard	P. Aud-iēmūr,	We shall be heard
Aud-iēris or	} thou wilt be heard	Aud-iēmīnī,	ye will be heard
aud-iērē,		Aud-ientūr,	they will be heard.
Aud-iētūr	he will be heard.		

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs sum	{ I have been heard, or was heard	P. Aud-itī sūmūs	{ We have been heard, or were heard
or fui,	} thou hast been heard, or wast heard	Aud-itī estīs	} ye have been heard, or were heard
Aud-itūs ēs		Aud-itī sunt,	
or fuistī,	he has been heard, or was heard.	fuērunt, or	heard.
Aud-itūs est		fuērē,	
or fuit,			

## 5. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs ēram	{ I had been heard	P. Aud-itī ērāmūs	{ We had been heard
or fuēram,	} thou hadst been heard	Aud-itī ērātīs	} ye had been heard
Aud-itūs ērās		Aud-itī ērant	
or fuērās,	he had been heard.	or fuērant,	heard.
Aud-itūs ērāt			
or fuērāt,			

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs ēro	{ I shall have been heard	P. Aud-itī ērimūs	{ We shall have been heard
or fuēro,	} thou wilt have been heard	Aud-itī ēritīs	} ye will have been heard
Aud-itūs ēris		Aud-itī ērunt	
or fuērīs,	he will have been heard.	or fuērīnt,	been heard.
Aud-itūs ērit			
or fuērīt,			

## PERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-irē,	Be thou heard.	P. Aud-imīnī,	Be ye heard.
-------------	----------------	---------------	--------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-itōr,	Thou shalt be heard	P. Aud-iuntōr,	They shall be heard,
Aud-itōr,	he shall be heard, or let him be heard.		or let them be heard.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iār,	I may be heard	P. Aud-iāmūr,	We may be heard
Aud-iāris or	} thou mayst be heard	Aud-iāmīnī,	ye may be heard
aud-iārē,		Aud-iantūr,	they may be heard.
Aud-iātūr,	he may be heard.		

## 2. PAST-IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irēr,	I might be heard	P. Aud-irēmūr,	We might be heard
Aud-irēris or	} thou mightst be heard	Aud-irēmīnī,	ye might be heard
aud-irērē,		Aud-irentūr,	they might be heard.
Aud-irētūr,	he might be heard.		

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs sim	{ I may have been heard	P. Aud-itī sīmūs	{ We may have been heard
or fuērīm,	} thou mayst have been heard	Aud-itī sītīs	} ye may have been heard
Aud-itūs sis		Aud-itī sint	
or fuērīs,	he may have been heard.	or fuērīnt,	been heard.
Aud-itūs sit			
or fuērīt,			

## 4. PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs essem	{ I might have been heard	P. Aud-itī essēmūs	{ We might have been heard
or fuissem,	} thou mightst have been heard	Aud-itī essētīs	} ye might have been heard
Aud-itūs essēs		Aud-itī essent	
or fuissēs,	he might have been heard.	or fuissent,	been heard.
Aud-itūs essēt			
or fuissēt,			

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

IMPERFECT.	Aud-irī,	to be heard.
PERFECT.	Aud-itum (am, um) essē or fuissē,	to have been heard.
FUTURE.	Aud-itum irī,	to be about to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.	Aud-itūs (a, um),	heard or having been heard.
GERUNDIVE.	Aud-iendūs (a, um)	fit to be heard.

## § 99. EXAMPLES FOR CONJUGATION.

Examples for Conjugation like *amo*. (See also § 149.)

accūso, <i>I accuse.</i>	hōnōro, <i>I honour.</i>	opto, <i>I wish.</i>
āro, <i>I plough.</i>	laudo, <i>I praise.</i>	orno, <i>I adorn.</i>
elāmo, <i>I cry out.</i>	libero, <i>I set free.</i>	paro, <i>I prepare.</i>
hābito, <i>I dwell.</i>	nōmīno, <i>I name.</i>	rogo, <i>I ask.</i>

Examples for Conjugation like *moneo*. (See also § 150.)

adhībeo, <i>I apply.</i>	hābeo, <i>I have.</i>	plāceo, <i>I please.</i>
cōhibeo, <i>I restrain.</i>	māreo, <i>I deserve.</i>	praebeo, <i>I present.</i>
dēbeo, <i>I owe.</i>	nōceo, <i>I injure.</i>	prōhibeo, <i>I prevent.</i>
exerceo, <i>I exercise.</i>	pāreo, <i>I obey.</i>	terreo, <i>I frighten.</i>

Examples for Conjugation like *rego*. (See also §§ 157, sq.)

cingo, <i>I gird.</i>	dūco, <i>I lead.</i>	plango, <i>I beat.</i>	tēgo, <i>I cover.</i>
dico, <i>I say.</i>	jungo, <i>I join.</i>	sūgo, <i>I suck.</i>	tingo, <i>I dye.</i>

Obs. Dico, *speaking*, dūco, *lead*, have aīc, dūc, in the Singular Imperative Present Active. See § 106, Obs. (p. 69).

Examples for Conjugation like *audio*. (See also § 168.)

custōdio, <i>I guard.</i>	finio, <i>I end.</i>	mūnio, <i>I fortify.</i>
dormio, <i>I sleep.</i>	impedio, <i>I hinder.</i>	nūtrio, <i>I nourish.</i>
erūdio, <i>I train.</i>	mollio, <i>I soften.</i>	pūnio, <i>I punish.</i>

## § 100. THIRD CONJUGATION MIXED WITH THE FOURTH.

Cāpio, cēpi, captum, cāpērē,—to take.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	Cāp-io, <i>I take</i>	Cāp-imūs, <i>We take</i>
	Cāp-is, <i>thou takest</i>	Cāp-itīs, <i>ye take</i>
	Cāp-it, <i>he takes.</i>	Cāp-iunt, <i>they take.</i>
Past-Imperf.	Cāp-iēbam, <i>I was taking,</i>	like aud-iēbam.
Future.	Cāp-iam, <i>I shall take,</i>	„ aud-iam.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	Cāp-iam, <i>I may take,</i>	like aud-iam.
Past-Imperf.	Cāp-ērem, <i>I might take,</i>	„ rēg-ērem.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.	Cāp-ē, <i>take thou,</i>	like rēg-ē.
Future.	Cāp-ito, <i>thou shalt take,</i>	„ rēg-ito.
	Cāp-iunto, <i>they shall take,</i>	„ aud-iunto.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Cāp-ērē, <i>to take,</i>	like rēg-ērē.
------------	--------------------------	---------------

## PARTICIPLE.

Imperfect.	Cāp-iens, <i>taking,</i>	like aud-iens.
------------	--------------------------	----------------

## GERUND.

Cāp-iendi, <i>of taking,</i>	like aud-iendi.
------------------------------	-----------------

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	Cāp-iōr, <i>I am taken</i>	Cāp-imūr, <i>We are taken</i>
	Cāp-ēris, <i>thou art</i>	Cāp-imīni, <i>ye are taken</i>
	or -ērē, <i>taken</i>	Cāp-iuntūr, <i>they are taken.</i>
Past-Imperf.	Cāp-iēbār, <i>I was being taken,</i>	like aud-iēbār.
Future.	Cāp-iār, <i>I shall be taken,</i>	„ aud-iār.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.	Cāp-iār, <i>I may be taken,</i>	like aud-iār.
Past-Imperf.	Cāp-ērēr, <i>I might be taken,</i>	„ rēg-ērēr.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.	Cāp-ērē, <i>be thou taken,</i>	like rēg-ērē.
Future.	Cāp-itōr, <i>thou shalt be taken,</i>	„ rēg-itōr.
	Cāp-iuntor, <i>they shall be taken,</i>	„ aud-iuntōr.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect.	Cāp-i, <i>to be taken,</i>	like rēg-i.
------------	----------------------------	-------------

Obs. 1. The Tenses derived from the Perfect and Supine are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular: cēp-i, cēp-eram, cēp-ero, &c.; capturus sim, captus sum, &c.

Obs. 2. The Verbs conjugated like cāpio are:

fācio, <i>make.</i>	fēcī, <i>throw.</i>	factum, <i>throw.</i>	fācērē, <i>make.</i>	make.
jācio, <i>throw.</i>	jēcī, <i>throw.</i>	jactum, <i>throw.</i>	jācērē, <i>throw.</i>	throw.
fūgio, <i>fly.</i>	fūgī, <i>fly.</i>	fūgitum, <i>fly.</i>	fūgērē, <i>fly.</i>	fly.
fodio, <i>dig.</i>	fodī, <i>dig.</i>	fossam, <i>dig.</i>	fodērē, <i>dig.</i>	dig.
rāpio, <i>seize.</i>	rāpui, <i>seize.</i>	raptum, <i>seize.</i>	rāpērē, <i>seize.</i>	seize.
pārio, <i>bring forth.</i>	pēpēri, <i>bring forth.</i>	partum, <i>bring forth.</i>	pārērē, <i>bring forth.</i>	bring forth.
quātio, <i>shake.</i>	(no perfect), <i>shake.</i>	quassum, <i>shake.</i>	quātērē, <i>shake.</i>	shake.
cūpio, <i>desire.</i>	cūpti, <i>desire.</i>	cūptum, <i>desire.</i>	cūpērē, <i>desire.</i>	desire.
sāpio, <i>taste.</i>	sāpivi, <i>taste.</i>		sāpērē, <i>taste.</i>	taste.
lācio, <i>draw</i>	lācī, <i>draw</i>		lācērē, <i>draw</i>	draw
spēcio, <i>look</i>	spēcī, <i>look</i>		spēcērē, <i>look</i>	look

Also the Deponent Verbs:

grādior, <i>walk.</i>	gressus sum, <i>walk.</i>	grādī, <i>walk.</i>	walk.
mōriōr, <i>die.</i>	mortuus sum, <i>die.</i>	mōrī, <i>die.</i>	die.
pātior, <i>suffer.</i>	passus sum, <i>suffer.</i>	pātī, <i>suffer.</i>	suffer.

Obs. 3. Ōrior, ortus sum, ōrīrī, to rise, follows the Third Conjugation only in the Present Indicative and in the Imperative.

- § 101. I. Hortör, hortätüs sum, hortäri, to exhort, like ämör.  
 II. Vêreör, vëritüs sum, vërëri, to fear, „ möneör.

INDICATIVE MOOD.	{	Present.	Hortör, Hort-äris (äre), &c.	I exhort. } thou exhortest, &c.	II. Vër-cör, Vër-ëris (ëre), &c.	I fear. } thou fearest, &c.
		Past-Imp.	Hort-äbär, Hort-äbör,	I was exhorting. I shall exhort.	Vër-ëbär, Vër-ëbör,	I was fearing. I shall fear.
		Future.	Hort-äbör,	I have exhorted, or I exhorted.	Vër-itäs sum,	I have feared, or I feared.
		Perfect.	Hort-ätäs sum,	I had exhorted.	Vër-itäs ëram,	I had feared.
		Past-Perf.	Hort-ätäs ëram,	I shall have ex- horted.	Vër-itäs ëro,	I shall have feared.
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	{	Present.	Hort-ër, Hort-ärër,	I may exhort. I might exhort.	Vër-ëär, Vër-ërër,	I may fear. I might fear.
		Future.	Hort-ätüräs sim,	I may be about to exhort.	Vër-itüräs sim,	I may be about to fear.
		Perfect.	Hort-ätüs sim,	I may have ex- horted.	Vër-itäs sim,	I may have feared.
		Past-Perf.	Hort-ätüs essem,	I might have exhorted.	Vër-itäs essem,	I might have feared.
		IMPERATIVE.	{	Present.	Hort-ärë,	Exhort thou.
Future.	Hort-ätör,			thou shalt ex- hort.	Vër-ëtör,	thou shalt fear.
INFINITIVE.	{	Imperf.	Hort-äri,	to exhort.	Vër-ëri,	to fear.
		Perfect.	Hort-ätum essë,	to have ex- horted.	Vër-itum essë,	to have feared.
		Future.	Hort-ätürum essë,	to be about to exhort.	Vër-itürum essë,	to be about to fear.
PARTICIPLES.	{	Imperf.	Hort-ans,	exhorting.	Vër-ens,	fearing.
		Future.	Hort-ätüräs, Hort-ätäs,	about to exhort. having exhorted.	Vër-itüräs, Vër-itäs,	about to fear. having feared.
		Gerundive.	Hort-andäs,	fit to be ex- horted.	Vër-endäs,	fit to be feared.
		SUPINES.	{	Hort-ätum, Hort-ätü,	to exhort. to be exhorted.	Vër-ätum, Vër-itü,
GERUND.	Hort-andi,			of exhorting.	Vër-endi,	of fearing.

## Examples for Conjugation.

- I. Cönör, I endeavour.  
 Consölör, I console.  
 Mirör, I wonder.
- II. Intueör, I behold.  
 Mëreör, I deserve.  
 Pollicëör, I promise.

Obs. 1. Besides the Passive forms, the Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle with an active meaning: as, hortätüs, having exhorted.

The Gerundive and Perfect Participle (the latter only in certain verbs), are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning: as, hortandüs, fit to be exhorted; adeptus, having obtained, or having been obtained. The following are the principal Perfect Participles of Deponent Verbs used in a Passive sense: äbüminätüs, adeptus, auspiciätüs, amplexus, complexus, com-

- III. Löquör, locütüs sum, löqui, to speak, like rêgör.  
 IV. Partiör, partitüs sum, partiri, to divide, „ audiör.

INDICATIVE MOOD.	III.			IV.		
	Present.	Löquör, Löqu-ëris (ëre), &c.	I speak. } thou speakest, &c.	Partiör, Part-iris (irë), &c.	I divide. } thou dividest, &c.	
	Past-Imp.	Löqu-ëbär, Löqu-är,	I was speaking. I shall speak.	Part-icbär, Part-iär,	I was dividing. I shall divide.	
	Perfect.	Löcütäs sum, Löcütäs ëram,	I have spoken, or I spoke.	Part-itäs sum, Part-itäs ëram,	I have divided, or I divided.	
	Past-Perf.	Löcütäs ëram,	I had spoken.	Part-itäs ëram,	I had divided.	
	Fut.-Perf.	Löcütäs ëro,	I shall have spoken.	Part-itäs ëro,	I shall have di- vided.	
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	Present.	Löqu-är, Löqu-ërër,	I may speak. I might speak.	Part-iär, Part-irër,	I may divide. I might divide.	
	Future.	Löcütüräs sim,	I may be about to speak.	Part-itüräs sim,	I may be about to divide.	
	Perfect.	Löcütäs sim,	I may have spoken.	Part-itäs sim,	I may have di- vided.	
	Past-Perf.	Löcütäs essem,	I might have spoken.	Part-itäs essem,	I might have divided.	
IMPERATIVE.	Present.	Löqu-ërë,	Speak thou.	Part-irë,	Divide thou.	
	Future.	Löqu-itör,	thou shalt speak.	Part-itör,	thou shalt di- vide.	
INFINITIVE.	Imperf.	Löqu-i,	to speak.	Part-iri,	to divide.	
	Perfect.	Löcütum essë,	to have spoken.	Part-itum essë,	to have divided.	
	Future.	Löcütürum essë,	to be about to speak.	Part-itürum essë,	to be about to divide.	
PARTICIPLES.	Imperf.	Löqu-ens,	speaking.	Part-iens,	dividing.	
	Future.	Löcütüräs, Löcütäs,	about to speak. having spoken.	Part-itüräs, Part-itäs,	about to divide. having divided.	
	Gerundive.	Löqu-endüs,	fit to be spoken.	Part-iendüs,	fit to be divided.	
SUPINES.		Löcütum, Löcütü,	to speak. to be spoken.	Part-itum, Part-itä,	to divide. to be divided.	
	GERUND.	Löqu-endi,	of speaking.	Part-iendi,	of dividing.	

## Examples for Conjugation.

- III. Fruör, fruitüs sum, I enjoy.  
 Fungör, functüs sum, I perform.  
 Lälör, lapsüs sum, I slip.
- IV. Blandiör, I flatter.  
 Largiör, I give money.  
 Mentiör, I lie.

mentus, confessus, dëstëtätüs, ëmentitüs, expertus, exsecrätüs, mödëfütüs, mensus, mödërätüs, öpinätüs, pactus, partitüs, testätüs, ultus. See §§ 169-172.

Obs. 2. Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in u and no Gerundive.

Obs. 3. The four following Verbs have a Passive form with an Active meaning in the Perfect Tenses only, and are therefore called Semi-Deponents, or Neuter-Passives:

- Söleo, sölitüs sum, sölerë, to be accustomed. | Gaudeo, gävisüs sum, gaudërë, to rejoice.  
 Audeo, ausüs sum, audërë, to dare. | Fido, fisüs sum, fidërë, to trust.

## CHAPTER XIX.—PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 102. I. THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Future Participle in *urus* with the Verb *sum*, and expresses intention or futurity.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amātūrus sum,</i>	<i>I am about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amātūrus eram,</i>	<i>I was about to love.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Amātūrus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fui,</i>	<i>I have been or was about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fueram,</i>	<i>I had been about to love.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amātūrus sim,</i>	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amātūrus essem,</i>	<i>I might be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fuërim,</i>	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrus fuisset,</i>	<i>I might have been about to love.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrum esse,</i>	<i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amātūrum fuissē,</i>	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

II. THE PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION consists of the Gerundive with the Verb *sum*, and expresses that which is to be, should be, or ought to be done.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amandus sum,</i>	<i>I am to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amandus eram,</i>	<i>I was to be loved.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Amandus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fui,</i>	<i>I have been or was to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fueram,</i>	<i>I had been to be loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Amandus sim,</i>	<i>I may be to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	<i>Amandus essem,</i>	<i>I might be to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fuërim,</i>	<i>I may have been to be loved.</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandus fuisset,</i>	<i>I might have been to be loved.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Amandum esse,</i>	<i>to be fit to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Amandum fuissē,</i>	<i>to have been fit to be loved.</i>

Obs. 1. This passive conjugation occurs only in transitive verbs. In other verbs the impersonal form is used, and the agent is represented by the Dative: as, *mihi eundem est, I must go*; *obliviscendum tibi injuriarum esse censeo, I am of opinion that you ought to forget your wrongs.*

Obs. 2. The translations above given are intended rather to represent the meaning of the separate words than the ordinary signification of the combinations, which will be fully explained in the Syntax.

## CHAPTER XX.—STEMS OF VERBS, FORMATION OF TENSES, AND PECULIAR FORMS.

§ 103. STEMS.—The *Stems* of Verbs of the First Conjugation end in *a*: as, *ama, love.*

The *Stems* of Verbs of the Second Conjugation end in *e*: as, *mone, advise.*

The *Stems* of Verbs of the Third Conjugation end in a consonant or *u*: as, *rēg, rule*; *minu, lessen.*

The *Stems* of Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation end in *i*: as, *audi, hear.*

§ 104. UNCONTRACTED AND CONTRACTED VERBS.—In the Third Conjugation the Terminations of the Persons and of the Tenses are affixed without any change in the Stem; but in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations the Vowel of the Stem is frequently contracted with the Vowels of the Terminations. Hence the Third Conjugation is *Uncontracted*, the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations are *Contracted*. This will be seen from the Present Indicative Active.

## III CONJUGATION.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. <i>rēg-o</i>	<i>mīnu-o</i>
	2. <i>rēg-Is</i>	<i>mīnu-Is</i>
	3. <i>rēg-It</i>	<i>mīnu-It</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. <i>rēg-Imūs</i>	<i>mīnu-Imūs</i>
	2. <i>rēg-Itīs</i>	<i>mīnu-Itīs</i>
	3. <i>rēg-unt</i>	<i>mīnu-unt</i>

I CONJUGATION.		II CONJUGATION.	IV CONJUGATION.
<i>Sing.</i>	1. <i>āma-o = āmo</i>	<i>mōne-o</i>	<i>audi-o</i>
	2. <i>āma-is = āmās</i>	<i>mōne-is = mōnēs</i>	<i>audi-Is = audīs</i>
	3. <i>āma-It = āmāt</i>	<i>mōne-It = mōnēt</i>	<i>audi-It = audit</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. <i>āma-Imūs = āmāmūs</i>	<i>mōne-Imūs = mōnēmūs</i>	<i>audi-Imūs = audimūs</i>
	2. <i>āma-Itīs = āmātīs</i>	<i>mōne-Itīs = mōnētīs</i>	<i>audi-Itīs = auditīs</i>
	3. <i>āma-unt = āmant</i>	<i>mōne-unt = mōnent</i>	<i>audi-unt</i>

§ 105. PERSONAL TERMINATIONS.—The Personal Terminations are the personal pronouns more or less corrupted. The regular terminations in the Active Voice are in their simplest form:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1.	-m	-mus	as in	<i>rēgēba-m</i>	<i>rēgēba-mūs</i>
2.	-s	-tis	„	<i>rēgēba-s</i>	<i>rēgēba-tīs</i>
3.	-t	-nt	„	<i>rēgēba-t</i>	<i>rēgēba-nt.</i>

Or with a vowel prefixed :

	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
1.	o-(m)	ī-mūs	as in	rĕg-o	rĕg-ī-mūs
2.	ī-s	ī-tīs	"	rĕg-ī-s	rĕg-ī-tīs
3.	ī-t	u-nt	"	rĕg-ī-t	rĕg-u-nt.

Obs. I. *Active Voice*.—1. The -m is the 1st personal pronoun, which appears in mōī, mīhī, mē. It disappears in the 1st person singular of the present indicative of all verbs except *sum, I am, inquam, I say*. In the plural -mus the letter s is the sign of plurality.

2. The -s is the 2nd personal pronoun, and represents the t in tu, tui, tibi, te (Gr. σὺ). In the 2nd person of the perfect indicative (rexistī) the t appears. Also in the plural -tis the t represents the 2nd person, the s being the sign of plurality, as in the 1st person.

3. The -t is the 3rd personal pronoun, and is the same root as appears in the Greek article, and in the English pronouns *this* and *that*. In the plural -nt the letter n is the sign of plurality. The letter n, as well as s, is a sign of plurality in other languages akin to the Latin. Thus in English we have ox-en as well as dog-s.

II. *Passive Voice*. 1. The 1st personal termination singular always disappears before -r, the sign of the passive: as, rĕgĕbā-r from rĕgĕba-m; rĕgā-r from rĕga-m; rĕgĕrē-r from rĕgĕre-m, &c. In the plural in like manner s, the sign of plurality, disappears before the r: as, rĕgĕbāmu-r from rĕgĕbāmus; rĕgāmu-r from rĕgāmus; rĕgĕrēmu-r from rĕgĕrēmus.

2. The 2nd personal termination singular is -ris (more rarely -re), in which r represents the s of the Active, and is is the sign of the Passive: as, āmā-r-is from āma-s, āmābī-r-is from āmāba-s.

NOTE.—On the interchange of s and r we have examples in crūs, crūr-is, instead of crus-is, and similar words. (See § 28, Obs. 1, p. 15.)

The 2nd personal termination plural is -imīnī or -mīnī (as rĕg-imīnī, āmā-mīnī), and has no connexion with the singular termination. It is, perhaps, a participial termination (Gr. μενόν).

3. The 3rd personal termination, singular and plural, is formed from the Active Voice by adding -ur, the sign of the Passive: as, rĕgīt-ur, rĕgunt-ur, from rĕgīt, rĕgunt; rĕgĕbāt-ur, rĕgĕbant-ur, from rĕgĕbāt, rĕgĕbant.

§ 106. FORMATION OF THE IMPERFECT TENSES.—1. *Present Tenses*.—The *Indicative* and *Imperative* are formed by adding the personal terminations to the stem without any tense suffix. In the *Imperative* the s, the termination of the 2nd person, is dropped, and e alone remains: as, rĕg-ĕ, rĕg-ītē in the contracted conjugations, āmā = āma-ĕ; mōnē = mōne-ĕ; audi = audi-ĕ.

The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix -a: as, rĕg-a-m, mōne-a-m, audi-a-m. In the 1st conjugation the a of the stem is contracted with the a of the tense suffix into e: as, āma-a-m = āme-m. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix -rē: as, rĕg-ĕrē in the contracted conjugations, āmā-rē = āma-ĕrē; mōnē-re = mōne-ĕrē; audi-rē = audi-ĕrē. The *Participle* has the suffix -ens (stem -ent). as, rĕg-ens, audi-

ens: in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, āma-ns = āma-ens; mōne-ns = mōne-ens.

Obs. The e of the Imperative is dropped in dīc, *speak*, from dīco; dūc, *lead*, from dūco; fāc, *make*, from fācio; fĕr, *bring*, from fĕro.

2. *Past-Imperfect Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix ēba: as, rĕg-ēba-m, audi-ēba-m; in the 1st and 2nd conjugations, āmā-ba-m = āma-ēba-m; mōnē-ba-m = mōne-ēba-m. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix ĕre: as, rĕg-ĕre-m; in the contracted conjugations āmā-re-m = āma-ĕre-m; mōnē-re-m = mōne-ĕre-m; audi-re-m = audi-ĕre-m.

Obs. The suffix ēba, originally ba, is the same as fu, the root of fu-i.

3. *Future Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix b in the 1st and 2nd conjugations: as, āmā-b-o; mōnē-b-o: and the tense suffix a or e in the 3rd and 4th conjugations, a being used in the first person, and e in all the other persons: as, rĕg-a-m, rĕg-ē-s, rĕg-ĕ-t, &c.; audi-a-m, audi-ē-s, audi-ĕ-t, &c.

Obs. The suffix b is also the same as fu, which has a future meaning in fore. The futures in the 3rd and 4th conjugations are allied to the Subjunctive; but these conjugations, in all probability, originally formed their futures in b: the forms ībo and scībo, from eo and scīo, were in common use.

The annexed Table exhibits the above Tense Terminations with the Contractions:

ACTIVE VOICE.		III.	I.	II.	IV.
	INDICATIVE.				
	<i>Present.</i>	rĕg-o	āma-o = āmo	mōne-o	audi-o
	<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	rĕg-ēbam	āma-ēbam = āmābam	mōne-ēbam = mōnēbam	audi-ēbam
	<i>Future.</i>	rĕg-am	āma-bo	mōnē-bo	audi-am
	SUBJUNCTIVE.				
	<i>Present.</i>	rĕg-am	āma-am = āmem	mōne-am	audi-am
	<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	rĕg-ĕrem	āma-ĕrem = āmārem	mōne-ĕrem = mōnērem	audi-ĕrem = audīrem
	IMPERATIVE.				
	<i>Present.</i>	rĕg-ĕ	āma-ĕ = āmā	mōne-ĕ = mōnē	audi-ĕ = audī
	<i>Future.</i>	rĕg-īto	āma-īto = āmāto	mōne-īto = mōnēto	audi-īto = audīto
	INFINITIVE.	rĕg-ĕrē	āma-ĕrē = āmāre	mōne-ĕrē = mōnēre	audi-ĕrē = audīre
	PARTICIPLE.	rĕg-ens	āma-ens = āmans	mōne-ens = mōnens	audi-ens

PASSIVE VOICE.	INDICATIVE. <i>Present.</i>	III. rĕg-ŕ	I. āma-ŕ = āmŕ	II. mōne-ŕ	IV. audi-ŕ
	<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	rĕg-ĕbār	āma-ĕbār = āmābār	mōne-ĕbār = mōnēbar	audi-ĕbār
	<i>Future.</i>	rĕg-ār	āmā-bor	mōnē-bŕ	audi-ār
	SUBJUNCTIVE. <i>Present.</i>	rĕg-ār	āma-ār = āmŕ	mōne-ār	audi-ār
	<i>Past-Imperf.</i>	rĕg-ĕrĕr	āma-ĕrĕr = āmārĕr	mōne-ĕrĕr = mōnērĕr	audi-ĕrĕr = audirĕr
	IMPERATIVE. <i>Present.</i>	rĕg-ĕrĕ'	āma-ĕrĕ = āmārĕ	mōne-ĕrĕ = mōnērĕ	audi-ĕrĕ = audirĕ
	<i>Future.</i>	rĕg-ītŕ	āma-ītŕ = āmātŕ	mōne-ītŕ = mōnētŕ	audi-ītŕ = auditŕ
	INFINITIVE.	rĕg-i	āma-ĕri = āmāri	mōne-ĕri = mōnĕri	audi-ĕri = audiri
	GERUNDIVE.	rĕg-endūs	āma-endūs = āmandūs	mōne-endūs = mōnendūs	audi-endūs

*Obs.* The Stems of some Verbs are strengthened in the Imperfect Tenses in the following ways:—

1. By the insertion of *n* or *m* before the final consonant: as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.	
scīd	scīdo scīdēbam scīdam	scīdī	tear
tūg	tango tangēbam tangam	tē-tīgī	touch.
rūp	rumpo rumpēbam rumpam	rūpī	burst.

*n* is inserted before the dental and guttural letters: as, scīdo, frango;  
*m* before the labial letters: as, cumbo.

2. By the insertion of *n* after the final consonant: as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.	
spĕr	spĕrno spĕrnēbam spĕrnā	spĕr-vī	despise.
cĕr	cerno cernēbam cernā	crĕ-vī	distinguish.
pŏs	pŏno pŏnēbam pŏnā	pŏs-uī	place.

Pŏno is instead of pos-no, the *s* being dropped before *n*.

3. By adding *t* or doubling the final consonant: as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.	
fĕc	flecto flectēbam flectam	flexī	bend.
pĕl	pello pellēbam pellam	pĕ-pŭlī	drive.

4. By reduplication, that is, by prefixing the initial consonant with the connecting vowel *i*: as,

Stem.	Imperfect Tenses.	Perfect Tense.	
gĕn	gi-gno gi-gnēbam gi-gnam	gĕn-uī	produce.
sta	si-sto si-stēbam si-stam	stī-tī	cause to stand.

*Obs.* Gigno is a contraction for gi-gĕno.

5. By adding *sc*, which is the termination of the inceptive verbs. See § 164.

§ 107. FORMATION OF THE PERFECT TENSES. The Perfect Tenses are formed:

1. By adding *v* to the Stem: as, āma (āmo), āmā-v-ī; audi (audio), audi-v-ī. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the First and Fourth Conjugations.

2. By adding *u* to the Stem: as, mōnĕ (mōneo), mōn-u-ī. The final vowel of the Stem is dropped. This is the regular way of forming the Perfects of the Second Conjugation.

*Obs.* 1. The terminations *v* and *u* are the same, and are derived from fu-ī, the Perfect of the verb *to be*.

2. Some verbs drop the sign of the Perfect; this is especially the case with Stems ending in *u* or *v*: as, mīnu-o, mīnu-ī, lessen; volv-o, volv-ī, roll; vert-o, vert-ī, turn.

3. By adding *s* to the Stem: as, rĕg (rĕgŏ), rexī = reg-s-ī.

*Obs.* The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted.

(i) *cs*, *gs*, *qs*, *hs* are contracted into *x*: as, dūco, duxī, lead;

cōquo, coxi, cook; trāho, traxī, drag.

(ii) *b* is changed into *p* before *s*: as, scribo, scripsi, write; nūbo, nupsi, marry (of women).

(iii) *t* and *d* are dropped before *s*: as, mitto, mīsi, send; laedo, laesi, injure.

4. By reduplication: as,

tend	(tendo),	tē-tendī,	stretch.
cād	(cādo),	cē-cidī,	fall.
morde	(mordeo),	mō-mordī,	bite.

5. By lengthening the vowel of the Stem: as,

jāc or jāci	(jācio),	jēcī,	throw.
vĕni	(vĕnio),	vēnī,	come.
mōve	(mōveo),	mōvī,	move.

*Obs.* In compound Verbs the Reduplication is usually omitted: as, tundo, tūtūdī, beat, but contundo, contūdī, beat small, bruise; pello, pĕpŭlī drive, but compello, compŭllī, drive together.



1. *Present-Perfect* or *Aorist Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *is*; 2nd pers. *āmāv-is-tī*, *āmāv-is-tis*; 3rd pers. *āmāv-ēr-unt*; the *s* disappears in the other persons. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *eri*: as, *āmāv-ēri-m*. The *Infinitive* has the tense suffix *issē*: as, *āmāv-issē*.

Obs. 1. In the *Indicative is* is probably the same as *es*, the stem of 's-um. The change of *i* into *er* in the 3rd persn plural (*āmāv-ēr-unt*) is also found in *pulvis*, *pulvēr-is*, *dust*.

Obs. 2. In the *Subjunctive eri-m* is the same as *esi-m* or 'si-m, the present subjunctive of *sum*.

Obs. 3. In the *Infinitive isse* is the same as *essē*, the present Infinitive of *sum*.

2. *Past-Perfect Tenses*.—The *Indicative* has the tense suffix *era*: as, *āmāv-ēra-m*. The *Subjunctive* has the tense suffix *esse*: as, *āmāv-isse-m*.

Obs. The suffixes *era-m* and *esse-m* are the same as *era-m* and *esse-m*, the past Indicative and Subjunctive of *sum*.

The *Future-Perfect Tense* has the suffix *ēr*: as, *āmāv-ēr-o*.

Obs. The suffix *er-o* is the future of *sum*.

§ 108. The *Supine* is formed by adding *tum* and *tu* to the Stem: as,

I. <i>Āmā-tum</i> , <i>āmā-tū</i> .	III. <i>Rec-tum</i> , <i>rec-tū</i> .
II. <i>Mōnī-tum</i> , <i>mōnī-tū</i> .	IV. <i>Audi-tum</i> , <i>audi-tū</i> .

Obs. 1. In the Second Conjugation the *e* of the Stem is changed into *i*.

Obs. 2. The Euphonic changes of letters must be noted:

- (i) *g*, *q*, *h* become *c* before *t*: as, *rēgo*, *rectum*; *cōquo*, *coctum*; *trāho*; *tractum*.
- (ii) *b* becomes *p* before *t*: as, *scribo*, *scriptum*; *nūbo*, *nuptum*.
- (iii) *d* and *t* are dropped before the *t* of the Supine, which in these cases becomes *s*: as, *laedo*, *laesum*, *injure*; *claudio*, *clausum*, *shut*. In some cases, but rarely, the *d* or *t* of the Stem also becomes *s*: as, *cēdo*, *ces-sum*, *yield*; *mitto*, *mis-sum*, *sent*.

§ 109. The *Future Participle* is formed by adding *tūrūs* to the Stem: as,

*āmā-tūrūs*; *mōnī-tūrūs*; *rec-tūrūs*; *audi-tūrūs*.

Obs. 1. The same euphonic changes of letters occur in the Future Participle as in the Supine: as,

*tractūrūs*, *scriptūrūs*, *laesūrūs*.

Obs. 2. In a few Verbs the Supines of which vary from the regular formation, the Future Participles do not adopt these variations: as,

Stem.	Supine.	Fut. Part.
<i>jūvo</i> ( <i>jūva</i> )	<i>jūtum</i>	<i>jūvātūrūs</i> , <i>help</i> .
<i>sēco</i> ( <i>sēca</i> )	<i>sectum</i>	<i>sēcūtūrūs</i> , <i>cut</i> .
<i>sōno</i> ( <i>sōna</i> )	<i>sōnitum</i>	<i>sōnātūrūs</i> , <i>sound</i> .
<i>mōriōr</i> ( <i>mōr</i> and <i>mōri</i> )	<i>mortuūs</i> ( <i>part.</i> )	<i>mōritūrūs</i> , <i>die</i> .

### § 110. REMARKS UPON CERTAIN FORMS.

1. *Perfect Active*.—(i). On the omission of *v*, *vi*, and *ve*, in the First and Fourth Conjugations see § 91 Obs., § 94 Obs.

Obs. Sometimes the *it* in the Third Person Singular is contracted into *it*: as *pētit* (in Virg. *Aen.* ix. 9) = *pētitvit*: *ābit* = *ābitit*, *ōbit* = *ōbitit*, *pērit* = *pēritit* (Juv. vi. 128, 559, 295). Even *it* in the First Person is sometimes contracted into *i*: as, *sēpēit* = *sēpēlii* (Pers. iii. 97).

(ii). In poetry *is* and *iss* are often omitted after *s* or *x* in the Perfect and Past Perfect of the Third Conjugation: as, *ēvastī* = *ēvasistī*; *dixī* = *dixistī*; *divisī* = *divisistī*; *surrexī* = *surrexistī*; *consumpsī* = *consumpsistī*; *abscessim* = *abscessistim*.

(iii). The suffix *ērunt* in the Perfect Indicative Active is frequently shortened by the poets: as, *dedērunt*, *they gave*. The suffix *ēre* instead of *ērunt* is rarely used by Cicero, frequently by Sallust and later writers.

2. The form of the Second Person Singular Passive in *re* rarely occurs in the Present Indicative, because it might be confounded with the Imperfect Infinitive Active.

3. The Gerund and Gerundive in the Third and Fourth Conjugations sometimes end in *undum* and *undus* instead of *endum* and *endus*: as, *faciundum* from *facio*, *make* or *do*; *pōtiundum* from *pōtior*, *obtain possession of*.

4. From some Verbs is derived a Participle, or Participial Adjective, in *bundus*, with an intensive signification: as, *laetābundus*, *rejoicing greatly*, *full of joy*; *lacrīmābundus*, *weeping profusely*; *fūribundus*, *full of rage*; *mōribundus*, *in the very article of death*.

Obs. 1. Words in *bundus* come chiefly from verbs of the First Conjugation. *Pdībundus*, *full of modesty*, is the only one from a verb of the Second Conjugation; and *lascīvibundus*, *full of wantonness*, the only one from a verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

Obs. 2. These words generally govern no case: but we find in Livy *vitābundus castra*, *avoiding the camp*, and similar expressions.

### § 111. ANCIENT FORMS.

1. The ancient termination of the *Imperfect Infinitive Passive* was *ier*: as, *āmāriēr* instead of *āmārī*; *rēgiēr*, instead of *rēgī*.

2. In the *Present Subjunctive Active* the old terminations were *im*, *is*, *it*: as, *sim*, *sis*, *sit* from *sum*; *vēlim* from *vōlo*, *be willing*; *nōlim* from *nōlo*, *be unwilling*; *mālim* from *mālo*, *be more willing*. Also *ēdim* instead of *ēdam* from *ēdo*, *eat*; and *duim* from *do*, *give*, and its compounds, particularly in prayers and execrations: as, *dī duim*, *may the gods grant*; *dī tē perduim*, *may the gods destroy thee*.

3. The *Future-Perfect Indicative* and the *Perfect Subjunctive* had ancient terminations in *so* and *sim*, the terminations being originally *eso* and *esim*, instead of *ero* and *erim*: hence the forms *levasso*, *faxo*, *faxim*, are contractions of *lēvāvesso*, *facēso*, *facēsīm*. In like manner *ausim* is formed from the old Perfect *ausi* (from *audeo*), which has become obsolete.



## CHAPTER XXI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 112. IRREGULAR VERBS are such as are not conjugated according to the common Rules. The Conjugation of one Irregular Verb, *sum*, has been already given (§ 90). The rest are here given:

## I. Possum, pōtuī, possē,—to be able.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S.	Pos-sum Pōt-ēs Pōt-est	Pos-sim Pos-sis Pos-sit		S.	Pōt-uī Pōt-uistī Pōt-uīt	Pōt-uērim Pōt-uēris Pōt-uērit	
P.	Pos-simūs Pōt-estis Pos-sunt	Pos-simūs Pos-sitis Pos-sint		P.	Pōt-uimūs Pōt-uistis Pōt-uērunt (ērē)	Pōt-uērimūs Pōt-uēritis Pōt-uērint	
2. <i>Past-Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Past-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Pōt-eram Pōt-erās Pōt-erāt	Pos-sem Pos-sēs Pos-sēt		S.	Pōt-uēram Pōt-uērās Pōt-uērāt	Pōt-uissem Pōt-uissēs Pōt-uissēt	
P.	Pōt-erāmūs Pōt-erātis Pōt-erant	Pos-sēmūs Pos-sētis Pos-sent		P.	Pōt-uērāmūs Pōt-uērātis Pōt-uērant	Pōt-uissēmūs Pōt-uissētis Pōt-uissent	
3. <i>Future.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Pōt-ēro Pōt-eris Pōt-erit	(wanting.)		S.	Pōt-uēro Pōt-uēris Pōt-uērit	(wanting.)	
P.	Pōt-erimūs Pōt-eritis Pōt-erunt			P.	Pōt-uērimūs Pōt-uēritis Pōt-uērint		

## INFINITIVE.

Imperfect—Possē. Perfect—Pōtuissē. Future—wanting.

The Imperative, Gerund, and Supine are wanting.

The Imperfect Participle *pōtens* is used only as an Adjective, powerful.

Obs. Possum is compounded of 'pot' (pōtis, able) and sum: hence pos-sum is a contraction of pōt-sum; pos-sim of pōt-sim; pos-sem of pōt-essem; pōt-ui of pot-fui; and pos-sē of pōt-essē.

- § 113. II. Vōlo, vōluī, vellē, — to be willing.  
 III. Nōlo, nōluī, nollē, — to be unwilling.  
 IV. Mālo, māluī, mallē, — to be more willing.

## INDICATIVE.

## 1. Present.

S. Vōlo	Nōlo	Mālo
Vis	Non vis	Māvīs
Vult	Non vult	Māvult
P. Vōlūmus	Nōlūmus	Mālūmus
Vultis	Non vultis	Māvultis
Vōlunt	Nōlunt	Mālunt

## 2. Past-Imperfect.

S. Vōl-ēbam	Nōl-ēbam	Māl-ēbam
Vōl-ēbās	Nōl-ēbās	Māl-ēbās
Vōl-ēbāt	Nōl-ēbāt	Māl-ēbāt
P. Vōl-ēbāmūs	Nōl-ēbāmūs	Māl-ēbāmūs
Vōl-ēbātis	Nōl-ēbātis	Māl-ēbātis
Vōl-ēbant	Nōl-ēbant	Māl-ēbant

## 3. Future.

S. Vōl-am	Nōl-am	Māl-am
Vōl-ēs	Nōl-ēs	Māl-ēs
Vōl-ēt	Nōl-ēt	Māl-ēt
P. Vōl-ēmūs	Nōl-ēmūs	Māl-ēmūs
Vōl-ētis	Nōl-ētis	Māl-ētis
Vōl-ent	Nōl-ent	Māl-ent

## 4. Perfect.

S. Vōl-uī	Nōl-uī	Māl-uī
Vōl-uistī	Nōl-uistī	Māl-uistī
Vōl-uīt	Nōl-uīt	Māl-uīt
P. Vōl-uimūs	Nōl-uimūs	Māl-uimūs
Vōl-uistis	Nōl-uistis	Māl-uistis
Vōl-uērunt or -uērē	Nōl-uērunt or -uērē	Māl-uērunt or -uērē

## 5. Past-Perfect.

S. Vōl-uēram	Nōl-uēram	Māl-uēram
Vōl-uērās	Nōl-uērās	Māl-uērās
Vōl-uērāt	Nōl-uērāt	Māl-uērāt
P. Vōl-uērāmūs	Nōl-uērāmūs	Māl-uērāmūs
Vōl-uērātis	Nōl-uērātis	Māl-uērātis
Vōl-uērant	Nōl-uērant	Māl-uērant

## 6. Future-Perfect.

S. Vōl-uēro	Nōl-uēro	Māl-uēro
Vōl-uēris	Nōl-uēris	Māl-uēris
Vōl-uērit	Nōl-uērit	Māl-uērit
P. Vōl-uērimūs	Nōl-uērimūs	Māl-uērimūs
Vōl-uēritis	Nōl-uēritis	Māl-uēritis
Vōl-uērint	Nōl-uērint	Māl-uērint

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. Present.

S.	Vēl-im	Nōl-im	Māl-im
	Vēl-is	Nōl-is	Māl-is
	Vēl-it	Nōl-it	Māl-it
P.	Vēl-imūs	Nōl-imūs	Māl-imūs
	Vēl-itīs	Nōl-itīs	Māl-itīs
	Vēl-int	Nōl-int	Māl-int

## 2. Past-Imperfect.

S.	Vel-lem	Nol-lem	Mal-lem
	Vel-lēs	Nol-lēs	Mal-lēs
	Vel-lēt	Nol-lēt	Mal-lēt
P.	Vel-lēmūs	Nol-lēmūs	Mal-lēmūs
	Vel-lētīs	Nol-lētīs	Mal-lētīs
	Vel-lent	Nol-lent	Mal-lent

## 3. Perfect.

S.	Vōl-uērim	Nōl-uērim	Māl-uērim
	Vōl-uēris	Nōl-uēris	Māl-uēris
	Vōl-uērit	Nōl-uērit	Māl-uērit
P.	Vōl-uērimūs	Nōl-uērimūs	Māl-uērimūs
	Vōl-uēritīs	Nōl-uēritīs	Māl-uēritīs
	Vōl-uērint	Nōl-uērint	Māl-uērint

## 4. Past-Perfect.

S.	Vōl-nissem	Nōl-nissem	Māl-nissem
	Vōl-nissēs	Nōl-nissēs	Māl-nissēs
	Vōl-nissēt	Nōl-nissēt	Māl-nissēt
P.	Vōl-nissēmūs	Nōl-nissēmūs	Māl-nissēmūs
	Vōl-nissētīs	Nōl-nissētīs	Māl-nissētīs
	Vōl-nissent	Nōl-nissent	Māl-nissent

## IMPERATIVE.

## Present.

(wanting.)	Nōl-i	(wanting.)
	Nōl-itē	

## Future.

Nōl-ito  
Nōl-ito  
Nōl-itōtē  
Nōl-unto

## INFINITIVE.

## Imperfect.

Vel-lē	Nol-lē	Mal-lē
--------	--------	--------

## Perfect.

Vōl-nissē	Nōl-nissē	Māl-nissē
-----------	-----------	-----------

## IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

## Völens

## Nölens

(wanting.)

Obs. 1. Nōlo is a contraction of ne, not, and vōlo; mālo of mäg (magis), more, and vōlo.

Obs. 2. In consequence of the tendency of liquids to assimilate, the *r* of the terminations is changed into *l*: thus, vel-lem, nol-lem, mal-lem, are contractions of vël-ërem, nöl-ërem, mäl-ërem; and vel-lē, nol-lē, mal-lē, of vël-ërē, nöl-ërē, mäl-ërē.

Obs. 3. Si vis, if you will, if you please, is sometimes contracted into sis.

## § 114. V. Fēro, tūli, ferrē, lātum,—to bear.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 1. Present.

S.	Fēr-o	Fēr-am
	Fēr-s	Fēr-ās
	Fēr-t	Fēr-āt
P.	Fēr-imūs	Fēr-āmūs
	Fēr-tis	Fēr-ātis
	Fēr-unt	Fēr-ant

## 2. Past-Imperfect.

S.	Fēr-ēbam	Fēr-rem
	Fēr-ēbās	Fēr-rēs
	Fēr-ēbāt	Fēr-rēt
P.	Fēr-ēbāmūs	Fēr-rēmūs
	Fēr-ēbātīs	Fēr-rētīs
	Fēr-ēbant	Fēr-rent

## 3. Future.

S.	Fēr-am	Lātūrūs sim
	Fēr-ēs	Lātūrūs sis
	Fēr-ēt	Lātūrūs sit
P.	Fēr-ēmūs	Lātūrī simūs
	Fēr-ētīs	Lātūrī sitīs
	Fēr-ent	Lātūrī sint

## IMPERATIVE.

Present.	Fēr
	Fēr-tē
Future.	Fēr-to
	Fēr-tōtē
	Fēr-unto

## INFINITIVE.

Imperfect	Fēr-rē
Perfect.	Tūl-issē
Future.	Lātūrum essē

## INDICATIVE.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## 4. Perfect.

S.	Tūl-i	Tūl-ērim
	Tūl-isti	Tūl-ēris
	Tūl-it	Tūl-ērit
P.	Tūl-imūs	Tūl-ērimūs
	Tūl-istīs	Tūl-ēritīs
	Tūl-erunt or ērē	Tūl-ērint

## 5. Past-Perfect.

S.	Tūl-ēram	Tūl-isse
	Tūl-ērās	Tūl-issēs
	Tūl-ērāt	Tūl-issēt
P.	Tūl-ērāmūs	Tūl-issēmūs
	Tūl-ērātīs	Tūl-issētīs
	Tūl-erant	Tūl-issent

## 6. Future-Perfect.

S.	Tūl-ēro	(wanting.)
	Tūl-ēris	
	Tūl-ērit	
P.	Tūl-ērimūs	
	Tūl-ēritīs	
	Tūl-ērint	

## PARTICIPLES.

Imperfect.	Fērens
Future.	Lātūrūs (ā, um)

## SUPINES.

Lātum  
Lātū

## GERUND.

Gen.	Fēr-end &c.
------	----------------

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. Present.				4. Perfect.			
S.	Fēr-ōr Fēr-ris Fēr-tūr	Fēr-ār Fēr-ār's Fēr-ātūr		S.	Lātūs sum Lātūs ēs Lātūs est Lāti sūmūs Lāti est's Lāti sunt	Lātūs sim Lātūs sis Lātūs sit Lāti sīmūs Lāti sit's Lāti sint	
P.	Fēr-īmūr Fēr-īmīnī Fēr-untūr	Fēr-āmūr Fēr-āmīnī Fēr-antūr		P.			
2. Past-Imperfect.				5. Past-Perfect.			
S.	Fēr-ēbār Fēr-ēbār's Fēr-ēbātūr	Fēr-rer Fēr-rēr's Fēr-rētūr		S.	Lātūs ēram Lātūs ērās Lātūs ērāt Lāti ērāmūs Lāti ērāt's Lāti ērant	Lātūs essem Lātūs essēs Lātūs essēt Lāti essēmūs Lāti essēt's Lāti essent	
P.	Fēr-ēbāmūr Fēr-ēbāmīnī Fēr-ēbantūr	Fēr-rēmūr Fēr-rēmīnī Fēr-rentūr		P.			
3. Future.				6. Future-Perfect.			
S.	Fēr-ār Fēr-ēr's Fēr-ētūr	(wanting.)		S.	Lātūs ēro Lātūs ēr's Lātūs ērit	(wanting.)	
P.	Fēr-ēmūr Fēr-ēmīnī Fēr-entūr			P.	Lāti ērimūs Lāti ērit's Lāti ērint		

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Present.	Fēr-rō Fēr-īmīnī	Imperfect.	Fēr-ri
Future.	Fēr-tōr Fēr-tōr Fēr-untōr	Perfect.	Lātum (am, um) essē
		Future.	Lātum iri
		PARTICIPLES.	
		Perfect.	Lātūs (ā, um)
		Gerundive.	Fēr-endūs (ā, um)

Obs. 1. In the Imperfect Tenses of *fero* the only irregularity is the omission of *ē* and *i* in some of the terminations: thus, *fer-s* = *fer-is*; *fer-t* = *fer-it*; *fer-rem* = *fer-erem*; *fer-rē* = *fer-erē*, &c.

Obs. 2. The compounds of *fero* are conjugated in the same way:

Affēro (ad, fero),	attōllī,	afferrē,	allātum,	bring to.
Aufēro (ab, fero),	abstōllī,	aufferē,	ablātum,	carry away.
Effēro (ex, fero),	extōllī,	efferrē,	ēlātum,	carry out.
Infero (in, fero),	intōllī,	inferē,	illātum,	carry into.
Offēro (ob, fero),	obtōllī,	offerē,	oblātum,	present.
Prōfero (prō, fero),	prōtōllī,	prōferē,	prōlātum,	carry forward.
Rēfero (re, fero),	{ rētōllī rettōllī }	rēferrē,	rēlātum,	bring back.

§ 115. VI. *Ēdo, ēdī, ēdērē* or *essē, ēsum, —to eat.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. Present.		4. Perfect.	
Ēd-o Ēd-is or ēs Ēd-it or est Ēd-īmūs Ēd-itīs or estīs Ēd-unt	Ēd-am or ēd-im Ēd-ās or ēd-is Ēd-āt or ēd-it Ēd-āmūs or ēd-īmūs Ēd-ātīs or ēd-itīs Ēd-ant or ēd-int	S. Ēd-i Ēd-istī Ēd-it P. Ēd-īmūs Ēd-istīs Ēd-erunt or -ērē	Ēd-ērim Ēd-ērīs Ēd-ērīt Ēd-ērimūs Ēd-ērītīs Ēd-ērint
2. Past-Imperfect.		5. Past-Perfect.	
Ēd-ēbam Ēd-ēbās Ēd-ēbāt Ēd-ēbāmūs Ēd-ēbātīs Ēd-ēbant	Ēd-ērem or essem Ēd-ērēs or essēs Ēd-ērēt or essēt Ēd-ērēmūs or essēmūs Ēd-ērētīs or essētīs Ēd-erent or essent	S. Ēd-ēram Ēd-ērās Ēd-ērāt P. Ēd-ērāmūs Ēd-ērātīs Ēd-ērant	Ēd-issem Ēd-issēs Ēd-issēt Ēd-issēmūs Ēd-issētīs Ēd-issent
3. Future.		6. Future-Perfect.	
Ēd-am Ēd-ēs Ēd-ēt Ēd-ēmūs Ēd-ētīs Ēd-ent	Ēsūrūs sim Ēsūrūs sis Ēsūrūs sit Ēsūrī sīmūs Ēsūrī sitīs Ēsūrī sint	S. Ēd-ēro Pd-ērīs Ēd-ērīt P. Ēd-ērimūs Ēd-ērītīs Ēd-ērint	(wanting.)

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	Ēd-ē or es Ēd-itē or estē	Imperfect.	Ēd-ens
Future.	Ēd-ito or esto Ēd-ito or esto Ēd-itōtē or estōtē Ēd-unto	Future.	Ēsūrūs (ā um)
		SUPINES.	
		Ēsum Ēsū	
		GERUND.	
Imperfect.	Ēd-ērē or essē	Gen.	Ēd-endī, &c.
Perfect.	Ēd-issē		
Future.	Ēsūrūm (am, um) esse		

Obs. 1. The Passive Voice is regular: only *estūr* is used instead of *ēdītūr*, and *essētūr* instead of *ēdērētūr*. The Perfect Participle is *ēsus*.

Obs. 2. The compound *cōmēdo*, eat up, is conjugated in the same way: as, *cōmēds* or *cōmēs*; *cōmēdīt* or *cōmest*, &c.

§ 116. VII. *Ēo, ivī, irē, itum,—to go.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. Present.				4. Perfect.			
S.	Ē-o	E-am		S.	I-vī or I-i	I-vērīm or I-ērīm	
I-s		E-ās		I-vistī	&c.	I-vērīs	&c.
I-t		E-āt		I-vīt	&c.	I-vērīt	&c.
P.	I-mūs	E-āmūs		P.	I-vīmūs	I-vērīmūs	&c.
I-tis		E-ātīs		I-vistīs	&c.	I-vērītīs	&c.
E-unt		E-ant		I-vērunt	&c.	I-vērīnt	&c.
						or I-vērē	
2. Past-Imperfect.				5. Past-Perfect.			
S.	I-bam	I-rem		S.	I-vēram or I-eram	I-vissem, I-issem	
I-bās		I-rēs		I-vērās	&c.	I-vissēs	&c.
I-bāt		I-rēt		I-vērāt	&c.	I-vissēt	&c.
P.	I-bāmūs	I-rēmūs		P.	I-vērāmūs	I-vissēmūs	&c.
I-bātīs		I-rētīs		I-vērātīs	&c.	I-vissētīs	&c.
I-bant		I-rent		I-vērant	&c.	I-vissēt	&c.
3. Future.				6. Future-Perfect.			
S.	I-bo	I-tūrūs sim		S.	I-vēro or I-ero	(wanting)	
I-bis		I-tūrūs sis		I-vērīs	&c.		
I-bit		I-tūrūs sit		I-vērīt	&c.		
P.	I-bimūs	I-tūrī simūs		P.	I-vērīmūs	&c.	
I-bitīs		I-tūrī sitīs		I-vērītīs	&c.		
I-bunt		I-tūrī sint		I-vērīnt	&c.		

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	I		
	I-tē		
Future.	I-to	Imperfect	I-ens (Gen. e-untīs)
	I-to	Future.	I-tūrūs (ā, um)
	I-tōtē		
	E-unto		
INFINITIVE.		GERUND.	
Imperfect.	I-rē	Gen.	E-undi, &c.
Perfect.	I-vissē, iissē or issē		
Future.	I-tūrum (am, um) essē		

Obs. 1. The Stem of this Verb is *i*, which is changed into *e* before *a*, *o*, and *u*: *as*, *eo*, *eunt*, *eam*, &c.

Obs. 2. The Passive is used impersonally. IMPERF.: *Itūr*, *Itātūr*, *Itūtūr*, *Itam est*, &c. SUPJ.: *eātūr*, *itātūr*, *itūtūr*, *itum sit*, &c.

Obs. 3. The compounds of *eo* usually take *ii*, rarely *iri*, in the Perfect Tenses: *as*, *ādeo*, *I approach*, makes *ādi*, *ādiēram*, *ādiissem*, &c.

Obs. 4. The compounds of *eo*, which have a transitive meaning, are conjugated throughout in the Passive: *as*, *ādeo*, *I approach*; PASS.: *ādeor*, *ādiēris*, *ādiātūr*, *ādiimūr*, *ādiimīni*, *ādeuntūr*, &c.

Obs. 5. *Ambio*, *I go about*, retains the *i* throughout and is conjugated regularly like a verb of the Fourth Conjugation. Hence we find *ambiēbam*, but occasionally *ambibam* (Ov. Met. v. 361), the Gerund *ambiendi*, &c. The Perf. Participle is *ambitus* (Ov. Met. i. 37), though the Verbal Substantive is *ambitus*.

§ 117. VIII. *Queo, quivī, quirē, quītum,—to be able.*§ 118. IX. *Nēqueo, nēquivī, nēquirē, nēquītum,—to be unable.*

These Verbs are conjugated exactly like *eo*, but are defective in some forms. In the Present Indicative *non quis*, *non quī* are used instead of *nēquis*, *nēquī*.

§ 119. X.—*Neuter Passives.*

A. Three Neuter Verbs—*Fio*, *to become*, or *to be made*, *vāpulo*, *to be beaten*, *vēneo*, *to be sold*, are Passive in their signification and construction, and are hence called *Neuter-Passives*.

1. *Fio, factūs sum fiērī,—to become or be made.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. Present.				4. Perfect.			
S.	Fi-o	Fi-am		S.	Factūs sum	Factūs sim	
	Fi-s	Fi-ās			Factūs es	Factūs sis	
	Fi-t or fi-t	Fi-āt			Factūs est	Factūs sit	
P.	[Fi-mūs]	Fi-āmūs		P.	Factī sumūs	Factī simūs	
	[Fi-tīs]	Fi-ātīs			Factī estīs	Factī sitīs	
	Fi-unt	Fi-ant			Factī sunt	Factī sint	
2. Past-Imperfect.				5. Past-Perfect.			
S.	Fi-ēbam	Fi-ērem		S.	Factūs eram	Factūs essem	
	Fi-ebās	Fi-ērēs			Factūs erās	Factūs essēs	
	Fi-ebāt	Fi-ērēt			Factūs erāt	Factūs essēt	
P.	Fi-ebāmūs	Fi-ērēmūs		P.	Factī eramūs	Factī essemūs	
	Fi-ebātīs	Fi-ērētīs			Factī erātīs	Factī essētīs	
	Fi-ebant	Fi-erent			Factī erant	Factī essent	
3. Future.		(wanting).		6. Future-Perfect.			
S.	Fi-am			S.	Factūs ero	(wanting.)	
	Fi-es				Factūs eris		
	Fi-ēt				Factūs erit		
P.	Fi-ēmūs			P.	Factī erimūs		
	Fi-ētīs				Factī eritīs		
	Fi-ent				Factī erunt		

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	Fi, fi-tē		
INFINITIVE.			
Imperfect.	Fi-ērī	Perfect.	Factūs (ā, um)
Perfect.	Factum (am, um) essē	Gerundive.	Faciendūs (ā, um)
Future.	Factum irī		

Obs. 1. *Fio* is used as the Passive of *fācio*.

Obs. 2. The *i* in *fio* is always long, except in *fit* and when not followed by *r*.

Obs. 3. The forms *finūs* and *fitis* are doubtful.

2. *Vāpūlo, vāpūlāvi, to be beaten*, is conjugated regularly, and is used as the Passive of *Verbēro*.

3. *Vēneo, venīvi, vēnitum (or vēnum), to be sold*, is a compound of the supine *vēnum* and the verb *eo*, and is used as the passive of *Vendo*.

B. Four other Verbs are also called *Neuter-Passives*, because their Perfect Tenses are Passive in form. They are likewise called *Semi-deponents*, because their Perfect Tenses are Deponents.

<i>Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,</i>	<i>to dare, venture.</i>
<i>Fido, fisis sum, f dēre,</i>	<i>to trust.</i>
<i>Gaudeo, gāvisus sum, gaudēre,</i>	<i>to rejoice.</i>
<i>Sōleo, sōlitus sum, sōlēre,</i>	<i>to be accustomed.</i>

Obs. The four following verbs use also the Perfect Participle Passive in an active sense: *jūro, jūrātus, having sworn*; *coeno, coenātus, having dined*; *prandeo, pransus, having breakfasted*; *pōto, pōtus, having drunk*.

## CHAPTER XXII.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 120. Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

I. <i>Coepī,</i>	<i>I began.</i>
II. <i>Mēmīnī,</i>	<i>I remember.</i>
III. <i>Ōdī,</i>	<i>I hate.</i>
IV. <i>Nōvī,</i>	<i>I know.</i>

These three Verbs are used only in the Perfect Tenses; but the three latter have a present signification.

INDICATIVE.				
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepī</i>	<i>Mēmīnī</i>	<i>Ōdī</i>	<i>Nōvī</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepēram</i>	<i>Mēmīnēram</i>	<i>Ōdēram</i>	<i>Nōveram</i>
<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepēro</i>	<i>Mēmīnēro</i>	<i>Ōdēro</i>	<i>Nōvēro</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE.				
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepērim</i>	<i>Mēmīnērim</i>	<i>Ōdērim</i>	<i>Nōvērim</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepissem</i>	<i>Mēmīnissem</i>	<i>Ōdissem</i>	<i>Nōvissem</i>
IMPERATIVE.				
<i>Future.</i>	(wanting.)	<i>Memento</i>		(wanting.)
		<i>Mementōtē</i>		
INFINITIVE.				
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Coepissē</i>	<i>Mēmīnissē</i>	<i>Ōdissē</i>	<i>Nōvisse</i>
PARTICIPLE.				
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Coepitūrus</i>	(wanting.)	<i>Ōsitūrus</i>	

Obs. 1. Instead of *coepī* and its Tenses, the Passive *coeptus sum, &c.*, is used before an Infinitive Passive: as, *urbs aedificāri coepta est, the city began to be built*.

Obs. 2. *Novī* is properly the perfect of *Noseo, to learn to know*.

§ 121. V. *Aio, I say*, has only the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Past-Imperfect.</i>	
S. <i>Aio</i>	—	S. <i>Aiebam</i>	—
<i>Ais</i>	<i>Aiās</i>	<i>Aiebās</i>	—
<i>Ait</i>	<i>Aiāt</i>	<i>Aiebāt</i>	—
P. —	—	P. <i>Aiebāmūs</i>	—
<i>Aiunt</i>	<i>Aiant</i>	<i>Aiebātis</i>	—
		<i>Aiebant</i>	—

IMPERFECT PARTICIPLE.

*Aiens.*

Obs. The form *aisnē, sayest thou?* is often contracted into *ain'.*

§ 122. VI. *Inquam, say I*, has only the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.			
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Inquam</i>	<i>Past-Imperfect.</i>	<i>Inquiēbam</i>
	<i>Inquis</i>		<i>Inquiēbās</i>
	<i>Inquit</i>		<i>Inquiēbāt</i>
	<i>Inquimūs</i>		<i>Inquiēbāmūs</i>
	<i>Inquitis</i>		<i>Inquiēbātis</i>
	<i>Inquiunt</i>		<i>Inquiēbant</i>
<i>Future.</i>	—	<i>Perfect</i>	—
	<i>Inquiēs</i>		<i>Inquistī</i>
	<i>Inquiēt</i>		<i>Inquit</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Inquē</i>	<i>Future.</i>	2 Pers. <i>Inquīto</i>
-----------------	--------------	----------------	------------------------

Obs. *Inquam*, like the English *say I, says he*, is always used after other words in a sentence.

§ 123. VII. *Fāri, to speak*, a Deponent, is used only in the following forms:—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present. S. Fārē</i>	<i>Fārī</i>
<i>Fātūr</i>	—		
		PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Future.</i>		<i>Imperfect. Fantis &amp;c.</i>	(without a Nom.)
<i>Fābōr, fābitūr</i>	—	<i>Perfect. Fātūs (ā, um)</i>	
		<i>Gerundive. Fandūs (ā, um)</i>	
<i>Fātus sum &amp;c.</i>	<i>Fātus sim &amp;c.</i>		
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>		SUPINE — <i>Fātū.</i>	
<i>Fātūs ēram</i>	<i>Fātūs essem</i>	GERUND— <i>Fandī &amp;c.</i>	

§ 124. VIII. *Salvē, hail!* is found in the *Imperat. salvē, salvetē, salveto*; in the *Infin. salvērē*; and in the *Future salvēbis*.

IX. *Āvē (hāvē), hail!* is found in the *Imperat. āvē, āvētē, āvēto*; and in the *Infin. āvērē*.

X. *Āpāgē, begone!* (the only form).

XI. *Cēdo, pl. (cēditē) cettē, give me, tell me*, are Imperatives of an obsolete Verb.

XII. *Quaeso, I entreat, quaesūmūs, we entreat*, are the only forms used in this sense.

### CHAPTER XXIII.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 125. Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

§ 126. The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs:—

#### I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES, ETC.

<i>Dēcēt, dēcūt, dēcērē,</i>	<i>it is seemly.</i>
<i>Dēdēcēt, dēdēcūt, dēdēcērē,</i>	<i>it is unseemly.</i>
<i>Lībēt, lībūt &amp; lībītum est, lībērē,</i>	<i>it pleases.</i>
<i>Licēt, licūt &amp; licītum est, licērē,</i>	<i>it is lawful.</i>
<i>Liquēt, liquērē,</i>	<i>it is clear.</i>
<i>Misērēt or misērētūr, misērītum est, misērērē,</i>	<i>it excites pity.</i>
<i>Oportēt, oportūt, oportērē,</i>	<i>it behoves.</i>
<i>Pigēt, pigūt &amp; pigītum est, pigērē,</i>	<i>it vexes.</i>
<i>Plācēt, plācūt or plācītum est, plācērē,</i>	<i>it pleases.</i>
<i>Poenītēt, poenītūt, poenītērē,</i>	<i>it causes sorrow.</i>
<i>Pūdēt, pūduīt or pūdītum est, pūdērē,</i>	<i>it shames.</i>
<i>Taedēt, (pertaesum est,) taedērē,</i>	<i>it disgusts.</i>

Obs. All these Verbs belong to the Second Conjugation.

#### II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

<i>Grandīnāt, 1,</i>	<i>it hails.</i>
<i>Ningīt, ninxīt, ningērē,</i>	<i>it snows.</i>
<i>Plūit, plūīt or plūvīt, plūē-ē,</i>	<i>it rains.</i>

<i>Tōnāt, tōnuīt, tōnārē,</i>	<i>it thunders.</i>
<i>Lūcescīt, (illuxīt,) lūlescērē,</i>	<i>it becomes light.</i>
<i>Vespērascīt, vespērāvīt, vespērascērē,</i>	<i>evening approaches.</i>

Obs. Many verbs which are conjugated regularly with their proper significations are in certain senses used impersonally: as, *accidīt, it happens*; *expēdīt, it is advantageous*, &c.

§ 127. Most Impersonal Verbs have no Imperatives, Participles, Supines, or Gerunds. Consequently *pūdēt*, for example, has only the following forms:

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE
<i>Present.</i>	<i>Pūdēt</i>	<i>Pūdeāt</i>	} <i>Pūdērē</i>
<i>Past-Imperfect.</i>	<i>Pūdēbāt</i>	<i>Pūdērēt</i>	
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Pūdēbīt</i>	—	—
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Pūduīt</i>	<i>Pūduērīt</i>	} <i>Pūduissē</i>
<i>Past-Perfect.</i>	<i>Pūduērāt</i>	<i>Pūduissēt</i>	
<i>Future-Perfect.</i>	<i>Pūduērīt</i>	—	—

The Persons are expressed in the following way in the Present Indicative, and similarly in the other Tenses:

<i>Pūdēt mē,</i>	<i>it shames me, or I am ashamed.</i>
<i>Pūdēt tē,</i>	<i>it shames thee, or thou art ashamed.</i>
<i>Pūdēt eum,</i>	<i>it shames him, or he is ashamed.</i>
<i>Pūdēt nōs,</i>	<i>it shames us, or we are ashamed.</i>
<i>Pūdēt vōs,</i>	<i>it shames you, or you are ashamed.</i>
<i>Pūdēt eos,</i>	<i>it shames them, or they are ashamed.</i>

§ 128. Intransitive Verbs are used in the Passive Voice impersonally: as,

*Curritūr, itūr, ventum est &c. (They) run, (they) go, (they) came, etc.*

### CHAPTER XXIV.—ADVERBS.

§ 129. Adverbs derived from Adjectives, Participles, and Substantives, end in *ē, ō, tēr, itūs, tim*. Their formation is explained in § 196, sqq.

Adverbs in *ē, ō, tēr*, have Comparatives and Superlatives.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in *ius*.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Super-

lative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into *ē*.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.		
		Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative
doctus,	learned,	doctē	doctius	doctissimē
aeger,	sick,	aegrē (with difficulty)	aegrius	aegerrimē
fortis,	brave,	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
similis,	like,	similiter	similius	simillimē
acer,	keen,	acriter	acrius	acerrimē
felix,	lucky,	feliciter	felicis	felicissimē
prudens,	prudent,	prudenter	prudensius	prudensissimē

§ 130. If the Adjectives are irregular in their Comparison, the Adverbs also are irregular.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.		
		Positive.	Comparative.	
bonus,	good,	benē	melius	optimē
malus,	bad,	malē	pejus	pessimē
multus,	much,	multum	plūs	plurimum
magnus,	great,	—	magis	maximē
propinquus,	near,	propē	propius	proximē
(prō) prior,	before,	—	prius	primum & primō

§ 131. Only the following Adverbs, not derived from Adjectives, are compared:—

Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
diū,	for a long time,	diutius	diutissimē
nūper,	lately,	—	nūperrimē
saepē,	often,	saepius	saepissimē
sēcus,	otherwise,	sēcus	—
tempēri (tempōri),	timely,	tempērius	—

§ 132. Many Adverbs were originally particular Cases of Substantives, Adjectives, or Pronouns: as,

tempōri, tempēri,	from tempus,	seasonably (see § 131).
grātis (grātis),	grātia,	for thanks, i. e. for nothing.
ingrātis (ingrātis),	ingrātia,	without thanks, against any
fōras, fōris,	fōra (obs.) = fōris,	abroad. [one's will.
noctū,	noctus (obs.) = nox,	by night.
diū,	old abl. of diēs,	by day.*
perpēram, acc. sing. f. of perpērus,		wrongly.

\* In this sense only in the phrase noctu diuque (rare).

Some are compounded of two or more words: as of an Adjective and Substantive; or a Preposition and a Substantive; or two Verbs: as,

hōdiē,	from	hōc diē,	on this day.
quōtidīē,	"	quōt diēs,	every day.
magnōpērē,	"	magnō ōpērē,	greatly.
tantōpērē,	"	tantō ōpērē,	greatly.
obviam,	"	ōb vīam,	in the way of.
quamobrem,	"	quam ob rem,	wherefore.
invicem,	"	in vicem,	in turn.
scilicēt,	"	scire licēt,	doubtless, of course.
vidēlicēt,	"	vidēre licēt,	manifestly, to wit.
quamvis	"	quam vīs (vōlo),	however much.

With many others.

§ 133. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into the following classes:—

#### I. ADVERBS OF INTERROGATION, AFFIRMATION, AND NEGATION.

##### (a) Of Interrogation.

-nē,	is it so?	utrum . . . ne, an,	is this the case,
num,	it is not so, is it?	quārē, cur,	why? [or that?
nonnē,	is it not so?	quōtīes,	how often?

NOTE. Concerning the use of these Particles, see Syntax.

##### (b) Of Affirmation.

sānē, vēro, ūtīquē, indeed.	ēcastor,	by Castor.
ēdēpōl, pol, by Pollux, truly.	mēdīusfidīus	by the god of faith
mēhercle, by Hercules, in truth.	(me dius fidius),	in very truth.

Obs. There is no word in Latin precisely equivalent to the English *yes*. Instead of it some part of the question is generally repeated. Tu ita dicis? Ego vero dico. Do you say so? Yes, I do.

##### (c) Of Negation.

nōn, haud,	not.	mīnīmē,	by no means.
------------	------	---------	--------------

Obs. Immo (imo) is equivalent to *nay*, *nay rather*: and may sometimes be rendered by *yes* or *no*: as,

Fātētur? Immo pernēgat. Does he confess? No, he denies outright. Plaut. Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima. Is our cause then not good? Yes, exceedingly good. Cic.



## II. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

## 1. Rest in a Place.

## (a) Derived from Pronouns.

hic,	here, near me.	alicubi,	somewhere.
istic,	there, near you.	uspiam,	} anywhere.
illuc,	there, near him, yonder.	usquam,	
ibi,	there.	nusquam,	} nowhere.
ibidem,	in the same place.	nullibi,	
ubi,	where.	ubivis,	} in any place you will,
ubique,	everywhere.	ubique,	
ubique,	everywhere.	ubilibet,	} everywhere.
ubique,	everywhere.	utrobique,	
ubiubi,	wherever.	utrimque,	} in both places.
alibi,	elsewhere.	utrimque,	

## (b) Derived from Prepositions and other Words.

intus,	} within.	foris,	out of doors, abroad.
intrinsecus,		peregre,	abroad.
extrinsecus,	} without.	subtus,	beneath.
prope,		superne,	above.
procul,	near.	inferne,	below.
passim,	at a distance.	praesto,	at hand.
	here and there, every-where.		

## 2. Motion to a Place.

## (All with one exception derived from Pronouns.)

huc,	to the place near me.	aliquo,	any whither.
istic and isto,	to the place near you.	quocunque,	} whithersoever.
illuc and illu,	to the place near him,	quodquo,	
	to yonder place.	quovis,	} whither you will.
eo,	thither.	quolibet,	
eodem,	to the same place.	utroque,	to both places.
quo,	whither?	utrovise,	to which of the two
alio,	any whither.		places you will.
	to another place.	foras,	abroad.

## 3. Motion from a Place.

## (a) Derived from Pronouns.

hinc,	from the place near me.	alicundē,	from some place or
istinc,	from the place near you.		another.
illinc,	from the place near him,	undique,	from every side.
	from yonder place.	undeundē,	} from whatever side.
indē,	thence.	undecunquē,	
indidem,	from the same place.	undelibet,	from which side you
undē,	whence?		will.
aliundē,	from elsewhere.	utrinquē,	from both sides.

## (b) Derived from other Words.

coellus,	from heaven.	radicitus,	} from the roots.
divinitus,	from the gods.	stirpitis,	
funditus,	from the ground,	eminus (ex manus),	from a distance
	utterly.		(of skirmishing with missiles).

Obs. With *eminus* compare *cumintus*, hand to hand, at close quarters.

## 4. Motion by a Way

hac,	by this road near me.	quacuna,	} by which way soever.
ista, istac,	by that road near you.	quacunquē,	
illa, illac,	by that road near him,	quavis,	} by which way you will.
	by yonder road.	qualibet,	
ea,	by this way.	utraque,	by both ways.
eadem,	by the same way.	utracunquē,	by which of the two
alia,	by another way.		ways you will.
qua,	by which way.	recta.	by a straight way.
aliqua,	by some way.		

## 5. Motion towards a Place.

(All compounds of the Preposition *versus* (versum), towards.)

horsum,	towards where I am,	introrsum (-us),	inwards.
	hitherwards.	deorsum (-us),	downwards.
istorsum,	towards where you	sursum (-us), i. e.,	} upwards.
	are.	subversum,	
illorsum,	towards yonder place.	retorsum (-us),	backwards.
quorsum (-us),	towards whither?	prorsus,	straight-forwards.
alorsum (-us),	towards another place.		outright.
aliquorsum	} towards some place.	adversus (-um),	towards, against.
(-us),		seorsum (-us),	apart.
quocquoversum	} in every direction.	dextrorsum (-us),	towards the right.
(-us),		sinistrorsum	} towards the left.
utroquoversum	} in both directions.	(-us),	
(-us),			

## III. ADVERBS OF TIME.

## 1. When?

quando,	when? at any time.	cito,	quickly.
nunc,	now.	statim,	} immediately, forth-
jam,	now, presently.	confestim,	
modo,	just now.	protinus,	} with.
tunc,	} then.	illico,	
tum,		illico,	
nuper,	lately.	post,	afterwards
dudum,	} some time ago.	postea,	after
pridem,		posthac,	that.
jamdudum,		interim, interea,	meanwhile.
jampridem,		alias,	at another time.
mox,	soon.	tandem,	at length.
		jamdiu,	long since.



interdum,	} sometimes	sempēr.	always.
nonnunquam,		hōdiē,	to-day.
ālīquando,	} formerly, hereafter.	crās,	to-morrow.
quandoque,		hēri (hērē),	yesterday.
quondam,	} not yet.	pridīe,	the day before.
olim,		nūdiustertius,	three days since.
nondum,	} hardly yet.	postridīe,	the following day.
vixdum,		pērendīe,	the next day but one.
nunquam,	never.		

## 2. How long?

dīū,	long.	tantispēr,	so long.
quamdiū,	how long, as long	pārumpēr,	} for a little while.
ālīquamdiū,	} for a while. [as.	paulispēr,	
ālīquantispēr,		adhuc,	hitherto.
tamdiū,	so long.	sempēr,	always.

## 3. How often?

sēmēl.	once.	crēbro,	frequently.
bīs, tēr, &c.	twice, thrice, &c.	rāro,	seldom.
tōtīes,	so often.	īdentīdem,	repeatedly.
quōtīes,	how often; as often	rursū,	} again.
ālīquōtīes,	several times. [as.	ītērū,	
pīerumquē,	usually.	dēnū,	afresh.
interdum,	} now and then.	quōtidīe,	every day.
sūbindē,		quōtānnīs,	every year.
saepē, saepēnūmēro,	often.		

## IV. ADVERBS OF COMPARISON, OR ORDER, MANNER, DEGREE.

ādō,	to such a degree.	quāsi,	as if.
admōdum,	exceedingly.	quātēnūs,	how far, as far as.
ālītēr,	in another way.	eatēnūs,	in so far
aequē (ac),	equally.	hactēnūs,	thus far.
itā,	in that way, so.	ālīquātēnūs,	to a certain point.
Item,	likewise.	saltem,	at least.
māgis,	more, rather.	sānē,	truly, very.
mīnus,	less.	sātīs,	enough.
mōdō,	only.	sēcūs, sēcīus,	otherwise.
omnīno,	altogether.	sic,	so, in this way.
paenē,	almost.	sicūti,	as.
pārītēr,	equally, side by side.	solum,	only.
pēindē (prōindē),	just as.	tanquam,	as, as if.
perquam,	very.	tantōpērē,	so greatly
pōtius,	rather.	tantum, tant-	} only.
pōtissimū,	in preference to all	ummōdō,	
praeipū,	chiefly. [others.	ūt,	as, how.
prōpē,	nearly.	valdē,	very, greatly.
prorsū,	altogether	vēlūt, vēlūti,	just as.
quam,	as, than.	vix,	hardly, with diff-
quantōpērē,	how greatly, as		culty.
	greatly as.		

## CHAPTER XXV.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 134. Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or the Ablative. Their construction is explained in the Syntax.

## § 135. I. With the Accusative alone.

Ad,	to.	Ob,	on account of.
Adversūs,	} opposite, towards.	Pēnes,	in the power of.
Adversum,		Pēr,	through.
Antē,	before.	Pōnē,	behind.
Apūd,	near.	Post,	after.
Circā, circum,	around.	Praetēr,	beside.
Circitēr,	about.	Prōpē,	near.
Cīs & citrā,	on this side of.	Proptēr,	on account of
Contrā,	against.	Sēcundum,	following, along, in ac-
Ergā,	towards (of the		cordance with.
Extrā,	outside of. [mind).	Suprā,	above.
Infrā,	below.	Trans,	across.
Intēr,	between, among.	Ultrā,	on the farther side of.
Intrā,	inside of, within.	Versūs,	} towards.
Juxtā,	hard by, beside.	Versum,	

Obs. Versūs is always placed after the Accusative: as, Rōmam versūs, towards Rome.

## § 136. II. With the Ablative alone.

A, ab, or abs,	by or from.	Ex or ē,	out of.
Absquē (rare),	without.	Prae,	before.
Cōram,	in the presence of.	Prō,	in front of, before.
Cum,	with.	Sinē,	without.
Dē,	down from, from.	Tēnūs,	reaching to, as far as.

Obs. 1. Ab is used before vowels and h; both ā and ab before consonants, abs very seldom except in the phrase abs te.

Obs. 2. Ex is used before vowels and h; both ex and ē before consonants.

Obs. 3. Tēnūs is always placed after the Ablative: as, pectōrē tēnūs, as far as the breast.

## § 137. III. With the Accusative or Ablative.

In,	in, into.	Sūpēr,	over.
Sūb,	up to, under.	Sūbtēr,	under.

Clam, without the knowledge of.

In and Sub with the Acc. answer the question *Whither?* with the Abl., the question *Where?*

§ 138. Obs. 1. Some Prepositions are used as Adverbs: as, antē, clam, cōram, contrā, post, praeter, propter.

*Obs. 2.* Prepositions, in composition with other words, frequently undergo euphonic changes. The most common change is the assimilation of the final consonant of the Preposition to the initial consonants of the words with which it is combined: as, allôquor from ad and löquor.

**Ab, abs.** *Ab* remains unchanged before vowels and most consonants. Before *m* and *v* it becomes *a*: as, ä-moveo, ä-vêho. *Ab* becomes *au* in au-fêro, au-fúgio. *Abs* stands before *c* and *t* only: as, abs-cêdo, abs-tíneo.

**Ad** remains unchanged before *d, j, m, r*: as, ad-do, ad-jáceo, ad-míror, ad-vêho. The *d* is assimilated before most other consonants: as, ac-cêdo, af-fêro, ag-gêro, ap-pôno, ac-quíro, as-sisto, as-súmo. The *d* is omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and *gn*: as, a-spêcio, a-gnosco.

**Com** (instead of *cum*) remains unchanged before the labials *p, b, m*: as, com-pôno, com-bíbo, com-mitto. The *m* is assimilated before *l, n, r*: as, col-lígo, con-necto, cor-ripio. The *m* is changed into *n* before the other consonants: as, con-fêro, con-gêro, con-tráho. The *m* is dropped before vowels and *h*: as, co-álesco, co-co, co-hareo.

**Ex** remains unchanged before vowels and the consonants *c, p, q, s, t*: as, ex-co, ex-cípio, ex-pôno, ex-quíro, ex-solvo, ex-tráho. The *x* is assimilated before *f*: as, ef-fêro. The *x* is omitted before the remaining consonants: as, ê-lígo, ê-jício.

**In** becomes *im* before the labials *p, b, m*: as, im-pôno, im-buo, im-mitto. The *n* is assimilated before *l* and *r*: as, il-lúdo, ir-rumpo. Before other consonants and vowels it remains unchanged.

**Inter** undergoes assimilation only in the verb intel-lígo and its derivatives.

**Ob** undergoes assimilation before *c, f, g, p*: as, oc-curro, of-fêro, og-gêro, op-pôno.

**Per** undergoes assimilation only in pel-lício and its derivatives.

**Sub** undergoes assimilation before *c, f, g, m, p*, and often before *r*: as, suc-curro, suf-fício, sug-gêro, sum-mitto, sup-pôno, sur-ripio.

**Trans** is frequently shortened into *trā*: as, trā-dúco, trā-jício.

*Obs. 3. Inseparable Prepositions* occur only in composition.

**Amb, around**: as, amb-io, to go around; amb-ígo, to wander around. The *b* is dropped before *p*: as, am-púto, to cut around or away; amplector, to twine around or embrace. *Amb* becomes *an* before gutturals and *f*: as, an-ceps, two-headed; an-quíro, to seek around; an-fractus, a bending.

**Dis or di, in different directions**: as, dis-pôno, to set in different parts; di-ripio, to tear in pieces. Before *f*, *dis* becomes *dif*: as, dif-fundo, to pour in different directions.

**Rē or rēd, back**: as, rē-mitto, to send back; rēd-co, to go back.

**Sē, aside**: as, sē-dúco, to lead aside; sē-cūrus, free from care.

## CHAPTER XXVI.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 139. Conjunctions may be divided into the following classes:

## I. CONNECTIVE.

Et,		Nēquē, nēc,	
Atquē, āc,	} and.	Nēvē, neu,	} neither, nor.
Quē,		Sivē, seu,	
Aut,	} either, or.	Necnōn,	} or if.
Vēl, vē,		Etiam,	
		Quōque,	also.

*Obs. 1.* **Quē** and **vē** are always added to the end of the second of the two words which they unite, and must be pronounced with it, as if they formed a single word: as, terrā mārīquē, by land and by sea; plus minusvē, more or less. Such words are called enclitics.

*Obs. 2.* **Ac, vē, nēc, neu, seu** are contractions respectively of **atquē, vēl, nēquē, nēvē, sē**.

*Obs. 3.* **Ac** is never used before vowels or *h*: **atquē** occurs most frequently before vowels, but also before consonants.

To these may be added the correlatives non mōdo (solum) . . . . sed (vērū) etiam, not only . . . . but also; quum (tum) . . . . tum, both . . . . and.

## II. ADVERSATIVE.

Sēd,		Tāmēn,	yet, nevertheless.
Autem,	} but.	Vērū, vēro,	but, indeed.
At, at,		Ēnimvēro,	but indeed
Atque,	and yet.	Attāmēn,	but yet.

## III. CONDITIONAL.

Sī,	if.	Dum,	} provided that.
Nīsi, nī,	if not.	Mōdō,	
Sin,	if not; but if.	Dummōdo,	

## IV. CONCESSIVE.

Etsi,	} although	Quamvis,	however much, al-
Ētiamsi,		Quum,	although. [though.
Tāmetsi,		Quīdem,	indeed.
Licēt,		Ūt,	granting that, al-
Quamquam			though.

## V. CAUSAL.

Quum,	whereas, since.	Nam,	} for.
Quīā, quōd,	because.	Ēnim.	
Quōniam,	since.	Ētēnim,	and in fact.
Quandōquīdem,	seeing that.		

## VI. CONCLUSIVE.

Ergo, Idcirco, Ideo, Igītūr,	} therefore.	Itāquē, Quocircā, Quārē, Quāproptēr,	} and so, accordingly. } wherefore.
---------------------------------------	--------------	---	--

## VII. FINAL.

Ūt, Quō, Quin, Quōmīnūs,	} that, in order that. } that not.	Nē, Nēvē, neu,	that not, lest. and that . . . not.
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------------	-------------------	--

## VIII. TEMPORAL.

Antēquam, Priusquam, Postquam,	} before that. } after that.	Donec, Quoad, Dum,	} so long as, until.
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------	----------------------

Simul'atque (ac), as soon as.

NOTE.—Concerning the uses of the above Conjunctions, see *Syntax*.

## CHAPTER XXVII.—INTERJECTIONS.

§ 140. Interjections are not so much parts of speech as substitutes for definite sentences. They are mostly sounds or cries expressive of emotion.

They may be divided into the following classes :—

1. Of surprise : Ō ! eu ! eccē ! pāpae ! ātat ! etc.
2. Of grief : ah ! ēheu (heu) ! hei ! vae ! etc.
3. Of joy : Io ! ha ! ēvoe : eu (eugē) ! etc.
4. Of disgust : phui ! āpāgē ! etc.
5. Of adjuration : prō (proh) ! To this may be added the abbreviated oaths mehercle (mehercūle, hercle, etc.), pol, ēdēpol, mēdiusfidius, and the like.

## APPENDIX A.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

## GENERAL RULES.

## GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE MEANING.

§ 141. *Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers* are *Masculine*.

2. *Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees* are *Feminine*.

*Obs.* In the case of some animals sex is disregarded : thus, *āquila*, eagle, and *vulpes*, fox, are always *feminine* ; while *lēpus*, hare, *mus*, mouse, and *passer*, sparrow, are always *masculine*. Such Substantives are called *Epicene* (ἐπὶ κοινός).

3. *Indeclinable Substantives, as,*  
*Fās, nēfās, nihīl, instār,*  
are *Neuter*.

fās,	permitted by heaven.	nīhīl,	nothing.
nēfās,	not permitted by heaven.	instār,	resemblance.

4. Substantives denoting both the male and the female, as  
*Civis, conjux, sacerdos, testis*  
are *Common*.

civis,	a citizen (male or female).	sacerdos,	a priest or priestess.
conjux,	a husband or wife.	testis,	a witness (male or female).

## SPECIAL RULES.

## GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE TERMINATIONS.

## § 142. I. FIRST DECLENSION.

*Principa Rule.*

**A** and **ē** are *Feminine*,  
**As** and **ēs** are *Masculine*.

## VI. CONCLUSIVE.

Ergo, Ideo, Igitur,	} therefore.	Itaque, Quocirca, Quare, Quapropter,	} and so, accordingly. } wherefore.
---------------------------	--------------	---	--

## VII. FINAL.

Ut, Quo, Quin, Quominus,	} that, in order that. } that not.	Nō, Nēvē, neu,	that not, lest. and that . . . not.
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------------	-------------------	--

## VIII. TEMPORAL.

Antequam, Priusquam, Postquam,	} before that. } after that.	Donec, Quoad, Dum, Simul atque (ac), as soon as.	} so long as, unt.l.
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------	---	----------------------

NOTE.—Concerning the uses of the above Conjunctions, see *Syntax*.

## CHAPTER XXVII.—INTERJECTIONS.

§ 140. Interjections are not so much parts of speech as substitutes for definite sentences. They are mostly sounds or cries expressive of emotion.

They may be divided into the following classes:—

1. Of surprise: ō! eu! eccē! pāpae! ātat! etc.
2. Of grief: ah! ēheu (heu)! hei! vae! etc.
3. Of joy: io! ha! ēvoe: eu (eugē)! etc.
4. Of disgust: phui! āpāgē! etc.
5. Of adjuration: prō (proh)! To this may be added the abbreviated oaths mehercule (mehercule, hercule, etc.), pol, ēdēpol, mēdiusfidius, and the like.

## APPENDIX A.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.—THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

## GENERAL RULES.

## GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE MEANING.

§ 141. *Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers* are *Masculine*.

2. *Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees* are *Feminine*.

Obs. In the case of some animals sex is disregarded: thus, *āquila*, eagle, and *vulpes*, fox, are always *feminine*; while *lōpus*, hare, *mus*, mouse, and *passer*, sparrow, are always *masculine*. Such Substantives are called *Epicene* (ἐπὶ κοινός).

3. *Indeclinable Substantives, as,*  
*Fās, nēfās, nihīl, instār,*  
are *Neuter*.

fās,	permitted by heaven.	nīhīl,	nothing.
nēfās,	not permitted by heaven.	instār,	resemblance.

4. Substantives denoting both the male and the female, as  
*Civis, conjux, sacerdos, testis*  
are *Common*.

civis,	a citizen (male or female).	sacerdos,	a priest or priestess.
conjux,	a husband or wife.	testis,	a witness (male or female).

## SPECIAL RULES.

## GENDER ASCERTAINED BY THE TERMINATIONS.

## § 142. I. FIRST DECLENSION.

*Principa Rule.*

**A** and **ē** are *Feminine*,  
**As** and **ēs** are *Masculine*.

## Exceptions.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Names of Males in <i>a</i> are Masculine: as,         | Garumna, <i>the Garonne</i> .          |
| scriba, <i>a clerk</i> .                                 | Séquana, <i>the Seine</i> .            |
| nauta, <i>a sailor</i> .                                 | Also <i>Hædria</i> , the Adriatic Sea. |
| incola, <i>an inhabitant</i> .                           | But the following are Feminine:        |
| 2. Most Rivers in <i>a</i> are Masculine (§ 141, 1): as, | Albula, <i>ancient name of Tiber</i> . |
| Addua, <i>the Adda</i> .                                 | Allia, in Latium.                      |
|  | Matrua, <i>the Marne</i> .             |

## § 143. II. SECOND DECLENSION.

## Principal Rule.

Us and er are Masculine,  
Um is Neuter.

## Exceptions.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Trees and Towns in <i>us</i> follow the general rule, and are Feminine (see § 141, 2): as, | And some Greek words: as,                  |
| ulmus, <i>an elm-tree</i> .   | méthodus, <i>method</i> .                  |
| Córinthus, <i>Corinth</i> .   | arctos, <i>the constellation</i> .         |
|   | carbasus, <i>fine flax</i> .               |
| 2. The following are also Feminine:   | 3. The following are Neuter:               |
| alvus, <i>the belly</i> .   | virus, <i>poison</i> .                     |
| cólus, <i>a distaff</i> .   | pélagus, <i>the sea</i> .                  |
| hūmus, <i>the ground</i> .  | vulgus, <i>the common people</i> .         |
| vannus, <i>a winnowing fan</i> .  | Obs. <i>Fulgus</i> is sometimes Masculine. |

## § 144. III. THIRD DECLENSION.

## Preliminary Rules.

1. The rules for determining the Gender of Substantives from their meaning (given in § 141) are of course applicable in this as in the other Declensions: thus, *pāter*, a father; *Tibēris*, the Tiber; *Libs*, a S.W. wind, are Masculine: while *mūlier*, a woman; *sōror*, a sister; *Vēnus*, the goddess of beauty and grace, are Feminine.

2. All Abstract Substantives derived from Adjectives

(sometimes also from Substantives), and denoting qualities, are Feminine: as,

hūmilitas,	lowness, humility,	from	hūmilis.
suāvitas,	sweetness,	"	suāvis.
altitudo,	height,	"	altus.
fortitudo,	bravery,	"	fortis.
virtus,	manliness, virtue,	"	vir.

3. Substantives in *io* (*tio*, *sio*), derived from Verbs, and expressing the action abstractly, are Feminine: as,

expugnatio,	taking by storm,	from	expugno.
munitio,	the act of fortifying,	"	mūnio.
dēcessio,	departure,	"	dēcēdo.
largitio,	bribery,	"	largior.
ōpinio,	thinking, opinion,	"	ōpinor.
contagio,	touching, contagion,	"	contango (root <i>tag</i> ).

Obs. 1. In some of the above the active signification is lost, as *rēgio*, a district (from *rēgo*); *lēgio*, a legion (from *lēgo*).

2. To the above may be added those which denote a permanent action or condition, in *go* and *do*: as,

prūrgo,	itching,	from	prūrio.
cūpldo,	a desire, passion,	"	cūpio.
vertigo,	giddiness,	"	verto.

With the exception of the above, all Genders of this Declension must be decided by the termination.

## First Principal Rule (Masculine).

O, or (ōris), os, and er,

Es, increasing short in Genitive,

are Masculine.—EXAMPLES: *Leo*, ōnis, a lion; *dōlōr*, ōris, pain; *flōs*, flōris, a flower; *ansēr*, ēris, a goose; *pēs*, pēdis, a foot.

## Exceptions.

- |  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. In o.   | <i>Stellio</i> , septentrio, |
| Feminine are <i>do</i> , <i>go</i> , <i>io</i> , | <i>Margo</i> , ligo, pūgio   |
| To these add <i>cāro</i> , <i>ēcho</i> ,         | <i>Titio</i> , pāpilio,      |
| But Masculine are <i>harpāgo</i> ,               | <i>Unio</i> , curcūlio,      |
| <i>Ordo</i> , <i>cardo</i> , <i>scipio</i> ,     | Lastly <i>vespertilio</i> .  |

cāro,	carnis,	flesh.	margo,	īnis,	a border or edge.
ēcho,	ēchūs,	an echo.	ligo,	ōnis,	a spade.
harpāgo,	ōnis,	a grappling-hook.	pūgio,	ōnis,	a dagger.
ordo,	īnis,	a row.	titio,	ōnis,	a fire-brand.
cardo,	īnis,	a hinge.	pāpilio,	ōnis,	a butterfly.
scipio,	ōnis,	a staff.	ūnio,	ōnis,	a pearl.
stellio,	ōnis,	a lizard.	curcūlio,	ōnis,	a weevil.
septentrio,	ōnis,	the north.	vespertilio,	ōnis,	a bat.

2. In *or*.

Neuter Nouns which end in *or*  
Are only four:

marmor, ōris, *marble.*  
aequor, ōris, *the level surface of  
the sea.*

Marmor, aequor, ōdor, cŏr.  
Fēminīni gēnēris  
Is only arbor (arbŏris).

ādor, ōris, *spelt.*  
cor, cordis, *the heart.*  
arbor, ōris, *a tree.*

3. In *os*.

Feminine are cōs and dōs.

Neuter Nouns are ōs and ōs.

cōs, cōtis, *a whetstone.*  
dōs, dōtis, *a dowry.*

ōs, ossis, *a bone.*  
ōs, ōris, *the mouth.*

4. In *er*.

Many Neuters end in *er*:  
Vēr, cādāver, iter, tūber,  
Cicer, pīper, sīser, ūber,

Zingīber, pāpāver, sūber,  
Acer, sīler, verber, spinther  
Feminine is only linter.

vēr, vēris, *the spring.*  
cādāver, ēris, *a corpse.*  
iter, itinēris, *a journey.*  
tūber, ēris, *a swelling.*  
cicer, ēris, *the chick-pea.*  
pīper, ēris, *pepper.*  
sīser, ēris, *a plant (skirret).*  
ūber, ēris, *an udder.*

zingīber, ēris, *ginger.*  
pāpāver, ēris, *the poppy.*  
sūber, ēris, *the cork-tree*  
ācer, ēris, *the maple.*  
sīler, ēris, *a withy.*  
verber, ēris, *a whip, scourge.*  
spinther, ēris, *a kind of bracelet.*  
linter, tris (f.), *a wherry.*

5. In *es*, increasing in the Genitive.

Feminine are rēquies,

Quiēs, mercēs, mergēs, tēgēs,  
Compes, iniquēs, and sēgēs.

quiēs, ētis, } *rest.*  
rēquies, ētis, }  
iniquēs, ētis, } *restlessness*  
mercēs, ētis, } *wages*

mergēs, itis, *a sheaf of corn.*  
tēgēs, ētis, *a mat.*  
compes, ēdis, *a fetter.*  
sēgēs, ētis, *standing corn.*

## § 145. Second Principal Rule (Feminine).

X, as, aus, and is,

S preceded by a consonant,

Es not increasing in Genitive,

are Feminine.—EXAMPLES: Pax, pācis, *peace*; libertās, ātis, *liberty*; laus, laudis, *praise*; nāvis, is, *a ship*; urbs, urbis, *a city*; nūbēs, is, *a cloud*.

## Exceptions.

1. In *x*.

Masculine are words in *ex*:

Feminine alone are *lex*,  
Sūpellex, cārex, īlex, nex,

Masculine are trādux, cālīx,  
Phoenix too, as well as fornīx.

lex, lēgis, *a law.*  
sūpellex, lectilis, *furniture.*  
cārex, īcis, *a kind of rush.*  
īlex, īcis, *the scarlet oak.*  
nex, nēcis, *violent death.*

trādux, ūcis, *a vine-branch.*  
cālīx, īcis, *a cup.*  
phoenix, īcis, *a fabulous bird.*  
fornīx, īcis, *an arch.*

2. In *as*.

Six Masculina end in *as*:

As (assis), mās, and ēlēphās,  
Vās (vādīs), gīgās, ādāmās.

The Neuter Nouns which end  
in *as*  
Are Vās (vāsīs), fās and nēfās.

ās, assis, *a Roman coin.*  
mās, māsīs, *a male.*  
ēlēphās, antis, *an elephant.*  
vās, vādīs, *a surety.*  
gīgās, antis, *a giant.*

ādāmās, antis, *a diamond.*  
vās, vāsīs, *a vessel.*  
fās (indecl.), *permitted by heaven.*  
nēfās (indecl.), *not permitted by  
heaven.*

3. In *is*.

Many Nouns which end in *is*

Are Masculini gēnēris:

Pānis, piscis, crinis, finis,  
Ignis, lapis, pulvis, cinis,  
Orbis, amnis, and cānālis,  
Sanguis, unguis, glis, annālis,

Fascis, axis, fūnis, ensis,  
Fustis, vectis, vōmis, mensis,  
Vermis, torris, cucūmis,  
Postis, follis, mūgīlis,  
Cassis, caulis, callis, collis,  
Sentis, torquis, pēnis, pollis.

pānis, is, *bread.*  
piscis, is, *a fish.*  
crinis, is, *hair.*  
finis, is, *an end.*  
ignis, is, *fire.*  
lāpis, īdis, *a stone.*  
pulvis, ēris, *dust.*  
cinis, ēris, *ashes.*  
orbis, is, *a circle.*  
amnis, is, *a river.*  
cānālis, is, *a conduit.*  
sanguis, īnis, *blood.*  
unguis, is, *a finger- or toe-nail.*  
glis, īris, *a dormouse.*  
annālis (usu. plur.), *a year-book.*  
fascis, is, *a bundle.*  
axis, is, *an axle.*  
fūnis, is, *a rope.*  
ensis, is, *a sword.*

fustis, is, *a cudgel.*  
vectis, is, *a lever.*  
vōmis, (more freq. vōmer) ris, *a ploughshare.*  
mensis, is, *a month.*  
vermis, is, *a worm.*  
torris, is, *a firebrand.*  
cucūmis, is, and ēris, *a cucumber.*  
postis, is, *a doornail.*  
follis, is, *a pair of bellows.*  
mūgīlis (usu. mūgil), *a mullet.*  
cassis (plur. ium), *a net.*  
caulis, is, *a stalk.*  
callis, is, *a path.*  
collis, is, *a hill.*  
sentis, is, *a bramble.*  
torquis (also es), is, *a chain for the*  
pēnis, is, *a tail.* [neck.  
pollis, īnis, *fine flour, meal.*

4. In *s* preceded by a consonant :

Masculine are *pons* and *fons*,  
*Hydros, torrens, gryps, & mons*, | *Adeps, rūdens, ōriens*,  
*Dens* and *tridens, occidens*.

pons,	tis,	a bridge.	ādeps,	īpis,	fat.
fons,	tis,	a fountain.	rūdens,	entis,	a cable.
hydros,	ōpis	dropsy.	ōriens,	tis,	the east.
torrens,	tis,	a torrent	dens,	tis,	a tooth.
gryps,	grīphis,	a griffin.	trīdens,	tis,	a trident
n.ons,	tis,	a mountain.	occīdens,	tis,	the west.

5. In *ēs*.

Masculines which end in *ēs* | *verrēs*, is, a boar-pig.  
 Are *verrēs* and *ācinācēs*, | *ācinācēs*, is, a scimitar.

## § 146. Third Principal Rule (Neuter)

A, e, and c,

L, n, and t,

Ar, ur, and us,

are *Neuter*.—EXAMPLES: *Poēmā, ātis*, a poem; *mārē*, is, the sea; *lac, lactis*, milk; *ānimāl, ālis*, an animal; *nōmēn, īnis*, a name; *cāpūt, cāpītis*, a head; *fulgūr, ūris*, lightning; *corpūs, ōris*, a body.

## Exceptions.

1. In *l*.

Masculines in *l* are *mūgil*, | *mūgil*, is, a mullet. | *sāl, sālis*, salt.  
*Sōl* and *consul, sāl* and *pūgil*. | *sōl, sōlis*, the sun. | *pūgil*, is, " boxer.  
*consul*, is, a consul.

2. In *n*.

Masculines in *n* are *rēn*, | *rēn, rēnis* (usu. in pl.), the kidney.  
*splēn*, | *splēn, ēnis*, the spleen.  
*Pectēn, liēn, attāgēn*. | *pectēn, īnis*, a comb.  
| *liēn, ēnis*, the spleen.  
| *attāgēn, ēnis*, a heathcock.

3. In *ur*.

Masculines in *ur* are *furfur*, | *furfur, ūris*, bran. | *fūr, ūris*, a thief.  
*Astur, vultur, fūr*, and *turtur*. | *astur, ūris*, a hawk. | *turtur, ūris*, a turtle-dove.  
*vultur, ūris*, a vulture.

4. In *us*.

The Masculines which end in *us* | *lēpus, ōris*, a hare.  
 Are *lēpus* (*lēpōris*) and *mūs*. | *mūs, mūris*, a mouse.

5. In *us*.

The Feminines which end in *us* | *Sēnectūs, tellūs, incūs, sālūs*,  
 Are *Jūventūs, virtūs, servītūs*, | Add *pēcūs* (*pēcūdis*) and *pālūs*.

jūventūs,	ūtis,	youth.	incūs,	ūdis,	an anvil.
virtūs,	ūtis,	virtue.	sālūs,	ūtis,	safety.
servītūs,	ūtis,	slavery.	pēcūs,	ūdis,	cattle.
sēnectūs,	ūtis,	old-age.	pālūs,	ūdis,	a marsh.
tellūs,	ūris,	the earth.			

## § 147. IV. FOURTH DECLENSION.

## Principal Rule.

Us is Masculine

U is Neuter.

## Exceptions.

Feminines which end in *us*: | *Dōmus, nūrus, socrus, ānus*,  
*Tribus, ācus, porticus*, | *Idūs* (*idūm*) and *mānus*.

tribus,	a tribe (a division of the Roman people).	socrus,	a mother-in-law.
ācus,	a needle.	ānus,	an old-woman.
porticus	a portico.	idūs (pl.),	the Ides (a division of the Roman month).
dōmus,	a house.	mānus,	a hand.
nūrus,	a daughter-in-law.		

## Rule.

All are Feminine except *dies* (*mēridies*), which in the Plural is always Masculine, and in the Singular either Masculine or Feminine.

## APPENDIX B.

CHAPTER XXIX.—PERFECTS AND SUPINES  
OF VERBS.

## I. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 149. The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in **avi**, **atum**: as, **amo**, **amavi**, **amatum**, **amāre**, *to love*. The following are exceptions:—

*Perfect—vi. Supine—tum.*

NOTE. Some of these verbs have likewise Perfects and Supines in **avi**, **atum**.

1. Crēpo,	crēpui,	crēpītum,	crēpāre,	<i>to creak.</i>
2. Cābo,	cābui,	cābītum,	cābāre,	<i>to lie.</i>
3. Dōmo,	dōmui,	dōmītum,	dōmāre,	<i>to tame.</i>
4. Sōno,	sōnui,	sōnītum,	sōnāre,	<i>to sound.</i>
5. Vēto,	vētui,	vētītum,	vētāre,	<i>to forbid.</i>
6. Tōno,	tōnui,	—	tōnāre,	<i>to thunder.</i>
7. Mico,	mīcui,	—	mīcāre,	<i>to glitter.</i>
8. Plīco,	plīcui,	plīcītum,	plīcāre,	<i>to fold.</i>
	plīcāvi,	plīcātum,		
9. Frīco,	frīcui,	frīcītum,	frīcāre,	<i>to rub.</i>
		frīctum,		
10. Sēco,	sēcui,	sectum,	sēcāre,	<i>to cut.</i>
11. { Nēco (regular).				
Enēco,	enēcui,	enēctum,	enēcāre,	<i>to kill.</i>
	enēcāvi,	enēcātum,		

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

Obs. Only those compound verbs are inserted which differ from the simple verbs.

1. Diserēpo,	diserēpui,	diserēpītum,	diserēpāre,	<i>to differ.</i>
	diserēpāvi,	diserēpātum,		
Inerēpo,	inerēpui,	inerēpītum,	inerēpāre,	<i>to chide.</i>
	inerēpāvi,	inerēpātum,		

But the forms in *āvi* and *atum* are rare.

2. Cūbo. Some of the compounds are of the Third Conjugation:

acumbo,	accūbui,	accūbītum,	acumbēre,	<i>to recline at table.</i>
---------	----------	------------	-----------	-----------------------------

In like manner *ineumbo*, *lie or lean upon*; *prōcumbo*, *lie down*; *succumbo*, *lie or fall under*; *occumbo* (supply mortem), *die*, &c.

4. Sōno. Future Part. *sōnātūrus*.

7. ēmlco,	ēmīcui,	ēmīcātum,	ēmīcāre,	<i>to spring out.</i>
dmīco,	dmīcāvi,	dmīcātum,	dmīcāre,	<i>to fight.</i>

8. Plīco is used only in composition:

explīco,	explīcui,	explīcītum,	explīcāre,	<i>to unfold.</i>
	explīcāvi,	explīcātum,		
implīco,	implīcui,	implīcītum,	implīcāre,	<i>to fold in, entangle.</i>
	implīcāvi,	implīcātum,		

10. Sēco. Future Part. *sēcātūrus*.

## 2. Perfect—i (vi)—tum.

1. Jūvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	jūvāre,	<i>to assist.</i>
		lāvātum,		
2. Lāvo,	lāvi,	lautum,	lāvāre,	<i>to wash.</i>
		lōtum,		

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Jūvo. Future Part. *jūvātūrus*.

2. Lāvo. There is also an infinitive *lāvēre* of the Third Conjugation. In composition *lāo*, of the Third Conjugation, is used: as,

ablūo,	ablui,	ablūtum,	ablūere,	<i>to wash away.</i>
--------	--------	----------	----------	----------------------

## 3. Perfect with Reduplication. Supine—tum.

1. Do,	dēdi,	dātum,	dāre,	<i>to give.</i>
2. Sto,	stēti,	stātum,	stāre,	<i>to stand.</i>

## COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Do. In composition with prepositions of *two* syllables it is the same: as,

circundo,	circumdēdi,	circumdātum,	circumdāre,	<i>to surround.</i>
-----------	-------------	--------------	-------------	---------------------

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable it is of the Third Conjugation: as,

addo,	addēdi,	addītum,	addēre,	<i>to put to, to add.</i>
-------	---------	----------	---------	---------------------------

See § 159, No. 18.

2. Sto. In composition with prepositions of *two* syllables it is the same: as,

circumsto,	circumstēti,	circumstāre,	<i>to surround.</i>
------------	--------------	--------------	---------------------

But in composition with prepositions of *one* syllable the perfect is *stēti*: as,

adsto,	adstēti,	adstāre,	<i>to stand near.</i>
--------	----------	----------	-----------------------

## II. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 150. The Perfects and the Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in **ui** and **itum**: as, **mōneo**, **mōnui**, **mōnītum**, **mōnēre**, *to advise*. The following are exceptions:

## 1. Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.

1. Dōceo,	dēcui,	doctum,	dēcēre,	<i>to teach.</i>
2. Tēneo,	tēnui,	tentum,	tēnēre,	<i>to hold.</i>
3. Misceo,	miscui,	mixtum,	miscēre,	<i>to mix.</i>
		mistum,		



- |            |                      |         |          |                          |
|------------|----------------------|---------|----------|--------------------------|
| 4. Torreo, | torrui,              | tostum, | torrere, | <i>to roast.</i>         |
| 5. Sorbeo, | { sorbui,<br>sorpſi, | —       | sorbere, | <i>to suck up.</i>       |
| 6. Censeo, | censui,              | censum, | censere, | <i>to assess, think.</i> |

### COMPOUND VERBS.

2. Rētīneo, rētīnui, rētentum, rētīnēre, *to hold back.*  
So also the other compounds of teneo.

6. Rēcenseo, rēcensui,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rēcensitum,} \\ \text{rēcensum,} \end{array} \right\}$  rēcensēre, *to review.*

§ 151.—2. *Perfect*—ēvi. *Supine*—ētum.

- |    |                           |                           |                      |           |                              |
|----|---------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|-----------|------------------------------|
| 1. | Dileo.                    | dilevi,                   | dělētum,             | dělēre,   | <i>to blot out, destroy.</i> |
| 2. | Fleo.                     | flēvi,                    | flētum,              | flēre,    | <i>to weep.</i>              |
| 3. | Neo.                      | nēvi,                     | nētum,               | nēre,     | <i>to spin.</i>              |
| 4. | Pleo only in composition. |                           |                      |           |                              |
|    | {                         | Compleo,                  | complēvi, complētum, | complēre, | <i>to fill up.</i>           |
|    | {                         | Oleo only in composition. |                      |           |                              |
|    | {                         | Abōleo,                   | abōlēvi, abōlētum,   | abōlēre,  | <i>to abol-ish.</i>          |
|    | {                         | Adōleo,                   | adōlēvi, adultum,    | —         | <i>to grow up.</i>           |
|    | {                         | (Adolesco.)               |                      |           |                              |
| 5. | {                         | Exōleo                    | exōlēvi, exōlētum,   | —         | <i>to grow old.</i>          |
|    | {                         | (Exoleseo.)               |                      |           |                              |
|    | {                         | Obsōleo,                  | obsolēvi, obsolētum, | —         | <i>to grow out of use.</i>   |
|    | {                         | (Obsoleseo.)              |                      |           |                              |

To this class may be added:

6. Cieo, cīvi, cītum, ciēre, *to stir.*

6. *Cieo* in composition is either the same, or a verb of the Fourth Conjugation :

concio, concivi, concitum, conciere, } *to rouse thoroughly.*  
conejo, coneji, conejium, concire.

But *aecio*, *aecivi*, *aecitum*, *aecire*, to *summon*, is of the Fourth Conjugation only. *Excio* has both *excitus* and *excitus*.

§ 152.—3. *Perfect*—i (di). *Supine*—sum.

- |    |          |         |          |           |                      |
|----|----------|---------|----------|-----------|----------------------|
| 1. | Prandeo, | prandi, | pransum, | prandĕre, | <i>to breakfast.</i> |
| 2. | Sĕdeo,   | sĕdi,   | sessum,  | sĕdĕre,   | <i>to sit.</i>       |
| 3. | Vĭdeo,   | vĭdi,   | vĭsum,   | vĭdĕre,   | <i>to see.</i>       |
| 4. | Strĭdeo, | strĭdi, | —        | strĭdĕre, | <i>to creak.</i>     |

*With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.*

- |    |          |           |          |           |                    |
|----|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|--------------------|
| 5. | Mordeo,  | mōmordi,  | morsum,  | mordēre,  | <i>to bite.</i>    |
| 6. | Pendeo,  | pēpendi,  | pensum,  | pendēre,  | <i>to hang.</i>    |
| 7. | Spondeo, | spōpondi, | sponsum, | spondēre, | <i>to promise.</i> |
| 8. | Tondeo,  | tōtondi,  | tonsum,  | tondēre,  | <i>to shear.</i>   |

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

1. *Prandeo*. The Participle *pransus* has an active meaning: *one who has breakfasted*. § 119, *Obs.*
2. *Sēdeo* in composition with prepositions of two syllables is the same: *circumsēdeo*, *circumsēdi*, *circumsessum*, *circumsēdere*, *to sit around*.

But with prepositions of one syllable the first *e* of the stem becomes *i* in the imperfect tenses: as,

assideo, assēdi, assessum, assīdēre, *to sit by.*

5, 6, 7, 8. In composition the reduplication is dropped : as,

admordeo,	admordi,	admorsum,	admordere,	<i>to bite at.</i>
pröpendeo,	pröpendi,	(pröpensum),	pröpendere,	<i>to hang down.</i>
respondeo,	respondi,	responsum,	respondere,	<i>to answer.</i>
attondeo,	attondi,	attonsum,	attondere,	<i>to shear closely.</i>

§ 153.—4. *Perfect*—i (vi). *Supine*—tum.

- |    |        |       |         |         |                             |
|----|--------|-------|---------|---------|-----------------------------|
| 1. | Cáveo, | cávi, | cautum, | cávère, | <i>to guard one's self.</i> |
| 2. | Fáveo, | fávi, | fautum, | fávère, | <i>to favour.</i>           |
| 3. | Fóveo, | fóvi, | fotum,  | fóvère, | <i>to cherish</i>           |
| 4. | Móveo, | móvi, | mótum,  | móvère  | <i>to move.</i>             |
| 5. | Vóveo, | vóvi, | vótum,  | vóvère, | <i>to vow.</i>              |

*Without Supine.*

- |              |            |   |            |                 |
|--------------|------------|---|------------|-----------------|
| 6. Páveo,    | { pávi,    | — | pávère,    | <i>to fear.</i> |
| 7. Ferveo,   | { fervi,   | — | fervère,   | <i>to boil.</i> |
|              | { ferbui,  |   |            |                 |
| 8. Conniveo, | { connivi, | — | connivère, | <i>to wink.</i> |
|              | { connixi, |   |            |                 |

Of all verbs ending in *-reo* the Perfects are formed by lengthening vowels of the Stems.

§ 154.—5. *Perfect*—**si**. *Supine*—**tum** and **sum**.

- |     |           |          |           |            |                      |
|-----|-----------|----------|-----------|------------|----------------------|
| 1.  | Augeo,    | auxi,    | auctum,   | augēre,    | <i>to increase.</i>  |
| 2.  | Indulgeo, | indulsi, | indultum, | indulgēre, | <i>to indulge.</i>   |
| 3.  | Torqueo,  | torsi,   | tortum,   | torquēre,  | <i>to twist.</i>     |
| 4.  | Ardeo,    | arsī,    | arsum,    | ardēre,    | <i>to blaze.</i>     |
| 5.  | Haereo,   | haesi,   | haesum,   | haerēre,   | <i>to stick.</i>     |
| 6.  | Jubeo,    | jussi,   | jussum,   | jubēre,    | <i>to order.</i>     |
| 7.  | Māneo,    | mansi,   | mansum,   | manēre,    | <i>to remain.</i>    |
| 8.  | Mulceo,   | mulsi,   | mulsum,   | mulcēre,   | <i>to stroke.</i>    |
| 9.  | Mulgeo,   | mulsi,   | mulctum,  | mulgēre,   | <i>to milk.</i>      |
| 10. | Rideo,    | risi,    | risum,    | ridēre,    | <i>to laugh.</i>     |
| 11. | Suadeo,   | suasi,   | suasum,   | suadēre,   | <i>to advise.</i>    |
| 12. | Tergeo,   | tersi,   | tersum,   | tergēre,   | <i>to wipe.</i>      |
| 13. | Algeo,    | alsi,    | —         | algēre,    | } <i>to be cold.</i> |
| 14. | Frigeo,   | frixi,   | —         | frigēre,   |                      |
| 15. | Fulgeo,   | fulsi,   | —         | fulgēre,   | <i>to shine.</i>     |
| 16. | Lūceo,    | luxi,    | —         | lucēre,    | <i>to be light.</i>  |
| 17. | Lūgeo,    | luxi,    | —         | lūgēre,    | <i>to grieve.</i>    |
| 18. | Turgeo,   | (tursi), | —         | turgēre,   | <i>to swell.</i>     |
| 19. | Urgeo,    | ursi,    | —         | urgēre,    | <i>to press.</i>     |

§ 155. *Semi-Deponents or Neuter-Passives.*

- |            |              |   |          |                          |
|------------|--------------|---|----------|--------------------------|
| 1. Audeo,  | ausus sum,   | — | audēre,  | <i>to dare.</i>          |
| 2. Gaudeo, | gāvisus sum, | — | gaudēre, | <i>to rejoice.</i>       |
| 3. Sōleo,  | sōlītus sum, | — | sōlēre.  | <i>to be accustomed.</i> |

§ 156. *Obs.* 1. Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have regular Perfect Tenses, but no Supines :

1. Arceo,	areui,	arcēre,	to keep off.
2. Calleo,	callui,	callēre,	to be skilful.
3. Egeo,	ēgui,	ēgēre,	to want.
4. Flūreo,	flūruī,	flūrēre,	to flourish.
5. Horreo,	horruī,	horrēre,	to shudder.
6. Lāteo,	lātui,	lātēre,	to lie hid.
7. Nīteo,	nītui,	nītēre,	to shine.
8. Ōleo,	ōlui,	ōlēre,	to smell.
9. Pāteo,	pātui,	pātēre,	to lie open.
10. Rīgeo,	rīgui,	rīgēre,	to be stiff.
11. Sīleo,	sīlui,	sīlēre,	to be silent.
12. Stūdeo,	stūdui,	stūdēre,	to pay attention to.
13. Tīteo,	tīmui,	tīmēre,	to fear.
14. Vīgeo,	vīgui,	vīgēre,	to thrive.
15. Vīreo,	vīruī,	vīrēre,	to be green.

*Arceo* has the compounds *coerceo*, to restrain, and *exerceo*, to exercise, with Supines *coercitum* and *exercitum*.

*Obs. 2.* Many Verbs, chiefly Intransitive, have neither Perfect Tenses nor Supines:

1. Aveo,	āvēre,	to desire.
2. Calveo,	calvēre,	to be bald.
3. Cāneo,	cāvēre,	to be grey.
4. Flāveo,	flāvēre,	to be yellow.
5. Foeteo,	foetēre,	to stink.
6. Hēbeo,	hēbēre,	to be blunt.
7. Hūmco,	hūmcēre,	to be damp.
8. Liveo,	livēre,	to be livid.
9. Maereo,	maerēre,	to mourn.
10. Polleo,	pollēre,	to be powerful.
11. Rēndeo,	rēndēre,	to shine.
12. Scāteo,	scātēre,	to gush forth.
13. Squāleo,	squālēre,	to be dirty.

### III. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 157. Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

#### 1. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials B, P.

(a.) Perfect—*si*. Supine—*tum*.

NOTE.—*B* becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

1. Carpo,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpēre,	to pluck.
2. Glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glubēre,	to peel.
3. Nūbo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nubēre,	to marry.
4. Repo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpēre,	to creep.
5. Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpēre,	to scratch.
6. Scribo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scribēre,	to write.
7. Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpēre,	to crawl.

(b.) Perfect—*ui*. Supine—*tum* or *itum*.

8. Rāp-io,	rāpui,	raptum,	rāpēre,	to seize.
9. {Cumbo,	incābui,	incābitum,	incumbēre,	to lie upon.
10. Strēpo,	strēpui,	strēpitum,	strēpēre,	to make a noise.

(c.) Perfect—*i*. Supine—*tum*, or wanting.

11. Cāp-io,	cēpi,	captum,	cāpēre,	to take.
12. Rumpo,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpēre,	to burst.
13. Bibo,	bibi,	—	hibēre,	to drink.
14. Lambō,	lambi,	—	lambēre,	to lick.
15. Scābo,	scābi,	—	scābēre,	to scratch.

(d.) Perfect—*ivi*. Supine—*itum*, or wanting.

16. Cāp-io,	cūpīvi,	cūpitum,	cūpēre,	to desire.
17. Sāp-io,	{sāpīvi, or {sāpii,	—	sāpēre,	to taste.

#### REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Dēcerpo, dēcerpsi, dēcerptum, dēcerpēre, to pluck off.
8. Arrīpio, arrīpui, arreptum, arripēre, to snatch.
9. *Cumbo* occurs only in compounds. The simple Verb is *cūbo* of the First Conjugation. See § 149.
11. Accīpio, rēcīpio, etc. (see § 206, 1).
17. Dēspīo, —, —, dēspīpēre, to be foolish.

#### § 158.—2. Verbs the Stems of which end in the gutturals C, G, H, Q, X.

(a.) Perfect—*si*. Supine—*tum*.

NOTE.—*Cs*, *hs*, and *gs* become *x*. *G* becomes *c* before *t*.

1. Dico,	dixi,	dictum,	dicēre,	to say.
2. Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcēre,	to lead.
3. Cōquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cōquēre,	to cook.
4. Cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	cingēre,	to surround.
5. {Fligo, not used.) {Affligo,	affixi,	afflictum,	affligēre	to strike, to strike to the ground.
6. Frigo,	frixi,	frictum, } frixum, }	frigēre,	to parch, to fry.
7. Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungēre,	to join.
8. Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingēre,	to lick.
9. {Emungo, not used.) {Emungo,	ēmunxi,	ēmunctum,	ēmungēre,	to blow the nose.
10. Plango,	planxi,	planctum,	plangēre,	to beat.
11. Rēgo,	rexī,	rectum,	rēgēre,	to direct, rule.
12. {Spēcio, very seldom used.) {Aspicio,	aspexi,	aspectum,	aspicēre,	to behold.
13. Sūgo,	suxi,	suctum,	sūgēre,	to suck.
14. Tēgo,	texi,	tectum,	tēgēre,	to cover.
15. {Tingo, {Tinguo,	tinxi,	tinctum,	{tingēre, {tinguēre,	to dip.

16.	{ Ungo, unxi, unctum, { ungere, to anoint. { Unguo, { unguere,
17.	{ (Stinguo, not used.) { Exstinguo, exstinxī, exstinctum, exstinguere, to extinguish.
18.	Trāho, traxi, tractum, trahere, to drag.
19.	Vēho, vixi, vectum, vehere, to carry.
20.	{ (Lāe-io, very seldom used.) { Allie-io, allexi, allectum, allieere, to entice.
21.	Ango, anxī, —, angere, to vex.
22.	Ningit, ninxit, —, ningere, to snore.
23.	Fingo, finxi, fectum, fingere, to form, to invent.
24.	Mingo, minxi, minctum, mingere, to make water.
25.	Pingo, pinxi, pictum, pingere, to paint.
26.	Stringo, strinxī, strictum, stringere, to grasp.

## (b.) Perfect—si. Supine—sum and xum.

27.	Mergo, mersi, mersum, mergere, to sink.
28.	Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, spargere, to scatter.
29.	Tergo, tersi, tersum, tergere, to wipe.
30.	Figo, fixi, fixum, figere, to fix.
31.	Flecto, flexi, flexum, flectere, to bend.
32.	Necto, nexi (and-ui), nexum, nectere, to bind.
33.	Pecto, pexi, pexum, pectere, to comb.
34.	Plecto, plexi (and-ui), plexum, plectere, to plait.

## (c.) Perfect—i (with Reduplication) Supine—sum and tum.

35.	Pango, pēpigi, pactum, pangere, to fix.
36.	Parco, { pēperei, { parcitum, parcere, to spare. { parsi, { parsum,
37.	Pungo, pūpigi, punctum, pungere, to prick.
38.	Tango, tētigi, tactum, tangere, to touch.
39.	Disco, dīdici, —, discere, to learn.
40.	Posco, pōposei, —, poscere, to demand.

## (d.) Perfect—i (with vowel of Stem lengthened).

41.	Ago, ēgi, actum, agere, to do.
42.	Fāc-io, fēcī, factum, facere, to make, to do.
43.	Frangō, frēgi, fractum, frangere, to break.
44.	Fug-io, fugi, fugitum, fugere, to flee, to fly.
45.	Iceo, icī, ietum, icere, to strike (a treaty).
46.	Jāc-io, jēcī, iactum, jacere, to throw.
47.	Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, legere, to read.
48.	Linguo, liqui, (lictum,) linquere, to leave.
49.	Vinco, vici, victum, vincere, to conquer.

## (e.) Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.

50.	Texo, texui, textum, texere, to weave.
-----	--

## (f.) Guttural Stem disguised.

51.	Fluo, fluxi, fluctum, fluere, to flow.
52.	Struo, struxi, structum, struere, to pile up.
53.	Vivo, vixi, victum, vivere, to live.

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

11. *Obs.* *Rēgo* in composition becomes *rēgo*, as,  
Arrigo, arrexī, arrectum, arrigere, to raise.  
So also *corrigo*, *ērgo*, &c. *Pergo* (a contraction of *per* and *rego*) and *surgō* (a contraction of *sub* and *rego*) make  
Pergo, perrexī, perrectum, pergere, to go straight on.  
Surgō, surrexī, surrectum, surgere, to rise up.

12. The other compounds of *specio*, as *conspicio*, *despicio*, etc., are conjugated like *aspicio*.

- 23—26. In *fingo*, *pingo*, *stringo* the *n* is a strengthening letter, and the Stem appears in the Supine.

28. *Conspargo*, *conspersi*, *conspersum*, *conspargere*, to sprinkle.

- 31—34. In *flecto*, *necto*, *pecto*, *plecto*, the *t* is a strengthening letter and not a part of the Stem.

35. *Compingo*, *compēgi*, *compactum*, *compingere*, to fix together.

36. { *Comparco*, *comparsi*, *comparsum*, *comparcere*, to save.  
{ (*Comperco*),

37. *Compungo*, *compunxi*, *compunctum*, *compungere*, to prick.

38. *Attingo*, *attēgi*, *attactum*, *attingere*, to touch, and the like.

41. *Ago* in composition changes the *a* into *i* in *ābigo*, *ādigo*, *exigo*, *sūbigo*, *transigo*:

Ābigo, ābēgi, ābactum, ābīgere, to drive away.

It preserves the *a* in *perāgo*, *circumāgo*. In *cōgo* (a contraction of *con* and *ago*) we have—

Cōgo, cōēgi, cōactum, cōīgere, to drive together, to force.

42. *Fācio* in compos. with other verbs and with adverbs remains unaltered:

Cālēfācio, cālēfēcī, cālēfactum, cālēfācere, to make warm.  
Sātisfācio, sātisfēcī, sātisfactum, sātisfācere, to give satisfaction.

But in compos. with prepositions we have—

Perfācio, perfēcī, perfectum, perfācere, to complete, and the like: v. § 206, 1.

Also, *mellifācio*, *I make honey*; and *nidifācio*, *I build a nest*, are of the First Conjugation (v. § 205, *Obs.*).

43. *Perfringo*, *perfrēgi*, *perfractum*, *perfringere*, to break through.

46. *Abjicio*, *conjicio*, *dējicio*, etc.: v. § 206, 1.

47. *Lēgo* preserves the *e* in *allēgo*, *perlēgo*, *praelēgo*, *rēlego*: as,

Allēgo, allēgi, allectum, allēgere, to choose in addition

It changes the *e* into *i* in *colligo*, *dēlīgo*, *ēlīgo*, *sēlīgo*: as,

Colligo, collēgi, collectum, collīgere, to collect.

The Present-Perfect is different in

Dillgo, dillēxi, dilectum, dillīgere, to love.

Intelligo, intellexi, intellectum, intelligere, to understand.

Negligo, neglexi, neglectum, negligere, to neglect.

- 51—53. In *fluo* and *struo* the root is *flu* and *stru*, the *e* being dropped in the Imperfect Tenses. In *vivo* the second *v* represents a guttural.

§ 159.—3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals D, T.*(a.) *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

NOTE.—D and t are generally dropped before s, but are sometimes changed into s.

1. Claudio,	clausi,	clausum,	claudere,	to shut.
2. Divido,	divisi,	divisum,	dividere,	to divide.
3. Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedere,	to strike, to injure.
4. Ludo,	lusi,	lusum,	ludere,	to play.
5. Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudere,	to clap the hands.
6. Rado,	rasi,	rasum,	radere,	to scrape.
7. Rodo,	rosi,	rosum,	rodere,	to gnaw.
8. Trudo,	trusi,	trusum,	trudere,	to thrust.
9. Vado,	—	—	vadere,	to go.
10. Invado,	invasi,	invasum,	invadere,	to go against.
11. Cedo,	cessi,	cessum,	cedere,	to yield.
12. Mitto,	misi,	missum,	mittere,	to send.
13. Quat-io,	—	quassum,	quatere,	to shake.

(b.) *Perfect with the Reduplication.*

13. Cado,	cecidi,	caesum,	cadere,	to fall.
14. Caedo,	cecidi,	caesum,	cadere,	to strike.
15. Pendo,	pependi,	pensum,	pendere,	to hang, to weigh.
16. Tendo,	tetendi,	tensum,	tendere,	to stretch.
17. Tundo,	tatudi,	tunsum,	tundere,	to beat.
18. Do in composition.				to put.
Abdo,	abdidi,	abditum,	abdere,	to put away, to hide.
Addo,	addidi,	additum,	addere,	to put to, to add.
Condo,	condidi,	conditum,	condere,	to put together, to build, hide.
Dedo,	dedidi,	deditum,	dedere,	to put down, to surrender.
Edo,	edidi,	editum,	edere,	to put forth, to publish.
Indo,	indidi,	inditum,	indere,	to put on.
Perdo,	perdidi,	perditum,	perdere,	to ruin, to lose.
Prudo,	prudidi,	pruditum,	prudere,	to betray.
Reddo,	reddidi,	redditum,	reddere,	to put back, to restore.
Subdo,	subdidi,	subditum,	subdere,	to put under, to substitute.
Trado,	tradidi,	traditum,	tradere,	to put across, to deliver up.
Crudo,	credidi,	creditum,	credere,	to believe, trust.
Vendo,	vendidi,	venditum,	vendere,	to sell.
19. Sisto,	sisti,	statum,	sistere,	to cause to stand.

(c.) *Perfect—i. Supine—sum.*

20. {Cando)				
Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendere,	to set on fire.
21. Cado,	cudi,	cusum,	cudere,	to hammer.
22. Edo,	edi,	esum,	edere,	to eat.

23. {Fendo not used,				to strike.)
Defendo,	defendi,	defensum,	defendere,	to ward off, to defend.
Offendo,	offendi,	offensum,	offendere,	to strike against, to assault.
24. Fodio,	fodi,	fossum,	fodere,	to dig.
25. Fundo,	fudi,	fusum,	fundere,	to pour.
26. Mando,	maudi,	mansum,	mandere,	to chew.
	(rare,)			
27. Pando,	pandi,	passum,	pandere,	to spread.
28. Prehendo,	prehendi,	prehensum,	prehendere,	to grasp.
29. Scando,	scandi,	scansum,	scandere,	to climb.
30. {Strido,	stridi,	—	stridere,	to creak.
31. Verto,	verti,	versum,	vertere,	to turn.
32. Findo,	fidi,	fissum,	findere,	to cleave.
33. Scindo,	scidi,	scissum,	scindere,	to tear.
34. {Frendo,	—	fressum,	frendere,	to gnash the teeth.
Frendeo,	—	frusum,	—	

(d.) *Other Forms.*

35. Meto,	messui,	messum,	metere,	to mow.
36. Peto,	petivi or petii,	petitum,	petere,	to seek.
37. Sido,	sedli (rarely sidi),	—	sidere,	to settle down.
38. Sterto,	stertui,	—	stertere,	to snore.
39. Fido,	fisis sum,	—	idere,	to trust.

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

- The compounds of claudio change *au* into *ā*; as *conclūdo*, *occlūdo*, etc.
- The compounds of laedo change *ae* into *f*; as *allīdo*, *collīdo*, etc.: v. § 206, 3.
- Plaudo* in compos. *Applaudo* is the same, but the others are like *Explūdo*, *explōsi*, *explōsum*, *explōdere*, to hiss off.
- The compounds of *quatio* change *quā* into *cū*; as, *Concūtio*, *concussi*, *concussum*, *concūtēre*, to shake together.
- Occlōdo*, *occlōdi*, *occlōsum*, *occlōdere*, to fall down, to set, and the like.
- The compounds of *caedo* change *ae* into *i*, and drop the reduplication; as *Occlōdo*, *occlōdi*, *occlōsum*, *occlōdere*, to slay.
- No reduplication in the compounds.
- Tendo* in compos. generally has only *tentum*; but a few Compounds have both *tensum* and *tentum*: as, *Extendo*, *extendi*, *extensum*, *extentum*, *extendere*, to stretch out.
- No reduplication in the compounds.
- The compounds take *stitum* for *statum*; as, *Subsisto*, *substiti*, *substitum*, *subsistere*, to halt.
- Ascendo*, *ascendi*, *ascensum*, *ascendere*, to climb up.

## § 160.—Verbs the Stems of which end in L, M, N.

## (a.) Perfect—ui. Supine—-itum or -tum.

	ālui,	ālītum or altum,	ālēre,	to nourish.
2. Cōlo,	cōlui,	cultum,	cōlēre,	to till.
3. Consūlo,	consūlui,	consultum,	consulēre,	to consult.
4. Mōlo,	mōlui,	mōltum,	mōlēre,	to grind.
5. Occūlo,	occūlui,	oecultum,	oeculēre,	to conceal.
6. Vōlo,	vōlui,	—	vellēre,	to wish.
7. Frēmo,	frēmui,	frēmītum,	frēmēre,	to roar.
8. Gēmo,	gēmui,	gēmītum,	gēmēre,	to groan.
9. Trēmo,	trēmui,	—	trēmēre,	to tremble.
10. Vōmo,	vōmui,	vōmītum,	vōmēre,	to vomit.
11. Gīgno,	gīgnoi,	gīgūtum,	gīgēre,	to produce.

## (b.) Perfect with Reduplication.

12. Fallo,	fēfelli,	falsum,	fallēre,	to deceive.
13. Pello,	pēpūli,	pulsum,	pellēre,	to drive.
14. Cāno,	cēcīni,	cantum,	cānēre,	to sing.

## (c.) Perfect—si. Supine—-tum.

15. Cōmo,	compsi,	comptum,	cōmēre,	to adorn.
16. Dēmo,	dempsi,	demptum,	dēmēre,	to take away.
17. Prōmo,	prompsi,	promptum,	prōmēre,	to take out.
18. Sūmo,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	sūmēre,	to take up.
19. Temno,	tempsi,	temptum,	temnēre,	to despise.

## (d.) Other forms.

20. Perecello,	perēcūli,	perculsum,	percellēre,	to strike down.
21. Psallo,	psalli,	—	psallēre,	to play on a stringed instrument.
22. Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vellēre,	to pluck.
23. Tollo,	sustāli,	sublātum,	tollēre,	to raise up.
24. Ēmo,	ēmi,	emptum,	ēmēre,	to buy or take
25. Prēmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prēmēre,	to press.
26. Līno,	lēvi,	lītum,	linēre,	to smear.
27. Sīno,	sīvi,	sītum,	sinēre,	to permit.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

12. Rēfello,	rēfelli,	—	rēfellēre,	to refute.
13. Expello,	expēli,	expulsum,	expellēre,	to drive out.
14. Oecīno,	oecinui,	oecentum,	oecinēre,	to sing against.
15—19. Cōmo, dēmo, prōmo, sūmo are compounds of con, dē, prō, sūb, and ēmo.				

## § 161.—Verbs the Stems of which end in R.

1. Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cernēre,	to sift, to divide.
2. Sperno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	spernēre,	to despise.
3. Sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	sternēre,	to strew.

4. Gēro,	gessi,	gestum,	gērēre,	to carry.
5. Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūrēre,	to burn.
6. Curro,	cūcurri,	cursum,	currēre,	to run.
7. Fēro,	fālī,	lātum,	ferēre,	to bear, carry.
8. Pār-io,	pēpēri,	partum,	pārēre,	to produce.
9. Quacro,	quacsi,	quacitum,	quacrēre,	to seek.
10. Sēro,	sēui,	sertum,	sērēre,	to put in rows, to plait.
11. Sēro,	sēvi,	sātum,	sērēre,	to sow.
12. Tēro,	trivi,	tritum,	tērēre,	to rub.
13. Verro,	verri,	versum,	verrēre,	to sweep.

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS

1—3. In *cerno*, *sperno*, *sterno*, the Stems are *cer*, *sper*, *ster*, the *n* being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses. See § 106, Obs. 2.

6. *Curro* in compos. sometimes retains but generally drops the reduplication: as, *accurro*, *accurri*, rarely *accūcurri*.

8. *Pār-io*. Fut. Part. *pārītūrus*.

9. *Quacro* has the Stem ending in *s* as well as *r*. Hence we find not only *quacsi*, *quacitum*, but also *quacso*, *quacsumus*, *I pray*, we pray. See § 124. *Quacro* in compos. becomes *quīro*: as,

*Conquiro*, *conquīsi*, *conquīsītum*, *conquīrēre*, to collect.

## 162.—Verbs the Stems of which end in S, X.

1. Depso,	depsi,	depstum,	depsēre,	to knead.
2. Pinso,	{pinsui,	{pinsitum,	pinsēre,	to pound.
	{pinsi,	{pinsum,		
3. Pīso,	—	pistum,	pīsēre,	to pound.
4. Vīso,	vīsi,	—	visēre,	to visit.
5. Pōno,	pōsui,	pōsītum,	pōnēre,	to place.
6. Arcesso,	arcessi,	arcessitum,	arcessēre,	to send for.
7. Cāpesso,	cāpessi,	cāpessitum,	cāpessēre,	to take in hand.
8. Fācesso,	fācessi,	fācessitum,	fācessēre,	to make, to cause.
9. Lācesso,	lācessi,	lācessitum,	lācessēre,	to provoke.

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

5. In *pōno* the root is *pōs*, the *n* being the strengthening letter of the Imperfect Tenses. See § 106, Obs. 2.

6—9. *Arcesso*, *cāpesso*, *fācesso*, *lācesso* are formed respectively from *arcio* (an old verb, the root of which is seen in *cicio*), *cāpio*, *fācio*, *lācio*. There was also an old verb *pōtesso*, to seek, from *pōto*.

*Arcesso* sometimes has an Inf. Pass. *arcessiri*.

## § 163.—Verbs the Stems of which end in U, V.

## Perfect—i Supine—-tum.

1. Acuo,	ācui,	ācūtum,	ācuēre,	to sharpen.
2. Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	arguēre,	to prove.
3. Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuēre,	to soak.
4. Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induēre,	to put on.
5. Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuēre,	to put off.

6. Mīnuo,	mīnui,	mīnūtum,	mīnuēre,	to lessen.
7. Rao,	ruī,	rātum,	ruēre,	to rush.
8. Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuēre,	to spit.
9. Stātuō,	stātui,	stātūtum,	stātūēre,	to set up.
10. Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suēre,	to sew.
11. Tribuo,	tribui,	tribūtum,	tribuēre,	to distribute.
12. Lāvo,	lāvi,	{lautum, lōtum,	lāvēre,	to wash.
13. Solvo,	solvi,	solūtum,	solvēre,	to loosen.
14. Volvo,	volvi,	vōlūtum,	volvēre,	to roll.
15. Congruo,	congrui,	—	congruēre,	to agree.
16. Luo,	lui,	—	luēre,	to atone.
17. {Nuo,	—	—	—	to nod.)
Abnuo,	abnuī,	—	abnuēre,	to refuse.
Annuo,	annui,	—	annuēre,	to assent.
18. Mētuō,	mētui,	—	mētūēre,	to fear.
19. Pluit,	pluit or plūvit,	—	pluēre,	to rain.
20. Sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuēre,	to sneeze.

Obs. In *fluo*, *struo*, *vivo*, the Stem ends in *e* or *g*. See § 158.

## REMARKS.

7. *Ruo*. Fut. Part. *ruitūrus*.  
12. *Lavo* is also of the First Conjugation. See § 149, 2.  
16. *Luo*. Fut. Part. *luitūrus*.

§ 164.—Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in *sco*.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*, that is, denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Substantives, and Adjectives. See § 194, 2.

§ 165. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines: as, *incālesco*, *incālui*, *incālescere*, to grow warm, from *cāleo*, *cālui*, *cālere*, to be warm. The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines:—

1. *Abōlesco*, *abōlēvi*, *abōlītum*, *abōlescere*, to grow out of use.
2. *Adōlesco*, *adōlēvi*, *adūltum*, *adōlescere*, to grow up.
3. *Exōlesco*, *exōlēvi*, *exōlītum*, *exōlescere*, to grow old.
4. *Cōalesco*, *cōālui*, *cōālītum*, *cōalescere*, to grow together.
5. *Concupisco*, *concupīvi*, *concupītum*, *concupiscere*, to desire.
6. *Convalesco*, *convālui*, *convālītum*, *convalescere*, to grow strong.
7. *Exardesco*, *exarsi*, *exarsum*, *exardescere*, to take fire.
8. *Inveterasco*, *invētērāvi*, *invētērātum*, *invētērascere*, to grow old.
9. *Obdormisco*, *obdormīvi*, *obdormītum*, *obdormiscere*, to fall asleep.

10. *Rēvivisco*, *rēvixi*, *rēvictum*, *rēviviscere*, to come to life again.
11. *Scisco*, *scīvi*, *scītum*, *sciscere*, to seek to know, to enact.

Obs. *Abōlesco*, *adōlesco*, *exōlesco* are formed from an obsolete verb *ōleo*, to grow.

§ 166. Inceptives formed from Substantives and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines: as,

1. *Consensco*, *consēui*, — *consenscere*, to grow old.
2. *Ingravesco*, — *ingrāvescere*, to grow heavy.
3. *Javescō*, — — *jāvescere*, to grow young.
4. *Māturesco*, *mātūri*, — *mātūrescere*, to grow ripe.
5. *Obmutesco*, *obmūtui*, — *obmutescere*, to grow dumb.

§ 167. The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as undeived Verbs:

1. *Cresco*, *crēvi*, *crētum*, *crescere*, to grow.
2. *Glisco*, — — *gliscere*, to swell.
3. *Hisco*, (*hio*), — — *hiscere*, to gape.
4. *Nosco*, *nōvi*, *nōtum*, *noscere*, to learn, to know.
5. *Pasco*, *pāvi*, *pastum*, *pascere*, to feed.
6. *Quiesco*, *quīēvi*, *quīctum*, *quiescere*, to become quiet.
7. *Suesco*, *suēvi*, *suētum*, *suescere*, to grow accustomed.

## REMARKS.

4. *Nosco*. The Perfect signifies *I know*; the Past-Perfect, *I knew*. The Stem is *gno*: in compos. we have  
*Agnosco*, *agnōvi*, *agnītum*, *agnoscere*, to recognise.  
*Cognosco*, *cognōvi*, *cognītum*, *cognoscere*, to learn, to know.

## IV. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 168. In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in *ivi*, the Supine in *itum*: as, *audio*, *audivi*, *audītum*, *audire*, to hear. The following are exceptions:

1. *Farcio*, *farsi*, { *fartum*, *farcire*, to cram.  
{ (*fartum*,)
2. *Fulcio*, *fulsi*, *fultum*, *fulcire*, to prop.

3. Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurire,	to draw (water).
4. Sancio,	sanxi,	{sanctum, sanctum,	sancire,	to ratify.
5. Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcire,	to patch.
6. Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentire,	to feel, to think.
7. Saepio,	saepsi,	saepum,	saepire,	to fence in.
8. Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincire,	to bind.
9. Eo,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to go.
10. Salio,	salui or salii,	saltu	salire,	to leap.
11. Sēpeliō,	sēpeliui,	sēpultum,	sēpeliire,	to bury.
12. Vēnio,	veni,	ventum,	vēnire,	to come.
13. Amīcio,	{amiciui, amixi,	amictum,	amiciire,	to clothe.
14. Apērio,	apēruī,	āpertum,	āpēriire,	to open.
15. Opērio,	opēruī,	ōpertum,	ōpēriire,	to cover.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Farcio takes *e* in the compounds: as, confarcio, refarcio, etc.: v.  
§ 206, 1.  
10. Dēsilio, dēsiliui, dēsultum, dēsiliire, to leap down.

## V. DEPONENTS.

## § 169. First Conjugation (all regular).

NOTE.—The words to which an asterisk is prefixed occur also in the active form.

*Adminicūlor, to aid.	Auxilior, to aid.
Abōminor, to express abhorrence.	Aversor, to dislike, avoid with horror.
Adversor, to oppose myself.	Bacchor, to revel as a Bacchanal.
*Adūlor, to flatter.	Cālmīnor, to cavil.
Aemūlor, to rival.	Cavillor, to banter.
*Altercor, to quarrel.	Caupōnor, to deal in retail.
Alūcīnor (also alluc. and halluc.), to dote, talk idly.	Causor, to allege.
Amplexor, to embrace.	Circūlor, to form a circle around one.
Ancillor, to be a handmaid.	Cōmissor, to revel.
Apricor, to sun oneself.	*Cōmitor, to accompany (active only in the poets).
Aquor, to fetch water.	Commentor, to reflect upon, dispute.
Arbitror, to think.	Contōnor, to harangue.
Architector, to build (architectus).	*Conflictor, to contend.
Argūmentor, to argue.	Conor, to attempt.
Argūtor, to chatter (to be argutus).	Consilior, to advise.
Aspernor, to despise.	Conspicor, to get sight of.
Assentor, to agree, flatter.	Contemplor, to contemplate.
Astipulor, to agree.	Convicior, to revile.
Auctionor, to sell at auction.	Convivor, to feast (conviva).
Aucēpor, to catch birds (to be auceps.)	Cornicor, to chatter as a crow.
Augūror (angur),	Crimīnor, to accuse.
*Auspīcor (auspex),	Cucetor, to delay.
Hariolor (hariolus),	
Vaticīnor (vates),	

} to practise  
} soothsaying.

Dēpēcūlor, to plunder.	Lucror, to gain.
Despicor, to despise; but despicatus is passive, despised.	Luctor, to strive, wrestle (obluctor and reluctor, to resist).
Dēversor, to lodge.	*Lūdficor, to ridicule.
Digladior, to fight.	Māchīnor, to devise.
Dignor, to think worthy (Cicero sometimes uses it as a passive, to be thought worthy).	Matērior, to fell timber.
Dēdignor, to disclaim.	*Mēdicor, to heal.
Dōminor, to rule (dominus).	Mēditor, to meditate.
*Elacubror, to produce by dint of labour.	Mercor, to buy.
Ēpūlor, to feast.	*Mēridior, to repose at noon.
Exsecror, to execrate.	Mētor, to measure out.
*Fabrīcor, to fashion.	Minor and minitor, to threaten.
Fābūlor, confābūlor, to talk.	Mīror, to wonder (dēmīror, admīror).
Fāmūlor, to serve (famulus).	Misēror, commīsēror, to pity.
*Fēnēror, to lend at interest, (the active, "to restore with interest," occurs in Terence; in later writers the active has the same sense as the deponent).	Mōdēror, to restrain, temper.
Fērior, to keep holiday.	Mōdūlor, to modulate.
Frūmentor, to collect corn.	Mōrigēror, to comply.
Frustror, to disappoint.	Mōror, to delay; trans. and intrans. (commōror).
Fūror, suffūror, to steal.	Mūnēror, rēmūnēror (aliquem aliquā re), to reward.
Glōrior, to boast.	Mūtor, to borrow.
Græcor, to live in the Greek style, i.e., luxuriously.	Nēgōtor, to carry on business.
Grassor, to advance, attack.	Nīdūlor, to build a nest.
Grātīficor, to comply with.	Nūgor, to trifle.
Grātor and grātūlor, to give thanks, to present congratulations.	Nundīnor, to deal in buying and selling.
Grāvior, to think burdensome; to grudge.	Ōdōror, to smell out.
Helluor, to gluttonise.	Ōmīnor, to prophesy (abōmīnor, to abominate).
Hortor, to exhort; adhortor, exhortor, dēhortor (to dissuade).	Ōpēror, to bestow labour on.
Hospītor, to be a guest; lodge.	Ōpinor, to think.
Imāgīnor, to imagine.	Ōpītūlor, to lend help.
Imītor, to imitate.	*Oscētor, to yawn.
Indignor, to be indignant, spurn.	Oscūlor, to kiss.
Infītor, to deny.	Otiōr, to have leisure.
Insīdior, to plot.	Pābūlor, to forage.
Interprētor, to explain (to be an interpreter).	Pālōr, to wander.
Jacūlor, to throw, dart.	*Palpor, to stroke, flatter.
Jōcor, to jest.	Parāsītor, to act the parasite (parasitus).
Laetor, to rejoice.	Patrōcīnor, to patronize.
Lāmentor, to lament.	Perēntor, to inquire.
Latrōcīnor, to rob.	Pēgrīnor, to dwell as a stranger.
Lēnēcīnor (alicui), to flatter.	Pēricītor, to try, to be in danger.
Libīdnor, to be voluptuous.	Philōsōphor, to philosophize.
Līcītor, to bid at an auction.	*Pīgnēror, to take a pledge, to bind by a pledge.
Līgnor, to collect wood.	Pīgror, to be idle (pīgr).
	Pīscor, to fish.
	*Pōpūlor, to lay waste.
	Praedor, to plunder.
	Præstolōr, to wait for (with the dat. or accus.).



Prævarīcor, *walk with crooked legs, act dishonestly, as a prævaricator, that is, as a false accuser.*  
 Præcor, *to pray; compræcor, invoke; depræcor, deprecate; impræcor, imprecate.*  
 Proeliar, *to fight a battle.*  
 Ratiocinor, *to reason.*  
 Rêcordor, *to call to mind.*  
 Refragor, *to oppose.*  
 Rimor, *to examine minutely.*  
 Rixor, *to wrangle.*  
 Rustīcor, *to live in the country.*  
 Scitor and sciscitor, *to inquire.*  
 Seortor, *to live unchastely.*  
 Seurror, *to play the buffoon.*  
 Sector, *to follow (the frequentative of sequor); assector, consector, insector.*  
 Sermocinor, *to hold discourse.*  
 Solor, consolor, *to comfort.*  
 Spātor, expātor, *to walk.*  
 Spēcītor, *to keep a look out.*  
 Stipātor, *to make a bargain; adstipulor, to agree.*  
 Stomāchor, *to be indignant.*  
 Suāvior, *to kiss.*

Suffragor, *assent to.*  
 Suspīcor, *to suspect.*  
 Tergiversor, *to shuffle.*  
 Testor and testīcor, *to bear witness.*  
 Trīcor, *to make unreasonable difficulties (tricae).*  
 Trīstor, *to be sad.*  
 Trātīnor, *to weigh.*  
 Tūmultuor, *to make uproar.*  
 Tūtor, *to defend.*  
 Ūrinor, *to dip under water (to void urine is ūrinam facere or red-dere).*  
 Vador, *to let go on bail.*  
 Vāgor, *to wander.*  
 \*Velīcor, *to steer towards (fig. to gain a purpose; with dat.).*  
 Vēlītor, *to skirmish with light troops.*  
 Vēnētor, *to venerate.*  
 Vēnor, *to hunt.*  
 Vērecūdor, *to feel shame at doing.*  
 Versor (properly passive of verso), *to dwell, be occupied in; avversor, conversor, obversor.*  
 Vocīfētor, *to vociferate.*

## § 170. Second Conjugation.

1. Fāteor,	fassus sum,	fātēri,	to confess.
2. Līceor,	licitus sum,	licēri,	to bid (at a sale).
3. Mēdeor,	—	mēdēri,	to heal.
4. *Mēreor,	mēritus sum,	mērēri,	to earn, to deserve.
5. Mīseoreor,	mīserītus sum or mīsertus sum,	mīsērēri,	to take pity on.
6. Pollicēor,	pollicītus sum,	pollicēri,	to promise.
7. Reor,	rītus sum,	rērī,	to think.
8. Tueor,	tuitus sum,	tuērī,	to look upon, pro-
9. Vēreor,	vērītus sum,	vērēri,	to fear. [tect.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Confīteor,	confessus sum,	confītēri,	to confess.
Prōfītēor,	prōfessus sum,	prōfītēri,	to avow.
Diffītēor,	—	diffītēri,	to deny.
2. Pollicēor	is a compound of pro and liceor.		
4. Commēreor, Dēmēreor, Prēmēreor,	to deserve.		
8. Contueor, Intueor, Obtueor,	to look upon, to look at.		
9. Rēvēreor, to reverence; Subvēreor,	to fear slightly.		

## § 171. Third Conjugation.

1. Fruor,	{(fructus sum, frui,	to enjoy.
2. Fungor,	{fructus sum, functus sum,	to perform.
3. Grādior,	gressus sum,	to step.
4. Lābor,	lapsus sum,	to slip.
5. Liquor,	(liquefactus sum,) liqui,	to melt.
6. Loquor,	locutus sum,	to speak.
7. Mōrior,	mortuus sum,	to die.
8. Nitor,	{nixus sum, nīti,	to strain.
9. Patiōr,	{nīsus, passus sum,	to suffer.
10. Quēror,	questus sum,	to complain.
11. Ringor,	—	to show the teeth, to snarl.
12. Sēquor,	secutus sum,	to follow.
13. Utor,	usus sum,	to use.
14. { (Verto), Rēvertor,	{(reversus sum), rēverti,	to return.
15. { (Plecto), Amplector,	amplexus sum,	to embrace.
Completor,	complexus sum,	to obtain.
16. { Apīcor,	aptus sum,	to obtain.
Adīpīcor,	adeptus sum,	to obtain.
17. Commīnīcor,	commentus sum,	to devise.
18. Rēmīnīcor,	—	to remember.
19. Dēfētīcor,	defessus sum,	to grow weary.
20. Expergīcor,	experrectus sum,	to wake up.
21. Irācor,	—	to be angry.
22. Nancīcor,	nactus sum,	to obtain by chance.
23. Nācor,	natus sum,	to be born.
24. Oblīvīcor,	oblītus sum,	to forget.
25. Pācīcor,	pactus sum,	to make an agreement.
26. Prōfīcīcor,	prōfectus sum,	to set out.
27. Uleīcor,	ultus sum,	to avenge.
28. Vēcor,	—	to eat.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

1. Fruor. Fut. Part. fruitūrus.		
Perfruor,	perfructus sum,	perfrui, to enjoy completely.
3. Aggrēdior,	aggressus sum,	aggrēdi, to attack.
7. Morior. Fut. Part. mōrtūrus.		
9. Perpētior,	perpersus sum,	perpēti, to endure.
19. Dēfētīcor, from fātisco, to crack, to grow weary.		
20. Expergīcor, from ex and pergo.		
21. Irācor has no Perf. In irātus sum, I am angry, iratus is an Adjective.		
26. Prōfīcīcor, from pro and facio.		

§ 172. *Fourth Conjugation.*

1. *Assentior	assensus sum,	assentiri,	to agree to.
2. Blandior,	blanditus sum,	blandiri	to flutter
3. Expērior,	expertus sum,	expēri,	to try.
4. Oppērior,	{ oppertus sum,	oppēri,	to wait for.
	{ oppēritus,		
5. Largior,	largitus sum,	largiri,	to give bountifully.
6. Mentior,	mentitus sum,	mentiri,	to lie.
7. Mētor,	mensus sum,	mētiri,	to measure.
8. Mōtor,	mōlitus sum,	mōtiri,	to labour.
9. Ordior,	orsus sum,	ordiri,	to begin.
10. Orior,	ortus sum,	ōri,	to rise.
11. *Partior,	partitus sum,	partiri,	to divide.
12. *Pōtor,	pōtitus sum,	pōtiri,	to obtain possession of.
13. *Pūtor,	pūnitus sum,	pūniri,	to punish.
14. *Sortior,	sortitus sum,	sortiri,	to take by lot

## REMARKS AND COMPOUND VERBS.

4. Compērior, *to find out*, is used only as a Deponent in the Present. The usual form is compērio, compēri, compertum, compērire.
10. Orior. The *Fut. Pass.* is ōritūrus. The *Pres. Ind.* follows the 3rd Conjugation: ōrēris, ōritur, ōrimur. In the *Imperf. Subj.* both ōrerer and ōrērer are found. The compounds cōrior and exōrior, *to arise*, are conjugated like orior: but adōrior, *to attack*, has adōritis, adōritur.
11. Partior.  
\*Dispartior, dispartitus sum, dispartiri, to distribute.  
Impertior, impertitus sum, impertiri, to communicate.
13. The active form *punio* is more usual.

## FORMATION OF WORDS.

## CHAPTER XXX.—FORMATION OF WORDS.

## DERIVATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 173. Words are either Simple or Compound.

§ 174. A *Simple Word* may be either,

(1.) A *Pure Root*, without any addition whatever: as, ād, āb, sūb; nē or nōn; with other indeclinable words.

Obs. Some words have become identical with pure roots by the loss of a Suffix properly belonging to them: as, fēr, *bear thou*; dic, *say thou*; fūr, *a thief*; and the like.

Or (2.) A word derived from a *Single Root* by the addition of a *Suffix*: as, dic-o, dic-tio, dic-ax, from dic.

§ 175. A *Compound Word* is formed from two or more roots: as, hōmicida, *a manslayer*, from hōm-o, *a man*, and caed-o, *to kill*.

§ 176. A *Root* is always a monosyllable, and expresses an elementary notion.

§ 177. A *Suffix* is a termination added to a root to modify its meaning, but not intelligible by itself: as, the s of the Nominative Case Singular in all Declensions except the First; the Adjectival terminations -ōsus, -īnus, -īlis, etc.

Obs. For the sake of convenience the term *Suffix* will hereafter be applied to the terminations used in the derivation of words, without regard to their inflexion.

§ 178. A *Prefix* is a syllable placed before the root to modify its meaning: as, amb-io, *to go around*. In inflexion a prefix is found only in certain Tenses of Verbs: as, te-tig-i (Root, -tag), mo-mord-i (Root, mord), etc.

§ 179. The *Stem* of a word is that part which remains after taking away the inflexions: as, āgilis (Stem, āgli) *active*; vōlens (Stem, vōlent), *willing*; from the Roots ag (act), vol (will).

§ 180. Some words are formed at once from the Root simply by adding the inflexional terminations. These are called *Primary Words*; and in them the Root and the Stem are the same: as,

Stem and Root	AG,	set in motion, act.
āg-o,		
duc-o, dux (duc-s),	duc,	lead.
rēg-o, rex (reg-s),	reg,	rule.
lēg-o, lex (leg-s),	leg,	read.
pēs, pēs-is,	ped,	the foot.
sōl, sōlis,	sol,	the sun.
sāl, sālis,	sāl,	salt.

## § 181. I. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Substantives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes -

1. *or* (*m.*) expresses the action or condition of the verb as an abstract substantive: as,

ām-or,	love,	from āmo
clām-or,	a shout,	" clāmo
cāl-or,	warmth,	" cāleo
tīm-or,	fear,	" timeo
fāv-or,	favour,	" fāveo
fūr-or,	madness,	" fūro.

Obs. When the Stem of the Verb ends in a vowel, the vowel is dropped before the Suffix *or*.

2. *tor* (*m.*) denotes the doer: as,

āmā-tor,	a lover,	from āmo
audi-tor,	a hearer,	" audio
mōnī-tor,	an adviser,	" mōneo
vic-tor,	a conqueror,	" vinco (root vic)
vēnā-tor,	a hunter,	" vēnor
lec-tor,	a reader,	" lego.

Most Substantives in *tor* have a corresponding Feminine Substantive in *trix*: as,

victor,	victrix,	conqueress.
vēnātor,	vēnātrix,	huntress.

Obs. The Suffix *tor* is subject to the same changes that occur in the Supine: as, cursor, a runner, from curro (cursum).

3. *io* and *tio* (*Gen. ōnis, f.*) denote the action: as,

obsīd-io,	a siege,	from obsīdeo
obliv-io,	forgetfulness,	" obliviscor
contāg-io,	a touching, contagion,	" contingo, root (con)TAG
ac-tio,	doing,	" āgo
lec-tio,	reading,	" lēgo
scrip-tio,	writing,	" scribo.

4. *tus* (*Gen. tūs, m.*) also denotes the action: as,

ac-tus,	doing,	from āgo
audi-tus,	hearing,	" audio
auc-tus,	an increase,	" augeo
can-tus,	singing,	" cāno.

Obs. The Suffixes *tio* and *tus* undergo the same euphonic changes as occur in the Supine: as, versio and versus from verito; visio and visus from video.

5. *tūra* also usually denotes the action: as,

mercā-tūra,	trading,	from merco
āper-tūra,	an opening,	" āpērio
cinc-tūra,	a girding,	" cingo
junc-tūra,	a joining,	" jungo.

6. *ium* (*n.*) denotes an act or state: as,

gaud-ium,	joy,	from gaudeo
od-ium,	hatred,	" odi
incend-ium,	a conflagration,	" incendo
aedific-ium,	a building,	" aedifico.

7. *mēn* (*Gen. mēnis, n.*) usually denotes an instrument: as,

flū-men,	a river,	from fluo
lū-men,	a light,	" lūceo
sōlā-men,	a consolation,	" solor
teg-men,	a covering,	" tēgo.

Obs. The Suffix *men* has sometimes a Passive force: as, agmen, that which is led, an army marching; gestāmen, that which is carried, etc.

8. *mentum* (*n.*) denotes an instrument: as,

dōcū-mentum,	a proof,	from dōceo
impēdi-mentum,	a hindrance,	" impēdio
mō-mentum,	a moving force,	" mōveo
ornā-mentum,	an ornament,	" orno.

9. *būlum*, and *cūlum* (*n.*) (*brum* and *crum* after *l*) also denote an instrument: as,

vēnā-būlum,	a hunting-spear,	from vēnor
pā-būlum,	fodder,	" pascor
gubernā-cūlum,	a rudder,	" gubernor
fer-cūlum,	a tray,	" fero
lāvācrum,	a bath,	" lavo
fulcrum,	a prop,	" fulcio
ventilābrum,	a winnowing-fork,	" ventilo.

Obs. 1. If the verb ends in *c* or *g* the termination is *ūlum* only: as,

jūc-ūlum,	a dart,	from jūcio
cing-ūlum,	a girdle,	" cingo.

Obs. 2. Sometimes the Suffix *būlum* signifies a place: as, stā-būlum, a standing-place or stall, from sto (sta-re).

10. *ies* (*f.*) denotes that which is made, or which is the result of an action: as,

facies,	figure,	from facio
effigies,	image,	" effingo (root ex-FIG.
congēries,	a heap,	" congēro.

## § 182. II. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Substantives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes:

1. *ārius* (*m.*) denotes a person engaged in some trade or occupation: as,

argent-ārius,	a silversmith,	from argentum
statū-ārius,	a statuary,	" statua
aer-ārius,	a coppersmith,	" aes
sic-ārius,	an assassin,	" sica.

2. **ārium** (*n.*) denotes the place where anything is kept: as,

arm-ārium	a cupboard,	from arma, orum
avi-ārium,	an aviary,	" avis
columb-ārium,	a dove-cote,	" columba
aer-ārium,	a treasury,	" aēs.

*Obs.* *ārius* and *ārium* are properly the Suffixes of Adjectives. See § 187, 9.

3. **īna** (*f.*) denotes an employment, and also the place where the employment is carried on: as,

mēdic-īna,	the healing art,	from mēdicus
offic-īna,	a workshop,	" officium
sutr-īna,	a shoemaker's shop,	" sutor.

*Obs.* *Officina* is a contraction for *ōpificina* (*ōpus*, *ficio*).

Sometimes *īna* denotes simply the female: as,

rēg-īna,	a queen,	from rex
gall-īna,	a hen,	" gallus.

*Obs.* *īna* is properly a feminine Suffix of Adjectives. See § 187, 7.

4. **ātus** (*Gen. ūs, m.*) and **ūra** (*f.*), added to Substantives designating public officers, denote the office: as,

consul-ātus,	consulship,	from consul
tribun-ātus,	tribuneship,	" tribunus
cens-ūra,	censorship,	" censor
praet-ūra,	praetorship,	" praetor.

5. **ium** (*n.*) denotes an employment, condition, &c.: as,

sacerdot-ium,	priesthood,	from sacerdos (-dōtis)
ministēr-ium,	service,	" minister
exsil-ium,	exile,	" exsul
hospit-ium,	hospitality,	" hospes (-pītis).

6. **āl** (*n.*) and **ār** (*n.*) denote a material object: as,

ānim-āl,	an animal,	from ānima,	life.
calcār,	a spur.	" calx (calc-s),	the heel.

7. **ētum** (*n.*) affixed to names of trees or plants denotes the place where they grow in a quantity, and also the trees themselves collectively: as,

myrt-ētum,	a myrtle-grove,	from myrtus
querc-ētum,	an oak-plantation,	" quercus
oliv-ētum,	an olive-yard,	" olīva
vin-ētum,	a vineyard,	" vinea.

8. **ile** (*Gen. is, n.*) affixed to the names of animals denotes a place for them: as,

bōv-ile,	an ox-stall,	from bos, būvis
ēqu-ile,	a stable for horses,	" ēquus
ōv-ile,	a sheep-fold,	" ōvis.

*Obs.* *ile* is properly a neuter Suffix of Adjectives. See § 187, 4.

### § 183. DIMINUTIVES.

Diminutives denote not only *smallness*, but also *endearment*, *commiseration*, or *contempt*. They follow the gender of the substantives from which they are derived, and are formed by the addition of the following Suffixes:—

1. **ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum**, added to substantives of the First and Second Declensions: as,

nid-ŭlus,	a little nest,	from nidus
hort-ŭlus,	a little garden,	" hortus
riv-ŭlus,	a little river,	" rivus
mens-ŭla,	a little table,	" mensa
silv-ŭla,	a little wood,	" silva
virg-ŭla,	a little twig,	" virga
capit-ŭlum,	a small head,	" caput
sax-ŭlum,	a small rock,	" saxum
scut-ŭlum,	a small shield,	" scutum.

2. **cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum**, added to substantives of the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions: as,

frater-cŭlus,	a little brother,	from frater
flos-cŭlus,	a little flower,	" flos
vers-ŭlus,	a little verse,	" versus
māter-cŭla,	a poor mother,	" māter
nāvi-cŭla,	a small ship,	" nāvis
avi-cŭla,	a small bird,	" avis
rē-cŭla,	a small matter,	" rēs
corpus-cŭlum,	a small body,	" corpus
mŭnus-cŭlum,	a small present,	" mŭnus
rēti-cŭlum,	a little net,	" rēte.

*Obs.* 1. If a vowel precede the Suffixes *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum*, they become *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum*: as,

fili-ŭlus,	a little son,	from filiŭs
malle-ŭlus,	a small hammer,	" malleus
fili-ŭla,	a little daughter,	" filia
line-ŭla,	a little line,	" linea
nēgōti-ŭlum,	a little business,	" nēgōtium
ingēni-ŭlum,	a little talent,	" ingēnium.

*Obs.* 2. If the final vowel of the stem of the primitive is preceded by *l, n,* or *r*, and in a few other cases, a contraction takes place, and the termination of the diminutive becomes *ellus, ella, ellum*, and sometimes, but rarely, *illus, illa, illum*: as,

ocellus,	a little eye,	from ocellus	(Stem, ocellō)
libellus,	a little book,	" liber	( " libro)
lāpillus,	a little stone,	" lāpis	( " lāpid)
cātella,	a little chain,	" cātēna	( " cātēna)
anguilla,	a little snake,	" anguis	( " angui)
sigillum,	a little figure,	" signum	( " signo).

*Obs.* 3. If the Stem of the primitive ends in *c* or *g*, *t* or *d*, the diminutives are generally formed by adding *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum*: as,

rēg-ŭlus,	a petty king,	from rex (reg-s)
rādic-ŭla,	a little root,	" rādx (rādic-s)

## § 184. PATRONYMICS.

Patronymics are Greek words, used by the Latin poets, which designate a person by a name derived from that of his father or ancestor.

Masculine Patronymics end in :

1. *ides* : as, *Prīam-ides*, a son of *Priamus*.
2. *ides* : as, *Atr-ides*, a son of *Atreus*.
3. *ādes* and *iādes* : as, *Aene-ādes*, a son of *Aeneas*; *Atlant-iades*, a son of *Atlas*.

*Obs.* Patronymics in *ides* (εἰδης) are only formed from Proper Names in *cus* (εύς).

Feminine Patronymics end in :

1. *is*, *Gen. idis* : as, *Tantal-is*, a daughter of *Tantalus*.
2. *ēis*, *Gen. ēidis* : as, *Nel-ēis*, a daughter of *Neleus*.
3. *ias*, *Gen. iādis* : as, *Laert-ias*, a daughter of *Laertes*.
4. *ine* : as, *Neptūn-ine*, a daughter of *Neptunus*.
5. *ōne* : as, *Acrisi-ōne*, a daughter of *Acrisius*.

## § 185. III. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

Substantives derived from Adjectives denote a quality or state, and have the following Suffixes :—

1. *ia* (*f.*) : as,
 

<i>grāt-ia</i> ,	<i>favour</i> ,	from <i>grātus</i>
<i>insān-ia</i> ,	<i>madness</i> ,	„ <i>insānus</i>
<i>mīscr-ia</i> ,	<i>wretchedness</i> ,	„ <i>mīser</i>
<i>prūdēn-ia</i> ,	<i>prudence</i> ,	„ <i>prūdēns</i> .
2. *tia* (*f.*) : as,
 

<i>laetī-tia</i> ,	<i>joy</i> ,	from <i>laetus</i>
<i>justī-tia</i> ,	<i>justice</i> ,	„ <i>justus</i>
<i>mollī-tia</i> ,	<i>softness</i> ,	„ <i>mollis</i>
<i>pigrī-tia</i> ,	<i>slowness</i> ,	„ <i>piger</i> .
3. *tās* (*Gen. tātis, f.*) : as,
 

<i>bōnī-tas</i> ,	<i>goodness</i> ,	from <i>bōnus</i>
<i>vērī-tas</i> ,	<i>truth</i> ,	„ <i>vērus</i>
<i>crūdēlī-tas</i> ,	<i>cruelty</i> ,	„ <i>crūdēlis</i>
<i>atrōcī-tas</i> ,	<i>fierceness</i> ,	„ <i>atrōx</i> .
4. *tūdo* (*Gen. tūdinis, f.*) : as,
 

<i>altī-tūdo</i> ,	<i>height</i> ,	from <i>altus</i>
<i>aegrī-tūdo</i> ,	<i>sickness</i> ,	„ <i>aeger</i>
<i>fortī-tūdo</i> ,	<i>bravery</i> ,	„ <i>fortis</i>
<i>similī-tūdo</i> ,	<i>likeness</i> ,	„ <i>similis</i> .
5. *mōnia* (*f.*) : as,
 

<i>sanctī-mōnia</i> ,	<i>sanctity</i> ,	from <i>sanctus</i>
<i>castī-mōnia</i> ,	<i>purity</i> ,	„ <i>castus</i>
<i>ācrī-mōnia</i> ,	<i>sharpness</i> ,	„ <i>ācer</i> .

## CHAPTER XXXI.—DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

## § 186. I. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

Adjectives are derived from Verbs by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. *bundus*, intensifying the meaning of the imperfect participle. See § 110, 3.

2. *idus* denotes the quality expressed by a verb : as,
 

<i>frig-idus</i> ,	<i>cold</i> ,	from <i>frigeo</i>
<i>mād-idus</i> ,	<i>wet</i> ,	„ <i>mādeo</i>
<i>tīm-idus</i> ,	<i>fearful</i> ,	„ <i>tīmeo</i>
<i>vāl-idus</i> ,	<i>strong</i> ,	„ <i>vāleo</i> .

3. *ilis* and *bilis* note the possibility of a thing in a passive sense : as,
 

<i>dōc-ilis</i> ,	<i>teachable</i> ,	from <i>dōceo</i>
<i>fāc-ilis</i> ,	<i>doable (easy)</i> ,	„ <i>fācio</i>
<i>āmā-bilis</i> ,	<i>loveable</i> ,	„ <i>āmo</i>
<i>mō-bilis</i> ,	<i>moveable</i> ,	„ <i>mōveo</i> .

 (= *mōvi-bilis*)

4. *ax* denotes a propensity, and generally a faulty one : as,
 

<i>aud-ax</i> ,	<i>daring</i> ,	from <i>audeo</i>
<i>ēd-ax</i> ,	<i>gluttonous</i> ,	„ <i>ēdo</i>
<i>lōqu-ax</i> ,	<i>talkative</i> ,	„ <i>lōquor</i>
<i>vōr-ax</i> ,	<i>voracious</i> ,	„ <i>vōro</i> .

*Obs.* The following Suffixes are less common :

1. *cundus* : as, *Irā-cundus*, *angry*, from *Irā-scor*  
*fā-cundus*, *eloquent*, „ *fāri*
2. *ūlus* : as, *quēr-ūlus*, *querulous*, „ *quēror*.

## § 187. II. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

Adjectives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the following Suffixes :—

1. *eus* denotes the material, and sometimes, but rarely, resemblance : as,

<i>aur-eus</i> ,	<i>golden</i> ,	from <i>aurum</i>
<i>lign-eus</i> ,	<i>wooden</i> ,	„ <i>lignum</i>
<i>pīc-eus</i> ,	<i>pitchy</i> ,	„ <i>pīx</i> , <i>pīcis</i>
<i>virgin-eus</i> ,	<i>maidenlike</i> ,	„ <i>virgo</i> , <i>-inis</i> .

2. *icius* or *itius* denotes the material, or relation to something : as,
 

<i>lātēr-icius</i> ,	<i>made of bricks</i> ,	from <i>lāter</i>
<i>tribūn-icius</i> ,	<i>relating to a tribune</i> ,	„ <i>tribūnus</i>
<i>aedil-icius</i> ,	<i>relating to an aedile</i> ,	„ <i>aedilis</i> .

*Obs.* 1. *āceus* has the same meaning, but is rare : as, *argill-āceus*, *made of clay*, from *argilla*.

*Obs.* 2. Adjectives in *icius* derived from the Perfect Part. or Supine have the *i* long, and denote the way in which a thing originates, and hence its kind : as, *commenticius*, *feigned*.

3. *icus* denotes belonging or relating to a thing : as,

bell-icus,	relating to war,	from bellum
civ-icus,	relating to a citizen,	" civis
class-icus,	relating to a fleet,	" classis.

Obs. The following Adjectives in *icus* have i:

amicus,	friendly,	from	āmo, amor
anticus,	front,	"	antē
posticus,	hinder,	"	post.
apricus,	sunny,	"	āperio (?)

4. *ilis* has the same meaning : as,

host-ilis,	hostile,	from hostis
serv-ilis,	slavish,	" servus
puer-ilis,	childish,	" puer.

*ālis* has the same meaning : as,

fāt-ālis,	fatal,	from fātum
rēg-ālis,	kingly,	" rex
vit-ālis,	vital,	" vita.

Obs. If the last syllable of the substantive is preceded by *i*, the Suffix of the Adjective is *āris* (comp. § 181, 9) : as,  
pōpūl-āris, pertaining to the people, from pōpūlus  
sālūt-āris, salutary, " sālūs, sālūtis.

6. *ius* has the same meaning, and is usually formed from personal names : as,

patr-ius,	pertaining to a father,	from pāter
sōrōr-ius,	pertaining to a sister,	" sōror
ōrātōr-ius,	pertaining to an orator,	" ōrātor.

7. *inus* has the same meaning, and is found especially in derivations from the names of animals : as,

cān-inus,	pertaining to a dog,	from cānis
ēqu-inus,	pertaining to a horse,	" equus
div-inus,	pertaining to the gods,	" divus.

8. *ānus* has the same meaning : as,

urb-ānus,	pertaining to a city,	from urbs
font-ānus,	pertaining to a fountain,	" fons, fontis
mont-ānus,	pertaining to a mountain,	" mons, montis.

9. *ārius* has the same meaning : as,

agr-ārius,	pertaining to land,	from āgēr
grēg-ārius,	belonging to a flock,	" grēx, grēgis
lēgion-ārius,	belonging to a legion,	" lēgio.

Obs. *ārius* and *ārium* are often used as the Suffixes of Substantives. See § 182.

10. *osus* denotes fulness : as,

lāpīd-osus,	full of stones,	from lāpis
pēricul-osus,	full of dangers,	" pēriculum
ānim-osus,	full of courage,	" ānīmus.

11. *lentus*, usually preceded by the vowel *ū* or *ō*, also denotes fulness : as,

fraud-ulentus,	full of deceit,	from fraus (fraud-s)
vi-olentus,	full of violence,	" vis

12. *ātus*, sometimes *ītus* and *ūtus*, denote having something or provided with something : as,

ālā-tus,	furnished with wings, winged,	from āla
tōg-ātus,	" a toga,	" tōga
aur-itus,	" ears,	" auris
corn-ūtus,	" horns, horned,	" cornu.

### § 188. III. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM PROPER NAMES.

Adjectives are derived from Roman names of men by the Suffix *ānus* or *iānus* : as,

Māri-ānus,	from Mārius
Sull-ānus,	" Sulla
Gracch-ānus,	" Gracchus
Cicērōn-iānus,	" Cicēro.

The Suffix *inus* is rare : as,

Verr-inus (punningly), from Verres (or verres, a hog).

Obs. From Greek names of men we have the Suffixes *ēus* or *iūs* and *icus* : as,

Epīcūr-ēus,	from Epīcūrus
Aristōtēl-iūs,	" Aristōtēles
Plātōn-icus,	" Plāto.

The poets form Adjectives in *ēus* from Roman names : as,  
Rōmāl-eus, from Rōmulus.

§ 189. Adjectives are formed from the names of towns by the addition of the following Suffixes :

1. *ensis* : as,

Cann-ensis,	from Cannae
Cōm-ensis,	" Cōmum
Sulmōn-ensis,	" Sulmo (Sulmōn-is).

2. *inus*, from names of towns in *ia* and *iūm* : as,

Amēr-inus,	from Amēria
Caud-inus,	" Caudium.

3. *ānus*, from names of towns in *a* and *ae*, and from some in *um* and *i* : as,

Rōm-ānus,	from Rōma
Thēb-ānus,	" Thēbae
Tuscul-ānus,	" Tusculum
Fund-ānus,	" Fundi.

4. *ās*, Gen. *ātis*, chiefly from names of towns in *num*, but sometimes from those in *na* and *nae*: as,

Arpinās,	from Arpinum
Capenās,	" Capēna
Fidenās,	" Fidēnae.

*Obs.* 1. These Adjectives are also used as Substantives to denote the inhabitants.

*Obs.* 2. In Adjectives derived from names of Greek towns the Greek suffixes are retained. The most frequent suffix is *ius*: as,  
Cōrinth-ius, from Cōrīnthus.

§ 190. Sometimes Adjectives in *icus* are formed from the names of people, especially when the latter are used only as Substantives: as,

Gall-icus, <i>Gallie</i> ,	from Gallus, a <i>Gaul</i> .
Arab-icus, <i>Arabic</i> ,	" Arabs, an <i>Arab</i> .

*Obs.* The names of countries are usually derived from those of the people: as, *Hispania*, *Spain*, from *Hispanus*. Adjectives in *ensis* derived from such names denote some relation to the country, not to the people: as, *exercitus Hispaniensis*, an army stationed in *Spain*, not an army consisting of *Spaniards*; but, on the other hand, *spartum* *Hispanicum* is a plant growing in *Spain*; similarly *Gallicanus* from *Gallus*.

## CHAPTER XXXII.—DERIVATION OF VERBS.

### § 191. I. VERBS DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

Derivative Transitive Verbs are usually of the First Conjugation, and are formed from Substantives and Adjectives by the addition of the suffixes of the First Conjugation. They signify *to make* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: as,

mātūro, <i>I make ripe</i> ,	from mātūrus
libĕro, <i>I make free</i> ,	" liber
rōbōro, <i>I make strong, I strengthen</i> ,	" rōbūr (rōbōr-is).

*Obs.* A few Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation are similarly formed: as,

finio, <i>I finish</i> ,	from finis
mollio, <i>I soften</i> ,	" mollis.

§ 192. Many Deponents of the First Conjugation are formed in the same way, and signify *to be* or *to provide oneself with* what the Substantive or Adjective denotes: as,

ancillor, <i>I am a maid-servant</i> ,	from ancilla
āquor, <i>I fetch water</i> ,	" āqua
laetor, <i>I am joyful</i> ,	" laetus
philōsophor, <i>I am a philosopher</i> ,	" philōsōphus.

§ 193. Derivative Intransitive Verbs are usually of the Second Conjugation, and are formed in a similar manner from Substantives and Adjectives: as,

calveo, <i>I am bald</i> ,	from calvus
albeo, <i>I am white</i> ,	" albus.

*Obs.* Many Verbs of this kind are only found as inceptives (see § 194, 2): as, *dūresco* (*dūreo*), *I grow hard*, from *dūrus*.

### § 194. II. VERBS DERIVED FROM VERBS.

1. *Frequentative Verbs* express the repetition of an action, and are formed by adding *ito* to the Stem of the First Conjugation, and to the Supine of the other Conjugations: as,

clām-ito, <i>I cry out often</i> ,	from clāmo
rōg-ito, <i>I ask often</i> ,	" rōgo
min-itor, <i>I threaten often</i> ,	" minor
lect-ito, <i>I read often</i> ,	" lēgo, lectum
script-ito, <i>I write often</i> ,	" scribo, scriptum
vent-ito, <i>I come often</i> ,	" vēnio, ventum.

*Obs.* Many frequentatives, especially of the Third Conjugation, are formed at once from the Supines by simply adding the terminations of the Verb: as,

curso, <i>I run hither and thither</i> ,	from curro, cursum
salto, <i>I dance</i> ,	" sālio, saltum.

2. *Inceptive Verbs* express the beginning of an action, and are formed by adding *sco* (*asco*, *esco*, *isco*), 3, to the Stems of Substantives and Adjectives as well as of Verbs: as,

lāb-asco, <i>I begin to totter</i> ,	from lābo
cāl-esco, <i>I grow warm</i> ,	" cāleo
trēm-isco, <i>I begin to tremble</i> ,	" trēmo
obdormi-sco, <i>I fall asleep</i> ,	" dormio
sēn-esco, <i>I grow old</i> ,	" sēnex.

3. *Desiderative Verbs* express a desire after a thing, and are formed from the Supine by adding *ūrio*, and dropping the *um* of the termination: as,

ēs-ūrio, <i>I long to eat</i> ,	from ēdo, ēsum
script-ūrio, <i>I long to write</i> ,	" scribo, scriptum.

*Obs.* By analogy is formed *Sullatūrio*, *I long to play the part of Sulla*.

4. *Diminutive Verbs* express a diminution of the action and end in *illo* (*illāre*, 1): as,

cant-illo, <i>I warble</i> ,	from canto
sorb-illo, <i>I sip</i> ,	" sorbeo
conscrib-illo, <i>I scribble</i> ,	" conscribo.



§ 195. Intransitive Verbs of the Second Conjugation are sometimes derived from Transitive Verbs of the Third Conjugation, the latter signifying a momentary act and the former a state : as,

jacio,	jacere,	to throw,	jaceo, jacere,	to lie.
pendo,	pendere,	to hang, to weigh,	pendeo, pendere,	to be hanging.
pario,	parere,	to bring forth,	pareo, parere,	to be visible.
(cando, candere),		to set on fire,	candeo, candere,	to be burning.

### CHAPTER XXXIII.—DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 196. Adverbs in *ē* are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, or from Perfect Participles Passive : as,

mōdestē,	modestly,	from mōdestus
pulchrē,	beautifully,	„ pulcher
doctē,	learnedly,	„ doctus.

Obs. 1. From *bōnus* comes *bōnē*, from *mālus* comes *mālē*, both with the final *e* short. From *valldus*, *strong*, comes *valdē*.

Obs. 2. Some Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions have Adverbs in *tēr* as well as in *ē*: as,

dūrē,	dūrtēr,	severely,	from dūrus
fīrmē,	fīrmtēr,	firmly,	„ firmus
gnāvē,	gnāvtēr,	actively,	„ gnāvus
hūmānē,	hūmāntēr,	courteously,	„ hūmānus
largē,	largtēr,	bounteously,	„ largus
lūcūlentē,	lūcūlentēr,	splendidly,	„ lūcūlentus.

From *viōlentus*, *vehement*, there is only *viōlentēr*; the form *viōlens* is never used in prose.

§ 197. Adverbs in *ō* are derived from Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and from Perfect Participles Passive, and are properly Ablatives Singular : as,

falsō,	falsely,	from falsus
tutō,	safely,	„ tutus
crēbrō,	frequently,	„ crēber.

Obs. The form in *ō* is rare. From some Adjectives come Adverbs both in *ē* and *ō*, but with a difference of meaning : as, *certō*, *certainly*, and *certē*, *at any rate*; *vērō*, *in truth*, *indeed*, and *vērē*, *truly*.

§ 198. Adverbs in *tēr* are formed from Adjectives of the Third Declension : as,

grāvi-tēr,	heavily,	from grāvis
fēlici-tēr,	fortunately,	„ fēlix.

Obs. If the Stem of an Adjective or Participle ends in *t*, one *t* is omitted : as,  
sāpienter, *wisely*, from sāpiens (sāpiens-s).

§ 199. The Neuters Singular of many Adjectives are used as Adverbs : as,

fācilē, *easily*; rēcens, *lately*; multum, *much*.

§ 200. Adverbs in *itūs* are derived from Substantives and Adjectives, and denote *proceeding from* something : as,

coel-itūs,	from heaven,	from coelum
rādic-itūs,	from the roots,	„ rādis (rādis-s).

§ 201. Adverbs in *tim* are formed from Substantives, Adjectives, and Verbs, and denote the way or manner : as,

cātervā-tim,	in troops,	from cāterva
privā-tim,	as a private person,	„ privātus
stā-tim,	immediately,	„ stō (stare)
punc-tim,	with the point,	„ pungo.

§ 202. Adverbs derived from Numerals are given in §§ 72, 73

§ 203. Adverbs derived from Pronouns are given in § 133.

### CHAPTER XXXIV.—COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

§ 204. A Compound Word is formed of two or more roots.

Obs. Sometimes a Substantive and Adjective, both of which are declined, or a Genitive and the Substantive on which it depends, are written together, but these are not genuine compounds : as,

respublica,	Gen. rēpublicae,	the commonwealth.
jursjurandum,	Gen. jūrisjurandi,	an oath.
senātus-consultum,		a resolution of the senate.
aquae-ductus,		water-channel.

§ 205. The first part of a compound word may consist of any part of speech; but a verb is only found in the first part, when *fācio* is in the second : as,

arēfācio,	to make dry.
cālēfācio,	to make warm.
liquēfācio,	to cause to melt.
mādfācio,	to make wet
pātēfācio,	to throw open.

Obs. Such apparent compounds as *nidifīco*, *I build a nest*, are rather to be referred to an intermediate Adjective : as, *nidifīcus*, *nest-building*.

§ 206. A compound verb, as a general rule, consists only of a preposition and a verb; but the vowel of the verb usually undergoes the following changes:—

1. Short *a* is usually changed into short *i* before one consonant, but sometimes into short *e*: as,

cāpio,	to take,	accīpio
rāpio,	to seize,	arripio
pātor,	to suffer	perpētior
grādior,	to walk,	congrādior.

Obs. Pērāgo, to complete, perplāceo, to please greatly, and facio compounded with adverbs, as sātisfacio, to satisfy, are exceptions.

2. *A* before two consonants is usually changed into *e*: as,

carpo,	to pluck,	concerpo
damno,	to condemn,	condemno
scando,	to climb,	conscendo
spargo,	to scatter	conspargo.

3. *A* is sometimes changed into *u*: as,

sulto,	to dance,	insulto
calco,	to tread,	conculco
quātio,	to shake,	conquātio.

4. Short *e* is changed into short *i* before one consonant: as,

ēgō,	to want,	indigeo
sēdeo,	to sit,	insideo
tēneo,	to hold,	abstīneo.

Obs. Perlēgo, to read through, praelēgo, to read to others, rēlego, to read again, are exceptions.

5. The diphthong *ae* becomes long *i*: as,

caedo,	to cut,	occīdo
quaero,	to seek,	inquiro
laedo,	to strike,	collīdo.

6. The diphthong *au* becomes either *ō* or *u*, but in one instance *ē*: as,

plaudo,	to clap the hands,	explōdo
claudo,	to shut,	conclūdo
audio,	to hear,	obēdio.

Obs. The changes which the prepositions undergo in composition are mentioned in § 133

§ 207. Substantives and Adjectives in composition are usually connected by the vowel *i*, or the last syllable of the first word is changed into *i*: as,

pēdisēquus,	a follower on foot,	from pes (pēd) and sēquor
mūnifētus,	bountiful,	„ mūnus and faciō
causidicus,	an advocate,	„ causa and dico
agricōla,	a husbandman,	„ gār and cōlo
aquilifer,	a standard-bearer,	„ q uila and fero.

§ 208. The quantity of Verbs in composition is the same as that of the simple verbs: as, fēro, affēro; hūbeo, prōhibeo, etc. The only apparent exceptions are mentioned in the Prosody.

## PART II.—SYNTAX.

### BOOK I.

§ 209. Syntax treats of the relations of words and sentences or parts of sentences to each other.

### CHAPTER XXXV.—OF SENTENCES.

§ 210. The elementary parts of a sentence are two: SUBJECT and PREDICATE.

The Subject is that whereof something is affirmed or predicated (*praedicāre, to affirm*); the Predicate is that which is affirmed of the Subject.

Obs. 1. In Grammar, the terms Subject and Predicate are applied to single words; the remaining words of the sentence being regarded as enlargements of the Subject or Predicate. Thus in the sentence, Alexander Magnus rex Mācedōnum erat, Alexander the Great was king of the Macedonians, Alexander is the Subject, and *erat* the Predicate; Magnus being an enlargement of the Subject (Alexander), and Macedonum an enlargement of the Predicate (*rex*). Transitive verbs require an object as the enlargement of the Predicate: thus in the sentence, Caesar vicit Gallos, Caesar conquered the Gauls, the object Gallos is an enlargement of the predicate *vicit*.

Obs. 2. The term Predicate is by an extension of its original meaning applied to sentences which contain a question or a command instead of an affirmation: as,

Quis crēdat? who would believe? Tu ne quāsiēris, inquire not thou: where the Predicates are *crēdat* and *quāsiēris*.

§ 211 THE SUBJECT.—The Subject of a sentence must be either a Substantive or some word (or words) equivalent to a Substantive: as,

India mittit ēbur, India sends ivory.—Virg.

Hos ēgo versiculos feci, I made these little verses.—Virg.

Obs. The Subject is often only indicated by the termination of a Verb, so that a sentence may consist of a single word; as, vicimus, we have conquered; fuerunt, they have been, have ceased to exist.

§ 212. Hence the Infinitive Mood, being a verbal Substantive, is often the Subject of a sentence: as,

Jūvat vīdēre Dōrica castra, To see the Doric camp gives joy.—Virg.

Fas odiſſe viros, To hate the men (is) right.—Virg.

Obs. Any word, or even letter, when spoken of as a word, may become the Subject of a sentence: as,

Atque particula conjunctio esse dicitur connexiva, The particle atque is said to be a connective conjunction.—Gell.

§ 213. THE PREDICATE.—The Predicate of a sentence may be a Verb, an Adjective, or another Substantive: as,

*Omnia jam fient, All the things will now come to pass.*—Ov.

*Socrātes Græcorum sapientissimus (erat), Socrates was the wisest of the Greeks.*—Cic.

*Hannibal Hāmīlcaris filius (fuit), Hannibal was the son of Hāmīlcar.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. When the Verb “to be” is employed to connect Subject and Predicate (as in two of the above examples), it is called the Copula (cōpula, tie or band).

Obs. 2. Occasionally an Adverb forms the Predicate after the Verb esse: as, *bene, recte est, it is well.*

§ 214. APPPOSITION.—Sometimes the Subject is enlarged by the addition of another Substantive descriptive of it. The latter Substantive is said to be in Apposition with the former, and is put in the same Case, generally in the same number, and, if possible, in the same Gender.

*Thēmístocles, imp̄rātor Persico bello, Græciam servitūte liberāvit, Themistocles, commander in the Persian war, delivered Greece from bondage.*—Cic.

*Scēlōrum inventor Ūlysses, Ulysses, contriver of wicked deeds.*—Virg.

*Ōleae Minerva inventrix, Minerva, inventor of the olive.*—Virg.

*Ut ōmittam illas omnium doctrinarum inventrices Athēnas, To say nothing of the famous Athens, inventresses of every branch of learning.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Two Substantives never come together in the same case without Apposition, except when a person or place is indicated at once by its name, like *Rex Tullius, urbs Roma*: as,

*Cōpias in campum Mārāthōna (Greek acc.) dēduxērunt, They marched their forces down into the plain (of) Marathon.*—Nep.

Obs. 2. In the case of substantives possessing a twofold form, as *māgister, māgistra*; *minister, ministra*; *inventor, inventrix*; and the like, the Masculine form is used in apposition with Masculine Substantives, and the Feminine with Feminines, as in the preceding examples.

§ 215. When the Substantive in Apposition is not of the same Gender or Number as that to which it refers, the Predicate usually follows the Gender and number of the original subject: as,

*Tulliola, dēlictiolæ nostræ, mūnuscūlum tuum flāgitat, Tullia, my little darling, clamours for your present.*—Cic.

But when the Substantive in apposition is *urbs, oppidum, civitas* or a similar word, the Predicate is made to agree therewith: as,

*Volsinii, oppidum Tuscorum, conerēmātum est fulmīne, Volsinii, a town of the Tuscaus, was consumed by lightning.*—Plin.

§ 216. Adjectives and Participles can also be used in Apposition; when of course (§ 223), they agree with the Substantives to which they refer in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

*Cātīlina, nobili gēnre nātus, fuit magnā vi et animi et corpōris, Catiline, born of a distinguished family, was possessed of great strength of mind and body.*—Sall.

*Artes sunt innūmērābiles, ad victum nēcessāriæ, There are innumerable arts necessary for living.*—Cic.

§ 217. Sometimes simple Apposition takes place where in English we should use the words “as” or “when:” as,

*Dēfendi rempublicam jūvēnis, I defended the commonwealth as (or when) a young man.*—Cic.

*Nemo fēro saltat sobrius, nisi forte insāuit, Hardly any one dances when sober, unless, perchance, he is out of his mind.*—Cic.

Obs. But when *as* denotes something supposed or presumed (e.g. he was taken up as a thief), it must be expressed by *tamquam, quāsi* or *ut*; and when *as* denotes a comparison, it must be expressed by *ut, sic—ut, tamquam*: as,

*Cicero ea, quæ nunc sū vēniunt, cēfēnit ut vātes, Cicero predicted, like a prophet, those things which are now happening.*—Nep.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.—CONCORD AND GOVERNMENT.

§ 218. Syntax may be divided into two parts: SYNTAX OF CONCORD and SYNTAX OF GOVERNMENT.

The Syntax of Concord treats of such agreement or correspondence as exists between words related to each other; Syntax of Government of the modifying influence exerted upon one word by another on which it depends. Thus in the sentence,

*Alexander vicit Dariūm, Alexander conquered Darius,*

the Verb *vicit* corresponds (“agrees”) with the subject *Alexander* in Number and Person [Syntax of Concord]; while the Substantive *Dariūm* is put in the Accusative Case, on account of its dependence upon the Transitive Verb *vicit*, by which it is said to be “governed.” [Syntax of Government.]

## First Concord.

§ 219. *The Nominative Case and Verb.*—A Verb agrees with its Subject or Nominative Case in Number and Person: as,

*Cōnon magnas res gessit, Conon achieved great exploits.*—Nep.

*Magnus hoc bello Thēmistocles fuit, Themistocles was great in this war.*—Nep.

*Athēnienses omnium civium suorum pōtentiam extimescēbant, The Athenians stood in great dread of the predominance of any of their fellow-citizens.*—Nep.

§ 220. When two or more Substantives form the joint Subject, the Verb is put in the Plural Number: as,

*Castor et Pollux ex ēquis pugnāre rīsi sunt, Castor and Pollux were seen to fight on horseback.*—Cic.

*Syphax regnumque ejus in pōtestatē Rōmānōrum erant, Syphax and his kingdom were in the hands of the Romans.*—Liv.

*Vita, mors, divitiæ, paupertas, omnes hōmīnes vĕhēmētissimē permōvent, Life, death, riches, poverty, have very great influence upon all people.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. When the Subject consists of two Singular Substantives which together form but one idea, the Verb is in the Singular: as,  
*Sēnātus pōpulusque Rōmānus intelligit, The senate and people of Rome are* (lit. is) *aware.*—Cic.

*Tempus nēcēssitasque postulat, Time and necessity demand.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. Sometimes, when there are two or more subjects, the Verb agrees with the nearest and is understood with the rest: as,

*Orgētōrigis filia et ūnus e filiis captus est, The daughter of Orgetoriz and one of his sons was taken prisoner.*—Caes.

Obs. 3. Occasionally a Plural Verb is used when an Ablative is connected by the Preposition *cum* with a Nominative Case in the Singular: as,

*Bocchus cum p̄ditibz . . . postrēmam āciem Rōmānōrum invādunt, Bocchus along with the infantry/fall (s) upon the rear of the Romans.*—Sall.

Obs. 4. When the Subject consists of two Substantives connected by *aut*, the Verb may be in the Plural as well as the Singular: as,

*Si Soerātes aut Antisthēnes dicēret or dicērent, If Socrates or Antisthenes were to speak.*

§ 221. When Subjects having a common Predicate are of different Persons, the First is preferred to the Second, and the Second to the Third. For in fact a Subject of the First Person and a Subject of the Second or Third Person are together equivalent to a First Person Plural (= nos); while a Subject of the Second Person and a Subject of the Third Person are together equivalent to a Second Person Plural

(= vos): thus *ēgo et tu*, or *ēgo et frāter meus*, both = nos; while *tu et ille*, *tu et frāter*, = vos: as,

*Si tu et Tullia lux nostra vālētis, ego et suāvissimū Cicerō vālēmus, If you and my darling Tullia (= ye) are well, so am I and my sweetest Cicero (= so are we).*—Cic

Obs. In Latin the First Person always takes precedence of the Second: as, *ēgo et rex, I and the king.*

§ 222. When the Subject is a Collective Substantive ("Noun of Multitude"), or a word implying plurality, the Verb is sometimes put in the Plural, especially in the poets: as,

*Tūra fērant plācentque novum pia turba Quirīnum, Let the pious people offer incense and propitiate the new (deity) Quirinus.*—Ov.

*Dēsēctam sēgētem magna vis hōmīnum simul immissa corbībuz fūdere, A large body of men was set to work to reap the corn and empty it from baskets into the river.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. This construction is far less common in Latin than in English, and is rarely used when the Collective Substantive stands quite by itself. In the following passage the Singular and Plural are combined:—

*Pars stūpet innuptæ dōnum extīale Minervæ  
Et mirantur equi mōlem,*

*Part are awe-struck at unceded Minerva's fatal offering, and wonder at the massy bulk of the horse.*—Virg.

Obs. 2. A Plural Verb is sometimes used after *ūterque, quisque* (especially *pro se quisque*), *pars—pars* (for *alii—alii*), *alius—aliū*, and *alter—alterum*, since these words contain the idea of plurality: as,

*Eōdem die ūterque eōrum ex castris stātivis exercitum ēdūcunt, On the same day both of them lead out the army from the stationary camp.*—Caes.

*Missi (sunt) hōnōrātissimū quisque ex patrībuz, All the most distinguished (lit. every most distinguished man) from the fathers were sent.*—Liv.

## Second Concord.

§ 223. *The Substantive and Adjective.*—An Adjective agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case: as,

*Jam pauca ārātō jūgēra rēgiae  
Mōles relinquent,*

*Ere long the princely piles will leave few acres for the plough.*—Hor.

— *Nec te [silēbo] mētūende certā*

*Phoebe sūgittā,*

*Nor will I hold my peace of thee, Phoebus; to be dreaded for thine unerring shaft.*—Hor.

Obs. The rule is the same whether the Adjective is used as an Attribute or a Predicate: as, *vīr bōnus, a good man*; or *vīr est bōnus, the man is good.*

§ 224. In like manner, the Perfect Participle used in

forming the Perfect Tenses of the Passive Voice, agrees in Gender and Number with the Subject of the Verb: as,

*Omnium assensu comprobata oratio est, The speech was approved by the assent of all.*—Liv.

*Neglectum Anxuri praesidium (est), The garrison at Anxur was not looked after.*—Liv.

§ 225. When an Adjective or Participle is predicated of two or more Subjects at once, it is put in the Plural Number.

(1.) If the Subjects are *persons*, though of different genders, the Adjective is Masculine: as,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt, My father and mother are dead.*—Ter.

(2.) If the Subjects are *things* without life, and of different genders, the Adjective is Neuter: as,

*Secundae res, honores, imperia, victoriae fortuita sunt, Prosperity, honours, places of command, victories are accidental.*—Cic.

*Labor voluptasque societate quadam inter se conjuncta sunt, Labour and enjoyment are linked together by a kind of partnership.*—Liv.

*Obs.* 1. Even if the things are of the same Gender, the Neuter is often used; as,

*Ira et avaritia imperio potentiora erant, Anger and avarice were too strong to be controlled.*—Liv.

*Obs.* 2. When an Adjective is used attributively of more than one Substantive, it usually agrees with the nearest, and is left to be understood with the rest: as, *omnes agri et maria, all seas and lands*; or the Adjective is repeated, as, *agri omnes omniaque maria*.

§ 226. Sometimes the Adjective or Participle of the Predicate follows the *sense* instead of the grammatical form of the Subject: as,

*Duo millia Tyriorum crucibus affixi sunt, Two thousand Tyrians were crucified.*—Curt.

*Capita coniurationis virgis caesi ac securi percussi sunt, The heads of the conspiracy were scourged and beheaded.*—Liv.

*Obs.* In both the above examples the Masculine of the participle is used because *Persons* are meant, though the words *millia* and *capita* are Neuter.

§ 227 Sometimes a predicative Adjective, instead of agreeing in Gender with the Subject, is put in the Neuter; where in English we should express the word "*thing*:" as,

*Triste lupus stabulis, The wolf is a sorry thing in cattle-stalls.*—Virg.

*Turpitudine pejus est quam dolor, Disgrace is a worse thing than pain.*—Cic.

### Third Concord.

§ 228. *The Relative and its Antecedent.*—The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

*Ego, qui te confirmo, ipse me non possum, I who am encouraging you, cannot (encourage) myself.*—Cic.

*Nullum animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest, No animal, which has blood, can be destitute of a heart.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The Case of the Relative is determined by its relation to its own clause, which is thus treated as a separate sentence: as,

*Arbores sœret diligens agricola, quarum adspercit baccam ipse nunquam, The industrious husbandman will plant trees, the fruit of which he will himself never set eyes on.*—Cic.

*NOTE.*—Here the Relative *quarum* is governed by the Substantive *baccam* in the Relative sentence. [Genitive of Possessor, § 265.]

§ 229. When the Relative has for its Predicate a Substantive of different gender from the Antecedent, the Relative usually agrees in gender with the Predicate: as,

*Caesar Gomphos pervenit, quod (not qui) est oppidum Bocotiae, Caesar came to Gomphi, which is a town of Boeotia.*—Caes.

*Lævis est animi, justam gloriam, qui (not quae) est fructus verae virtutis honestissimus, repudiare, It is characteristic of a worthless mind to despise just glory, which is the most honourable fruit of true virtue.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. The same construction is used when the Relative is the Subject of a Passive Verb of naming (§ 232), or the object of an Active one (§ 234): as, *Pœroratio, qui epilogus dicitur, The conclusion of a speech, which is called the epilogue.*—Cic.

*Domicellia conjuncta, quas urbes dicimus, Dwelling-houses connected together, which we call cities.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 2. The same construction is found in the case of the demonstrative and determinative Pronouns: as,

*Idem velle et idem nolle, ea (not id) dñmum vera amicitia est, To have the same wishes and the same fears, that and nothing short of it is true friendship.*—Sall.

§ 230. When the Relative has for its Antecedent a whole proposition, the latter is treated as a Neuter Substantive, and *id quod* is generally used instead of *quod*: as,

*Timoleon, id quod difficilius putatur, multo sapientius talitè secundam, quam adversam fortunam, Timoleon, a thing which is thought the more difficult, bore prosperity much more wisely than adversity.*—Nep.

## CHAPTER XXXVII.—THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

§ 231. The Nominative Case is used to denote the Subject of a Sentence: as,

*Ego rēges ējēcī, vos tyrannos intrōdūcītis, I expelled kings, ye are bringing in despots.*—Auct. ad Her.

See also § 219.

Obs. Only in the case of the Infinitive Mood, in the *Obliqua oratio*, the Subject is in the Accusative.

§ 232. The Nominative is also used to denote the Predicate after the following Verbs:—

(1.) Verbs which signify *to be* or *to become*: as, *sum, ex-isto, fio, evādo* (*to issue, turn out*) *nascor* (*to be born*), etc.

(2.) Verbs which denote a *state* or *mode of existence*: as, *māneo* (*to remain*), *dūro* (*to endure*), etc.

(3.) Passive Verbs of *naming, making, appointing*: as, *nōmīnor, dicor, appellor* [also *audio*, in sense of *to be called*]; *creor, fio, designor, instituor*, etc.

(4.) Verbs signifying *to seem* or *be thought*: as *videor, hābeor, existimor, dūcor*, etc.: as,

(1.) *Nemo repente fit turpissimus, No one becomes utterly base all at once.*—Juv.

*Nemo nascitur dives, No one is born rich.*—Sen.

(2.) *Munitiōnes integræ manebant, The fortifications remained entire.*—Caes.

(3.) *Numa Pompilius rex creatus est, Numa Pompilius was made king.*—Eutr.

*Justitia erga deos religio dicitur, Justice towards the gods is called religion.*—Cic.

(4.) *Satis altitudo muri exstructa videbatur, The height of the wall seemed sufficiently raised.*—Nep.

*In rebus angustis animosus et fortis appare, In trying circumstances, show thyself courageous and manly.*—Hor.

Obs. *Videor* is generally used as a personal verb, though more frequently translated in English as an impersonal: as,

*Alpes viciisse Hannibalem videntur, It seems that the Alps have conquered Hannibal.*—Liv.

§ 233. The Nominative is used even after the Infinitive of the above-mentioned Verbs, when they follow *possum*,

*volo, malo, nolo, cupio; incipio, coepi; desino, videor, existimor*, and the like: as,

*Beatus esse sine virtute nemo potest, No one can be happy without virtue.*—Cic.

*Cato bonus esse quam videri malebat, Cato preferred being good to seeming so.*—Sall.

*Miltiades non videbatur posse esse privatus, Miltiades did not seem to be capable of being a (mere) private citizen.*—Nep.

*Desinant nimium esse timidi, Let them cease to be (so) excessively fearful.*—Cic.

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

## 1. Accusative of the Object.

§ 234. The Accusative denotes the *Direct Object* of an Action.

Transitive Verbs of all kinds, both Active and Deponent, govern the Accusative: as,

*Deus mundum edificavit, God built the world.*—Cic.

*Glōria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur, Glory follows virtue like a shadow.*—Cic.

*Nulla ars imitari solertiam naturae potest, No art can imitate the ingenuity of Nature.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Active Transitive Verbs which govern the Accusative case are capable of becoming Passives, the object of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Nominative of the subject, and the subject of the Active Verb becoming in the Passive the Ablative of the Instrument or Agent: if the Agent is a living being, the Preposition *a* or *ab* is prefixed: as, *magister puerum laudat, The master praises the boy*, becomes in the Passive, *puer a magistro laudatur, The boy is praised by the master*.

Obs. 2. But the Verbs which govern any other case can be used in the Passive only impersonally: as,

*Invidetur praestanti florentique fortunae, Eminent and flourishing fortune is envied.*—Cic. (Lit., *Envy is felt by men for eminent fortune*.)

*Non parcetur libōri, Labour shall not be spared.*—Cic. (Lit., *There shall be no sparing for labour*.)

The Dative still indicates the *Object* no less after the Passive than after the Active Verb.

Obs. 3. The principal apparent exceptions to the Government of an Accusative by Transitive Verbs will be found at § 291.

§ 235. *Cognate Accusative.*—Intransitive Verbs are sometimes followed by an Accusative of cognate or kindred sense to themselves: as,

*Hac nocte mirum somniāvi somnium, This night I dreamt a strange dream.*—Plaut.



*Verissimum iurandum iurare, To swear a most true oath.—Cic.*

*Obs.* The Intransitive Verb has in such cases a transitive force: thus, *to dream a dream = to have a dream; to swear an oath = to use or utter an oath.* This construction is especially used when an Attributive Adjective is employed.

§ 236. Other intransitive Verbs often govern an Accusative by virtue of some transitive meaning implied in them. This is often the case with those verbs which denote a state of mind, like *lūgeo, I mourn, lūgeo aliquid, I mourn on account of something; horreo, I shudder, horreo aliquid, I shudder at something, &c.:* as,

*Séquani Ariovisti crudelitatem horrébant, The Sequani shuddered at the cruelty of Ariovistus.—Caes.*

*Amóre aliquam depérre, To be dying of love for some one.—Plaut.*

*Contrémère hastam, To tremble at the lance.—Virg.*

Here *horreo, depérre, contrémere* (strictly intransitive Verbs), involve the transitive meanings, *to love, to fear, to desire,* respectively. This idiom is most frequent in the poets.

*Obs.* But such Verbs, not being real Transitives, are not used as Personal Passives (§ 234, *Obs.* 1): thus such forms as *doleor, horreo,* are never found.

§ 237. In like manner Verbs signifying *to taste of* and *to smell of* are used as Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

*Olet unguenta, He smells of perfumes.—Ter.*

*Piscis ipsam mire rēdolet, The fish tastes of the very sea.—Sen.*

And in a figurative sense:

*Olet pēregrium, It has a foreign smell.—Cic.*

*Redolet antiquitatem, It smacks of antiquity.—Cic.*

*Obs.* *Sitio* and *anhelo* are used in like manner: as,  
*Sanguinem nostrum sitiēbat, He was thirsting for our blood.—Cic.*  
*Seelus anhelāre, To breathe out wickedness.—Cic.*

§ 238. All Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions *circum, per, praeter, trans, super, and subter,* become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

*Timótheus Peloponnesum circumcēhens Lacedaemōniā pōpūlatus est, Timotheus sailing round Peloponnesus, laid waste Laconia.—Nep.*

*Hannibal Alpes cum exercitu transit, Hannibal crossed the Alps with an army.—Nep.*

*Obs.* Such verbs are regarded as real Transitives, and may therefore become Personal Passives, the object of an Active Verb becoming the subject of the Passive (§ 234, *Obs.* 1): as,

*Rhódanus nonnullis locis rādo transitur, The Rhone is crossed in some places by a ford.—Caes.*

§ 239. Many Intransitive verbs of motion compounded with the Prepositions *ad* and *in*, and some verbs compounded with *ante, con, ex, and prae,* become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

*Nāves Genuam accessērunt, The ships reached Genoa.—Liv.*

*Urbem invādunt, They fall upon the city.—Virg.*

*Nēmīnem convēni, I have met no one.—Cic.*

*Societatem coīre, To form a partnership.—Cic.*

*Mōdum excēdere, To exceed the limit.—Cic.*

*Quantum Galli virtute cēteros mortāles praestārent, How much the Gauls surpassed the rest of mankind in valour.—Liv.*

*Nēmō eum in amicitia antecessit, no one excelled him in friendship.—Nep.*

*Obs.* 1. After Verbs compounded with *ex*, the Ablative is more common (see § 306); and after those compounded with *con, prae, ante,* the Dative (§ 292).

*Obs.* 2. With many of these verbs the Preposition is very often repeated: as,  
*accēdo ad, invādo in, excēdo ex.*

§ 240. Intransitive verbs of rest (*jaceo, sēdeo, sto, sisto*), compounded with *circum,* become Transitives, and govern an Accusative: as,

*Equites Rōmāni sēnātum circumstant, Roman knights stand around the senate.—Cic.*

§ 241. These five Impersonal Verbs, *pūdet, it shameth; taedet, it wearieth; poenitet, it repenteth; piget, it grieveth; and misēret, it pitieth (affects with pity);* take an Accusative of the Person *whom the feeling affects.* The object of the feeling is put in the Genitive (see § 282): as

*Mē piget stultitiae meae, I am vexed at my folly.—Cic.*

*Timóthei post mortem pōpūlum iudicii sūi poenituit, After the death of Timotheus the people repented of their judgment.*

*Obs.* The Object (or *cause*) of the feeling is sometimes expressed by an Infinitive mood or clause: as,

*Non me vixisse poenitet, I repent not having lived.—Cic.*

*Quintum poenitet, quod animum tuum offendit, Quintus is sorry that he has wounded your feelings.—Cic.*

§ 242. In like manner *dēcet, it is becoming, and dādēcet, it is unbecoming,* take an Accusative of the Person: but, unlike the above-named Impersonals, they may have an Impersonal Nominative as their subject: as,

*Oratōrem minime dēcet irasci, It very ill becomes a speaker to lose his temper.—Cic.*

*Trux dēcet ira feras, Savage anger becomes wild-beasts.—Ov.*



Obs. In like manner the Impersonals *jūvat*, it delights; *lātet*, fallit, *fūgit*, *praeterit*, it escapes (notice); *oportet*, it behoves, take an Accusative of the Person.

## 2. Double Accusative.

§ 243. Verbs of *teaching* and *concealing* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, *dōceo*, I teach (with its compounds); *cēlo*. I conceal, hide from: as,

*Quis mūsicam dōcuit Epāminondam*, Who taught Epaminondas music.—Nep.

*Non cēlavi te sernōnem hōmīnum*, I have not kept from you the men's discourse.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The reason of this double Accusative is that we may say, for example, both *dōcuit mūsicam*, he taught music; and *dōcuit Epāminondam*, he taught Epaminondas: hence blending the two, *musicam dōcuit Epāminondam*.

Obs. 2. *Dōceo*, to inform, takes the Ablative with *de*: as,

*Praemittit ad Boios qui de suo adventu dōceant*, He sends forward men to the Boii to inform them of his arrival.—Caes.

Obs. 3. *Cēlo*, to conceal, takes the Ablative with *de* in the Passive, and sometimes in the Active: as,

*Est de illo rēnō cēlata māter*, The mother was kept in ignorance of that poisoning.—Cic.

Obs. 4. Accusative after a Passive Verb. When a Verb of *teaching*, &c. is turned into the Passive (see § 234, Obs. 1), the thing taught may still remain in the Accusative: as,

*L. Marcius omnes militiae artes edoctus fuerat*, Lucius Marcius had been taught all the arts of war.—Liv.

*Doctus iter melius* (Tibris), Taught a better course.—Hor.

Obs. 5. With verbs of *teaching*, the instrument on which an art is practised is put in the Ablative: as,

*Sōcratem fidibus dōcuit nobilissimus fidicen*, A most noble lyrist taught Socrates the lyre (i.e. to play on the lyre).—Cic.

§ 244. Many verbs of *asking*, *entreating*, and *demanding* take a double Accusative after them—one of the thing and another of the person: as, *interrōgo* and *percontor*, I ask; *ōro*, I entreat, *rōgo*, I ask or entreat; and *posco*, *rēposco*, *flāgito*, I demand: as,

*Lēgati Verrem simūlacrum Cērēris rēposcunt*, The envoys demand back from Verres the statue of Ceres.—Cic.

*Caesar frumentum Aeduos ilāgitābat*, Caesar kept demanding corn of the Aedui.—Caes.

Obs. 1. *Pēto*, *postūlo*, and *quaero* are never used with a double Accusative. *Pēto* and *postūlo* always have the Ablative of the person with *de*; *quaero*, the Ablative of the person with *ex*, *ab*, or *de*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of *entreating* and *demanding* may also take the Ablative of the person with *de* (*ōro*, *rōgo*, *posco*, *rēposco* aliquid ab aliquo): verbs of

*asking*, the Ablative of the thing with *de* (*interrōgo*, *percontor* aliquid *de* aliqua re). The double Accusative is most frequently used when the thing is expressed by the neuter of a pronoun or an adjective: as,

*Hoc te ōro*, I entreat you this; *multa me interrōgāvit*, He asked me many questions.

Obs. 3. When a verb of *asking*, &c. is turned into the Passive, the thing may still remain in the Accusative: as,

*Primus rōgātus est sententiam*, He was first asked for his opinion.—Sall.

§ 245. *Factitive Accusative*.—Verbs signifying to *name*, to *make* or *appoint*, to *reckon* or *esteem*, and the like, take after them a double Accusative—one of the Object and the other of the Predicate to that object: as,

*Rōmulus urbem ex nōmine suo Rōmam* (Fact. Acc.) *vōcāvit*, Romulus called the city Rome from his own name.—Eutr.

*Contempsit Siculos*, non duxit (eos) *homīnes* (Fact. Acc.), He despised the Sicilians; he did not take them for human beings.—Cic.

*Ancum Martium rēgem* (Fact. Acc.) *pōpulus creāvit*, The people made Ancus Martius king.—Liv.

*Cicēronem unīversā civitās consūlem* (Fact. Acc.) *dēclārāvit*, The whole state declared Cicero consul.—Cic.

Obs. The Factitive Accusative becomes a Predicative Nominative after the Passive of the above verbs: see § 232.

§ 246. Transitive Verbs compounded with *trans* and *circum*, as *transjicio*, *transduco*, *transporto*, to *carry across*, and *circumdūco*, to *lead around*, take after them a double Accusative, one of the person, and the other of the thing crossed: as,

*Agēsilaus Hellespontum cōpiās trājēcit*, Agesilaus carried his troops across the Hellespont.—Nep.

*Hannibal nōnāginta millia pēditum Ibērum trādūxit*, Hannibal carried ninety thousand foot-soldiers across the Iberus.—Liv.

*Pompēius Roscillum omnia sua praesidia circumdūxit*, Pompeius led Roscillus round all his entrenchments.—Caes.

Obs. 1. In such cases, one Accusative is governed by the Verb, and the other by the Preposition in composition.

Obs. 2. In the Passive one of the two Accusatives remains: as,

*Māior multitudo Germānōrum Rhēnum trāsdūcitur*, A greater multitude of Germans is carried across the Rhine.—Caes.

## 3. Accusative of Motion towards.

§ 247. Names of Towns and small Islands are used in the Accusative without a Preposition after Verbs signifying *Motion towards*. For examples, see § 259 in the Appendix on the Construction of names of Towns.

§ 248. Similarly the Accusative is used after many Prepositions signifying *motion towards, proximity, or relation to*: as, *ad, in for into, inter, prōpē, &c.* See the Chapter on Prepositions.

#### 4. Accusative of Time or Space.

§ 249. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are put in the Accusative, answering to the questions—*How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How thick?* as,

Quaedam bestiolae unum diem vivunt, *Some insects live but one day.*—Cic.

Pericles quadrāginta annos praefuit Athēnis, *Pericles governed Athens for forty years.*—Cic.

Pedem e villā adhuc ēgressi non sūmus, *As yet we have not stirred one foot from the country house.*—Cic.

Campus Marāthon ab Athēnis circiter millia passuum decem ābest, *The plain (of) Marathon is distant from Athens about ten thousand paces.*—Nep.

Milites aggērem lātum pēdes trēcentos triginta, altum pēdes octōginta extruxerunt, *The soldiers constructed a mound 330 feet high and 80 feet deep.*—Caes.

(Without the Adj. *latus, altus*, the Genitive would have been used: see § 274.)

Obs. 1. Duration of Time is also expressed emphatically by *per*: as,

Lūdi decem per diēs facti sunt, *The games were celebrated through ten entire days.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. Duration of time is sometimes, but rarely, expressed by the Ablative in the best writers: as,

Pugnātum est continenter hōris quinque, *They fought for five hours incessantly.*—Caes.

Obs. 3. In the same manner in answer to the question, *how old?* the Accusative is used with *nātus, born*, (so many years): as,

Alcibiādes annos circiter quadrāginta nātus diem obiit suprēmum, *Alcibiades died when about forty years old.*—Nep.

#### 5. Accusative in Exclamations.

§ 250. The Accusative is used in exclamations, either with or without an Interjection: as,

Me caecum, qui haec ante non vidērim, *My blindness not to have seen this before!*—Cic.

O vim maximam errōris, *O the enormous power of error!*—Cic.

Eheu mi miserum, *O hapless me!*

Pro deōrum atque hōmīnum fidem! *In the name of gods and men!*—Cic.

En quātuor aras, *Lo, four altars.*—Virg.

Obs. 1. But *en* and *ecce* are quite as frequently found with the Nominative: as,

Ecce tuae litterae (sc. sunt) de Varrōne, *There is your letter about Varro!*—Cic.

Obs. 2. *Hei* and *vae* are construed with the Dative: as,

Vae victis, *Woe to the conquered.*—Liv.

Hei misero mihi, *Woe to wretched me.*—Ter.

#### 6. Accusative of Closer Definition.

§ 251. The Accusative is used, especially by the Poets, after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to indicate the part of the Subject specially referred to: as,

Hannibal, adversum femur graviter ictus, cecidit, *Hannibal fell severely wounded in the fore part of the thigh.*—Liv.

Equus tremuit artus, *The horse trembles in its limbs.*—Virg.

Feminae nudaē brachia et lacertos, *Women with both the lower and upper part of the arm bare.*—Tac.

Trajectus pedes, *With the feet pierced.*—Virg.

Obs. In prose, the Ablative is more generally used: as,

Pedibus aeger, *Diseased in the feet.*—Cic.

Capiti oculis talpae, *Moles maimed in the eyes (i.e. blind).*—Virg.

#### 7. Greek Accusative.

§ 252. Sometimes, by a Greek idiom, a Passive Verb is used in a middle sense, and made to govern an Accusative: as, *induo, amicio, I clothe, put on myself; exuo, I strip off (from myself); cingo, accingo, I gird on myself; and the like*: as,

Inutile ferrum cingitur, *He girds on the bootless steel.*—Virg.

Androgei galeam induitur, *He puts on the helmet of Androgeus.*—Virg.

Obs. On this principle must be explained Horace's,

Suspensi loculos tabulamque laerto, *With their satchels and tablet swinging at their elbow. (Suspensi, having fastened to themselves: ἀπορτημένοι.)*

#### 8. Other Uses of the Accusative.

§ 253. The Neuters of some Pronouns (*id, hoc, illud, haec, &c.*), and of Adjectives implying number (*unum, multa, pauca, &c.*), are frequently used with verbs which require a different construction in the case of other words: as,

Idem gloriari, *To make the same boast.*—Cic.

Omnes mulieres eadem student, *All women have the same inclinations.*—Ter.

Id operam do, *I strive after this.*—Ter.

Utrumque laetor, *I rejoice at both things.*—Cic.

Discipulos id unum monco, *I remind pupils of this one thing.*—Cic.  
 Saepe non audimus ea, quae ab natura monemur, *We often do not hear those things, which we are reminded by nature.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. This Accusative may also be used with the Passive, as in the last example.

Obs. 2. The same construction is used even without verbs: as,  
*Id temporis, At that time.*—Cic.

*Ille homo id aetatis, A man of that age.*—Cic.

§ 254. The Accusative is used adverbially in the expressions *magnam (maximam) partem*, *for the most part*; *vicem*, *on account of*; *secus, sex*; *cetera*, *in other respects*: as,

*Senexi maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, The Saei for the most part live on milk and cattle.*—Cic.

*Tuam vicem saepe doleo, I often grieve on your account.*—Cic.

*Liberiorum capitum virile sexus ad decem millia capta, Ten thousand free persons of the male sex were taken.*—Liv.

*Vir cetera egregius, A man illustrious in other respects.*—Liv.

§ 255. On the construction of the Accusative Case and Infinitive Mood, see the Syntax of Verbs.

#### APPENDIX ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

§ 256. It has been thought advisable to place together all the rules for the construction of the names of towns and small islands, in answer to the questions *Where?* *Whither?* *Whence?*

##### 1. Answer to the Question Where?

§ 257. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Substantive be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition: as,

*Romae Consules, Athenis Archontes, Carthagine Suffetes, sive iudices, quotannis creabantur, At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually.*—Nep.

*Tibare Roman amo, When at Tivoli I am in loco with Rome.*—Hor.

*Thebis, Argis, Ulubris, At Thebes, Argos (Argi), Ulubrae.*—Hor.

*Dionysius Corinthi pueros docebat, Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. It is probable, however, that these cases were originally *Locatives*, a case which exists in Sanscrit, with the termination *i* in the Singular. This accounts for the form *ae* in the 1st Declension, which was originally *ai*, for the form *i* in the 2nd Declension, and for such forms as *Carthagini*,

*Lacedaemoni, ruri* in the 3rd Declension, which frequently occur in MSS., instead of the Ablative, in answer to the question *Where?* Hence *ruri* rather than *rure*, *in the country.* See § 258.

Obs. 2. When the name of a town is qualified by an Adjective, the Ablative is used either with or without the preposition *in*: as,  
*In ipsa Alexandria, At Alexandria itself.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. If the Substantive *urbs, oppidum* or *civitas* be added in apposition, it is put in the Ablative usually with *in*: as, *Milites Albae constiterunt, in urbe opportuna, The soldiers halted at Alba, (in) a suitable city.*—Cic.

§ 258. After the same manner are used the following Substantives: *domi, at home*; *humi, on the ground*; *rure, more frequently ruri, in the country*; *millitiae, belli, in the field*: as,

*Vir domi non solum sed etiam Romae clarus, A man famous not only at home (in his own country) but also at Rome.*—Liv.

*Non eadem domi quae militiae fortuna erat plebi Romanae, The Roman commons had not the same good fortune at home as in the field.*—Liv.

*Vir domi bellicque fortissimus, A man most valiant at home and in the field.*—Vell.

*Forte evenit ut ruri (or rure) essemus, It so happened that we were in the country.*—Cic.

Obs. *Domi* is also used with *meae, tuae, suae, nostrae, vestrae*, and *alienae*; but if any other Adjective or a Possessive Substantive is used with it, the preposition *in* is more common, as *in illa domo; in domo publica; in domo Caesaris.*

##### 2. Answer to the Question Whither?

§ 259. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without a preposition: as,

*Curius primus elephantos quatuor Romam duxit, Curius first brought four elephants to Rome.*—Eutr.

*Pausaniam cum classe communi Cyprum atque Hellespontum miserrunt, They sent Pausanias with the combined fleet to Cyprus and the Hellespont.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. If *urbs* or *oppidum* be added in Apposition, the Preposition *in* must be used: as,

*Consul pervenit in oppidum Cirtam, The consul arrived in the town of Cirta.*—Sall.

Obs. 2. The poets use the same construction with the names of countries, and Substantives generally: as,

*Italiam venit, To Italy he came.*—Virg.

*Verba refert aures non pervenientia nostras, Words thou repeatest which reach not to our ears.*—Ov.

Obs. 3. Even in prose writers the preposition is frequently omitted with *Aegyptus, Chersonesus*, and *Hellespontus*. (See the second example.)

§ 260. The Accusatives *dōmum*, *home*; and *rus*, *to the country*, have the same construction as Names of Towns: as,

*Semel egressi, nunquam dōmum revertēre, Having once gone abroad, they never returned home.*—Cic.

*Ego rus ibo, atque ibi manēbo, I will go into the country and remain there.*—Ter.

### 3. Answer to the Question Whence?

§ 261. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

*Dionysius Platōnem Athēnis arcessivit, Dionysius sent for Plato from Athens.*—Nep.

*Demāratus, Tarquīnii rēgis pater, Tarquinius Cōrīntho fugit, Demaratus the father of King Tarquinius fled from Corinth to Tarquinius.*—Cic.

*Obs.* When *urbs* or *oppidum* are used in Apposition or before the name of towns, they follow their ordinary construction and take a Preposition (comp. § 259, *Obs.* 1.): as,

*Expellitur ex oppido Gergovia, He is driven out of the town of Gergovia.*—Caes.

## CHAPTER XXXIX.—THE GENITIVE.

§ 262 The Genitive Case denotes the dependence of a Substantive (or Pronoun) upon another word, which is generally a Substantive or Adjective, but sometimes a Verb.

*Obs.* 1. The Genitive appears originally to have denoted *origin*, in English *from* or *of*: it can, however, very seldom be translated by *from*, a meaning which is expressed by the Ablative.

*Obs.* 2. The Genitive is also found after the Preposition *tēnus*: see the Chapter on Prepositions.

### A. GENITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 263. *General Rule.*—The Genitive is used to denote the dependence of any one Substantive upon another: as,

*Bellum Pyrrhi, The war of or with Pyrrhus.*

*Simulatio amicitiae, The pretence of friendship.*

*Navis auri, A ship of, i.e. laden with gold.*

(But a *ship [made] of gold* would be *navis aurea* or *navis ex auro facta*.)

§ 264. Hence the Genitive depends upon *causā*, *grātiā*, *ergō*, *for the sake (of)*, which are Ablatives. The Genitive usually stands before these words: as,

*Voluptates omittuntur mājorum voluptatū adīpiscendārum causā, Pleasures are neglected for the sake of obtaining greater pleasures.*—Cic.

*Dolores suscipiuntur mājorum dolorū effugiendōrum grātiā, Sufferings are submitted to for the sake of avoiding greater sufferings.*—Cic.

*Si quid contrā alias lēges hūjus lēgis ergō factum est, If anything has been done against other laws for the sake of this law.*

*Obs.* 1. *Causā* is commonly used, *grātiā* less frequently, and *ergō* (Gr. *ἐργῷ*) rarely, chiefly in law phrases.

*Obs.* 2. Instead of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, the Possessive Pronoun is used with *causā* and *grātiā*: as, *meā causā, for my sake*; *tuā causā, for thy sake*.

*Obs.* 3. In the same way the Genitive depends upon the indeclinable *instār*, *instead of, like*: as,

*Instār montis equus, A horse like a mountain.*—Virg.

*Plātō mīhi unus instār est omnium, Plato alone is, in my opinion, worth them all put together.*—Cic.

### 1. Possessive Genitive, or Genitive of the Possessor.

§ 265. The Genitive denotes the *Possessor*, or the person or thing, whereto anything belongs:—

*Grāves Cyclopum officinae, The heavy forges of the Cyclops.*—Hor.

*In umbrōsis Hēlicōnis oris, In the shady regions of Helicon.*—Hor.

§ 266. The Possessive Genitive is frequently used after the verb *sum*, when in English the word *property* (*belonging to*), *duty*, *mark*, *characteristic*, or the like, is expressed:—

*Omnia sunt victōris, All things are the (property of the) conqueror* (i. e. belong to the conqueror).—Liv.

*Militum est dāci pārēre, It is (the duty) of soldiers to obey the general.*

*Nihil est tam angustī anīmi quam amāre divitias, Nothing is (the characteristic) of so petty a mind as the love of riches.*—Cic.

*Cūjuscis hōmīnis est errāre, It is (the part) of any man to err.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. The Substantive or Adjective (as *officium*, *munus*, *proprium*) is sometimes expressed: as,

*Senātūs officium est civitatem consilio jūvāre, It is the business of the senate to aid the state with counsel.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 2. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns: thus we must say, *meum est, it is mine* or *my duty*; *tuum est, it is thine* or *thy duty*; not *mei, tui est*.

*Obs.* 3. The words "wife," "son," or "daughter," are sometimes omitted before the Possessive Genitive: as,

*Verūnia Pisonis, Piso's Verania*, that is, *Verania the wife of Piso*.—Plin.

*Hasdrūbal Giscōnis, Gisco's Hasdrūbal*, that is, *Hasdrūbal the son of Gisco*.—Liv.

*Obs.* 4. The word "temple" (*aedes* or *templum*) is frequently omitted after the preposition *ad*, and before the Genitive of the name of the deity: as, *Ventum erat ad Vestae, We had come to (the temple) of Vesta*.—Hor.

## 2. Subjective Genitive.

§ 267. The Subjective Genitive denotes the *Subject* of the action expressed in the word on which it depends, and takes the place of the subject of a verb: thus *amor Dei*, the love of God (= Deus amat nos): as,

*Cātōnis nōbile lētum*, Cato's noble death.—Hor.

*Cūra patrū*, Care on the part of senators.—Hor.

*Flūmīnum lapsūs*, The gliding courses of rivers.—Hor.

Obs. 1. The possessive pronouns are used instead of the Subjective Genitive of the personal pronouns: as, *pater meus*, my father; *liber tuus*, your book.

Obs. 2. Hence a Genitive may stand in apposition to a possessive pronoun: as,

*Tuum, hōmīnis simplici*, pectus vidimus, We have seen your breast (i. e. heart), an artless man as you are.—Cic.

*Meā ūnus ōpē* respública salva est, The republic was saved by my exertions alone.—Cic.

*Hi ad vestram omnium* eadem Rōmæ restitērunt, These remained at Rome with a view to the slaughter of you all (of all of you).—Cic.

The Genitives *unius*, *ipsius* (ipsorum) are often so used.

Obs. 3. So the Relative may agree with a Genitive implied in a Possessive Pronoun: as,

*Nostra caede qui* remansissēmus, With the massacre of such of us as remained.—Cic.

## 3. Objective Genitive.

§ 268. The Objective Genitive denotes the *Object* of the notion expressed in the word on which it depends, and takes the place of the object of a verb: thus *amor Dei*, love towards God (= nos amāmus Deum): as,

*Fortitudo est dūlōrum lūōrumque* contemptio, Fortitude is the despising of sufferings and hardships.—Cic.

*Ex injuriā Sabinārum mulierum* bellum ortum est, From the wrong done to the Sabine women war arose.—Liv.

Obs. 1. The Objective Genitive is more frequently used in Latin than the Subjective, and the latter does not occur unless where the context prevents ambiguity: thus *cūra Caesaris* (Hor. Od. i. 12. 50) is "care of or for Caesar" [Objective], while *cūra Patrū* (id. iv. 14. 1) in the example given in § 267, it is equally plain, must mean "care on the part of the Senators." In case of any real ambiguity a preposition is used instead of the Objective Genitive, especially in denoting a feeling towards any one: as,

*Ōdium hōmīnum* universum gēnus, Hatred against the whole race of man.

Obs. 2. Both the Objective and Subjective Genitive when dependent upon a Substantive may be reduced to the head *Possessive Genitive*, and may often be translated by the English Possessive Case. The Objective Genitive, however, more frequently requires some other Preposition.

Obs. 3. An Objective and Subjective Genitive are sometimes dependent upon the same substantive: as,

*Pro vōtōribus Helvētiōrum injūriis Pōpuli Rōmāni*, For old wrongs done by the Helvetii to the Roman people.—Caes.

Here *Helvētiōrum* is the Subject and *Pōpuli Rōmāni* the Object; and the sentence is equivalent to, *The Helvetii did wrongs to the Roman people*.

Obs. 4. With the Objective Genitive, the Genitive of the personal pronoun, (*mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrī*, *vestrī*), and not the possessive pronoun, is used: as,

*Misit filium non solum* deprecātōrem *sui*, sed etiam accusātōrem *mei*, He sent his son not only to intercede for himself, but also to accuse me.—Cic.

*Mēmōriam nostrī* quam maxime longam efficere debemus, We ought to make the remembrance of ourselves as lasting as possible.—Sall.

Obs. 5. The Objective Genitive is also found after Adjectives derived from Verbs: see § 276, Obs. 1.

## 4. Partitive Genitive.

§ 269. The Genitive is used after Substantives, to denote the whole whereof a part is taken: as,

*Magna vis auri*, A great quantity of gold.—Cic.

*Mōdus trītīci*, A peck of wheat.—Cic.

*Multaque pars mei* vitabit Libitinam, And an ample part of me shall evade the tomb.—Hor.

§ 270. The Partitive Genitive is often found after the Neuter of Adjectives and Adjective Pronouns used substantively.

These Adjectives are:

*tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*,  
*multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*,  
*nihil*,\* *minus*, *minimum*,  
*dimidium*, *paullum*, *reliquum*.

\* *Nihil* is however always a Substantive.

The Pronouns are:

*hoc*, *idem*, *illud*, *id*,  
*quidquam*, *aliquid*, and *quid*.

They are used as Substantives only in the Nominative and Accusative, and must not depend upon Prepositions: as,

*Plus virum*, More of strength.—Sen.

*Quidquam novi*, Anything new.—Cic.

*Nihil hūmānarum rerum*, No human affairs.—Cic.

*Quantum incrementi Nilus capit*, tantum *spei* in annum est, So much rise as the Nile undergoes, just so much hope is there for the harvest.—Sen.

Obs. 1. The Genitive used with these Neuters is frequently an Adjective of the Second Declension, used Substantively. See above.

Obs. 2. But Adjectives of the Third Declension cannot be used as Substantives in the Genitive: hence we have *aliquid difficile, something difficult*; *aliquid difficilior, something more difficult*.

Obs. 3. Poets and prose-writers, after Cicero, use the Neuters of any Adjectives as Substantives, with a Partitive Genitive dependent on them: as,

*Cuncta terrarum, All (of) the world.*—Hor.

*Ardua terrarum, The lofty (parts or regions) of the earth.*—Virg.

*Exiguam campi ante castra erat, There was a small portion of the plain before the camp.*—Liv.

*Remanens noctis acquivit, He slept the remainder of the night.*—Curt.

Tacitus is fond of this construction.

§ 271. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Adverbs of Quantity, \* Place, or Time, used Substantively: as,

*Satis eloquentiae, sapientiae parum, Plenty of eloquence, little enough of wisdom.*—Sall.

*Ubinam gentium } Where in the world?—Cic.*  
*Ubi terrarum }*

*Eo miseriarum, To such a pitch of wretchedness.*—Sall.

*Postea loci, Afterwards.*—Liv.

*Inde loci, Thereupon.*—Lucr.

\* These Adverbs are:

<i>satis, enough.</i>		<i>abunde, } abundantly.</i>
<i>parum, too little.</i>		<i>affatim, }</i>

§ 272. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Comparatives and Superlatives: as,

*Maior iuvenum, (Thou) elder of the youths.*—Hor.

*Maxime principum, Greatest of princes!*—Hor.

*Gracorum oratorum praestantissimi, The most eminent of Greek orators.*—Cic.

Obs. Instead of the Genitive, the Prepositions *ex, de*, and in certain cases *in, inter*, are used: as,

*Acerrimus ex omnibus nostris sensibus est sensus videndi, The keenest of all our senses is the sense of sight.*—Cic.

*Crocus inter reges opulentissimus, Crocus, wealthiest among kings.*—Sen.

§ 273. The Partitive Genitive is also found after Numerals, and Pronouns or Adjectives implying a number: as,

*Primi iuvenum, First of the youths.*—Virg.

*Consilium alter, one of the two consuls.*—Liv.

Obs. 1. The Genitive is often used in English with numerals and adjectives when there is no Partitive meaning, but only an enumeration of the whole. In such cases the Genitive is very seldom used in Latin: thus we say in English, "The veterans, of whom few are surviving," but in Latin "qui pauci supersunt," because these few are all. So also "all of us" is in Latin "nos omnes."

Obs. 2. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as Partitive Genitives, but not *nostri* and *vestri*. as, *uterque nostrum, both of us*; *nemo vestrum ignorat, no one of you is ignorant*: but, *miserrere nostri, pity us*; *vestri similes, like to you*.

2. But *nostri* and *vestri* may be used as Partitives, when a division of human nature is spoken of: as,

*Nostri melior pars animus est, The better part of us is the soul.*—Sen.

## 5. Genitive of Quality.

§ 274. When a Substantive of quality, quantity, or description, has an Adjective joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative (see § 318): as,

(Vir) *priscæ ac nimis duræ severitatis, A man of antique and excessively rigorous severity.*—Liv.

*Ager quattuor iugerum, A farm of four acres.*—Liv.

*Vir maximi corporis, A man of very great stature.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. The Genitive of Quality denotes a more inherent and abiding quality than the Ablative.

Obs. 2. The Genitive and Ablative can never be used without an Adjective: thus, *a man of talent*, is *homo ingeniösus* (not *homo ingeni*); but *a man of great talent*, is *homo magni ingenii*.

Obs. 3. It must be particularly noticed that this Genitive of Quality is limited to the connexion of two Substantives: thus we say, *fossa quindæm pedum, a ditch of fifteen feet*; but when *longus* or *latus* is added, we must say *fossa quindæm pedes lata*: in like manner, *puer decem annorum, a boy of ten years*, but *puer decem annos natus*. See § 249.

## 6. Genitive of Definition.

§ 275. Sometimes a Substantive is used in the Genitive by way of Definition, where we should rather have expected a Substantive in Apposition: as,

*Hæc vox voluptatis, This word pleasure.*—Cic.

## B. GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 276. Adjectives signifying capacity; also of desiring, experience, remembering, participating, fullness, and their opposites, govern a Genitive of the Object: as,

*Themistocles peritissimos belli navalis Athenienses fecit, Themistocles made the Athenians the most skilful in naval war.*—Nep.

*Omnes immemorem beneficii odêrunt, All hate the man who is unmindful of kindness.*—Cic.

*Ira impotens sui est, Anger is incapable of governing itself.*—Sen.

*Homo particeps est rationis et cogitationis, Man is partaker of reason and thought.*—Cic.

*Bestiæ rationis et orationis expertes sunt, Beasts are destitute of reason and speech.*—Cic.



*Plenum Bacchi pectus, A bosom (soul) full of Bacchus.*—Hor.  
*Virtutis compos, Possessed of virtue.*—Cic.

The following Adjectives follow the above rule and govern the Genitive :—

1. <i>avarus,</i>	<i>covetous.</i>	<i>rūlis,</i>	<i>unskilled.</i>
<i>avidus,</i>	<i>greedy.</i>	<i>insolens,</i>	} <i>unaccustomed.</i>
<i>eupidus,</i>	<i>eager.</i>	<i>insolitus,</i>	
<i>studiosus,</i>	<i>fond.</i>	<i>insuetus,</i>	} <i>master of.</i>
<i>fastidiosus,</i>	<i>disdainful.</i>	<i>compos,</i>	
<i>invidus,</i>	<i>jealous.</i>	<i>impos,</i>	<i>not master.</i>
<i>timidus,</i>	} <i>fearful.</i>	<i>pōtens,</i>	<i>powerful.</i>
<i>pavulus,</i>		<i>impotens,</i>	<i>not powerful.</i>
<i>liberalis,</i>	<i>liberal.</i>		
<i>profusus,</i>	<i>lavish.</i>	3. <i>mēmor,</i>	<i>mindful.</i>
<i>parcus,</i>	<i>stingy.</i>	<i>immēmor,</i>	<i>unmindful.</i>
		<i>curiosus,</i>	<i>careful.</i>
2. <i>pēritus,</i>	<i>skilled.</i>	<i>incuriosus,</i>	<i>careless.</i>
<i>impēritus,</i>	<i>unskilled.</i>		
<i>consciū,</i>	<i>conscious.</i>	4. <i>particeps,</i>	<i>participating.</i>
<i>insciū,</i>	} <i>ignorant.</i>	<i>consors,</i>	<i>sharing.</i>
<i>nesciū,</i>		<i>exsors,</i>	} <i>not sharing.</i>
<i>præsciū,</i>	<i>foreknowing.</i>	<i>expers,</i>	
<i>gnārus,</i>	<i>knowing.</i>	<i>inops,</i>	<i>weak.</i>
<i>ignārus,</i>	<i>not knowing.</i>		
<i>prūdē,</i>	<i>foreseeing.</i>	5. <i>plēnus,</i>	<i>full.</i>
<i>imprūdē,</i>	<i>not foreseeing.</i>	<i>inānis,</i>	<i>empty.</i>

Verbal Adjectives in *ax* follow the above rule: as, *edax, devouring; cāpax, holding.*

*Obs. 1.* The Genitive after Adjectives enumerated in 1, 2, 3, and those in *ax, ans,* and *ens* (see § 277), is an Objective Genitive: thus, *eupidus sum pecūniæ* = *eupio pecūniā*: comp. § 268. The Genitive after Adjectives enumerated in 4, 5, is a Partitive Genitive. Comp. § 269.

*Obs. 2.* Those signifying *plenty* or *want* are also used with the Ablative: see § 317.

*Obs. 3.* The Genitive is also sometimes found after *Verbs* of plenty or want: see § 317.

*Obs. 4.* *Rūlis* and *prūdē* are also used with *in* and the Ablative: as, *prūdē in jure civili, skilful in civil law.*—Cic.

*Obs. 5.* Such Adjectives as *amīcus, friendly; infamīcus, unfriendly; fidēlis, fidus, faithful, &c.,* do not fall under the above rule, but govern the Dative according to § 298.

§ 277. Many Imperfect Participles become Adjectives, and, according to the above rule, govern the Genitive, though as Participles they govern the Case of their Verbs: thus *pātiens (adj.) lābōrum* signifies *capable of enduring hardships; pātiens (part.) lābōres, (actually) enduring them*: as,

*Epāminōndas adeo fuit vēritātis diligēns, ut ne jūco quidem mentirētur, Epaminondas was so careful of truth that he would not tell a lie even in sport.*—Nep.

*Aliēni appētens, sui prōfusus, Covetous of what belonged to others, lavish of his own.*—Sall.

### C. GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

#### 1. Genitive after to Remember or to Forget.

§ 278. Verbs signifying *to remember* or *to forget* usually govern the Genitive (of the Object): as,

*Animus mēmīnit prætēritōrum, The mind remembers the past.*—Cic.

*Nec unquam obliviscar illius noctis, Nor shall I ever forget that (memorable) night.*—Cic.

*Obs. 1.* But they govern the Accusative:—

(a) When the *entire object* is represented as retained in the mind or dismissed from it: as,

*Rēmīnisci pristini temporis ācerbitātem, To remember the bitterness of the past.*—Nep.

*Tu, C. Caesar, oblivisci nūllī sōles, nūllī injūrias, Thou, Caius Caesar, art wont to forget nothing save injuries.*—Cic.

Hence *memini* invariably governs an Accusative to indicate a contemporary: as,

*Cinnam mēmīni, vīdi Sullam, I remember Cinna, I saw Sulla.*—Cic.

(b) When the object is a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective: thus, *id, ea, omnia, multa rēcordari, rēmīnisci, &c.*; not *ejus, eorum* [but *earum rerum*], &c.

*Obs. 2.* Verbs of *reminding* (*mōneo, admōneo, commōneo, &c.*) govern the Accusative of a person and the Genitive of a thing: as,

*Citillina admōnebat ālium v̄gestātis, ālium cāpīdītātis suae, Catiline reminded one of his destitute circumstances, another of his ruling passion.*—Sall.

But if the thing is a Neuter Pronoun, it likewise is put in the Accusative, so that a verb of *reminding* is thus joined with two Accusatives: as, *illud me admōnes, you remind me of that.*

*Obs. 3.* Verbs of *reminding* are frequently constructed with *de* and the Ablative: as,

*De acie Tellūris me admōnes, You remind me of the temple of Tellus.*—Cic.

*Obs. 4.* *Rēcordari* generally governs the Accusative, very rarely the Genitive: as,

*Commūnes bellī cāsus rēcordābantur, They called to mind the common chances of war.*—Caes.

*Obs. 5.* The impersonal phrase, "*venit mihi in mentem,*" *to think of, to recollect,* is also used with the Genitive: as,

*Sūlet mihi in mentem vēnīre illius temporis, I am wont to call to mind that time.*—Cic.

But the phrase is also used personally: as,

*Non vēnit in mentem pugna apud Regillum lūcum, Do you not call to mind the battle at lake Regillus?*—Liv.

#### 2. Genitive after to Accuse, Condemn, and Convict.

§ 279. The Genitive is used after Verbs of *accusing, condemning, and acquitting*, to denote the Charge: as,

*Accusātus est prōditiōis, He (Miltiades) was accused of treason.*—Nep.

*Caesar Dolābellam rēpētundārum postūlāvit, Caesar impeached Dolabella for extortion.*—Cic.



Jūdex absolvit injūriarū eum, *The judge acquitted the man of wrong-doing.*—Auct. ad Her.

Absens prōditiōis damnātus est, *He (Themistocles) was brought in guilty of treason in his absence.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the Ablative crimine is expressed: as damnātus est crimine repētundarū, *He was condemned on the charge of extortion.*

Obs. 2. Instead of the Genitive we also find the Ablative with *de*: as, Appius de pecūnis repētundis est postulatū, *Appius was impeached for extortion.*—Cic.

This is the only admissible construction in the case of *vis, violence*: as *de vi postulare, damnare, &c.*

Obs. 3. The Genitive is also used with the Adjectives signifying *guilty, innocent, condemned*: as, *reus, noxius, innocens, insons, manifestus, and the like.*

§ 280. The Genitive is sometimes used to denote the punishment to which a person is condemned: as,

Capitis hūmānem condemnare, *To condemn a man to death.*—Cic.

Octupli damnari, *To be condemned in an eight-fold payment.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative is also used: as, *capite damnare.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. If the money-penalty is expressed by an Adjective of Quantity, the Genitive is used, as *tanti, quanti, dupli, quadrupli* (comp. § 281): but if the sum is definitely expressed, the Ablative must be used: as,

Ea lis quinquaginta talentis aestimata est, *The damages were fixed at fifty talents.*—Nep.

### 3. Genitive of Price or Valuation.

§ 281. The Genitive is also used with Verbs to denote *Price or Valuation* when not definitely expressed, but indicated by an Adjective of quantity; as *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris*: as,

Quanti Chrysogonus docet, *At what price does Chrysogonus give lessons?*—Juv.

Plūris, minōris, vendere, *To sell for less or more.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. But a definite price is expressed with the Ablative: see § 316; and even the Ablatives *magno, parvo, plurimo, minimo, &c.* are of frequent occurrence.

Obs. 2. In the same manner are used the Genitives *flocci, pili, nauci, assis*, to denote that a thing is of *no value at all*: especially in the phrases *flocci, pili facere, pendere, &c.*, "*not to care a straw for.*"

### 4. Genitive with Verbs of Feeling.

§ 282. The Personal Verbs *miseror, miseresco, to pity*; and the Impersonals *miseret, miserescit, miseretur, it causes pity*; *piget, it vexes*; *poenitet, it repenteth*; *pudet, it causes shame*; *taedet, pertaesum est, it causes weariness*, govern the Genitive of the cause of the emotion: as,

O virgo, miserere mei, *O maiden, have pity on me!*—Ov.

Me piget stultitiae meae, *I am vexed at my folly.*—Cic.

Nunquam suscepti negotii Atticum pertaesum est, *Atticus never tired of a business he had taken in hand.*—Nep.

Obs. 1. With the Impersonals mentioned above, the Subject of the feeling is put in the Accusative: see § 241.

Obs. 2. The object of the feeling is also sometimes expressed by an Infinitive Mood or a clause, with *quod*. See § 241, Obs.

Obs. 3. *Miseror*, and *commiseror to commiserate*, follow the regular usage of transitive Verbs and govern an Accusative.

### 5. Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.

§ 283. The Genitive is used with the Impersonal Verbs *interest* and *rēfert*, *it is of advantage, importance* [rarely with the latter], to denote the Person to whom a thing is of *importance or benefit*. as,

Quid Milōnis intererat interfici Clōdium, *What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be slain?*—Cic.

Rēfert cōpositiōis, *It is of importance for the right arrangement of words.*—Quint.

Obs. 1. This construction is not admissible in the case of the Personal Pronouns, the Adjective forms *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, being used instead: as,

Quid tuā id rēfert, *What matters that to you?*—Ter.

Vestrā interest cōmilitiōes, *It is your concern, fellow-soldiers.*—Tac.

NOTE.—*Rēfert* probably = *rei fert*, *it contributes to the interest*; and with *interest*, *rei* may be understood: in that case the forms *meā, tuā, &c.* may perhaps be regarded as datives agreeing with *rei*.

Obs. 2. *Rēfert* is generally used absolutely, very rarely with the Genitive, but less rarely with *meā, tuā, &c.*

Obs. 3. The subject of *interest* (and *rēfert*) is never a Substantive, but is expressed,

(a) By the Infinitive: as, Interest omnium rectē facere, *It is the interest of all to act rightly.*

(b) By the Accusative and Infinitive: as, Meā interest, te valere, *It is of importance to me that you should be in good health.*—Cic.

(c) By a secondary clause beginning with *ut, nē*, or an interrogative: as, Illud meā magni interest, tē ut videar, *It is of great importance to me that I should see you.*—Cic.

Vestrā, cōmilitiōes, interest, nē impēratōrem pessimi faciant, *It is of importance to you, fellow-soldiers, that the worst men should not have the making of an emperor.*—Tac.

Magni rēfert, quid hic velt, *It is of great importance what this person wishes.*—Caes.

(d) By a neuter pronoun, *hoc, illud* (so that the Verbs are not quite impersonal): as,

Hoc vāhemēter interest, *This is of prodigious importance to the republic.*—Cic.

Obs. 4. The degree or measure of importance is expressed :

- (a) By the Genitives of value, *magni, parvi, pluris, tanti, quanti* : v. § 281.  
 (b) By the Adverbs *valdē, rēhementer, magnāperē, magis, maxime*, &c.  
 (c) By Neuter Adjectives, *multum, plus, plurimum*, &c.

#### D. EXCEPTIONAL USES OF THE GENITIVE.

§ 284. The Genitive is occasionally used after Verbs and Adjectives of Separation or Removal ; whether according to the Greek idiom, or by virtue of the original meaning of the Case (see § 262, Obs. 1) : as,

*Dēſine mollium tandem quērlārū, Cease at length from unmanly repinings.*—Hor. (Comp. the Greek γόνυ, κλαυθμοῦ παύεσθαι.)

*Scēlētis pūrus, Pure from guilt.*—Hor. (Gr. καθαρὸς ἀδικίας.)

*Sōlūtus ōpērum, Released from toil.*—Hor. (Gr. λελυμένος πόνων.)

§ 285. The Genitive is sometimes used (especially by the poets), in the sense of *with regard to, in reference to, for* : as,

*O te, Bōlāne, felīcem cērebri, O my friend Bolanus, lucky for your choleric vein!*—Hor.

*Nōtus in fratres ānīmī pātēni, Renowned for right fatherly affection to his brothers.*—Hor.

(Comp. the Greek ὀλβιος, μάκαρ τῶν τέκνων, etc.)

Obs. 1. Note especially the use of *animi* in such phrases as *ānīmī pendēre, to be in suspense or anxious in mind* ; *cruciāre se ānīmī, to torture oneself in mind*, &c. (But we also find *ānīmō* ; which seems to imply that the form is a Locative : see § 257, Obs. 1.)

Obs. 2. Tacitus uses the Genitive very freely, and especially after Adjectives : as, *atrox odii, savage in hatred* ; *modicus vōluptātis, moderate in enjoyment*, &c.

§ 286. The Locatives *dōmi, at home* ; *militiæ, in the field* ; *Rōmæ, at Rome* ; *Sāguntī, at Saguntum* ; and the like, are commonly regarded as Genitives : but see § 257, Obs. 1.

### CHAPTER XL.—THE DATIVE.

§ 287. The Dative may usually be translated by the Prepositions *to* or *for*, in English. It denotes the *Remoter Object*, as distinguished from the *Immediate Object* ; the latter being put in the Accusative (see § 234) : as,

*Aesōpo quīdam lapīdem impēgērāt, A person had cast a stone at Aesop.*—Phaedr.

Obs. Here the *immediate object* of the action is the stone (*lapidem*) which is cast ; while the Dative *Aesopo* denotes the *remoter object*, or the person to whom the action has reference.

#### A. DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

##### 1. Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage.

(*Dātivus Commōdi* or *Incommōdi*.)

§ 288. The Dative may be used after any kind of Verb soever, to signify *for, for the good of* : as,

*Dōmus dōmīnis aedificātur, non mīrībūs, A house is built for its owners, not for the mice.*—Cic.

*Non schōlæ sed vītæ discimus, We learn not for the school, but for life.*—Sen.

*Non sōlum nōbīs divites esse vōlāmus, We wish not to be rich for ourselves only.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. When *for* signifies in defence of, in behalf of, *pro* must be used : as, *mori pro patriā, to die for one's country* ; *dicere pro aliquo, to speak for any one* (i. e. in behalf of any one).

Obs. 2. The *Dativus Commōdi* is also used after Adjectives : see § 298.

§ 289. Hence some Intransitive verbs, which usually do not govern any case, are constructed with a Dative to express that the action is done with reference to something or somebody. Thus *vāco, to be free*, signifies with the Dative *to have leisure for a thing, to devote oneself to it* ; *nūbo, to cover or veil*, signifies with the Dative, in reference to a woman, *to cover herself or put on the veil for a man*, hence *to marry* ; *supplicō, to be a suppliant*, signifies with the Dative *to supplicate, to implore a person* : as,

*Philōsōphīæ semper vāco, I always find leisure to study philosophy.*—Cic.

*Vēnus nupsit Vulcāno, Venus married Vulcan.*—Cic.

*Cæsāri pro te libentissimē supplicābo, I will most willingly supplicate Cæsar for you.*—Cic.

Obs. Of course *nūbo* is used only of a woman marrying.

##### 2. Dativus Ethicus.

§ 290. Sometimes the Dative (especially in the case of the Personal Pronouns *mihi, tibi, sibi, nobis, vobis*) is used to signify that the matter spoken of is regarded with interest (ἡθός) by some person : as,

*Quid mihi Celsus agit, How does my friend Celsus?*—Hor.

*Hic Mārius veniet tibi origine parvā, Here shall come your Marius, of stock obscure.*—Sil.

Obs. The *Dativus Ethicus* is a more delicate shade of the *Dativus Commōdi*.

## 3. Dative after various Verbs.

§ 291. The following verbs, apparently transitive, govern a Dative, which in many cases is the *Dativus Commodi* or *Incommodi*:

1. *To assist*: subvenio, succurro, auxilior.
2. *To resist, oppose*: resisto, adversor, obviator, renitor, repugno, obsum, &c.
3. *To favour, study (be devoted to)*: faveo, indulgeo, studeo.
4. *To envy, be jealous of*: invidéo, aemulor (see Obs. 4).
5. *To please*: placeo, arrideo.
6. *To serve, obey, benefit*: pareo, obedió, obtempéro, servio, prorsum.
7. *To trust or distrust*: credo, fido, confido, diffido.
8. *To spare, refrain from*: parco, tempéro.
9. *To advise, persuade*: suadeo, persuadeo.
10. *To flatter*: adulor, assentor, blandior.
11. *To cure*: mēdeor, mēdicor.
12. *To pardon*: ignosco.
13. *To congratulate*: gratulor.
14. *To revile*: maledico, obrecto, convicior.
15. *To be angry*: irascor, succenseo.
16. *To protect*: patrōcinor.
17. *To command*: impéro, impérito, praecepío, and sometimes dōmīnor, mōdēror, tempéro

With some others.

Hōmīnes hōmīnibus plūrimū et prorsum et obsunt, Men very greatly benefit and harm their fellow-men.—Cic.

Liber is est existimandus, qui nulli turpitudinī servit, That man should be deemed a freeman who is in bondage to no disgraceful passion.—Cic.

Non licet sui commodi causā, nocēre alteri, It is wrong to injure another for one's own advantage.—Cic.

Dēmōsthēnes ejus ipsius artis, cui studebat, primam litēram non pōtērat dicēre, Demosthenes could not pronounce the first letter of the very art which he was studying.—Cic.

Antiochus se nec impensae, nec lāvārī, nec pēriculo parsurū pollicēbatur, Antiochus promised to spare neither expense, labour, nor peril.—Liv.

Mēlici tōto corpore cūrando, mīnimae etiam parti mēdentur, Physicians, by treating the whole of the body, cure also the smallest part of it.—Cic.

Prōbus invidet nēmīni, The good man envies no one.—Cic.

Epīcūrus Phaedōni turpissimē maledixit, Epicurus maligned Phaedo very grossly.—Cic.

Quis Isocrātī est adversātus impensius (quam Aristōtēles), Who opposed Isocrates more strongly than Aristotle?

Is aemulāmur qui ea hābeant quae nos hābere cupiāmus, We are jealous of those who have what we want.—Cic.

Omnibus gentibus ac nationibus impērāre, To rule over all peoples and nations.—Cic.

Mōdērārī anīmo et orationi cum sis irātus, To govern temper and tongue when you are angry.—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Passives of these verbs can be used only impersonally: as, mīhi invīdētur, I am envied. See § 234, Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Jūvo, adjūvo, I assist; dēlecto, oblecto, I delight; cūro, I take care of, or treat medically; always govern the Accusative: as,

Multum pōtes nos apud Plancum jāvare, You are able greatly to help me with Plancus.—Cic.

Atticam salvēre jūbe, et eam diligenter cūra, Pay my respects to Attica, and take good care of her.—Cic.

Obs. 3. Mēdeor, mēdicor, I heal; and adulor, I flatter, have sometimes the Accusative and sometimes the Dative.

Obs. 4. Aemulor, in sense of to rival, emulate, is always followed by an Accusative:

Me Agamemnonem aemulārī pūtas, You fancy I am emulating Agamemnon.—Nep.

Obs. 5. Invidéo, I envy, begrudge, may take in addition to a Dative of the Person an Accusative (or in later writers an Ablative) of the thing begrudged: as,

Invīdent nobis mīgīstram optīmam, They envy us the best of teachers (Nature).—Cic.

Nē spectāculo quīdem proclii nobis invīdērunt, They (the gods) have not even begrudged us the spectacle of a battle.—Tac.

Obs. 6. Jūbeo, rēgo, and gūberno are always followed by the Accusative, and dōmīnor, mōdēror, tempéro, as frequently by the Accusative as by the Dative; especially when they mean to govern: as,

O dīva grātum qui rēgis Antium, O goddess who rulest thy favourite Antium!—Hor.

Spērāre nos amīci jūbent, Our friends bid us hope.—Cic.

Qui (Jūpiter) res hōmīnum ac deorum, qui mēre ac terras tempērat, Who governs the affairs of men and gods, who governs sea and land.—Hor.

Cum sōlus rempublicam gūrēret, orbemque terrarū gūbernāret, When he was carrying on the commonwealth alone, and governing the world.—Cic.

Obs. 7. Some verbs have different meanings, according as they govern the Accusative or Dative: as,

Haece nobis convēniunt, These things agree with us.

Convēnīre aliquem, To have an interview with any one.

Mētuo, timeo te, I fear you.

— tibi, I am apprehensive for you.

Consūlo te, I consult you.

— tibi, I consult for your interests.

Prospicio, and providéo te, I see you at a distance.

— tibi, I consult for your interests.

Cāveo te or a te, I am on my guard against you.

— tibi, I am concerned for your safety.

Tempéro, mōdēror aliquid, to regulate, arrange.

— mihi, irae, &c., to set bounds to, to check, restrain.

## 4. Dative after Verbs compounded with Prepositions.

## § 292. Verbs compounded with the Prepositions

ad, ante, con, in and inter  
ob, post, prae, sub and super

govern the Dative, when the Preposition retains its original force in reference to an object. Transitive verbs have also an Accusative case in addition: as,

*Tu mihi terram in-jice, Fling thou earth on me (my corpse).—Virg.*

*Delphines altis in-cursant rāmis, The dolphins course against the high branches.—Ov.*

*In-cubuit tōro, She leaned upon her couch.—Virg.*

*Quum prōpēmodo mūris ac-cessisset, When he had almost got up to the walls.—Liv.*

*Caesari vēnienti oc-currit, He hastens to meet Caesar on his way.—Caes.*

*Quum virtute omnibus prae-starent, Whereas they (the Electi) surpassed all in valour.—Caes.*

*Natura hominis pēcūdis antē-cēdit, The nature of man excels brute beasts.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1.* The preposition, however, is frequently repeated with its case instead of the Dative, especially after verbs compounded with *ad, con, in*. For instance *communico* is always constructed *aliquid cum aliquo*: *in*esse in the best writers is constructed with *in*. On the contrary *adjūco, assideo, adsto* always have the Dative. It may be observed in general that when the Preposition is compounded with a Verb signifying *motion to or from* a place, it usually governs the same Case as it would out of composition.

*Obs. 2.* *Assueficio, assuesco* are usually constructed with the Ablative, rarely with the Dative: as,

*Cum Lūstānis gēnere quōdam pugnae assuefacti, Accustomed to a certain kind of fighting with the Lusitani.—Caes.*

*Obs. 3.* Verbs compounded with *ante* and *prae*, as *antesto, antecēdo, antecello, praesto*, are usually constructed with the Dative, but sometimes with the Accusative: v. § 239.

*Obs. 4.* Some compound verbs, especially *aspergo, inspergo, circumdo*, have two constructions, namely, either an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the person, or an Accusative of the person and an Ablative of the thing: as,

*Circumdare brachia collo, To put the arms about any one's neck.—Ov.*

*Oppidum vallo et fossa circumdare, To surround a town with a rampart and moat.—Cic.*

## 5. Dative after Passive Verbs.

§ 293. The Dative is often used with the Perfect Tenses Passive to denote the Agent, instead of *a* or *ab* and the Ablative: as,

*Mihi consilium captum jam diu est, My plan has been already formed.—Cic.*

*Cui non sunt auditaē Demosthēnis vigiliae, Who is there to whom the night-watchings of Demosthenes are a thing unheard?—Cic.*

*Obs.* The Dative is by the Poets used with all tenses of the Passive Verb; as, *Barbārus hic ego sum quia non intelligor ulli, Here I am a barbarian, inasmuch as I am understood by none.—Ov.*

*Nēque cernitur ulli, Nor is she seen by any (visible to any).—Virg.*

*Carmīna quae scribuntur aquae pōtoribus, Poems that are written by water-drinkers.—Hor.* (But here perhaps *pōtoribus* is the Ablative: v. § 311, *Obs.*)

§ 294. The Dative is regularly used after the Gerundive Participle with the Verb *esse*, to denote the Agent: as,

*Quod fērendum est molliter sūpienti, Which the wise man must bear gently.—Cic.*

*Semper ita vivāmus, ut ratiōnem reddendam (esse) nobis arbitremur, Let us always so live as to believe that we must render up an account.—Cic.*

## 6. Dative after Impersonal Verbs.

§ 295. The Impersonal Verbs *licet, it is lawful*; *libet, it pleases*; *expēdit, it is expedient*, govern the Dative: as,

*Licet nēmīni dācere exercitum contrā patriam, It is not lawful for any man to lead an army against his country.—Cic.*

*Ei libebit, quod non licet (ei), It will please him to do that which is unlawful for him.—Cic.*

*Obs.* After *licet, &c.*, we often find a second Dative following the Infinitive Mood *esse*; as,

*Licuit esse Themistōcli otīoso, It was allowed Themistocles to be inactive.—Cic.*

*Illis timidis et ignavis licet esse, It is for them to be timid and cowardly.—Liv.*

## 7. Dative with the Verb Sum.

§ 296. The Verb *sum* with the Dative is used as equivalent to *habeo*: as,

*Mihi est injusta nōverca, I have an unjust stepmother.—Virg.*

*Trōja huic lōco nōmen est, This place has the name Troy.—Liv.*

*Obs. 1.* When, as in the last example, a name is specified after the verb *esse* or any similar Verb, it is usually attracted into the Dative also: as,

*Scipio cui Africāno cognōmen ex virtūto fuit, Scipio, who had the surname of Africanus on account of his valour.—Sall.*

*In campis, quibus nōmen erat Raudii, decertāvere, They fought in the plains which have the name (are called) Raudii.—Vell.*

*Obs. 2.* The following use of the Dative is an idiom borrowed from the Greek:

*Ut militibus labor volentibus esset, That the soldiers might be willing to undertake labour. (Lit., That the labour might be to the soldiers as willing persons: τοῖς στρατιώταις βουλευμένοις εἶναι.)*

## 8. Double Dative.

§ 297. A Dative of the Person (Dativus Commodi, § 288) and a Dative of Purpose or Result are used with Verbs signifying to be or become; to give, send or come; to impute or reckon, &c. : as,

Flūmen *aliis* verbōrum cordi est, A flood of words is the gratification of others.—Cic.

Ampla dōmus saepe fit dōmīno dēlēcōri, A spacious house often turns to the disgrace of its owner.—Cic.

Pausanias rex Lacēdaemōniōrum rēvit Atticis auxilio, Pausanias, king of the Lacedaemonians, came to the help of the Athenians.—Nep.

Nec tīmuit sibi nē vitio quis vertēret, Nor was afraid that some one might impute it to him as a fault.—Hor.

Cui bōno fuit, For whose advantage was it?—Cic.

Obs. The Dative of result is also used without a Dative of the Person : as, Nec eam rem habuit religiōni, Nor did he deem that circumstance a religious objection.—Cic.

Magna odio esse apud aliquem, To be an object of intense hatred with anybody.—Cic.

## B. DATIVE AFTER ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES.

§ 298. The Dative (in many cases a Dativus Commodi, § 288) is used after the following classes of Adjectives :—

1. Of Utility : utilis, commodus, fructuosus, &c.
2. Of Unprofitableness or injury : inutilis, noxius.
3. Of Fitness : aptus, accommodatus, idoneus, conveniens, proprius, &c.
4. Of Unfitness : incommodus, inconveniens.
5. Of Acceptableness : gratus, jucundus, carus.
6. Of Displeasure : ingratus, injucundus.
7. Of Friendliness : benignus, amicus, benivolus, fidelis, fidus.
8. Of Hostility : inimicus, perniciosus, malevolus, malignus, molestus, iratus, infestus.
9. Of Similarity and dissimilarity : similis, dissimilis.
10. Of Equality and inequality : aequalis, inaequalis.
11. Of Proximity : finitimus, vicinus, propinquus.

Romulus multitudinī grātor fuit quam Patribus, Romulus was more acceptable to the multitude than to the Fathers.—Liv.

Deiotarus fidelis erat Populo Romano, Deiotarus was faithful to the Roman people.—Cic.

Patriae solum omnibus carum est, The soil of our country is dear to all.—Cic.

Siculi Ferri inimici infestique sunt, The Sicilians are unfriendly to, and exasperated against Verres.—Cic.

Homo alienissimus mihi, A man most unfriendly to me.—Cic.

Ingratam Venēri pone superbiam, Lay aside your arrogance, displeasing to Venus.—Hor.

Numquid iratus es mihi propter has res, You are not angry with me for these things, are you?—Pl.

Idque eo facilius credēbatur quia simile vērō vidēbatur, And the thing was the more readily believed, because it seemed like truth.—Cic.

Paupertatem divitiis etiam inter homines esse aequalem volumus, We would have poverty on a level with riches even among men.—Cic.

Obs. 1. Some of these Adjectives are used as Substantives, *amicus, inimicus, finitimus, vicinus, propinquus*, &c., and are then constructed with the Genitive.

Obs. 2. *Similis* and *dissimilis* are quite as often found with the Genitive : as, Decem similes Nestoris, Ten men the like of Nestor.—Cic.

Impii cives, tui dissimilimi, Impious citizens most unlike yourself.—Cic.

Mutual likeness, &c., is expressed with *inter* : as, Dissimilimi inter se Zeuxis, Aglaophon, &c., Zeuxis, Aglaophon, &c., are very unlike each other.—Cic.

Obs. 3. An Adjective denoting fitness or utility may take, in addition to the Dative as above, an Accusative of the purpose with *ad* : as, Multas ad res peritiles (nobis) Xenophontis libri sunt, The works of Xenophon are very useful (to us) for many purposes.—Cic.

Obs. 4. The Adjectives which express friendliness, as *benignus, benivolus*, &c., are often constructed with *erga* and *adversus*; and those which express hostility, as *malignus, malevolus*, with *adversus*.

§ 299. AFTER ADVERBS. Any Adverb may govern a Dative which is derived from the Adjectives above described : as,

Congruenter naturae vivere, To live agreeably to nature.—Cic.

## C. EXCEPTIONAL USES OF THE DATIVE.

§ 300. In the Poets, the Dative is sometimes, by a Greek idiom, used after a Verb of fighting (instead of the Ablative with *cum*) : as,

Luctantem Icaris fluctibus Africum mercator metuens, The merchant (actually) in dread of the south wind wrestling the Icarian billows.—Hor.

(Compare the Gr. μάχεσθαι τινι.)

§ 301. The Dative is sometimes used by the Poets to express motion towards : as,

It clamor coelo, The shout rises to heaven.—Virg.

## CHAPTER XLI.—THE ABLATIVE.

§ 302. The Ablative has two leading significations: it denotes,

(A.) Separation from.

(B.) Various Conditions of an action: as, manner, cause, instrument, time, place, attendant circumstances.

It is usually expressed in English by the help of the Prepositions *from, by, with, in*: as,

*Trōjæ venit ab ōris, He came from the coasts of Troy.*—Virg.

*Fāto prōfugus, An exile by destiny.*—Virg.

*Carthāgo, stūdiis asperissima belli, Carthage, most fierce in the pursuits of war.*—Virg.

## 1. Ablative of Separation.

§ 303. *From* a Place or Person is put in the Ablative both with and without a Preposition.

§ 304. Names of Towns and small Islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition, to denote *Motion from*. See § 261.

§ 305. All Prepositions denoting *Motion* or *Absence from*, as *a* or *ab, de, ex, sine*, etc., are construed with the Ablative. See Chapter on Prepositions.

§ 306. The Ablative of Separation is found with Verbs signifying to *separate, remove, deliver from*; but more frequently, especially in Prose writers, with a Preposition: as,

(A.) *Verecundum Bacchum sanguineis prōhibēte rixis, Save ye honest Bacchus from blood-stained frays!*—Hor.

*Nodōsā corpus prōhibēre chiragrā, To save the body from the knotty gout.*—Hor.

*Libērāre aliquem culpā, To free a man from blame.*—Cic.

*Vercingetōrix oppugnātiōe destitit, Vercingetorix abandoned the siege.*—Caes.

(B.) *Ab oppidis vim hostium prōhibent, They ward off the violent attacks of the enemy from their walls.*—Caes.

*Viri boni lapidibus a foro pellēbantur, Good citizens were being pelted from the forum with stones.*—Cic.

*Eum ab omni errātiōe libēravit, He freed it (the world) from all possibility of going astray.*—Cic. (But *libēro* is quite as frequent with the abl. alone.)

*Tu, Jūpiter, hunc a tuis arīs arcēbis, Thou, O Jove, wilt keep this (villain) from thine altars!*—Cic.

§ 307. The Ablative is used after Adjectives denoting *freedom* or *exemption from*: as,

*Rōbustus animus omni est liber cūrā, The strong mind is free from all anxiety.*—Cic.

*Fāmā atque fortūnis expertes, Destitute of character as well as fortune.*—Sall.

Obs. 1. A Preposition is often used along with the Ablative: as, *Liber ab omni sumptu, Free from all expense.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. *Aliēnus* is likewise used both with *ab* and with the Dative: see § 299.

§ 308. *Ōpus est, there is need*, like verbs of want, governs the Ablative: as,

*Auctōritāte nobis ōpus est, We have need of authority.*—Cic.

*Ōpus est mātūre facto, There is need of prompt execution.*—Sall.

Obs. But *ōpus* is also used as an Adjective (indeclinable), in the Predicate: as,

*Themistocles celeriter, quae ōpus erant, reperiebat, Themistocles was quick at finding out what was wanted.*—Nep.

## 2. Ablative of Origin.

§ 309. The Ablative of Origin arises out of the Ablative of separation. It denotes that *from which* anything is made, or originates: as,

(*Domūs*) *amoenitas non aedificio sed silva constabat, The pleasantness of the house consisted not in the building (itself), but in its trees.*—Nep.

*Prudentia constat ex scientiā rerum bonarum et malarum, Prudence consists of the knowledge of things good and evil.*—Cic.

§ 310. The Ablative of Origin is found especially after the Participles *nātus, born from*; *ortus, oriundus, sprung from*; *gēnitus, begotten of*: also in the Poets with *sātus, ēditus, creātus, crētus, sprung from or begotten of*: as,

*Jove nātus et Maīā, Born of Jove and Maia.*—Cic.

*Orte Saturno, O thou offspring of Saturn!*—Hor.

*Quo sanguine crētus, From what blood (family) sprung.*—Virg.

*Albā oriundum sacerdotium, A priesthood that had its origin in Alba.*—Liv.

Obs. But *oriundus* and likewise *ortus* when it refers to more remote origin, are more frequently used with a Preposition: as,

*Hippocrātes et Epicydes, nāti Carthāgine, sed oriundi ab Syracūsīs, Hippocrates and Epicydes, natives of Carthage, but having their origin from Syracuse.*—Liv.

*Belgae orti sunt a Germānis, The Belgians are descended from the Germans.*—Caes.



### 3. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Instrument.

§ 311. The Ablative is used after Verbs, Participles, and Adjectives, to denote the *Cause, Manner, Means, or Instrument* of an Action or state of being: as,

*Sol cuncta sua luce illustrat et complet, The sun illumines and fills all things with its light.*—Cic.

*Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt, The Helvetii surpass the rest of the Gauls in valour.*—Caes.

*(Britanni) equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi (sunt), The Britons advanced to the river with cavalry and war-chariots.*—Caes.

*Epaminondas princeps meo iudicio Græciæ, Epaminondas, in my judgment, the foremost man of Greece.*—Cic.

*Ennius fuit maior natu quam Plantus et Naevius, Ennius was earlier in his period of birth than Plantus and Naevius.*—Cic.

*Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones, se tutantur, Bulls with (their) horns, boars with (their) tusks, lions by biting, defend themselves.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Hence the Ablative is used after a Passive Verb without a preposition to denote the *thing* by which a purpose is effected; but if the agent is a *person*, the preposition *a* or *ab* is required with the Ablative: see § 234, *Obs.* 1. By the poets, however, the Ablative is sometimes used alone: as,

*Scriberis Vario, Thou shalt be written of by Varius.*—Hor.

§ 312. 1. If the *manner* in which anything is done, be expressed by a Substantive and an Adjective, the Ablative is generally used without *cum*:

2. But if the *manner* is expressed by a Substantive alone, *cum* must be used: as,

*Miltiades res Chersonesi summam aequitate constituit, Miltiades arranged the affairs of the Chersonesus with the greatest fairness.*—Nep.

*Athenienses cum silentio auditi sunt, The Athenians were heard with silent attention.*—Liv.

*Obs.* 1. The Substantives signifying manner, as *modus, ratio, mos, ritus, consuetudo*, never take the preposition *cum*: as, *hoc modo, in this manner*; *Persarum more, after the custom of the Persians*.

*Obs.* 2. The student should observe that where *with* in English means *in company with*, *cum* is always used; but where *with* denotes the instrument, as, *to kill a person with a sword*, *cum* cannot be used, but only the Ablative of the instrument.

§ 313. The Ablative is used with Intransitive verbs to express the cause of anything happening, especially the cause of feelings or emotions, as, for example, *ardere studio, to burn with zeal*; *exultare gaudio, to exult with joy*; *interrere (perire, mori) fame, to die of hunger*; *gaudere (lactari) amici adventu, to rejoice at the arrival of a friend*; *gloriari victoriâ*

*sua, to boast of his victory*; *confidere naturâ loci, to trust in the nature of the ground*: as,

*Delicto dolere, correctione gaudere, nos oportet, We ought to grieve at a fault, to rejoice at its correction.*—Cic.

*Nominibus veterum gloriantur, They glory in the names of the ancients.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. With Transitive Verbs an Ablative of the Cause is for the most part used only in the case of such verbal Substantives as *jussu, mandatu, rogatu, permissu*, &c.: as,

*Adversus Jasonem Timotheus populi jussu bellum gessit, Timotheus carried on war against Jason by command of the people.*—Nep.

In other cases the preposition *propter* or *causâ* with the Genitive (see § 264), is generally used instead of the Ablative of the Cause.

*Obs.* 2. If the Cause is a state of feeling, the Perfect Participle of some verb signifying "to induce" is generally used with the Ablative of the Instrument: as, *cupiditate adductus, commotus, incitatus, impulsus, incensus*, &c.

*Obs.* 3. *Fido* and *confido* are also used with the Dative (see § 291); *doleo* with the Accusative (see § 236); *glorior* with the prepositions *de* or *in*: as, *In virtute recte gloriamur, We rightly glory in virtue.*—Cic.

*De tuis divitiis gloriaris, You boast of your wealth.*—Cic.

§ 314. The Adjectives, which express a state of the feelings, are followed by an Ablative of the Cause: as, *contentus, contented, laetus, rejoicing, superbus, proud, frētus, relying on*, and, less frequently, *moestus, sorrowful, anxius, anxious*: as,

*Frētus diligentia vestra, dissero brevius, Relying on your diligence, I treat (the matter) more briefly.*—Cic.

*Paucis contentus, Content with little.*—Hor.

*Phoebe superbe lyra, Thou Phoebe who takest pride in thy lyre!*—Tib.

*Obs.* For *dignus, indignus*, see § 320.

§ 315. The Deponent Verbs *utor, fruor, fungor, vescor, nitor, potior*, with their compounds, govern an Ablative: as,

*Sapientis ratione optime utitur, The wise man uses reason in the best way.*—Cic.

*Plurimis maritimis rebus fruimur atque utimur, We enjoy and make use of very many maritime productions.*—Cic.

*Agessilaus magnâ est praedâ potitus, Agesilaus obtained possession of great spoil.*—Nep.

*Obs.* 1. Most of the above are Instrumental Ablatives: the Deponents having been originally Passives or Reflectives. The Ablative with *potior* is perhaps governed by the Comparative implied in it (§ 319).

*Obs.* 2. *Potior* sometimes takes the Genitive; especially in the phrase *rerum potiri*, to obtain the management of affairs.—Cic.

§ 316. Verbs of *buying, selling, valuing, exchanging*; and the Adjectives *cârus, dear*, and *vilis, cheap*, are used with the Ablative of Price: as,



Lycurgus *ēmi* singula non *pēcūniā*, sed *compensatiōe* mercium, *Lycurgus directed that things should be bought, not with money, but by an equivalent of goods.*—Justin.

Viginti *talentis* unam *oratiōem* Isocrātes *vendidit*, *Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents.*—Plin.

Scius in (annōnae) *cāritāte asse mōdium pōpulo dedit*, *Scius in a dearth of corn gave it the people at an as per peck.*—Cic.

Quod non *opus* est, *asse cārum* est, *What you don't want is dear at any price* (lit., at an as).—Cic.

Mutat *quadrata rōtundis*, *He changes square for round.*—Hor. (With *mutō*, either of the articles of exchange may be put in the Ablative.)

Obs. 1. The Ablative is used because the Price is the means by which a thing is obtained.

Obs. 2. The Ablative of Price is only used when a definite sum is expressed by a Substantive; but an Indefinite Price is expressed by the Genitive of an Adjective of quantity: see § 281.

EXCEPTIONS.—But the Ablatives *magno*, at a high price; *permagno*, plūrimo, at a very high price; *nimio*, at too high a price; *parvo*, at a low price; *minimo*, for a very low price; *nililo*, for nothing; are also found with words of buying, selling, and valuing, without a Substantive: as,

*Permagno decimas vendidisti*, *You farmed the dues (tenths) out at a very high rate.*—Cic.

*Non potest parvo res magna constare*, *A great thing cannot cost little.*—Sen.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the punishment to which a person is condemned is put in the Ablative, but more frequently in the Genitive: see § 280.

§ 317. Verbs and Adjectives signifying fullness or want govern an Ablative of the means or manner: as,

*Germania rivis fluminibusque abundat*, *Germany abounds in streams and rivers.*—Sen.

*Neptūnus ventis implevit vela secūdis*, *Neptune filled the sails with favourable winds.*—Virg.

*Voluptate virtus saepe caret*, *virtus* nunquam indiget, *Virtue is often without pleasure, never needs it.*—Sen.

*Cera referta notis*, *A wax tablet full of marks.*—Ov.

Obs. 1. Verbs of filling and want rarely govern the Genitive; but Adjectives more frequently govern the Genitive than the Ablative: see § 276. *Indigeo*, however, usually takes the Genitive: as, *aeris indigere*, to want money.

Obs. 2. The Verbs *afficere*, *instruere*, *ornare*, &c., come under this rule, and govern an Ablative of the thing: as,

*Praedit affecit populos suos*, *He has enriched his countrymen with booty.* Plaut.

Obs. 3. *Praeditus*, endowed with, also governs the Ablative: as, *Mens est praedita motu sempiterno*, *The mind is endowed with perpetual motion.*—Cic.

#### 4. Ablative of Quality.

§ 318. The Ablative of Quality is used in describing a Person or Thing. Like the *Genitive of Quality* (§ 274), it requires an Adjective to be in agreement with it: as,

*Caesar fuisse traditur excelsa statura, colore candido, terribus membris*, *Caesar is said to have been of tall stature, fair complexion, and well-formed limbs.*—Suet.

Obs. For the difference between the *Ablative of Quality* and the *Genitive of Quality*, see § 274, Obs. 1.

#### 5. Ablative of Comparison.

§ 319. The Ablative is used after Comparatives instead of *quam* with the Nominative, and also instead of *quam* with the Accusative of the subject in the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive: as,

*Nihil est otiosa senectute* (= *quam otiosa senectus*) *jucundius*, *Nothing is more delightful than an old age of retirement.*—Cic.

*Tullus Hostilius Romulo* (= *quam Romulus*) *fuit ferocior*, *T. Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus.*—Liv.

*Scimus solem multo majorem esse terrā* (*quam terram*), *We know that the sun is much greater than the earth.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative instead of *quam*, with the Object-Accusative, is rare in prose, when the Accusative is a Substantive, but frequent in poetry: as,

*Cur olivum sanguine viperino* (= *quam sanguinem viperinum*) *cautius vitat*, *Why does he avoid the olive-oil more cautiously than the viper's blood?*—Hor.

When the Object-Accusative is a Pronoun, the Ablative is frequently used instead of *quam*; and this is always the case with the Relative in negative clauses: as,

*Punicum bellum, quo nullum majus Romani gessere*, *The Punic war, than which the Romans carried on none greater.*—Liv.

Obs. 2. The omission of *quam* with the comparative of an adverb is rare in prose: as,

*Lacrima nil citius arescit*, *Nothing dries quicker than a tear.*—Cic.

Obs. 3. The Ablative is never used when two Predicates are compared: as, *Miltiades amicio* (fuit) *omnium libertati quam suae dominationi*, *Miltiades was more a friend to the freedom of all, than to his own sovereign power.*—Nep.

Obs. 4. The use of the Ablatives *spe*, *expectatione*, *opiniōe*, *aequo*, *justo*, *solito*, after the comparative, is peculiar, and must be explained by *quam est* or *erat*: as,

*Opiniōe omnium majorem cepi dolorem*, *I experienced greater grief than all thought I should* (lit. *greater than the opinion of all men*).—Cic.

§ 320. In like manner *dignus*, *worthy*, and *indignus*, *unworthy*, govern the Ablative: as,

*Virtus imitatione*, non *invidia*, *digna est*, *Virtue is deserving of imitation, not of envy.*—Cic.

*Quam multi luce indigni sunt*, *How many are unworthy of the light of day!*—Sen.

## 6. Ablative of Measure.

§ 321. The Ablative of Measure denotes *by how much* one thing is greater or less than another, and occurs in connexion with Comparative words. as,

*Turres dēnis pēdibus quam mūri altiores sunt, The towers are higher than the walls by ten feet.—Curt.*

*Q. Pompēius, biennio quam nos major, Quintus Pompeius, who was older than I (Cicero), by two years.—Cic.*

*Natura id multo artificiosius efficit, Nature effects that more ingeniously by far.—Cic.*

*Quo quisque est sollertior et ingēniosior, hoc docet laboriosius, The more (by what degree the more) clever and gifted a man is, with the more labour does he give lessons.—Cic.*

## 7. Ablative of Time.

§ 322. The answer to the question *When?* is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

*Plato ūno et octogēsimo anno scribens est mortuus, Plato died (while) writing in his eighty-first year.—Cic.*

*Extrēmā puēritiā miles fuit summi impēratoris, In the last part of his boyhood he was the soldier of a very great general.—Cic.*

*Solis occāsu At sunset.—Liv*

*Saturni stella triginta fere annis cursum suum conficit, The star of Saturn completes its orbit in about 30 years.—Cic*

§ 323. When the Substantive denoting Time is without an Attributive the Preposition is generally used. as,

*Aurigandi arte in adulescentiā fuit clārus, He (Nero) was distinguished in his youth for his skill in driving.—Suet*

*Ter in anno, Thrice in the year.—Cic.*

*Obs. The following Ablatives are exceptions: die, by day; nocte, by night (but also de die, de nocte); vespere s. vespēri, in the evening; tempore, in time, in season: which are used without a Preposition.*

§ 324. The answer to the question *Within what time?* is expressed by the Ablative alone, or by the Ablative with the Preposition in: as,

*Agamemnon vix decem annis unam cepit urbem, Agamemnon with difficulty in ten years took a single city.—Nep.*

*Senatus decrevit, ut legati Jugurthae in diebus proximis decem Italia decederent, The Senate decreed that the ambassadors of Jugurtha should depart from Italy within the next ten days.—Nep.*

§ 325. The answer to the question *How long before?* or *How long after?* is expressed by the Ablative with *ante* or

*post* after it. But the Accusative may be used with *ante* or *post* preceding it. If the Preposition is placed between the numeral and the substantive, either the Ablative or Accusative may be used. Thus all the following forms may be used with the same meaning:

Accusative.	Ablative.
ante or post tres annos	tribus annis ante or post.
" post tertium annum	tertio anno ante or post.
tres ante or post annos	tribus ante or post annis
tertium ante or post annum	tertio ante or post anno.

When *ante* or *post* stands last, it may govern a proposition depending upon it: as,

*Annis quingentis et decem post am conditam Livius fabulam edidit, Livius brought forward a drama 510 years after the founding of the city.—Cic.*

*Obs. 1. When ante or post is followed by quam and a verb, the following constructions may be used:*

- Tribus annis post, quam (or postquam) venerat.*
- Post tres annos quam venerat.*
- Tertio anno post, quam (or postquam) venerat.*
- Post annum tertium quam venerat*

*Or post may be omitted:*

*Tertio anno quam venerat.*

*All these expressions signify equally, Three years after he had come.*

*Obs. 2. Abhinc, ago, is used both with the Accusative and Ablative: as, Abhinc annos quatuordecim, Fourteen years ago.—Cic.*

*Abhinc triginta diebus, Thirty days ago.—Cic.*

## 8. Ablative of Place.

§ 326. The answer to the question *Where?* is put in the Ablative both without and with a Preposition.

§ 327. The construction of the names of Towns and small Islands, in answer to the question *Where?* is explained in § 257.

§ 328. The following Ablatives are used without a Preposition, in answer to the question *Where?* *dextrā, on the right hand; laevā, sinistrā, on the left hand; terrā mārīque, on sea and land; bello, in the field* (comp. § 258): as

*Intōnnit laevā, It thundered on the left hand.—Virg.*

*Terrā mārīque conquerere, To make search by sea and land.—Cic.*

§ 329. The following Substantives, *lōcus, terra, rēgio, via, iter*, are frequently used in the Ablative without a Preposition, when some Attributive is attached to them: as,

Athēnienses *lūco mōneo* castra fecerunt, *The Athenians formed their camp in a suitable spot.*—Nep.

Aurēliū viā profectus est, *He set out by the Aurelian way.*—Cic.

§ 330. Any Substantive, with the Adjective *tōtus*, may be put in the Ablative without a Preposition: as,

Quis *tōto mārī* locus tātus fuit, *What place was safe throughout all the sea?*—Cic.

Tōtā Asiā, *Throughout all Asia.*—Cic.

§ 331. In all cases besides the above a Preposition must be used: as,

In Italiā nullus exercitus (erat), *There was no army in Italy.*—Sall.

In hac solitūdīne cāreo omnium collōquio, *In this solitude I am without the society of anybody.*—Cic.

Obs. These restrictions are not observed by the Poets, who use the Ablative freely to denote place: as,

Sileisque agrisque rūsque corpōra foeda jacent, *O'er forest, field and highway the loathsome bodies lie.*—Ov.

### 9. Ablative Absolute.

§ 332. When a Substantive or Pronoun, together with a Participle or an Adjective, form a clause by themselves, and are not under the government of, or in agreement with any other word, they are put in the *Ablative Absolute*: as,

His rebus cognitis, Caesar ad nāves rēvertitur, *Having learnt these things (lit., these things having been learnt), Caesar returns to the fleet.*—Caes.

Pythāgorās Tarquīniū Sūperbo regnante in Italiā vēnit, *Pythagoras came into Italy in the reign of Tarquinius Superbus (lit. Tarquinius Superbus reigning).*—Cic.

Aliquid salvis legibus agere, *To do a thing without breaking the laws.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Ablative Absolute may often be explained as the Ablative of Time (§ 322), as in the 1st and 2nd of the above examples: sometimes as the Ablative of Manner (§ 311), as in the 3rd. It always denotes some condition or attendant circumstance of that which is described in the rest of the sentence as taking place.

Obs. 2. As there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs, this Participle in English must in Latin usually be changed into the Passive, and put in the Ablative Absolute agreeing with what was before its own object: as,

Caesar, expōsito exercitū, ad hostes contendit, *Caesar, having landed the army, hostens against the enemy.*—Caes.

§ 333. Sometimes a perfect participle passive is put in the Ablative Absolute, where the Substantive is represented by an entire clause: as,

Nondum comperto, in quam rēgionem vēnisset, *It not being yet ascertained into what quarter he had come.*—Liv.

Excepto quod non simul esses, cētera laetus, *This fact excepted that you are not with me, (I am) happy in all beside.*—Hor.

Obs. 1. This construction occurs most frequently in the case of the Ablatives audito, cognito, comperto, and the like.

Obs. 2. Tacitus even uses an Adjective in the same way: as,

Juxta pēriculōso, ficta seu vērā prēmēret, *It being alike hazardous whether he spoke what was false or true.*

§ 334. The Ablative Absolute is frequently used with one Substantive in Apposition to another without any participle, because the verb *sum* has no Present or Perfect Participle: as,

Nātus est Augustus, M. Tullio Cicerōne et Antōnio consūlibus, *Augustus was born when M. Tullius Cicero and Antonius were consuls.*—Suet.

Si se invito transire cōnarentur, *If they should attempt to cross against his will (lit., he being unwilling).*—Caes.

### CHAPTER XLII.—THE VOCATIVE.

§ 335. The Vocative Case indicates the object spoken to: as,

Recte te, Cyre, beatū fērunt, *With reason, Cyrus, do they proclaim thee happy.*—Cic.

Et tu, Brūte, *And thou too, Brutus!*

Obs. Hence the Pronouns of the Third Person, as *sui, hic, ille, iste, &c.*, with the Relative, can have no Vocative.

§ 336. The Vocative is often introduced by the Interjection *o*, especially in the Poets: as,

O lux Dardāniae, *O thou light of the land of Troy!*—Virg.

O decus impērii, *O thou glory of the empire!*—Lucan.

Obs. This use of the Interjection *o* must not be confounded with that explained in § 250: the Vocative is used only in *speaking to* or *invocation*.

§ 337. A Substantive or other word in Apposition with a Vocative sometimes stands in the Nominative: as,

Audi tu pōpulus Albānus, *Hear, O thou people of Alba!*—Liv.

Obs. Perhaps this apparent Nominative is to be regarded as an old form of the Vocative; for it is found even without Apposition: as,

Agēdum pontifex publicus pōpuli Rōmāni, praei verba, *Go to now, thou national pontiff of the people of Rome, repeat before me the form of words!*—Liv.

## CHAPTER XLIII.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 338. The ordinary rules for the construction of Adjectives are given under the Second Concord (§§ 223-227), and the several Cases of Substantives. The following are of a more special nature.

§ 339. A Masculine Adjective is often used without a Substantive to denote *Persons*; and a Neuter Adjective to denote *Things*: as,

Omnes omnia bona dicere, *All (men) say all kinds of good (things).*  
Ter.

Parvum parva decent, *Small (things) befit a small (man).*—Hor.

Obs. 1. But when the termination of the Adjective alone would not be a sufficient guide, the Substantive *homo* or *res* must be expressed: thus, *multorum hominum, of many persons; multarum rerum, of many things.* [*Multorum* alone might refer to either *persons* or *things.*]

Obs. 2. Masculine Adjectives are mostly used in this way in the Plural: as, *docti, learned men.* But in the singular *vir* or *homo* is usually added: as, *homo doctus, a learned man.*

§ 340. When two Adjectives are attributives to one Substantive they must be connected by a Conjunction. Thus whereas in English we say, "*Many good men,*" the Latin idiom requires *multi et boni viri*, etc.

Obs. 1. But if an Adjective and Substantive together form one single notion, an additional Adjective may be used without a Connective: as,  
*Navis oneraria maxima, A transport of the largest size.*—Cic  
*Statuae equestres inauratae, Gilded equestrian-statues.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. The above rule does not apply to numerals or to Adjective Pronouns: thus we may say, *decem boni viri, illi boni viri, omnes boni viri.*

§ 341. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives.*—Sometimes an Adjective is used in Latin where the English idiom requires a Substantive. This is the case with *summus*, *at the top, the top of*; *infimus* or *imus*, *at the bottom, the bottom of*; *medius*, *the middle*; *extrēmus*, *last, at the end of*; *primus*, *first, at the beginning of*; *reliquus*, *remaining, the remainder of*; *dimidiatus*, *halved, the half of*: as,

Ad imam quercum, *At the foot of an oak.*—Phaedr.

Unus dimidiatusque mensis, *One month and a half.*—Cic.

Extrēmā hieme, *At the end of winter.*—Cic.

Reliqua vita, *The rest of life.*—Cic.

Obs. But *reliquum* is also found as a Neuter Substantive governing the Genitive: as, *reliquum vitae (= reliqua vita), Liv.*

§ 342. The Neuter of an Adjective is often equivalent to an abstract Substantive. Thus, *aequum, the equitable*, is equivalent to *aequitas, equity*; *honestum, the honourable*, to *honestas, honour, virtue*; and the like: as,

Omni honesti justique disciplina, *The entire training which belongs to honour and justice.*—Quint.

In iure aut in aequo, *In justice or in equity.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. This is especially the case in such adverbial phrases as *ex aequo*, *in accordance with equity*; *ex (de) improvviso*, *unexpectedly*; etc.

Obs. 2. Adjectives in *is, e*, are rarely used in this way except in the Nominative and Accusative. Yet Horace has *miscere utile dulci, to mingle the useful with the agreeable* (A. P. 343); and Livy, *pōtor utilis quam honesti cura, the care for expediency took precedence of that of honour* (42, 47).

§ 343. *Adjectives equivalent to Adverbs.*—Adjectives are often used along with Verbs where the English idiom requires an Adverb. This occurs when the word may be regarded as describing the condition of the actor, rather than the manner of the action; also in the case of some Adjectives of time, place, or attitude: as,

Ego cum a me incitissimus dimisi, *I parted with him very unwillingly.*  
—Cic.

Plus hodie boni imprudens feci, quam sciens ante hunc diem unquam, *I have to-day done more good unwittingly, than I ever before did unwittingly.*—Ter.

The following Adjectives are some of those most frequently used in the above manner: *invitus, unwilling, unwillingly*; *laetus, joyful, joyfully*; *libens = libenter, gladly, with pleasure*; *sciens, knowing, knowingly*; *imprudens, unwitting, unwittingly*; *impertus, unskilled, unskilfully*: also, *matutinus, in the morning*; *vespertinus, in the evening*; *domesticus, at home*; *pronus, on one's face*; *supinus, on one's back*; *sublimis, aloft*.

Obs. Of the above *matutinus, vespertinus, domesticus* as = *mānē, vespērē, dōmī* are of rare occurrence.

§ 344. The neuter (accusative) singular is sometimes used adverbially; especially by the poets: as,

Dulce ridere, loqui, *Sweetly to smile, to speak.*—Hor.

Pectus turbidum laetatur, *(My) bosom feels a tumultuous joy.*—Hor.

Sometimes the neuter plural is used: as,

Acerbā tuens, *looking fiercely.*—Virg.

Obs. 1. This idiom is occasionally found in prose: as,  
*Falsum rēndens vultu, Wearing a counterfeit smile on his features.*—

os. 2. This use of the neuter accusative is to be explained on the principle of the cognate accusative (see § 280). Thus dulce ridēre (Gr. ἡδὺν γελάειν) is equivalent to dulcem risum ridere; turbidum laetari, to turbidam laetationem laetari, etc.

§ 345. Prior, primus, posterior, postrēmus, are used in agreement with a Substantive, where in English a relative clause with the verb *to be* is required: as,

Hannibal primus cum exercitu Alpes transiit, *Hannibal was the first who crossed the Alps with an army.*

Hispania postrēma omnium provinciārum perdomita est, *Spain was the last of all the provinces which was thoroughly subdued.*—Liv.

Obs. The use of prior, primus, and posterior, postrēmus, must be carefully distinguished from that of the corresponding adverbs prius, primum, etc. The Adjectives serve to compare a person with *some one else* (in point of time); the Adverbs, to denote the order of the Subject's own action: thus primus dixit means, *he was the first who spoke*; primum dixit, *he first spoke, and then, etc.*

### Comparatives.

§ 346. When two members of a comparison are united by *quam*, the second member is put in the same case as the first, when the verb or governing word belongs to both: as,

Neque habet [hērus meus] plus sapientiae quam lapis, *Nor has he [my master] any more sense than a stone (has).*—Pl.

Dūcet nobis cāriorem esse patriam quam nosmetipsos, *Our country ought to be dearer to us than ourselves.*—Cic.

§ 347. But in the first member of a comparison is governed by a word which does not belong to the second, the verb *sum* must be used with the latter, though in English the verb *to be* is frequently omitted. as,

Haec verba sunt Varronis, hōmīnis doctioris quam fuit Claudius, *These are the words of Varro, a more learned man than Claudius.*—Gell.

Verres argentum reddidit L. Cordio, hōmīni non grātiosiori, quam Cn. Calidius est, *Verres restored the silver to L. Cordius, a man not more influential than Cn. Calidius.*—Cic.

Obs. If the first member of the clause is in the Accusative, the second is frequently put in the same case by attraction: as,

Ego hōmīnem callidiorem vidi nēmīnem quam Phormiōnem (= quam Phormio est), *I have seen no man more cunning than Phormio.*—Ter.

Patrem tam placidum reddo quam ovem (= quam ovis est), *I make my father as quiet as a sheep.*—Ter.

§ 348. The Comparative frequently governs the Ablative, with the omission of *quam*. This is explained under § 319.

§ 349. Plus and amplius, more, and minus, less, are used with numerals and words of quantity, either with or without *quam*, as indeclinable words, and without influence upon the construction: as,

Non plus quam quattuor millia effugerunt (not effugit), *Not more than four thousand escaped.*—Liv.

Pictores antiqui non sunt usi plus (not pluribus) quam quattuor coloribus, *The ancient painters did not use more than four colours.*—Cic.

Minus duo millia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt, *Less than two thousand men escaped out of so great an army.*—Liv.

§ 350. When two Adjectives are compared together, magis is either used with the first Adjective, or both Adjectives are in the comparative degree: as,

Corpora magna magis quam firma, *Bodily frames rather big than strong.*—Liv.

Paulli contio fuit rērior quam grātior populo, *The speech of Paullus was more true than popular.*—Liv.

Obs. Tacitus departs from this construction, and uses the positive in the second member of the comparison, or even in both: as,

Clāris mājoribus quam rētustis, *Of a family more distinguished than old.*—Tac.

§ 351. The Comparative also denotes that the quality exists in a considerable or too high a degree: as,

Sēnecetus est naturā loquāciōr, *Old age is naturally somewhat talkative.*—Cic.

Voluptas, quum mājor est, omne animi lūmen exstinguit, *Pleasure, when it is too great, extinguishes all light of the mind.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Too great in proportion to something is translated by the Comparative and *quam pro*. as,

Proelium atrōcius quam pro nūmēro pugnantiū, *A fiercer battle than one might expect from the number of the combatants.*—Liv.

Obs. 2. The same notion in connexion with a Verb is expressed by the Comparative and *quam qui* or *quam ut*: as,

Mājor sum quam cui possit fortuna nocēre, *I am too great for fortune to be able to injure.*—Ov.

Damna mājōra sunt quam quae aestimāri possint, *The losses are too great to be able to be estimated.*—Liv.

§ 352. Atque and ac are sometimes used by the poets instead of *quam* after Comparatives: as,

Artius atque hēdēra, *More closely than ivy.*—Hor.

### Superlatives.

§ 353. To express the highest possible degree, the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs is used with *quam*, or in

the case of *maximus* with *quantus* also, either with or without *possum*: as,

*Jugurtha quam maximas potest copias armat, Jugurtha raises the largest force he can.*—Sall.

*Tanta est inter eos, quanta maxima potest esse morum studiorumque distantia, There is the greatest possible difference in character and in pursuits between them.*—Cic.

*Dicam quam brevissimè, I will speak as briefly as possible.*—Cic.

*Obs.* We also occasionally find *ut* instead of *quam* without any difference of meaning.

§ 354. The Superlative may be strengthened by the addition of:

1. *Unus* or *unus omnium*: as,

*P. Scævolum unum nostræ civitatis et ingenio et justitiâ præstantissimum audeo dicere, I venture to call P. Scævola by far the most distinguished man in our state both in ability and justice.*—Cic.

*Miltiades et antiquitate generis et gloriâ majorum unus omnium maximè florebat, Miltiades was distinguished above all others both by the antiquity of his family and the glory of his ancestors.*—Nep.

2. By *longè* or *multo*: as,

*Alcibiades omnium ætatis suæ multo formosissimus fuit, Alcibiades was by far the most handsome of all persons of his age.*—Nep.

§ 355. Comparison may also be made with *quam qui* and the Superlative: as,

*Tam sum mitis quam qui lenissimus, (i. e. est), I am as gentle as the gentlest man in the world.*—Cic.

*Tam sum amicus reipublicæ quam qui maximè, I am as much a friend to the commonwealth as any one in the world.*—Cic.

§ 356. “*All the best*,” “*all the wisest*,” and similar phrases are expressed by *quisque* with the Superlative: as,

*Sapientissimus quisque acquisitissimo animo moritur, All the wisest of men die with the most resignation.*—Cic.

*Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur, (All) the deepest rivers flow with the least noise.*—Curt.

*Obs.* A similar meaning may be expressed with the comparative; thus the former of the above sentences might be expressed,

*Quo (or ut) quisque est sapientior, ita æquiore animo moritur.*

## CHAPTER XLIV.—PRONOUNS.

### 1. The Personal Pronouns. (See § 75.)

§ 357. The Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of personal Verbs. But they must be expressed where emphasis is required: as,

*Ego te laudavi, tu me culpasti, I have praised thee, thou hast blamed me.*

*Nos, nos consules desumus, It is we, we the consuls, who are wanting (in our duty).*—Cic.

§ 358. The speaker often uses the 1st Person Plural when he does not wish to intrude his own personality: as,

*Sex libros de republicâ scripsimus, We wrote six books upon the commonwealth.*—Cic.

*Reliquum est ut de felicitate Pompeii pauca dicamus, It remains for us to say a few words respecting the good fortune of Pompey.*—Cic.

*Obs.* *Noster* is used in the same way instead of *meus*.

§ 359. The plural forms *nostrum*, *vestrum*, must be carefully distinguished from *nostri*, *vestri*. The former alone (being true Plurals) are used as Partitive Genitives, or in connexion with *omnium*. Thus *one of us* is *unus nostrum* (not *unus nostri*); *the wish of you all*, *omnium vestrum* (not *vestri*) *voluntas*.—Cic.

*Obs.* *Nostri*, *vestri*, are not true Plurals, but the Genitives Singular Neuter of *noster*, *vester*, used abstractly. Thus, *memor nostri* = *mindful of our interest* (i. e. of us.)

### 2. Reflective Pronouns of the Third Person.

(See § 76.)

§ 360. The Reflective Pronoun *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, with the Possessive Pronoun *suus*, refer to the subject or Nominative case of the sentence: as,

*Nicias tuâ sui memoriâ delectatur, Nicias is delighted with your recollection of him.*—Cic.

*Bestiis homines uti possunt ad suam utilitatem, Men can make use of animals for their own advantage.*—Cic.

*Obs.* These pronouns also refer to a Noun which is not the Nominative case, provided it be the real subject: as,

*Jam inde ab initio Faustulo spes fuerat, regiam stirpem apud se educâri, Faustulus had from the very beginning entertained the hope that the children brought up with him were of royal origin.*—Liv.

*A Caesare invitior, sibi ut sim legatus, I am invited by Caesar to become his lieutenant.*—Cic.



§ 361. The Possessive Pronoun *sui* in principal sentences sometimes refers to the Object or to another case, when there is a close connexion between the two words: as,

*Hannibālem sui cives ē civitate ejecerunt, His own citizens drove Hannibal out of the state.*—Cic.

*Catīlina admōnēbat alium egestātis, alium cupiditātis suae, Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his (ruling) passion.*—Cic.

*Sua cuiusque animantis natūra est, Every living creature has its own nature.*—Cic.

§ 362. In subordinate propositions, *sui*, *sibi*, *se*, and *suis* may refer, not only to the subject of that proposition, but also to the subject of the principal proposition, especially when that proposition expresses the thoughts or wishes of the previous subject: as,

*(Proculus) dixisse fertur, a se visum esse Rōmūlum, Proculus is reported to have said that Romulus had been seen by him.*—Cic.

*Ariovistus respondet, si quid Caesar a se vēlit, illum ad se vēnire oportere, Ariovistus replies that, if Caesar wishes anything of him (Ariovistus), he ought to come to him (Ariovistus).*—Caes.

*Obs. Inter se* is used for *se inter se*: as,

*Vēri amīci inter se diligēt, True friends will love one another.*—Cic.

### 3. Possessive Pronouns. (See § 77.)

§ 363. The Possessive Pronouns are frequently omitted in Latin, when they are not emphatic, and can be easily supplied from the context; as,

*Apud matrem recte est, All is well with (your) mother.*—Cic. ad Att.

*De fratre confido ita esse ut semper volui, As for (my) brother, I feel confident that all is as I desired.*—ib.

*Obs. 1.* The Possessive Pronouns often denote something proper or favourable to: as, suo loco, suo tempore, at a favourable place or time.

*Obs. 2.* On the use of the Possessive Pronoun instead of the Genitive of the Personal Pronoun, as, nulla tua epistola, no letter from you, see § 267.

### 4. Demonstrative Pronouns. (See § 78.)

§ 364. *Hic* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the First Person, and denotes *this near me*. Hence it may frequently be translated by *present* or some similar word: as,

*Opus vel in hac magnificentia urbis conspiciendum, A work worthy of being seen even in the present magnificence of the city*—Liv.

*Qui haec vituperari volunt, Those who wish the present state of things to be blamed.*—Cic.

*Sex. Stōla, iudex hic noster, Sextus Stola, who sits here as our judge.*—Cic.

§ 365. *Ille* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Third Person, and denotes *that near him or yonder*. Hence it is used to denote something at a distance, which is well known or celebrated: as,

*Ex suo regno sic Mithridates profugit, ut ex eodem Ponto Medea illa quondam profugisse dicitur, Mithridates fled from his kingdom just as the famous Medea fled once upon a time from the same Pontus.*—Cic.

§ 366. When *hic* and *ille* are used together, referring to two persons or things mentioned before, *hic* refers to the nearer, *ille* to the more remote: as,

*Caesar beneficiis atque munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitae Cato. Ille mansuetudine et misericordia clarus factus, huic severitas dignitatem addiderat, Caesar was deemed great for his generosity and munificence, Cato for the spotlessness of his life. The former had gained renown by his gentleness and clemency: on the latter, severity had conferred distinction.*—Sall.

*Obs. Ille* sometimes refers to that which is nearest in the mind of the speaker, though more distant in the order of words: as,

*Cave Catōni antepōnas ne (Socrātem) quidem . . . hujus enim facta, illius dicta laudantur, Beware of preferring to Cato even Socrates, for while it is the deeds of the former (Cato), it is the words of the latter (Socrates) that receive praise.*—Cic.

*Melior tutiorque est certa pax quam sperata victoria, haec (pax) in tua, illa in deorum potestate est, Sure peace is better and safer than anticipated victory: the former is in your own control, the latter in the control of the gods.*—Liv.

§ 367. *Hic* and *ille* are both used to denote *the following*, or something to be mentioned; but *hic* refers to something present, *ille* to something new or different from the previous subject: as,

*Unum hoc definiō, esse necessitatem virtutis, This one thing I would lay down, that there exists a necessity for virtue.*—Cic.

*Illud in his rebus vereor, ne forte rearis . . . , There is one thing (however) I fear, in connexion with these matters (namely) that you should perchance suppose, &c.*—Lucr.

§ 368. *Iste* is the Demonstrative Pronoun of the Second Person, and denotes *that near you or that of yours*: as,

*De istis rebus exspecto tuas litteras, Concerning those things (where you are) I am expecting your letters.*—Cic.

*Ista oratio, That speech (which you make).*—Cic.

§ 369. *Iste* often has a contemptuous meaning, especially in addressing an opponent: as,

*Iste vir optimus, That excellent man of yours (ironically).*—Cic.

*Obs.* The distinction in meaning between *hic*, *ille*, *iste* is found in the adverbs derived from them.



## 5. Determinative Pronouns. (See § 79.)

§ 370. **Is** refers to some person or thing determined by the context: as,

*P. Asinius Asellus mortuus est C. Sacerdote praetore. Is quum haberet unicam filiam, eam bonis suis heredem instituit. P. Asinius Asellus died in the praetorship of C. Sacerdos. Since he had an only daughter, he appointed her heir to his property.—Cic.*

§ 371. The Accusative and Dative of **is** are frequently omitted, when they would be in the same case and refer to the same object as in the previous clause: as,

*Fratrem tuum in ceteris rebus laudo: in hac una reprehendere cogor. In other respects I commend your brother: in this alone I am compelled to censure (him).—*

*Non obsistam fratris tui voluntati; favere non potero, I will not stand in the way of your brother's desire: further (it) I cannot.—*

*Obs.* Sometimes the Accusative of **is** is omitted, even when it refers to a different case: as,

*Libri, de quibus scribis, mei non sunt; sumpsit a fratre meo, The books about which you write are not mine; I borrowed (them) from my brother.—*

§ 372. **Is** or its strengthened form **idem** is the regular attendant of the Relative *qui*: as,

*Bestiae in quo loco natae sunt ex eo se non commovent, Beasts do not move from the region in which they were born.—Cic.*

*Eadem utilitatis quae honestatis est regula, The rule of expediency is the same as that of honour.—Cic.*

§ 373. **Is** and **idem** are emphatic, if placed after the relative clause: as,

*Quod virtute effici debet, id tentatur pecunia, What ought to be done by worth, the same is attempted by means of money.—Cic.*

*Qui multa loquuntur idem multa mentiuntur, Those who talk much, (the same) tell many falsehoods.*

§ 374. **Et is** (isque, atque is, et is quidem) or **nec is**, make the preceding substantive more emphatic, and define it more particularly: as,

*Habet homo memoriam et eam infinitam rerum innumerablem, The man has a recollection, and that an unbounded one, of innumerable subjects.—Cic.*

*Epicurus una in domo et ea quidem angusta tenuit amicorum græges, Epicurus in one house, and that a small one, entertained troops of friends.—Cic.*

*Uno atque eo facili proelio cæsi hostes, The enemy were cut to pieces in a single engagement, and that a slight one.—Liv.*

§ 375. **Idem** may often be translated by *also* or *on the other hand*, when it denotes similarity or opposition in reference to a person or thing already mentioned: as,

*Thorius utebatur eo cibo, qui et suavissimus esset et idem facillimus ad concoquendum, Thorius used such food as was at once most palatable and also easiest of digestion.—Cic.*

*Nihil utile, quod non idem honestum, (There is) nothing expedient which is not also honourable.—Cic.*

*Inventi multi sunt, qui vitam profundere pro patriâ parati essent, idem gloriæ jacturam ne minimam quidem facere vellent, There have been found many who were prepared to pour out life for their country, and at the same time would not make the very least sacrifice of glory (on her behalf).—Cic.*

§ 376. **Ipse** gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and may often be translated by *very*, *just*, or *exactly*: as,

*Quæram ex ipsâ, I will enquire of the woman herself.—Cic.*

*Accipio quod dant; mihi enim satis est, ipsis non satis, I accept what they give: for it is plenty for me though not for themselves.—Cic.*

*Ibi mihi Tullia mea fuit praesto, natali suo ipso die, There met me my (daughter) Tullia: just on her very birthday.—Cic.*

*Crassus triennio ipso minor erat quam Antonius, Crassus was younger than Antony by exactly three years.—Cic.*

§ 377. **Ipse**, when joined to a personal pronoun, agrees with the Subject or the Object, according as either one or the other is more emphatic. Thus “*me ipse laudo*,” *I (but not another person) praise myself*; but “*me ipsum laudo*,” *I praise myself (but not another person)*: as,

*Non ego medicinâ [i. e. ut alii me consolentur]; me ipse consolor, I do not require any medicine; I comfort myself.—Cic.*

*Cato se ipse interfecit, Cato slew himself [i. e. others did not slay him].*

*Fratrem suum dein seipsum interfecit, He slew his brother and afterwards himself.—Tac.*

## 6. Relative and Correlative Pronouns. (See § 80.)

§ 378. The chief rules for the agreement of the Relative and its antecedent are given in §§ 228–230.

§ 379. *Correlation*.—The following is a list of the principal Relative Pronouns, with their respective correlatives or regular antecedents, and their corresponding Adverbs:

RELATIVES.	CORRELATIVES.
qui	is, idem
quâlis	tâlis
quantus	tantus
quot (indecl.)	tot (indecl.)

## ADVERBS.

ut	ita
quāliter	tāliter (rare)
quantōpère	tantōpère
quōties (-ens)	tōties (-ens)

Quāles . . . principes, tāles . . . cives, *Like rulers, like people.*—Cic.

Tantas spes quantas nunc habet, non haberet, *He would not be in possession of such wealth as he now possesses.*—Cic.

Quōtiescunque dico, tōties mihi videor in iudicium vēire, *As often as I speak, so often do I seem to stand my trial.*—Cic

Obs. 1. For a complete list of the Relative Adjectives, see § 83, and of the Relative Adverbs, § 133.

Obs. 2. After *talis, tantus, tot* and the corresponding Adverbs, the Relatives *qualis, quantus*, etc., are often left to be understood: as,

Queso tam angustam talis vir (sc. qualis tu es) pōnis dōmum, *Pryther, being such a man (as thou art), buildest thou so small a house?*—Phaedr.

Conservāre urbes tantas atque tales (sc. quales eae sunt), *To preserve cities so great and so remarkable (as those).*—Cic.

Obs. 3. It must not be supposed that the Relative *qui* is regularly preceded by *is* or *idem*: but these pronouns are to be used when such a determinative antecedent is necessary, and not *hic, ille, or iste*. When the last-named Pronouns occur as Antecedents, they retain their proper demonstrative force: as,

Ille fulgor qui dicitur Jōvis, *Yonder splendour which is called (that of) Jupiter.*—Cic.

§ 380. *Special constructions of the Relative.*—Instead of the full construction is . . . *qui*, the Relative is often made to agree, as if attributively, with the Substantive to be defined: as,

Quae cāpūtātēs a natūrā prōficiuntur, facīle expleantur sine ulla injuriā, *Such (= eae cupiditates quae) passions as proceed from nature, are easily gratified without any wrong-doing.*—Cic.

(So Horace, Sat. I. 1, *init.*)

Obs. Virgil's *urbem* quam statuo vestra est (Aen. I. 573), for *urbis* quam, &c., is an irregular extension of this usage.

§ 381. When in English a Relative sentence defines and limits the extent of a Superlative in agreement with the antecedent, the Superlative is in Latin inserted in the Relative clause: as,

Themistocles noctu de servis suis [cum] quem habuit fidēlissimum, ad Xerxem misit, *Themistocles sent the most faithful slave whom he possessed, by night to Xerxes.*—Nep.

§ 382. The Relative Adjectives *quālis, quantus*, are capable of being governed (like the simple Relative) by a Verb Substantive or Adjective in their own clause: as,

Talis es quālem to semper putāvi, *You are the like of what I have always thought you.*

Tanti erant labōres quantos nunquam spēraverant, *Their hardships were greater than they had ever anticipated.*

Obs. *Talis, tantus* are often followed by the Subjunctive with *ut*.

## 7. Indefinitive Pronouns. (See § 82.)

§ 383. *Aliquis* is more emphatic than *quis*. Hence *āliquis* stands by itself, while *quis* is an enclitic, used with relative clauses and after the conjunctions *quum, si, nisi, ne* and *num*: as,

Illis prōmissis standum non est, quae coactus quis mētū prōmiserit, *One is not bound by those promises which one has made under compulsion of fear.*—Cic.

Divitiāens Caesārem obsecravit, ne quid grāvius in frātre statuēret, *Divitiāens besought Caesar, not to resolve on anything too severe against his brother.*—Caes.

§ 384. *Quispiam* is used like *āliquis*, but with less emphasis: as,

Forſitan āliquis āliquando ejusmōdi quidpiam fecerit, *Perhaps some one may have at some time done something of the like.*—Cic.

§ 385. *Quidam*, a certain one, denotes a person or thing of which no further definition is considered necessary or desirable: as,

Quidam ex advōcātis intelligēre se dixit, non id āgi, ut vērū invēnirēt, *One of the assistant counsel said he could see the object aimed at was not the discovery of truth.*—Cic.

Hābitant hic quaedam mūllecūlae, *There dwell here certain young women.*—Ter.

Obs. *Quidam* and *quāsi quidam* are often used to soften an expression: as,

Ex tuis littēris cognōvi praepestēram quādam festinātiōnem tuam, *I learnt from your letters your ill-timed haste—so to call it.*—Cic.

Non sunt isti audiendi, qui virtūtem dūram et quāsi ferream quādam volunt, *Four school are not to be heeded who want a hard and, so to speak, iron virtue.*—Cic.

§ 386. The substantive *quisquam* and the adjective *ullus*, any one whatever, are used in negative propositions, and in questions with the force of a negation, and with *sine*: as,

Justitia nunquam nocet cuiquam, qui eam habet, *Justice never harms any one who possesses it.*—Cic.

Sine sociis nemo quidquam tāle cōnātur, *No one attempts anything of the sort without associates.*—Cic.

Sine virtute neque amicitiam neque ullam rem expetendam consequi possumus. *Without virtue we cannot attain either to friendship or to any desirable object.*—Cic.

Quid est, quod quisquam dignum Pompēio afferre possit? *What is there that any one can advance worthy of Pompey?*—Cic.

Obs. In Plautus and Terence *omnis* is sometimes used, instead of *ullus*, with *sine*: as,

Sine omni periculo, *Without any danger.*—Ter.

§ 387. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are also used with emphasis after comparatives and conditional and relative propositions: as,

Tētrior hic tyrannus Syracūsānus fuit quam *quisquam* sup̄eriorum. *This tyrant of Syracuse was more bloodthirsty than any one of his predecessors.*—Cic.

Si tempus est ultimum jure homines necandi, certē illud est justum, quum vi vis illata defenditur. *If there be any time for justly putting men to death, certainly that is the just time when violence offered is repelled by violence.*—Cic.

Quamdiu *quisquam* erit, qui te defendere audeat, viues, *As long as there shall be a single man who will venture to defend you, you shall live.*—Cic.

Obs. The two rules above mentioned apply also to *unquam* and *usquam*: as,

Bellum maximē mēmōrābile omnium, quae *unquam* gesta sunt, *The most memorable of all wars that have ever been waged.*—Liv.

§ 388. *Quisque* denotes *each one by himself* (distributively), and in principal sentences is always placed after *se* and *suus*: as,

Sibi *quisque* maximē consūlit, *Everybody consults his own interests above all.*—Cic.

Suae quemque fortunae maximē poenitet, *Everybody has most fault to find with his own fortune.*—Cic.

Obs. In relative sentences *quisque* stands immediately after the relative, as an enclitic, and consequently precedes *se* and *suus*: as,

Quam *quisque* nōrit artem, in hac se exerceat, *Let each practise himself in the art which he is acquainted with.*—Cic.

§ 389. *Quisque* is also used with the Comparative and Superlative. See examples under § 356.

§ 390. *Alius*, when repeated, signifies *one . . . another*; *alter*, when repeated, signifies *the one . . . the other* (being used of only two persons or things): as,

Prōferēbant alii purpuram, tus alii, gemmas alii, *They brought forward some purple, others incense, others precious stones.*—Cic.

Alter exercitum perdidit, alter vendidit, *The one has lost an army, the other sold one.*—Cic.

## CHAPTER XLV.—THE VERB: INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 391. The Indicative Mood is used,

A. To state a proposition; or, Predicatively.

B. To ask a question; or, Interrogatively.

Obs. On the use of the Indicative Mood in Hypothetical sentences, see § 424.

### A. THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED PREDICATIVELY.

§ 392. *Present Tense.*—(1). The Present Tense is used both of that which is now taking place, and of that which is generally true: as,

Dextrā laevāque duo mōria claudunt (nos), *On the right and on the left two seas shut us in.*—Liv. (Hannibal to his soldiers.)

Vōluptas sensibus nostris blanditur, *Pleasure wins upon our senses.*—Cic.

§ 393. The Present Tense is often used (for a past) in narrative for the sake of greater vividness, and is hence called the *Historical Present*: as,

Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus nuntios mittit, *While these events are going on in these parts, Cassivellaunus sends messengers.*—Caes.

Obs. 1. This mode of speech, in English found only in quasi-Dramatic passages, is in Latin very frequent.

Obs. 2. The Present is almost always used with *dum*, though the rest of the sentence may be in a Past tense: as,

Dum haec parantur, Saguntum jam oppugnabatur, *While these preparations were (Lit., are) making, Saguntum was already being assaulted.*—Liv.

But when *dum* signifies *as long as*, it may take a Past or Future: as, *Hoc feci dum licuit, I did this as long as I was permitted.*—Cic.

§ 394. *Past-Imperfect Tense.*—The Past-Imperfect Tense is used of that which was going on at the time spoken of: as,

Anus subtemen nēbat: praeterea una ancillula erat: ea texebat, *An old woman was spinning a woof; there was only a little maid besides: the girl (herself) was weaving.*—Ter.

§ 395. The Past-Imperfect is often used of what *was wont* to be done: as,

Archytas nullam capitaliorem pestem quam voluptatem corporis dicebat a natura datam, *Archytas used to say that no more fatal scourge had been brought upon men by the gods than bodily pleasure.*—Cic.

Ut Rōmæ consules, sic Carthāgine quōtannis annui bīni rēges creābantur, As at Rome two consuls, so at Carthage two kings were annually appointed.—Nep.

§ 396. The Past-Imperfect is also used to signify that something was attempted to be done: as,

Cato pro lege quae abrogābatur ita dissēruit, Cato thus spoke in defence of the law which it was purposed to abrogate.—Liv.

Gladium in pectus defērebat, ni... &c., He was just plunging his sword into his bosom (and would have done so) had not, &c.—Tac.

Antiochus filiam suam in matrimōnium mihi dābat, Antiochus offered to give me his daughter in marriage.—Liv.

§ 397. The Past-Imperfect of the Verb *sum* is sometimes used in the sense of the Past-Indefinite or Aorist: as,

Crimen nullum erat; res iudicata: Verres nummos accēperat, There was no accusation; the matter was already adjudged; Verres had received the cash.—Cic.

Homo erat Siculus, The man was a Sicilian.—Cic.

Classis communis Graeciae, in qua dācentae erant Athēniensium, The combined fleet of Greece, in which 200 ships belonged to the Athenians.—Nep.

Obs. 1. But the Perfect or Past-Indefinite is preferred when a thing is simply spoken of as an historical fact, not viewed as continuing: as,

Pater ejus Neocles gēnērōsus fuit, His father Neocles was of noble birth.—Nep.

Obs. 2. The same remarks apply to the Past-Imperf. of *possum*.

§ 398. The Past-Imperfect is often used in epistolary correspondence, of that which is present to the writer, but will appear as past to the reader, of the letter (compare § 404): as,

Ita erant omnia quae isthinc afferebantur incerta, ut quid ad te scriberem non occurreret, All the news that is brought from your quarter is so uncertain, that I cannot tell what to write.—Cic. Ep.

Obs. But the Present is quite as frequent, and is always used when a thing is stated generally and without reference to the precise time of writing: as,

Nos hic vālemus recte, I am enjoying good health here.—Cic. Ep.

Sed stāgitat tabellarius, vālebis igitur, But the postman is pressing, so good-bye.—Cic. Ep.

Spero homines intellectūros, quanto sit omnibus odio crudelitas, I hope people will understand how odious cruelty is to every one.—Cic. Ep.

§ 399. Future Tense.—The Future Tense is used of that which is to take place in time to come: as,

Cras ingens iterābimus aequor, To-morrow we shall again be traversing the boundless ocean.—Hor.

Obs. The Future is also used with the force of an Imperative: see § 420.

Obs. 2.

§ 400. Perfect Tense.—This Tense is used both as a Present-Perfect and Past-Indefinite Tense (Aorist). Thus *fecit* is either *I have done* or *I did*. The context enables us to tell in which sense it is used: as,

Nemo parum diu vixit qui virtutis perfunctus est munere, No one has lived (Pres.-Perf.) too short a time who has fully discharged the part of virtue.—Cic.

Appius caecus multos annos fuit (Past-Indef.), Appius was blind for many years.—Cic.

§ 401. The Perfect Tense is used after *postquam*, after that; ut primum, simul atque (ac), as soon as; ut, ubi, when; where in English we often use the Past-Perfect: as.

Pelopidas non dubitavit, simul ac conspexit hostem, conflagrare, Pelopidas did not hesitate, as soon as ever he saw (had seen) the enemy, to engage.—Nep.

Ubi de Caesaris adventu Helvetii certiōres facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, No sooner had the Helvetii got information of Caesar's arrival than they sent ambassadors to him.—Caes.

Ut Hostius cecidit, confestim Rōmāna inclinatur aëcis, As soon as Hostius fell (had fallen), the Roman line immediately gave way.—Liv.

Obs. 1. But *postquam* takes a Past-Perfect when a precise time is specified: as, Hannibal anno tertio postquam domo profugerat, in Africam venit, Hannibal came into Africa three years after he had fled from home.—Nep.

Obs. 2. But *quum*, when, usually takes the Subjunctive: v. § 483.

§ 402. Past-Perfect Tense.—The Past-Perfect Tense indicates that something had taken place at the time spoken of: as,

Prōgēniem Trōjano a sanguine dūci audierat, She had heard that a race was being derived from Trojan blood.—Virg.

§ 403. The Past-Perfect Indicative is sometimes used by the Poets for the Past-Perfect Subjunctive, for the sake of greater vividness: as,

Me truncus illapsus cerebro,

Sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum

Dextra levasset, Me a tree-trunk upon my brains descending had else dispatched, had not Faunus, with his right hand, lightened the blow.—Hor. (This is probably a Greek idiom: the Past-Perfect being equivalent to a Past Tense Indic. with *εἴ*.)

§ 404. The Past-Perfect is also, like the Past-Imperfect, sometimes used in epistolary correspondence, in order to accommodate the time to the position of the reader rather than of the writer: as,

Nihil habēbam quod scribērem, neque enim quicquam nūvi audieram, *I have nothing to write, for I have heard no news.*—Cic. Ep.

*Obs.* But this is only allowable when the reference is expressly to the time when the letter was being written. See § 398.

§ 405. *Future-Perfect Tense.*—The Future-Perfect Tense indicates that something will have taken place by the time spoken of: as,

Rōmam quum vēnēro, quae perspezēro, scribam ad te, *When I (shall) have got to Rome, I will write to you what I (shall) have seen.*—Cic.

Dum tu haec lēges, ego illum fortasse convēnēro, *While you will be perusing this, I shall perhaps have had an interview with him.*—Cic

§ 406. Sometimes the Future-Perfect is used to indicate that a thing will be finished and gone immediately: as,

Dum loquimur, fugerit invīda aetas, *E'en while we speak, jealous time is fled.* (Lit., will have fled.)—Hor.

§ 407. Both the Future-Perfect and the simple Future are sometimes used in compound sentences where in English the sign of future time is not expressed: as,

Hoc, dum erimus in terris, erit caelesti vitae simile, *This, while we are on earth, will be like the life of the gods.*—Cic.

Nātūram si sequemur dūcem, nunquam aberrābimus, *If we follow nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.*—Cic.

De Carthagine vēreri non ante desinam, quam illam excisam esse cognōcēro, *I shall not cease to have fears about Carthage, till I learn she has been utterly destroyed.*—Cic.

*Obs.* But the future sense is sure to be expressed in one of the clauses, as in the above examples.

## B. THE INDICATIVE MOOD USED INTERROGATIVELY.

### 1. Single Direct Question.

§ 408. The Indicative Mood is used with Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs in asking *Direct Questions*: as,

Quousque tandem, Cātīlina, abūtēre patiētiā nostrā, *How far, I pray thee, Catiline, wilt thou abuse our forbearance?*—Cic.

Ut vālet? ut mēmīnit nostri? *How does he? how does he think of me?*—Hor.

Quōta hōra est? *What o'clock is it?*—Hor.

Thrax est Gallina Syro par? *Is the Thracian Gallina a match for Syrus?*—Hor.

§ 409. In addition to the Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs, the following particles are used to indicate a question:—*nē* (enclitic), *num*; *utrum* and *an*. The latter two are used only in asking *Double questions*; i. e., questions with two (or more) alternatives.

§ 410. *The Interrogative Particle -nē*—The Particle *nē* is an enclitic, being always joined to some other word. It is used in asking a simple, straightforward question: as,

Tarquinius rex interrōgāvit: Estisne vos lēgātī orātōresque missi a pōpulo Collātino? *Samus—King Tarquinius asked: are ye ambassadors and spokesmen sent from the people of Collatia?* We are.—Liv.

Daturne illa hōdie Pamphilo nuptum, *Is she to be given to Pamphilus in marriage to-day?*—Ter.

*Obs.* *Nē* is always joined to the first word in the interrogative sentence, except when united with non, as *nonne* (see next sect.).

§ 411. *Nonne*.—In questions put with a negative, such as, *Is it not so? Was it not so?* where the answer *Yes* is evidently expected, the enclitic is always joined with the negative; thus, *nonne*: as,

Cānis nonne similis lupo (est), *Is not the dog like a wolf?*—Cic.

Nonne emōri per virtutem praestat, *Is it not better with valour to die outright?*—Sall.

§ 412. *The Interrogative Particle num*.—The Particle *num* indicates that the answer *No* is taken for granted. It always begins its sentence: as,

Num negare audes, *Do you dare deny it?*—Cic.

Num facti Pamphilum piget, *Pamphilus isn't sorry for what he has done, is he?*—Ter.

Num Viscellinum amīci regnum appetentem debuērunt adjūvare, *Think you the friends of Viscellinus ought to have assisted him in aiming at regal power?*—Cic.

*Obs.* In *Indirect questions* *num* ceases to have a negative force: v. § 485.

§ 413. *Ecquid* and *Numquid*.—These words are compounded of the interrogative and indefinite pronoun *quid*; but they are frequently used as mere interrogative particles equivalent to *ne* and *num* respectively: as,

Quid est, Cātīlina? *Ecquid* attendis? *Ecquid* animadvertis hōrum silentium? *What means it, Catiline? Mark you it? Observe you the silence of these men?*—Cic.

Numquid duas habētis patrā., *are ye forsooth two native countries?*—Cic.

### 2. Double Direct Questions.

§ 414. The Particles used in asking *Double direct questions* are *utrum*, *an*, *-nē*. *Utrum* is used only in the first alternative, and *an* only in the second, while *-nē* is used in both: as,

*Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, Is that your fault or ours?*—Cic.

*Isne est quem quaero annon, Is that the man I am seeking, or not?*—Ter.

*Sunt haec tua verba neene, Are these your words or no?*—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Neene* and *annon*, "or no," are written as single words.

Obs. 2. *Nē* is rare in the second alternative; unless that alternative is stated in the form "or no," *neene*.

Obs. 3. The first particle (*utrum*) is often omitted, as in the last of the above examples.

§ 415. *An* is sometimes apparently used in single questions; but when so, it always has reference to an alternative implied though not expressed: as,

*Quid ais? An Pamphilus vēnit? What say you? Or is Pamphilus really come?*—Ter.

*Quid dicis? An bello fugitivorum Siciliam virtute tuā liberātam? What say you? Or is it that Sicily was by your valour delivered from the fugitive-slave war?*—Cic.

Obs. In the above examples the former alternative is involved in the first question, "Have you anything else to say, or will you say that, &c."

§ 416. The following table exhibits the sequence of the Interrogative Particles in questions presenting more than one alternative:—

First Alternative	Second, Third, etc.	
<i>utrum,</i>	<i>an,</i>	<i>an</i>
<i>-nē,</i>	<i>an,</i>	<i>an</i>
(omitted)	<i>an,</i>	<i>an</i>
(omitted)	<i>-ne</i>	

Obs. 1. Concerning Indirect Questions, see § 434.

Obs. 2. When *num* (*numquid*) is used in the former part of the question it retains its negative force: as,

*Numquid vos duas habetis patrias, an est illa una patria communis, Have you perchance two native-countries? or is the one country common also to you?*—Cic.

## CHAPTER XLVI.—THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 417. *Present Tense*.—The Present Imperative is used in giving orders, directions, or advice, with reference to the immediate Present, or without reference to any definite time; also in salutations: as,

*Dissolve frigus, ligna super fœco large rēpōnens, Throw away the cold; piling the logs freely upon the fire.*—Hor.

*Fessae dāte certa cārīnae, Crown with chaplets my tired bark.*—Ov.  
*Carpe diem, Seize the (present) day.*—Hor.

*Salve! Ave! Hail to thee, farewell!*—Cic.

Obs. Not in prohibitions is expressed by *ne* (never non); and in double sentences by *ne . . . nēve* (neu); *nēve . . . nēve*: as,

*Ne erūcia te, obsecro, Do not torment yourself, I pray!*—Ter.

(Compare following sections.)

§ 418. *Future Tense*.—The Future Imperative is used in commands and exhortations extending to the future as well as the present; hence it is always employed in laws: as,

*Hōmīnem mortuum in urbe ne sēpēlito, nēve ūrito, Thou shalt not bury or burn a corpse within the city.*—XII. Tables.

*Rēgio impērio duo sūnto, Let there be two persons with regal power.*—Cic.

*Non sātis est pulchra esse poemāta, dulcīa sūnto, It is not enough for poems to have beauty; they must be sweet.*—Hor.

*Hunc tu, Rōmāne, cārēto, Against such an one, man of Rome, thou wilt have to be on thy guard.*—Hor.

§ 419. The Subjunctive Present is sometimes used (not in laws) instead of the Imperative, especially in the Third Person: as

*Aut bibat aut ābeat, Let him either drink or begone.*—Cic.

*Stātus, incessus, vultus, ōcūli, tēneant dēcōrum, Let the attitude, gait, features, and eyes maintain propriety.*—Cic.

*Injūrias fortunae, quas ferre nēqueas, dēfūgiendo rēlinquas, The injuries of fortune which you cannot bear, escape by flying from.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The Second Person of the Subjunctive Mood is properly used only in general propositions, when it may be translated by "one." as,

*Emas, non quod ōpus est, sed quod nēcesse est, One should buy not what is necessary, but what one wants.*—Sen.

Obs. 2. The Subjunctive when thus used is usually less authoritative than the Imperative.

§ 420. A prohibition may also be expressed by *nē* (also *nēmo*, *nīhil*) with the Subjunctive: generally with the Third Person of the Present, and the Second Person of the Perfect Tense: as,

*Ne quid rēi tibi sit cum Sāguntinis, Meddle not with the Saguntines.*—Cic.

*Ne transiēris Ibērum, Cross not the Ebro.*—Liv.

*Nihil ignōvēris, Show no charity for anything!*—Cic.

Obs. 1. A prohibition is often expressed by the periphrasis *nōli*, *nōlito*: as, *Nōli pūtāre, Brūte, quenquam, &c., Do not suppose, Brutus, that any single person, &c.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. Also the Second Person Singular of the Future Indicative has sometimes an Imperative force: as,

*Tu nīhil invtā dices fūciēscē Mīnervā, Do not thou say or do anything against the bent of Nature.*—Hor.



## CHAPTER XLVII.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 421. The Subjunctive Mood expresses a thing not as a fact like the Indicative, but merely as a conception of the mind.

Hence the Subjunctive Mood is used to indicate,

- (A). An hypothesis.
- (B). Doubt or uncertainty (including indirect questions).
- (C). A wish.
- (D). Purpose or result
- (E). A proposition borrowed from another, and not adopted by the writer (*narratio obliqua*).

(A). *Si ita esset, ignoscērem, If it were so, I would excuse it.*—Cic.

(B). *Cur dubitas quid de rēpublicā sentias? Why do you doubt what opinion to entertain concerning a commonwealth?*—Cic.

*Non dubitat quin Trōja brevī pēritūra sit, He has no doubt that Troy will soon fall.*—Cic.

(C). *Valeas et meminēris nostri, May you be prosperous and think of me!*—Cic.

(D). *Lēgibus servimus ut libēri esse possimus, We submit to the laws that (Purpose) we may be able to be free.*—Cic.

*Accidit ut unā nocte omnes Hermae deicērentur, It happened that (Result) in one night all the Hermae were demolished.*—Nep.

(E). *Dōcent quanto in discriminē sit Nōlāna res, They point out in what peril Nola is.*—Liv.

§ 422. The Subjunctive Mood is always dependent upon either

- (1). Some hypothetical Conjunction (see § 425): or,
- (2). Some antecedent sentence or clause to which it is subjoined (*subjungo*), and which deprives it of the character of a positive ("objective") assertion.

*Obs.* The antecedent member of the sentence is very often not expressed, but left to be understood (see § 429).

§ 423. *Sequence of Tenses.*—The Tense of a Verb in the Subjunctive Mood must be in concord with the Tense of the antecedent Verb upon which it depends. Thus Present or Future time is followed by Present or Future, and Past time by Past.

*Present and Future Time.*

PRESENT.	Scio quid āgas,	<i>I know what you are doing.</i>
	Scio quid ēgēris,	<i>I know what you have done.</i>
	Scio quid actūrus sis,	<i>I know what you are going to do.</i>
PRESENT PERFECT.	Cognōvi quid āgas,	<i>I have learnt what you are doing.</i>
	Cognōvi quid ēgēris,	<i>I have learnt what you have done.</i>
	Cognōvi quid actūrus sis,	<i>I have learnt what you are going to do.</i>
FUTURE.	Audiam quid āgas,	<i>I shall hear what you are doing.</i>
	Audiam quid ēgēris,	<i>I shall hear what you have done.</i>
	Audiam quid actūrus sis,	<i>I shall hear what you are going to do.</i>

*Past Time.*

PAST IMPERFECT.	Scībam quid āgēres,	<i>I knew what you were doing.</i>
	Scībam quid ēgīsses,	<i>I knew what you had done.</i>
	Scībam quid actūrus esses,	<i>I knew what you were going to do.</i>
PAST INDEFINITE.	Cognōvi quid āgēres,*	<i>I learnt what you were doing.</i>
	Cognōvi quid ēgīsses,	<i>I learnt what you had done.</i>
	Cognōvi quid actūrus esses,	<i>I learnt what you were going to do.</i>
PAST PERFECT.	Cognōvēram quid āgēres,	<i>I had learnt what you were doing.</i>
	Cognōvēram quid ēgīsses,	<i>I had learnt what you had done.</i>
	Cognōvēram quid actūrus esses,	<i>I had learnt what you were going to do.</i>

\* But the Perfect Subjunctive may be used after the Past Indefinite when the subordinate proposition is conceived of as a distinct historical statement: as,

*Aemilius Paullus tantum in acrarium pecūniae inrexit, ut unius imperatoris praedia finem attulerit tributorum, Aemilius Paulus brought such an immense sum of money into the treasury, that the spoils of a single general put an end to the taxes.*—Cic.

*Obs.* The Historical Present (§ 393) being in reality a past tense, is often followed by Past Tenses Subjunctive: as,

*Helvetii legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, qui dicerent, The Helvetii sent ambassadors to Caesar, to say, &c.*—Caec.

## 1. Hypothetical Sentences.

§ 424. An hypothetical sentence consists of two parts, the *Protasis* and the *Apodosis*: the former containing the supposition or ground of argument, the latter the conclusion based upon it.

(1). *Hypothetical sentences with the Indicative.*—If both members of the sentence deal with facts, either actual or assumed for the purpose of argument, both their Verbs are in the Indicative Mood: as,



*Si est boni consulis ferre opem patriae, est etiam bonorum civium, etc., If it is the duty of a good consul to render help to his country, it is also the duty of good citizens, etc.—Cic.*

*Si tonuit, etiam fulsit, If it thundered, it also lightened.*

(2). *Hypothetical sentences with the Subjunctive.*—But if the sentence implies only that something may or might happen, or might have happened, both its Verbs are put in the Subjunctive: as,

*Si negem, mentiar, If I were to deny it, I should tell an untruth.—Cic.*

*Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias, You, if you were in my place, would think differently.—Ter.*

*Necussem jam te verbōribus, nisi iratus essem, I would have beaten you to death, if I were not angry.—Cic.*

§ 425. The Conjunctions used in formally stating hypothetical propositions are *si, if*; and *nisi (ni), sin, if not*. The last (*sin* shortened from *si ne*) is used only when another hypothesis with *si* (expressed or implied) has preceded.

*Obs.* To these may be added compounds of *si, as etsi, etiamsi*; and *dummodo* (see §§ 498, 503).

§ 426. The Present and Perfect Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when it is indicated that a thing may possibly happen or may have happened in Present or Future Time: as,

*Me dies, vox, latēra, deficiant, si hoc nunc vociferārī velim, Time, voice, strength, would fail me if I were to purpose expressing now, etc.—Cic.*

*Si scieris (Perfect) aspīdem occulte latēre uspiam,..... imprōbe feceris, nisi monueris alterum ne assident, If you should have become aware that an asp were lying concealed in some place, you would be acting wrongly if you did not warn your neighbour not to sit there.—Cic.*

*At mēmōria minuitur:—Crēdo, nisi eam exerceas, But (you say), memory decays: I believe you, if you do not exercise it.—Cic.*

(Apodosis not expressed, minuat, it would fail.)

*Obs.* In such cases we in English often use a Past Tense Subjunctive, and translate the Latin Present by *should, would, were, &c.*, as in the above examples.

§ 427. The Past Tenses of the Subjunctive are used with the above Conjunctions when a thing is conceived of as not actually taking place, whether now (Past-Imperfect), or in the Past (Past-Perfect): as,

*Sapientia non expetētur si nihil efficeret, Wisdom would not be coveted if it answered no end.—Cic.*

(*Si*) *ūno praelio victus (esset) Alexander, bello victus esset, Conquered in one battle, Alexander would have been conquered in the (entire) war.—Liv.*

§ 428. Instead of a Past Tense Subjunctive of a thing

regarded as not taking place, a Past Tense of the Indicative is sometimes used in the Apodosis, for the sake of greater vividness as,

*Pons subiticius iter paene hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset, The Sublician bridge well nigh gave a passage to the enemy, had it not been for one man—Liv.*

(Compare § 403.)

*Obs.* The Indicative of the verbs *dēbeo, dēcet, oportet, possum*, and *sum* with a gerundive or neuter adjective, are frequently used in this way in the Apodosis: as,

*Si victōria, praeda, laus dubia essent, tamen omnes bonos rēpublicae subvenire dēcebat, If victory, plunder, praise, were uncertain, it would still be the duty of all good citizens to come to the aid of the commonwealth.—Sall.*

*Si Ita Milo pūlasset, optābilis ei fuit, etc., If Milo had so thought, it would have been more desirable for him, &c.—Cic.*

429. *Hypothetical sentences without regular Protasis.*—The Subjunctive is sometimes used to signify that something would take place *if only* some condition too obvious to be expressed were fulfilled (*Subjunctivus Potentialis*): as,

*Crēdat Jūdæus, non ego, The Jew may believe it (if it were told him), not I.—Hor.*

*Dicas adductum propius frondēre Tarentum, You would say Tarentum had actually been transported and was blooming nearer home if you were to see the place).—Hor.*

*Pecūniae an famae minus parceret, laud facile discerneres, You would not easily tell (if you tried) whether he were more careless of his money or of his reputation.*

*Obs.* The Past-Imperfect is generally used where in English we say, *you would have thought*; *you would have said*: as,

*Crēderes victos esse; (Had you seen them) you would have thought they had been the vanquished.—Liv.*

§ 430. The Subjunctive is similarly used in expressing a modest wish or affirmation: as,

*Velim mihi ignoscas, I should be glad if you would pardon me.—Cic.*

*Hoc vērō sine ullā dubitātiōe affirmāverim, This I am prepared (if necessary) without any hesitation to assert.—Cic.*

*Quarendum censeam, I should think we ought to make enquiry.—Cic.*

§ 431. The Subjunctive is sometimes used when a virtual hypothesis is contained in another part of the sentence: as,

*An ego in hac urbe esse possim, his pulsus qui me hujus urbis compotem fecerunt, Could I exist in this city with those in banishment (i.e., if they are banished: who enabled me to enjoy it?—Cic.*

*Mōri nēmo sapiens miserum dixerit, No wise man (= if he were wise) would think of pronouncing it miserable to die.—Cic.*

§ 432. The Subjunctive is also used with or without a Conjunction, to signify that an hypothesis is assumed or granted for the purpose of argument (*Subjunctivus Concessivus*): as,

*Mālus civis Cn. Carbo fuit:—fuerit aliis; tibi quando esse coepit, Cnaeus Carbo was a bad citizen, was he? (Granted that) he was so to others, when did he begin to be so to you?—Cic.*

*Vērūm, ut ita sit, tamen non pōtes hoc praedicāre, Yet (granting) that it is so, yet you cannot affirm this.—Cic*

## 2. The Subjunctive of Doubt or Uncertainty.

§ 433. The Subjunctive is used *after* words denoting doubt or uncertainty: as,

*Quum incertus essem ubi esses, As I was uncertain where you were.—Cic.*

§ 434. *Indirect Questions.*—An Indirect Question is one which is *quoted* as being asked, or which is dependent upon some word signifying doubt or perplexity in the sentence. Such a question is expressed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

*Qualis sit animus ipse animus nescit, What is the nature of the mind, the mind itself knows not.—Cic.*

(Here the *Direct Question* would be, *Qualis est animus?* § 408.)

*Diogenes disputare solēbat, quanto regem Persarum vitā fortunāque spēret, Diogenes used to argue how much he had the advantage of the king of Persia in living and fortune.—Cic.*

(*Direct Question*: *Quanto regem Persarum supero? How much have I the advantage?* etc.)

*Dii utrum sint, necne sint, quaeritur, The question is raised whether there are gods or no?—Cic.*

(*Direct Question*: *Utrum dii sunt, necne sunt?*)

*Multae gentes nondum sciunt, cur luna deficiat, Many nations are still in ignorance why the moon is eclipsed.—Cic.*

(*Direct Question*: *Cur luna deficit?*)

*Obs.* Thus, *quae tu scias scio*, is *I know what it is you know*: but *quae tu scis, scio*, *What you know, I know also.*

§ 435. In expressing Indirect single Questions, *num* (see § 412) is used without any negative force: as,

*Quaero . . . num, aliter ac nunc eveniunt, evenirent, I ask whether they would turn out otherwise than they do?—Cic.*

*Exsistit hoc loco quaedam quaestio subdificilis, num quando amici novi veteribus sint antepōnendi, A somewhat difficult question here arises: whether new friends are ever to be preferred to old ones?—Cic.*

§ 436. In Indirect Questions with more than one alternative the following particles are used:—

*Quaeritur, utrum . . . an . . . an.*

*-nē . . . -nē . . . -nē.*

(omitted) . . . -nē . . . -nē.

§ 437. Sometimes the Indicative is found in what are *apparently* Indirect Questions: in such cases the Verb of question must be treated as entirely independent in Syntax: as,

*Quaero: quid factūri fuistis? I put the question to you: What were you meaning to do?*

*Et vide, quam conversa res est! And see! How the case has altered!—Ter*

§ 438. The particle *an* is used after some expressions denoting uncertainty or hesitation; especially after *haud scio, nescio, dubito, dubium est, incertum est*: as,

*Aristotēlem, excepto Platōne, haud scio an recte dixērim principem philosophōrum, With the exception of Plato, I am inclined to think I should be right in calling Aristotle the first of philosophers.—Cic.*

*Dubito an Vēnūsiam tendam, et ibi expectem de lēgiōnibus, I am half-inclined to direct my course to Venusia, and there wait news concerning the legions.—Cic.*

*Contigit tibi quod haud scio an nēmīni, The lot has fallen to you which perhaps has fallen to no one else.—Cic.*

*Obs.* The phrases *haud scio an, nescio an, dubito an*, always imply the probability of the truth of the proposition which they introduce. They have thus the opposite force to the English "*I don't know whether.*"

§ 439. Propositions about which doubt and uncertainty are distinctly *denied* are expressed with *quin* and the Subjunctive; as *non dubium est quin*, etc. (see § 461).

§ 440. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in questions indicating *perplexity*, where the Verb *dubito* may be supplied (*Subjunctivus dubitativus*): as,

*Quid hoc hōmīne faciātis, What are ye to do with this man?—Cic.*

*Quid aliud faciēret, What else was he to do?—Cic.*

*Quid enīmerem artium multitudinem, Why should I enumerate a multitude of arts?—Cic.* (*Quid enumero* would imply that the speaker was actually doing so.)

§ 441. Verbs of *fearing* take the Subjunctive with *ne* or *ut* according as the fear is expressed that a thing *will* (ne) or *will not* (ut) happen (see § 460)

§ 442. In all cases where the Subjunctive is found in *apparently* independent propositions, it is in reality dependent upon some *condition, doubt, or uncertainty*, present to the mind of the speaker or writer ("*subjunctive*"), though not expressed.

### 3. The Subjunctive expressing a Wish.

§ 443. *Subjunctivus Optativus*.—The Subjunctive is often used without any preceding Verb, to express a wish.

§ 444. The Present Tense Subjunctive expresses a wish regarded as attainable: as,

*Intēream si vāleo stare, May I be a dead man, if I can stand ba!*—Hor.

*Vāleant cives mei, sint beati, May my fellow-citizens prosper, may they be happy!*—Cic.

Especially with *utinam*, *O that!* as,

*Utinam mōdo cōnāta perficere possim, O that I may only accomplish my aims!*—Cic.

§ 445. The First Person Plural of the same Tense is used to express mutual encouragement: as,

*Dum vivimus vivāmus, While we live let us live!*

*Imitēmur nostros majōres, Let us imitate our ancestors!*—Cic.

Obs. In the same way is used the Pres.-Perf. *mēmīnerim*: as, *Mēmīnerimus, Let us remember!*

§ 446. The Past-Imperfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive are used in expressing a wish for a thing regarded as no longer attainable: as

*Utinam prōmissa licēret non dare, Would it were lawful not to fulfil promises!*—Cic.

*Utinam, Cn. Pompēi, cum Cacsāre societatem nunquam coisses aut nunquam dirēmisses, I would, Cnaeus Pompeius, you either had never entered into league with Caesar, or else had never broken it off.*—Cic.

Obs. Similarly *vellem, mallet, nollem*, are used of wishes regarded as not attainable; while *velim, malim, and nolim* are used of those considered to be so (comp. § 426, 427): as,

*Vellem ādesse posset Pānaetius, I could fain wish Panaetius were present.*—Cic.

§ 447. Very often a Verb of *wishing* is expressed, and followed by the Subjunctive either with or without *ut*:

(1.) *Opto, I wish*, is generally construed with *ut* and the Subjunctive (less frequently with the Infinitive): as,

*Optāvit ut in currum patris tollērētur, He (Phaethon) desired that he might be taken up into his father's chariot.*—Cic.

(2.) *Vōlo, Nōlo, and Mālo*, are frequently found with *ut* and the Subjunctive; also very often with *ut* omitted: as,

*Equidem vellem uti (res tuae) pēdes hāberent, ut aliquando redīres, For my part I should be glad if your business had feet to it, that you might at length return.*—Cic.

*Mālo te sapiens hostis mētuat, quam stulti cives laudent, I had rather a wise enemy should fear you, than that foolish citizens should praise you.*—Cic.

*Nōlo accūsātor in iudicium pōtentiam affērat, I would not have an accuser bring personal influence with him into a court of justice.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. In the same way *sino*, *I allow*, is sometimes used: as, *Sine . . . sciam, Let me know.*—Liv.

Obs. 2. For the construction of *vōlo*, &c., with Infinitive, see § 512.

§ 448. To this place must be referred the use of the Present and the Second Person Singular of the Perfect Subjunctive as *Jussives* (see § 420).

### 4. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

§ 449. The Subjunctive is used with the following Conjunctions, *ut* (*uti*), *quō*, *that*, in order *that*; *nē*, *lest*, in order *that* . . . *not*; *quā*, *quōmīnus*, *that not*, to denote Purpose and Result.

§ 450. The Conjunction *ut*, *that*, in order *that*, *so that*, is used with the Subjunctive Mood to denote either Purpose or Result: as,

#### (a.) Purpose.

*Rōmāni ab arātro abduxērunt Cineinnātum, ut dictātor esset, The Romans fetched Cineinnatus from the plough in order to be dictator.*—Cic.

*Pylādes Orestem se esse dixit, ut pro eo necārētur, Pylades affirmed himself to be Orestes, in order that he might be put to death in his place.*—Cic.

Obs. Under this head falls the Subjunctive with *ut* after Verbs of commanding, persuading, striving, wishing, &c. (see § 451).

#### (b.) Result.

*Tarquinius sic Servium diligēbat, ut is ejus vulgo hābērētur filius, Tarquinius was so attached to Servius, that the latter was currently regarded as his son.*—Cic.

*Temperantia sēdat appetitiōnes et efficit ut hae rectae ratiōni pāreant, Temperance calms the appetites and causes that they submit to right reason.*—Cic.

*Saepe fit ut, ii qui dēbeant, non respondeant ad tempus, It often occurs that those who owe money, do not meet their liabilities at the time.*—Cic.

*Si haec nuntiatio vērā non est, sēquitur ut falsa sit, If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.*—Cic.

Thrasýbuló configit ut patriam liberáret, *It fell to the lot of Thrasýbulus to deliver his country.*—Nep.

*Obs.* The phrases, sequitur, *it follows*; restat, *it remains*; necesse est, *it is necessary*; acquum, justum est, *it is right or just*; and the like, take for the most part, either *ut* and the Subjunctive, or an Infinitive Mood (see § 509).

§ 451. *Ut* and *ne* are used with the Subjunctive after Verbs signifying *to command, advise, request, exhort, endeavour*; *ut* in a positive, *ne* in a negative sense: as,

Civítati persuasit ut de finibus suis exírent, *He (Orgetorix) persuaded the community to leave their own territories.*—Caes.

Te hortor ut hos libros de philosophiá stádióse légas, *I urge you to read these books of mine on philosophy.*—Cic.

Précór nē me désēras, *I beg you not to forsake me.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. This Subjunctive with *ut* is usually translated by the Infinitive in English. The Latin Infinitive *nece* expresses a purpose.

*Obs.* 2. Jūbeo, *I order*; vëto, *I forbid*; cōnor, *I attempt*; and, sometimes, nitor, *I strive*, take the Infinitive: as,

Jūbet nos Pythius Apollo noscēre nosmet ipsos, *The Pythian Apollo bids us "know ourselves."*—Cic.

Lex pōgrinūm rētat in mūrum ascendēre, *The law forbids a foreigner to go up upon the walls.*—Cic.

Ter sunt cōnati impōnēre Pēlio Ossam, *Thrice they essayed to pile Ossa on Pelion.*—Virg.

Jugurtha Cirtam irrumpēre nītūtur, *Jugurtha endeavours to force an entrance into Cirta.*—Sall.

*Obs.* 3. Impēro is occasionally found with the Accusative and Infinitive: as, Ipsos addūci impērābat, *He ordered the men themselves to be led away.*—Cic.

§ 452. Verbs which signify a *resolution* or *décision* are usually followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive: as,

Decrēvit sēnātus ut consul rīdēret, nē quid detrimenti respublica capēret, *The senate decreed, that the consul should look to it, that the commonwealth suffered no damage.*—Cic.

Athēnienses stātuerunt ut, urbe rēlictā, libertātem Græciæ classe dēfendērent, *The Athenians came to the resolution to abandon their city and defend the liberty of Greece with their fleet.*—Cic.

*Obs.* When the determination of an individual about himself is signified, the Infinitive is generally used: as,

Decrēvam cum Hortensio valde familiārīter rīdēre, *I had determined to live on very friendly terms with Hortensius.*—Cic.

§ 453. *Quo*.—The Conjunction *quo*, *in order that*; *that* thereby, is used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Purpose*: as,

Corrūpisse dicītur Cluentius iudiciū pēcūniā, quo inimicū suū innocentē condemnāret, *Cluentius is said to have bribed the court, that thereby it might condemn his enemy though innocent.*—Cic.

Especially when there is a Comparative Adjective in its clause *as*,

Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab impēritis tēneātur, *A law ought to be short, in order that it may the more easily be grasped by the unlettered.*—Cic.

(Here *quo* = *ut eo*.)

*Obs.* 1. But *quo* is not used like *ut* to denote a *result*.

*Obs.* 2. Concerning non *quo*, *not that*, see § 487. *Obs.* 1.

§ 454. *Ne* is used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Purpose*, *ut* being omitted, it is equivalent to *ut non*, *quo non*, *in order that . . . not*; *lest*: as,

Nōlo esse laudātor, nē videar adūlātor, *I am reluctant to be an applauder, lest I should seem a flatterer.*—Auct. ad Her.

Gallinæ avesque reliquæ pennis fovēt pullos, ne frigōre laedantur, *Hens and other birds cherish their young under their wings, in order that they may not be hurt by the cold.*—Cic.

§ 455. Sometimes *ut* is expressed with *nē*, *as*,

Trebatio mandāvi, ut, si tu cum velles ad me mittere, ne rēcūsāret, *I have charged Trebatius, if you wished to dispatch him to me, not to refuse.*—Cic.

Pergunt turbāre usque ut ne quid possit conquiscescere, *They proceed to make such a disturbance that nothing can rest.*—Plaut.

*Obs.* This is especially the case with *ne quis, qua, quid, &c.*

§ 456. Similarly, when a *Purpose* is signified, we find

nē quis	instead of	ut nēmo,	that no one.
nē ullus	„ „	ut nullus,	that none.
nē unquam	„ „	ut nunquam,	that never.
nē usquam	„ „	ut nusquam,	} that nowhere.
nēcūbi (i. e. ne alicubi)		„	
nēcunde (i. e. ne alicunde),			that from no quarter.
nēquando (i. e. ne aliquando),			that at no time.

Caesārem complexus obsecrāre coepit ne quid grāvius in fratrem stātueret, *Embracing Caesar, he began to implore him not to come to any too severe decision against his brother.*—Caes.

Circumspectans necunde impētus in frumentātōres fīret, *Looking carefully round to see that no attack was made upon the foragers from any quarter.*—Liv.

§ 457. But if only a *Result* is signified, the forms *ut non*, *ut nemo*, *ut nullus*, etc., must be used: as,

Ex hoc efficitur . . . ut vōluptas non sit summum bonum, *From this it follows that pleasure is not the chief good.*—Cic.

Demosthēnes perficit mēditando, ut nēmī plānius eo locūtus putārētur, *By exercise Demosthenes succeeded, that no one was considered to have been a plainer speaker than he.*—Cic.

§ 458. *Ut* and *nē* are used in parenthetical sentences, where some such notion as "supposing," "granting that," is implied: as,

Nam ut omittam Philippum. . . For to say nothing of Philip. . .—Nep.

Ah nimium simplex Hēlēne, ne rustica dicam, Ah, too artless Helen, not to say too rude!—Ov.

§ 459. Similarly *nēdum*, not to say, much less, is followed by the Subjunctive: as,

Secundae res sapientium animos fatigant; *nēdum* illi corruptis moribus victoriæ temperarent, Prosperity overpowers the spirit of the wise: far less could they, with their morality destroyed, use restraint in victory.—Sall.

Viri clarissimi vim tribuniciam sustinere non potuerunt; *nēdum* his temporibus sine sapientiâ vestrâ salvi esse possimus, The most illustrious men have failed to withstand the tribunical force: much less can we, in these times, be secure without your wisdom.—Cic.

§ 460. After words signifying fear or anxiety *nē* expresses the apprehension that something will occur; *ut*, that it will not occur: as,

Timebam ne evenirent ea quae acciderunt, I dreaded that those very things which have happened would come to pass.—Cic.

Timor Romae grandis fuit, ne iterum Galli Romam redirent, There was great fear at Rome, lest the Gauls should return again to Rome.—Eutr.

Pater teruit gentes grave ne rediret saeculum Pyrrhae, The sire put the nations in dread, that the terrible age of Pyrrha might be coming again.—Hor.

Omnes labores te excipere vileo; *timeo* ut sustineas, I see you undertake all possible labours; I am afraid you will not stand them.—Cic.

Obs. But instead of *ut*, we often find *ne non*; especially in negative sentences: as,

Timeo ne non impetrem, I fear I shall not prevail.—Cic.

Non vereor ne tua virtus opinionum hominum non respondeat, I have no fear that your worth will fail to answer the expectations of men.—Cic.

§ 461. *Quin*, that not, so that not, is used with the Subjunctive after negative, or virtually negative sentences only. It is used,

(1.) After negative sentences containing Verbs of hindering: as, Non prohibeo, I do not prevent; Non retineo, I do not restrain; Non repugno, I do not object; and the like.

(2.) After such negative phrases as Non est dubium, There is no doubt; Quis dubitat, Who doubts? Fieri non potest, It cannot be; Negari non potest, It cannot be denied; and the like.

(3.) After negative sentences generally, to denote that a certain thing never happens without something else happening.

Obs. Under negative sentences are included those virtually so; as when quis expects the answer No: also those containing such words as vix, scarcely; parum, (too) little, &c.

(1.) Non possumus, quin alii a nobis dissentiant, recūsare, We cannot object to it that others should differ from us.—Cic.

Vix me contineo quin in illum involem, I can scarcely restrain myself from flying at him.—Ter.

Haud multum abfuit quin Ismenias interficeretur, A little more and Ismenias would have been killed.—Liv.

Obs. The expressions *haud multum abfuit*, *minimū abfuit*, and the like, are always impersonal.

(2.) Non erat dubium quin Helvetii plurimum possent, There was no doubt that the Helvetii had the most influence.—Caes.

Haud dubia res visa . . . quin circumducere agmen, There appeared to be no question but he must conduct his army by a circuitous route.—Liv.

Obs. In some cases a twofold construction is admissible: thus,

Quis ignorat quin tria Graecorum genera sint, Who knows not (i. e., there is no one who knows not) that there are three classes of Greeks?—Cic.: where we might equally well have had, Quis ignorat tria . . . esse (§ 507).

(3.) Equidem nunquam domum misi unam epistolam, quin esset ad te altera. In fact, I have never sent a single letter home without there being a second to you.—Cic.

Nullus fere dies est quin Satrius meam domum ventitet, There is hardly a day that Satrius does not keep coming to my house.—Cic.

§ 462. *Quin* is also used with the Indicative in the sense of *Why not?* (qui ne); and expresses an animated appeal: as,

Quin igitur expergiscimini? Why not then be up and doing?—Sall. Quin conseedimus equos? Why not to horse at once?—Liv.

Obs. *Quin* with the Imperative is used in expostulations: as, Quin tu hoc audi, Nay but do you hear me.—Ter.

§ 463. *Quominus*, that not, so that not, is similar to *quin*, and is used with the Subjunctive after words and phrases which signify hindrance; as, impedio, I impede; prohibeo, I prevent; officio, I obstruct, etc.; also after per me stat, fit, it is owing to me (that something does not take place): as,

Non recūsabo quominus omnes mea scripta legant, I will not object to all men's reading my writings.—Cic.

Caesar cognovit per Afranium stare quominus dimicaretur, Caesar ascertained that it was owing to Afranius an engagement did not take place.—Caes.

Obs. In the former of the above examples *quin* might have been used instead of *quominus* (comp. § 462), but not in the second: also, in the other applications of *quin* (ib. 2, 3), *quominus* cannot be used for it.

## 5. Oratio Obliqua.

NOTE.—For the sake of convenience, the Rules for *Oratio obliqua* are brought together.

§ 464. When a speech is reported not in the exact form in which it was delivered, but so as to make the speaker the Third Person instead of the First, it is called *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar lēgātis respondit: diem se ad dēliberandum sumptūrum (esse), *Caesar made answer to the ambassadors that he would take a day to consider.*—Caes.

(Words of Caesar reported in their original form: *Diem ego ad dēliberandum sūnam, I will take a day to consider.*)

§ 465. When a speech is thus transferred to the *oblique* form, the following changes of Mood take place:—

- (A.) The Indicative Mood used in *direct* and *independent* statements is changed into the Infinitive.
- (B.) The Indicative Mood used in *dependent* *Relative* sentences is changed into the Subjunctive.
- (C.) The Indicative Mood used in *Questions* becomes the Subjunctive.
- (D.) The Imperative Mood becomes the Subjunctive.
- (E.) The Subjunctive Mood used in the *Apodosis* of an hypothetical sentence becomes the Infinitive.

§ 466. (A.) All direct and independent statements, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, become dependent upon some such Verb as *dixit, he said*, expressed or implied, and therefore the Accusative Case takes the place of the Nominative, and the Infinitive Mood the place of the Indicative (§ 507): as,

Ariovistus respondit, . . . Aeduis se obsides reddītūrum non esse, *Ariovistus answered that he would not restore the hostages to the Aedui.*—Caes.

Ariovistus ad Caestrom lēgātōs mittit, “*velle se de his rebus agere cum eo*,” *Ariovistus sends ambassadors to Caesar (saying) that he wished to speak with him on these points.*—Caes.

Obs. Such an Infinitive is very often introduced quite abruptly, especially to indicate feelings entertained rather than a direct speech: as,

Plēbem Ira prōpe armāvit: “*Fāme se jam sicut hostes pēti*;” *elbo victuque fraudāri*,” *Indignation all but armed the commons: “They were now attacked like open enemies; they were robbed of their bread and living.”*—Liv.

§ 467. (B.) The subordinate Verbs in Relative sentences, used by the original speaker in the Indicative Mood, are turned into the Subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar lēgātōs cum his mandātis mittit, . . . haec esse quae ab eo postulāret, *Caesar sends ambassadors with these instructions, . . . that the following were the demands he made of him, &c.*—Caes.

(Direct form: *Haec sunt quae a te postulo.*)

Apud Hypānim fluvium Aristōteles ait, bestiōlas quasdam nasci, quae unum diem vivant, *On the banks of the river Bog, Aristotle tells us there are insects produced which live only one day.*—Cic.

(Direct form: *Sunt bestiolae quaedam quae unum diem vivunt.*)

Obs. But if a statement of the *writer's* be interwoven with the *oratio obliqua*, it of course stands in the Indicative: as,

Quis pōtēst esse tam āversus a vēro, qui nēget haec omnia, quae videmus, deōrum immortalium pōtēstāte administrāri, *Who can be such a stranger to truth, as to deny that all these things, which we see, are managed by the power of the immortal Gods?*—Cic.

§ 468. (C.) *Questions* transferred to the *oratio obliqua* take the Subjunctive Mood; being dependent upon *rogavit*, or some such word, expressed or understood (§ 434): as,

Furere omnes tribūni plēbis . . . “*quidnam id rei esset?*” *All the tribunes of the commons were furious: (they asked) “What did that mean?”*—Liv.

(Direct question: *Quidnam id rei est?*)

Quid de praedā faciendum censērent, *What did they think should be done about the spoil?*—Liv.

(Direct question: *Quid de praedā faciendum censetis?*)

§ 469. But when the Interrogative form is merely rhetorical, the question containing its own answer, and being therefore equivalent to a direct statement, it is often expressed with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

“*Si vētēris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiā recentium injuriarum dēponere posse?*” “*Even if he were willing (he said) to forget an ancient affront, could he banish the recollection of recent injuries?*”—Caes.

(Here, *num dēponere posse* = *non dēponere posse.*)

Interrogābat . . . “*quando ausūros exposcere rēmedia, nīsi . . . etc.*” *He asked “When would they venture to demand redress, if not . . . etc.”*—Tac.

(*Quando ausuros* = *numquam ausuros.*)

An quicquam esse sūperbius? *Could anything be more arrogant?*—Liv.

(*An quicquam esse* = *nihil esse.*)

Obs. *Madvig's* rule is, that questions originally asked in the *First* or *Third* Person, are expressed in the *oratio obliqua* with the Subjunctive; and only those in the *Second* Person, by the Subjunctive. But the distinction seems arbitrary, and is not sufficiently supported. No rule, however, can be laid down on the subject without exceptions.



§ 470. (D.) *Commands* and exhortations, when transferred to the *oratio obliqua*, also take the Subjunctive; *imperāvit*, or some such word, being expressed or understood (see § 451): as,

(Orāre) .. *ferrent opem, adjūrarent*, (*He begged them*) to come to his assistance and help.—Liv.

"Sin bello persēqui persēveraret, rēminiscētur pristinae virtutis Helvētiōrum," "If however he should be bent on prosecuting the war against them (he bad him) remember the original prowess of the Helvetii."—Caes.

§ 471. (E.) Verbs used by the speaker in the Subjunctive for the most part remain in the same Mood in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Caesar respondit .. "nullos in Galliā vacāre agros, qui dāri tantae multitudinī possint," *Caesar replied* .. that "there were no lands in Gaul that could be given to so vast a multitude."—Caes.

(Direct form: "Nulli in Galliā vacant agrī, qui dari possint:" comp. § 480.)

"Intellectūrum quid invicti Germāni, .. qui inter quatuordecim annos tectum non subissent, virtute possint," "He (Caesar) would learn what the unconquered Germans, who for fourteen years had not had a roof over their heads, could do in the field of battle."—Caes.

(Direct form also: "Qui subissent (§ 476) .. possint" (§ 434).)

§ 472. But the Subjunctive used in the *apodosis* of an hypothetical sentence becomes changed into the Infinitive in the *oratio obliqua*: as,

Ei lēgatiōni Ariovistus respondit: "Si quid ipsi a Caesare ōpus esset, scēe ad eum ventūrum fuisse," *Ariovistus made answer to the embassy*, "that if he had wanted anything of Caesar, he would have come to him."—Caes.

(Direct form: "Si quid .. opus esset, venissem.")

"Neque Eburōnes, si ille adesset, tantā cum contēptiōne nostri ad castra ventūros esse," "Nor would the Eburones, he urged, if he (Caesar) were at hand, approach the camp with such contempt for us."—Caes.

(Direct form: "Si .. adesset .. venirent.")

Obs. In such cases, the Past-Imperfect is represented by the Future Infinitive with *esse*, and the Past-Perfect by the same with *fuisse*. (See examples above.)

§ 473. TENSES OF VERBS IN THE ORATIO OBLIQUA.—The Tense of the Subjunctive Mood in *oblique* narration is determined by the ordinary laws for the Sequence of Tenses (§ 423). The following apparent exceptions require to be noticed:—

- (1.) The *Præsens Historicum* is often treated as a Past Tense, and followed accordingly by Past Tenses Subjunctive (see § 423. Obs.).

- (2.) For the sake of greater vividness, a Past Tense like *dixit*, *he said*, is often followed by Present Tenses Subjunctive: as,

*Edicunt*, ne quis L. Quinctium consulem faceret, *They issue a proclamation that no one should endeavour to make L. Quinctius consul.*—Liv.

Interim Caesāri nuntiatur Sulmōnenses cupere ea facere quae rellet, *Meanwhile it is reported to Caesar that the people of Sulmo were desirous to do as he wished them.*—Caes.

Cicero respondit .. "Si ab armis discēdere vellent, se adjūtore utantur lēgatosque ad Caesārem mittant," *Cicero made answer*, "if they wish to lay down their arms, they can use him as their coadjutor, and send ambassadors to Caesar."—Caes.

### 6. Use of the Subjunctive with the Relative Pronoun and Conjunctions.

§ 474. The Relative and Relative particles take the Subjunctive (according to § 421) when they are used in stating not simply a fact, but a conception of the mind.

§ 475. *Qui hypothetical.*—The Relative *qui*, *quae*, *quod*, is followed by the Subjunctive when the clause to which it belongs contains a virtual *hypothesis* (§ 431): as,

*Haec qui videat*, nonne cōgātur fatēri deos esse, *Would not the man, who should see these things, be compelled to confess that there are gods?*—Cic.

(*Qui videat* = *si quis videat*, *if any one were to see*.)

*Nec quisquam rex Persarum potest esse, qui non ante Magorum disciplinam percēperit*, *Nor can any one be king of the Persians who has not first learnt the discipline of the Magi.*—Cic.

(*Qui non percēperit* = *nisi percēperit*, *unless he has learned*.)

Obs. To this head belongs the phrase *quod sciam*, *as far as I know*, *if only I know*.

§ 476. Hence the Relative takes the Subjunctive in stating the reason of something: as,

*O fortunāte adōlescens, qui tuae virtutis Hōmērum praeconciā invenērīs*, *O fortunate youth, who hast found i. e. in that thou hast found a Homer to be the herald of thy prowess.*—Cic.

*Ut cubitum discessimus, me et de viā et qui ad multam noctem vigilassem*, *arctior quam solebat somnus complexus est*, *No sooner had we retired to rest, than what with the journey and my having sat up to a late hour of the night, sounder sleep than usual embraced me.*—Cic.

(*Qui vigilassem* = *quum vigilassem*, § 483.)

§ 477. The force of *qui* as introducing a *reason* is augmented by *ut*, *utpōte*, *quippe*: as,

*Magna pars Fidenātium, ut qui cōlōni additi Rōmānis essent*, *Lātīno sciēbant*, *A great part of the Fidenates, (as might well be) from their having been joined as settlers with Romans, knew Latin.*—Liv.



Multa de meâ sententiâ questus est Caesar, *quippe qui* ab eo in me esset incensus, Caesar complimented much of the opinion expressed by me, having been goaded on against me by him (Crassus).—Cic.

Obs. But *quippe qui* is also found with the Indicative: as,

Anîmus fortuna non eget, *quippe quae* prôbitatem . . . neque dare neque eripere potest, The soul needs not fortune, since goodness she can neither give nor take away.—Sall.

§ 478. *Qui* of Purpose.—*Qui* takes the Subjunctive when it involves the meaning of *ut*, and denotes a Purpose (§ 449): as,

Sunt multi qui eripiunt aliis quod aliis largiantur, There are many who take from one to bestow on another.—Cic.

(Quod largiantur = ut largiantur.)

Clusini legatos Romam qui auxilium a senatu peterent, misere, The people of Clusium sent ambassadors to Rome to beg help from the senate.—Liv.

(Qui peterent = ut peterent.)

§ 479. *Qui* of Result.—*Qui* is also followed by the Subjunctive when there is involved in it the force of *ut* as indicating a Result (§ 449): as,

In enodandis nominibus, quod miserandum sit, laboratis, In explaining names you (Stoics) trouble yourselves to a degree that is pitiable.—Cic.

(Quod miserandum sit = ut miserandum sit.)

Majus gaudium fuit quam quod universum homines caperent, The joy was too great for men to receive all at once.—Liv.

(Major quam quod caperent = major quam ut caperent.)

§ 480. *Qui* is especially so used after the adjectives dignus, indignus, idoneus, and the like, to denote what a person is worthy of or fit for: as,

Liviânae fabulae non satis dignae sunt quae iterum legantur, The plays of Livius are not well worthy of being read a second time.—Cic.

Nulla mihi videbatur aptior persona quae de senectute loqueretur, quam Catonis, No character seemed to me fitter to speak concerning old age than that of Cato.—Cic.

Homines scelerati indigni mihi videbantur, quorum causam agerem, The wicked men seemed unworthy that I should plead their cause.—Cic.

Obs. The poets and later writers in general, also construe these Adjectives with the Infinitive: as,

Fons rivo dare nomen idoneus, A fountain fit to give name to a stream.—Hor.

§ 481. Similarly *qui* takes the Subjunctive when it is the correlative of the Pronouns *is*, *talis*, *tantus*: as,

Ego is sum qui nihil unquam meâ potius quam meorum civium causâ fecerim, I am such an one as never have done anything for my own sake rather than for the sake of my fellow-citizens.—Cic.

Innocentia est affectio talis animi quae noceat nemini, Harmlessness is such a disposition of mind as will harm nobody.—Cic.

Nulla acies humani ingenii tanta est, quae penetrare in coelum possit, No keenness of human intellect is such as to be able to penetrate into heaven.—Cic.

§ 482. The Subjunctive is generally used after such expressions as *sunt qui*, there are some who; *non desunt qui*, there are not wanting men who; *reperiuntur*, there are found some who: as,

Sunt qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem, There are some who think death to be the departure of the mind from the body.—Cic.

Fuere qui crederent M. Crassum non ignarum ejus consilii fuisse, There were some who believed M. Crassus to be no stranger to this scheme.—Sall.

Obs. 1. But if certain definite persons or things are indicated, such phrases are followed by the Indicative: as,

Fuere tamen extra conjurationem complures qui ad Catilinam praefecti sunt, There were however a good many, not in the plot, who went to join Catiline.—Sall.

Obs. 2. The poets and the later writers often construe *sunt qui* with the Indicative: as,

Sunt quos (éviours) curriculo pulvorem Olympicum colligisse jurat, Some there are whose delight is to gather the dust of Olympia in the race-course.—Hor.

§ 483. *Quum*.—The Conjunction *quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes cause (*quum causale*); it may then generally be translated by *as*, *since*, or *although*: as,

Quum vita sine amicis insidiarum et metus plena sit, ratio ipsa monet amicitias comparare, Since life without friends is full of treachery and alarm, reason itself bids us form friendships.—Cic.

Quum in communibus suggestibus consistere non auderet, concionari ex turri alta solebat, As he (Dionysius) dared not take his stand in the general platforms, he used to deliver his harangues from a high tower.—Cic.

Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset, Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.—Nep.

Obs. 1. *Quum* is sometimes used with the Indicative, in order to state a reason at the same time positively as a fact: as,

Tu quum eo tempore mecum esse non potuisti . . . cave festines, As you could not be with me at that time . . . take care not to hurry.—Cic.

Quum ea nondum consecutus eram, quae sunt hominum opinionibus amplissima, Although I had not yet obtained those honours which in the opinion of men are the greatest.—Cic.

Obs. 2. *Quum* like *qui* (§ 477) may be strengthened with *quippe*: as,

Nec reprehendo (te): quippe quum ipse istam reprehensionem non fugerim, Nor do I blame you; inasmuch as I myself have not escaped that censure.—Cic.

§ 484. *Quum* also takes the Subjunctive in describing the sequence of events in proper historical narrative: as,

Socrâtes in pompâ *quum* magna vis auri argentiue ferrêtur, quam multa non desidëro! inquit, *When a great quantity of gold and silver was being carried in procession, said Socrates, "How many things there are I don't want!"—Cic.*

Quos *quum* tristiores vidisset, triginta minas accëpit, nē aspernâri Rëgis libërâlitatë vidêrêtur, *When he (Xenocrates) saw them rather disappointed, he accepted thirty minas, in order not to seem to slight the king's liberality.—Cic.*

*Quum* tridui viam præfectus esset, nuntiâtum est ei, Ariovistum cum omnibus suis cõpiis ad occupandum Vesontionem contendere, *When he had advanced three days' journey, news was brought him that Ariovistus was hastening with all his forces to seize Besançon.—Caes.*

Obs. The Perfect and Past-Perfect Subjunctive with *quum* supply the lack of a Perfect Participle Active in Latin (comp. § 526).

§ 485. But *quum* is used with all Tenses of the Indicative to denote the preciso time at which something takes place: as,

Pugiles etiam *quum* feriunt adversârium, ingemiscunt, *Prize-fighters even when they are in the act of striking an antagonist, fetch a groan.—Cic.*

Crêdo tum *quum* Siciliâ florêbat opibus et cõpiis, magna artificia fuisse in eâ insulâ, *I believe that at the time when Sicily flourished in resources and military strength, the arts were in great perfection in the island.—Cic.*

*Quum* testes dabo ex Siciliâ, quem volet ille eligat, *When I shall produce my witnesses from Sicily, let him choose which he pleases.—Cic.*

*Quum* autem ver esse coepêrat .. dabat se labôri atque itinêribus, *But when it began to be spring-time, he then gave himself to labour and journeying.—Cic.*

§ 486. *Quod* (quo) and *quia*.—The Conjunctions *quod* and *quia*, because, both take the Indicative in stating the actual reason of something: as,

Idcirco sum tardior *quod* non invénio fidem tabellârium, *I am the more backward because I cannot find a trusty letter-carrier.—Cic.*

Urbs quæ *quia* postrêma ædificâta est, Neapôlis (veà πάλis) nômînâtur, *A city which, because it was the last built, is called Neapolis (New-town).—Cic.*

Obs. *Quia* states a reason more directly and positively than *quod*.

§ 487. But when it is implied that a supposed reason is not true in point of fact, the Subjunctive with *non quod*, *non quia*, is used.

The difference between the use of *quia* or *quod* with the Indicative and with the Subjunctive, is clearly seen in the following example:—

Pugiles etiam *quum* feriunt adversârium ingemiscunt, *non quod* dolëant animo succumbant, sed *quia* profundendâ vôco omne corpus intenditur, *Prize-fighters even when in the act of striking an antagonist,*

*fetch a groan; not because they are in pain (supposed, but false reason), but because, in discharging the sound, the whole body is put in tension (real reason).—Cic.*

Obs. 1. Instead of *non quod*, we find also *non quo* and (rarely) *non quin* (negative).

Obs. 2. Out of this use of *quod* arises such an expression as the following: *Quod* religiõnibus sese dicêret impêdiri, *Because, said he, (alleged but false reason) "he was prevented by religious scruples."—Caes.*

(The dicêret is brought under the government of *quod*, instead of *impêdiretur*.)

§ 488. In addition to the above cases, *quod* (not *quia*) is used as a causal Conjunction after such Verbs as *grâtûlor*, *I congratulate*; *glôrior*, *I boast*; *quëror*, *I complain*; *miror*, *I wonder*; *laudo*, *I praise*; and the like, when, as before (§ 486), the Indicative denotes that the ground of rejoicing, grief, censure, etc., is an actual fact, which the Subjunctive of course cannot do: as,

*Grâtûlor tibi, quod* e prövinciâ salvum te ad tuos rêcëpisti, *I congratulate you that you have got back safe from your province to your friends.—Cic.*

*Gaudeo quod* te interpellâvi, *I am glad that I interrupted you.—Cic.*

*Non tibi objicio quod* hómînem .. qui nunc A. Clôdius vocâtur, omni argento spoliasti, *I am not laying it to your charge that you robbed a fellow who now bears the name of Aulus Clodius of all his silver (which you did).—Cic.*

Socrâtes accûsâtus est *quod* corrumpêret jüventûtë, et nêvas sÿperstitiõnes introducêret, *Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth and bringing in new superstitions.—Quint.*

Obs. In the last of the above examples, as in many similar ones, the Subjunctive may be regarded as belonging to the oratio obliqua (§ 466): as,

*Glôriabâtur Hortensius, quod* nunquam bello civili interfuisset, *Hortensius used to boast that he had never been engaged in civil war.—Cic.* (The Subj. indicates that the assertion is made by *Hortensius*.)

§ 489. *Quod* is also used with the Indicative after sundry Impersonal expressions corresponding to those referred to in the preceding section: as, *jüvat*, *it delights*; *vîtium est*, *it is a fault*; *laudâbile est*, *it is praiseworthy*, and the like, with the same distinction as before between the Indicative and Subjunctive: as,

*Jüvat me, quod* vigent stûdia, præferunt se ingënia hómînum, *It is a pleasure to me that intellectual pursuits flourish, that the abilities of men display themselves.—Plin. Ep.*

*Magnum bënëficium nâturæ est, quod* necesse est môri, *It is a great boon of nature that we must die.—Sen.*

§ 490. *Quod* is sometimes thus used of an hypothetical case, and then of course it takes the Subjunctive: as,

Nemo oratorem admiratus est, quod Latine loqueretur, No one ever admired an orator because he spoke good Latin.—Cic.

§ 491. Quod is originally a Relative Pronoun, and in some of its applications seems to waver between the use of the Relative Pronoun and of a Conjunction: it is on this principle we must explain such sentences as the following:—

Cujus corpus a me crematum est, quod contra decuit ab illo meum, His body was laid by me on the funeral pile, whereas [which office] mine should rather have undergone that office from him.—Cic.

Obs. The use of quod si, but if; quod nisi (ni), but if not, &c., at the beginning of sentences, is to be explained by the fondness of the Latin language for connecting the parts of a narration by means of the Relative.

§ 492. Quippe (quia-pe), because, as being, is chiefly used in connexion with the Relative Pronoun (see § 477), as also before Relative or illative particles, as, quum, quod, quia, quoniam, ubi, enim, etc. It takes the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood according as fact or hypothesis is indicated: as,

Ego vero laudo: .. quippe quia magnarum saepe id remedium aegritudinum est, I do praise it, inasmuch as that is often the remedy for serious troubles.—Ter.

Quippe ubi nulla forent aeterno corpore, Inasmuch as in that case (i. e. on a certain hypothesis, which is denied) there would be no objects with eternal substance.—Lucr.

Lève nomen habet utraque res: quippe leve enim est hoc totum, risum movere, Both things have a trivial name: for in fact this whole matter of provoking laughter is trivial.—Cic.

§ 493. Quippe is also used with the Indicative in giving an ironical reason:—

Quippe vector fati! Because forsooth I am forbidden by the fates!—Virg.

Movet me quippe lumen curiae! Forsooth that luminary of the senate-house disturbs me!—Cic.

§ 494. Quoniam (quum jam), since, is used in stating a reason, and generally, but not always, takes the Indicative: as,

Quam me stultitiam (quoniam non est genus unum), insanire putas? What kind of folly (since there is more than one kind) do you think I am mad with?—Hor.

Quoniam res in id discrimen adducta est, Seeing matters have been brought to such a crisis.—Cic.

De suis privatis rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consilire non possent, They began to make petition to him concerning their own private concerns, seeing they could not consult the safety of the state.—Caes.

(The Subj. appears to be used here to indicate that such was the reason by which they justified themselves merely: v. § 487.)

Itaque quoniam ipse pro se dicere non posset, verba fecit frater ejus, Accordingly, seeing he could not speak on his own behalf, his brother acted as spokesman.—Nep.

§ 495. Quando is sometimes used as a causal Conjunction, equivalent to quoniam. It then takes the Indicative: as,

Quando ita tibi libet, vale, Since such is your humour, Good-bye.—Plaut.

Cur non sit orator, quando, quod difficilius est, oratorem facit? Why should not he be an orator, seeing that—what is harder,—he makes an orator?—Quint.

§ 496. Quoad, as long as, as far as, until, takes the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as it refers to actual fact or not: as,

Ipse quoad potuit, fortissime restitit, He himself, so long as he was able, resisted most valiantly.—Caes.

Jubeo te salvare voce summam, quoad vires valent, I bid you good day, at the top of my voice; as far as my powers avail.—Plaut.

Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocasset, in Gallia morari constituit, He himself meanwhile resolved to remain in Gaul till he had put the legions into winter quarters.—Caes.

§ 497. Dum, whilst, is construed with the Indicative; dum, until, with the Indicative or the Subjunctive, according as a simple fact or a purpose is indicated: as,

Ea redemptio mansit.....dum iudices rejecti sunt, That bargain remained in force .....until the judges were rejected.—Cic.

Obsidio deinde per paucos dies magis quam oppugnatio fuit dum vulnus daci curaretur, The siege then took the form of a blockade rather than an assault for a few days, so that meanwhile (dum) the general's wound might be cured.—Liv.

Iratis subtrahendi sunt ii, in quos impetum facere conantur, dum se ipsi colligant, Angry persons must have the objects of their attacks put out of their reach, so that meanwhile they may collect themselves.—Cic.

Mihi usque curae erit quid agas dum, quid egēris, sciero, It will continue to be matter of concern to me what step you take, until I have learned\* what step you have actually taken.—Cic.

\* The writer regards it as certain that he will learn.

§ 498. Dummōdo (also simply dum or modo), provided that (Hypothetical, § 425), is construed with the Subjunctive Mood: as,

Odērint, dum mēt, Let them hate provided only they fear.—Suet.

Omnia recta et honesta negligunt, dummōdo potentiam consequantur, They disregard all that is right and honourable, if they can only obtain power.—Cic.

*Obs.* We also find *dummōdo nē, dum nē, mōdo nē* : as,  
*Sit summa in jure dicendo sēvēritas, dummōdo ea nē vāriētūr grātū,*  
*Let there be the utmost severity in administering justice, so long as it does*  
*not fluctuate through partiality.—Cic.*

§ 499. *Dōnec, whīlst, until*, has the same construction as *dum* (§ 497).

*Obs.* 1. *Dōnec* is rare in Cicero, and is not found at all in Caesar or Sallust.  
 But it is frequent in the poets, as well as in Livy and Tacitus.

*Obs.* 2. Livy and Tacitus sometimes use *dōnec* with the Subjunctive, when speaking of simple facts : as,  
*Elēphanti trēpidātiōnis āliquantum cōdebant, dōnec quicquē ipse timor*  
*fecisset, The elephants made some disturbance, until their very fears made*  
*them quiet.—Liv.*

§ 500. The (so-called) Conjunctions, *antēquam, priusquam*, before that, take the Subjunctive when they refer to an hypothetical case : as,

In omnibus nēgōtiis, priusquam aggrēdiāre, adhibenda est prapārātio diligens, *In all undertakings, before you attempt anything, you must make careful preparation.—Cic.*

§ 501. When *antēquam, priusquam*, and *postquam*, are used with reference to actual facts, they usually take the Indicative, but sometimes the Subjunctive : as,

(a.) *With Indicative.*

*Antēquam ad sententiam rēdeo, de me pauca dicam, Before I return to the resolution, I will say a few words about myself.—Cic.*

*Non ante finitum est proclium, quam tribunus militum interfectus est, The battle was not brought to a close till a tribune of soldiers had been slain.—Liv.*

*Ante āliquanto quam tu nātus es, A good while before you were born.—Cic.*

*Neque ante dimisit eum quam fidem dedit adolescens ab his sacris se tempēratum, Nor did she leave him till the young man gave her his word that he would refrain from taking part in these rites.—Liv.*

*Dēcessit post annum quartum quam expulsus erat, He died four years after he had been banished.—Nep.*

(b.) *With Subjunctive.*

*Prius Placentiam pervēnere quam sātis sciret Hannibal ab Ticino profectos, They reached Placentia before Hannibal was well aware that they had left the Ticinus.—Liv.*

*Interfuit pugnae nāvāli apud Salamina, quae facta est prius quam poenā liberāretur, He was present at the naval battle of Salamis, which was fought before he was liberated from his penalty.—Nep.*

*Obs.* 1. The Subjunctive is rare when only a specification of priority or subsequence of Time is indicated.

*Obs.* 2. *Ante . . . quam, post . . . quam*, are usually separated from each other : see above examples.

§ 502. *Quamvis, however much*, and *licet, although*, used concessively, govern the Subjunctive : as,

*Quamvis Ellysios mirētūr Graecia campos, However much Greece may admire her Elysian plains.—Virg.*

*Assentatio quamvis pernicioſa sit, nocēre tamen nēmīni pōtest, nisi ei, qui eam recipit atque eā dēlectatur, Flattery, however injurious it may be, can harm no one saving the man who takes it in and is gratified by it.—Cic.*

*Quamvis sit magna (expectatio), tamen eam vīces, Though expectation be ever so high, you will yet go beyond it.—Cic.*

*Licet ipsa vitium sit ambitio, frēquenter tamen causa virtutum est, Though ambition in itself is a fault, yet it is often the cause of virtues.—Quint.*

*Vita brēvis est licet supra mille annos exeat, Life is short even if it should exceed a thousand years.—Sen.*

*Obs.* In the poets and later writers *quamvis* is often equivalent to *quoniam*, and takes the Indicative : as,

*Erat inter eos dignitate regiā, quamvis cārēbat nōmine, He enjoyed the rank of king amongst them, though he had not the title.—Nep.*

§ 503. *Quoniam, etsi, etiamsi, although*, take either the Indicative or Subjunctive, according to the fundamental distinction between those Moods (§ 421) : as,

*Quoniam, —etsi priore foedere starēt, —sātis cautum erat de Saguntinis, Although, —even if the former treaty were adhered to, —sufficient security had been taken for the Saguntines.—Liv.*

*Quoniam festinas, non est mōra longa, Though thou art in haste, it would involve no long delay.—Hor.*

*Sed quoniam nēgent, nec virtutes nec vitia crescēre, attāmen, etc., But although they (the Stoics) should deny (it), affirming that neither virtues nor vices increase, yet, &c.—Cic.*

*Obs.* Later writers make *quoniam* govern the Subjunctive, whilst they use *quoniam* with the Indicative (§ 502. *Obs.*) : as,

*Phrautes quoniam depūlisset exercitus dūcesque Rōmānos, cuncta vērērantium officia ad Augustum vētērat, Phrautes, though he had repulsed the armies and generals of Rome, had yet directed all the observances of respect towards Augustus.—Tac.*

## CHAPTER XLVIII.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

504. The Infinitive Mood is an indeclinable verbal Substantive, capable of being used as a Nominative or an Accusative only. For the other Cases, the Gerund takes the place of the Infinitive

### 1. The Infinitive as Subject.

§ 505. The Infinitive is used as Subject chiefly in connexion with such quasi-impersonal Verbs as *jūvat, dēlectat*,

(it) *delights*; or such phrases as *pulchrum, dēcorum est*, (it) is *fine, becoming, &c.*: as,

*Jūvat integros accēdēre fontes, atque haurire*, It is delightful to repair to untroubled fountains and drink.—Lucr.

Here *accēdēre, haurire*, form subjects to *jūvat*.)

At *pulchrum est digito monstrāri, et dicere*, "hic est," But it is a fine thing to be pointed at with the finger, and for it to be said, "There he is!"—Pers.

*Usque ad eōne scire tuum nihil est, nisi hoc sciat alter*, Is your knowledge so utterly worth nothing, unless your neighbour know it!—Pers.

(This use of an Infinitive with an attributive Adjective is rare, and not to be imitated.)

## 2. The Infinitive as Object.

§ 506. The use of the Infinitive as Direct Object is rare and chiefly confined to the poets: as,

*Quid sit futurum cras fuge quaerere*, What is to be on the morrow forbear inquiring.—Hor.

*Pro nobis mitte precari*, Give over praying for us!—Ov.

Obs. 1. For the Infinitive after Verbs of willingness, ability, &c., see § 512.

Obs. 2. The Infinitive is sometimes used by the poets where a prose writer would employ the Gerund, or Gerundive: as,

*Necquicquam . . . vitabis . . . celerem sequi Ajacem*, In vain wilt thou try to avoid Ajax swift to pursue.—Hor.

(*Celer sequi* = *celer ad sequendum*.)

*Non lenis precibus fata recludere Mercurius*, Mercury not to be moved by prayers to open the door of fate.—Hor.

(*Lenis fata recludere* = *lenis ad fata recludenda*.)

## 3. Accusative and Infinitive.

§ 507. Verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, and hearing, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive in the proposition which they introduce: as,

*Thales Milesius aquam dixit esse initium rerum*, Thales of Miletus affirmed that water was the first principle of all things.—Cic.

*Sentit animus se moveri*, The soul is conscious that it moves.—Cic.

*Non enim ambrōsia deos aut nectare laetari arbitror*, For I do not believe the gods delight in nectar and ambrosia.—Cic.

*Ultimas terras lustrasse Pythagoram, Democritum, Platōnem accipimus*, We have been informed that Pythagoras, Democritus and Plato travelled through the remotest parts of the earth.—Cic.

*Scio tibi ita placere*, I know that to be your opinion.—Cic.

(The subject or Accusative before *placere* is involved in *ita*.)

§ 508. Not only Verbs of the above kind, but Phrases equivalent or analogous to them are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as.

*Ea erat confessio, caput rerum Romam esse*, That was a confession (= to confess) that Rome was at the head of affairs.—Liv.

*Auctores sumus tutam ibi majestatem Romani nominis fore*, We will answer for it that the majesty of the Roman name shall be safe there.—Liv.

*Caesarem certiores faciunt sese non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere*, They inform Caesar that they find it no easy matter to beat off the violence of the enemy from their towns.—Caes.

§ 509. Also many Verbs denoting various feelings of the mind, as, *joy, grief, wonder, &c.*, may be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Salvum te advenire gaudeo*, I rejoice that you come in safety.—Plaut.

*Inferiores non dolere* (debent) *se a suis superari*, Inferiors ought not to be grieved at being surpassed by their friends.—Cic.

*Miror te ad me nihil scribere*, I am surprised that you write nothing to me.—Cic.

*Peccasse enim se non anguntur, objurgari moleste ferunt*, They are not sorry that they have done wrong; they take it amiss that they are found fault with.—Cic.

Obs. 1. But the above Verbs more frequently take *quod*, with Indicative or Subjunctive (v. § 488).

Obs. 2. Concerning the construction of *pudet, piget, &c.*, v. § 241.

§ 510. Various impersonal phrases, such as *certum est*, it is certain; *manifestum est*, it is manifest; *aequum, justum est*, it is fair or just; *opus, necesse est*, it is necessary; *sequitur*, it follows; *constat*, it is acknowledged; *expedit*, it is expedient, are followed by the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Certum est liberos a parentibus amari*, It is certain that children are loved by their parents.—Quint.

*Quae liberum scire aequum est adulescentem*, Things which it is proper a young gentleman should know.—Ter.

*Constat ad salutem civium inventas esse leges*, It is acknowledged that laws were devised for the safety of citizens.—Cic.

*Necesse est igitur legem haberi in optimis rebus*, It is a necessary consequence then, that law should be reckoned among the best of things.—Cic.

*Legem brevem esse oportet, quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur*, A law ought to be short, that it may the more readily be comprehended by the illiterate.—Cic.

*Cato negat jus esse, eum qui miles non sit, cum hoste pugnare*, Cato affirms that it is not right for one who is not a soldier to fight with the enemy.—Cic.

*Nec sequitur illico esse causas immutabiles*, Nor does it follow therefore that there are immutable causes.—Cic.

Obs. Restat, reliquum est, it remains; proximum est, the next thing is, and the like; as also sometimes, *sequitur*, it follows; *expedit*, it is expedient; *mos* (moris) est, it is a custom, are often followed by *ut* and the Subjunctive: as.

*Proximum est ut doceam deorum providentiā mundum administrāri, The next thing is for me to show that the world is managed by the providence of the gods.—Cic.*

*Si haec enuntiatio vera non est, sequitur ut falsa sit, If this proposition is not true, it follows that it is false.—Cic.*

§ 511. Verbs signifying willingness, or permission (including jubeo), and the like, with their contraries, govern the Accusative and Infinitive: as,

*Majores corpora juvenum firmari labore voluerunt, Our ancestors wished the bodies of youth to be strengthened by hardship.—Cic.*

*Senatui placet, Crassum Syriam obtinere, It is the pleasure of the senate that Crassus should hold Syria.—Cic.*

*Verres hominem corripit jussit, Verres ordered the man to be arrested.—Cic. (comp. § 451).*

*Cupio me esse clementem, I desire that I may be merciful.—Cic.*

*Dilectum haberi prohibebo, I will not suffer the levy to be held.—Liv.*

*Obs. 1. Verbs of wishing are in many cases followed by ut and the Subjunctive, or the Subjunctive alone (v. § 443, seq.).*

*Obs. 2. Impero is sometimes used like jubeo (v. § 451), with the Accusative and Infinitive: as,*

*Has omnes acturias imperat fieri, He orders that all these (vessels) be made swift-sailers.—Caes.*

#### 4. Verbs which govern the Infinitive without the Accusative Case.

§ 512. Verbs signifying willingness or determination, ability, lawfulness, duty, or the like, with their contraries, govern the Infinitive: as,

*Studeo ex te audire quid sentias, I desire to hear from you what you think.—Cic.*

*Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest, Friendship can only exist between the good.—Cic.*

*Optat arare cuballus, The nag would like to draw the plough.—Hor. (cf. § 447).*

*Dici beatus ante obitum nemo debet, No one ought to be called happy before his decease.—Ov.*

*Caesar bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit, Caesar resolved to make war upon the Germans.—Caes.*

*Obs. 1. When a wish respecting the Subject is expressed, either the Infinitive alone or the Accusative and Infinitive may be used: thus, instead of Cupio esse clementem, we may have Cupio me esse clementem (Cic.).*

*Obs. 2. The Infinitive is also used after certain equivalent phrases: as, (mihi) in animo est, certum est, consilium est, It is my purpose, &c.: as, Certum est (mihi) omnia audacter libereque dicere, It is my determination to say everything boldly and freely.—Cic.*

*Consilia inuit reges Laedæamoniū tollere, He formed designs for doing away with the kings of the Laedæmonians.—Nep.*

§ 513. When a predicative Adjective or Substantive is attached to the Infinitive Mood in the above cases, it agrees in case with the Subject of the Infinitive: as,

*Ubi voles pater esse, ibi esto, When you choose to be the father, then you must be so.—Plaut.*

*Cupio in tantis reipublicae periculis, me non dissolutum videri, I am desirous in such perils as menace the state, that I may not seem lax.—Cic.*

*Licuit esse etioso Themistocli, Themistocles might have been inactive.—Cic.*

*Obs. The Imperfect and not the Perfect Infinitive (as in English), is used after the above Verbs: thus, I wished to have been consul, is Volui me consulem esse, not fuisse: see last example.*

§ 514. Verbs signifying to begin, continue, or leave off; also to be or become accustomed, govern the Infinitive: as,

*Incipe, parve puer, matrem cognoscere risu, Begin, little child, to know thy mother by her smile!—Virg.*

*Illud jam mirari desino, That I am now ceasing to wonder at.—Cic.*

*Qui mentiri solet, peccare consuevit, He who is in the habit of lying, has learned to be a perjurer.—Cic.*

§ 515. The Verbs to seem, to be thought, said, believed (videor, putor, credor, dicor, feror, nuntior, etc.), are rarely used impersonally as in English (see § 232, Obs.): thus we find,

*Lectitavisse Platonem studiosè Demosthenes (not Demosthenem) dicitur, Demosthenes is said to have been a most diligent reader of Plato.—Cic.*

*Luna (not lunam) solis lumine collustrari putatur, It is thought that the moon is illumined by the sun's light.—Cic.*

*Malum mihi videtur esse mors (not mortem), I am of opinion that death is an evil.—Cic.*

#### 5. The Infinitive in exclamations.

§ 516. The Infinitive is used in exclamations to denote surprise, without any preceding Verb being expressed: as,

*Mene desistere victam, (To think that) I should give over as vanquished!—Virg.*

#### 6. Historical Infinitive.

§ 517. The historical writers often use the Imperfect Infinitive instead of the corresponding tenses of the Indicative: as,

*Interea Manlius in Etruria plebem sollicitare, Meanwhile Manlius in Etruria was stirring up the common people to insurrection.—Sall.*

*Suo quisque metu pericula metiri, Each one was measuring the extent of the danger by his own fears.—Sall.*

*Obs. This use of the Infinitive is most frequent in descriptive passages: where it serves rather to place a circumstance in a lively manner before the eye, than merely to state that it took place.*



## 7. Circumlocution for the Future Infinitive.

§ 518. Instead of the Future Infinitive, whether in the Active or Passive Voice, we often find *fore ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

*Clamabant homines, fore ut ipsi se dii immortales ulciscerentur, The men exclaimed, that the immortal gods themselves would avenge them.—Cic.*

Especially of course when a Verb wants the Supine: as,

*Spero fore ut contingat id nobis, I hope such a piece of good fortune may fall to us.—Cic.*

§ 519. Infinitive in Oratio Obliqua: see § 466.

## CHAPTER XLIX.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 520. The Participle expresses the same notion as the Verb to which it belongs, but in the form of an Adjective. It does not contain the *Copula* (§ 213, Obs. 1) involved in it, and is chiefly used in the way of Apposition: as,

*Dionysius, cultros metuens tonsoris, candenti carbone sibi adurebat capillum, Dionysius, being afraid of barbers' razors, singed his hair with a live coal.—Cic.*

§ 521. Active Participles govern the same Case as the Verb to which they belong: as,

*Ipsa sua Didō concidit usa manu, Didō fell, by (Lit., using) her own hand.—Ov.*

*Puer bene sibi fidens, A youth trusting well to himself.—Cic.*

Obs. When a Participle is used as an Adjective denoting disposition or capacity for, it governs the Genitive: see § 277.

§ 522. The Latin Verb is deficient in its Participles, having in the Active Voice only an *Imperfect* and a *Future*; and in the Passive only a *Perfect* and the Gerundive Participle of *Necessity*. Thus the Active Voice has no *Perfect* Participle and the Passive no *Imperfect*.

Obs. 1. Deponents are the only Verbs in Latin which form a *Perfect* Participle Active: as, *adeptus, having acquired*; *usus, having used*, &c. (See § 103.)

Obs. 2. The lack of an *Imperfect* Participle Passive is in some cases supplied by the Gerundive: as,

*Multi in equis parandis adhibent curam, in amicis eligendis negligentes sunt, Many take pains in getting horses (Lit. horses being got), but are careless in choosing friends.—Cic.*

This construction of the Gerundive is explained in § 537.

§ 523. The *Imperfect* Participle Active represents a thing as going on at the time spoken of: as,

*Curio ad focum sedenti magnum auri pondus Samnites quum attulissent, repudiati sunt, When the Samnites brought Curio as he was sitting at his fireside a great weight of gold, their offers were rejected.—Cic.*

*Scripta tua jam diu expectans non audeo tamen flagitare, While expecting for a long while past your writings, I yet do not venture to importune you for them.—Cic.*

Obs. Instead of the *Imperfect* Participle, *quum* with the Past-*Imperfect* is often used: as,

*Audivi quum diceret, I heard him saying.—Cic.*

§ 524. The *Perfect* Participle Active represents a Person as having done something at the time spoken of. It is found only in Deponents and in certain Active Verbs.

The following is a list of the principal Active Verbs which have a *Perfect* Participle with an Active sense:—

Audeo,	I dare,	ausus,	having dared.
Gaudeo,	I rejoice,	gavisus,	having rejoiced, rejoicing.
Soleo,	I am wont,	solutus,	having been wont.
Fido (& comp.),	I trust,	fusus,	having trusted.
Juro,	I swear,	juratus,	having sworn.
Coeno,	I dine,	coenatus,	having dined.
Prandeo,	I breakfast,	pransus,	having breakfasted.
Nubo,	I am married,	nupta	having been married to.
Odi,	I hate,	osus	having hated, hating.

§ 525. Some Deponents use their *Perfect* Participle both in an Active and a Passive sense: the following are among the principal ones that do so:—

Adipiscor	I attain to,	adeptus, having attained, or having been attained.
Comitor,	I accompany,	comitatus, &c.
Confiteor,	I confess,	confessus, &c.
Metior,	I measure,	mensus.
Expior,	I try,	expertus.
Meditor,	I practise,	meditatus.
Testor,	I call to witness,	testatus.
Moderor,	I control,	moderatus.
Populor,	I devastate,	populatus.
Partior,	I divide,	partitus.
Paciscor,	I bargain,	pactus.

§ 526. The want of a *Perfect* Participle in other Verbs is supplied in two ways:



(A.) By the Perfect Participle *Passive* in agreement with its Substantive as an *Ablative Absolute*.

(B.) By *quum* with the Subjunctive Mood.

(A.)

Mucius solus in castra Porsennae venit, cumque interficere, *proposita sibi morte, cunctus est*, Mucius went alone into the camp of Porsenna, and having set death *Lit., death having been set*, before his eyes, attempted to slay him.—Cic.

Cognito Caesaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit, *Having heard of Caesar's arrival, Ariovistus sent ambassadors to him*.—Caes.

Dextra Hercules data omen se accipere ait, *Hercules offering his right hand, said he accepted the omen*.—Liv.

(B.)

Epaninondas *quum vicisset* Laedaeamōnios apud Mantinēam, atque ipse gravi vulnere se exanimari *videret*, quaesivit, salvisne esse clipeus, *Epaninondas, having conquered the Lacedaemonians in the battle of Mantinea, and seeing himself to be dying of a bad wound, asked if his shield were safe*.—Cic.

(For more examples see § 332.)

Obs. Similarly the want of an Imperfect Participle in the Passive may be supplied by *quum* and the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive: as,

*Quum civitas in labore assiduus reficiendae urbis teneretur*, *The people being occupied in the incessant labour of restoring the city*.—Liv.

(Similarly with *dum* and the Present Indicative, § 393.)

§ 527. The *Future Participle Active* is used to denote (1) simple futurity; (2) intention or purpose: as,

Delli moritūre, *O Delli, who art (one day) to die*.—Hor.

Perseus rediit, belli casum de integro tentaturus, *Perseus returned, intending to try the chances of war afresh*.—Liv.

Obs. The Future Participle occurs most frequently in combination with the verb *sum*.

§ 528. The Neuter of the Perfect Participle is sometimes used as an Abstract Substantive: as,

Nam priusquam incipias *consulto*; et ubi consulueris, *matūre facto* opus est, *For before you make a beginning, you want counsel; and when you have taken counsel, you want prompt action*.—Sall.

Nihil *pensi* neque *moderati* habere, *They exercised no reflection, no restraint*.—Sall.

§ 529. The use of the *Gerundive Participle* is explained in the next chapter.

§ 530. *Frequent use of Participles*.—Participles are very often used in Latin, so as to avoid the use of Conjunctions where several predications are united in a sentence: as,

*Vieta pictas jacet*, *Piety is vanquished and lies prostrate*.—Ov.

Rursus in obliquum *verso* perrumpit arātro, *Again he turns the plough, and breaks up (the soil) in a cross direction*.—Virg.

Tyrtaeus carmina *composita* exercitui *recitavit*, *Tyrtaeus composed songs and repeated them to the army*.—Justin.

## CHAPTER L.—THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE PARTICIPLE.

§ 531. The Gerund is a Verbal Substantive used in all cases except the Nominative and Vocative: as, *rēgendi*, of ruling; *rēgendo*, to, for, or by ruling; *ad rēgendum*, for the purpose of ruling.

Obs. Instead of a Nominative Case of the Gerund, the Infinitive Mood is used (see § 505).

§ 532. The Cases of Gerunds have the same construction as the corresponding Cases of ordinary Substantives: as,

*Gen.*—Omnis *loquendi* (§ 263) *ēlegantia* expolitur scientiā *literarum*, *Every kind of elegance of speech is made more refined by an acquaintance with literature*.—Cic.

*Practereamus igitur praecepta* *Latine loquendi* (§ 263), *Let us then pass over the rules for speaking Latin*.—Cic.

*Dat.*—Aqua *nitrosa utilis est bibendo* (§ 298), *Water full of natron is useful for drinking*.—Plin.

*Acc.*—Breve tempus *aetatis satis longum est ad bene honesteque vivendum* (§ 248), *The brief time of life is long enough for living virtuously and honourably*.—Cic.

*Abl.*—Orator *in dicendo* (§ 331) *exercitatus*, *An orator practised in speaking*.—Cic.

Obs. The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions: otherwise the Imperfect Infinitive is used: see § 506 sqq.

§ 533. The Gerund as a Verbal Substantive still retains the power of governing its proper case as a Verb: as,

*Parsimonia est scientia vitandi sumptus supervacuos, aut ars re familiari moderate utendi*, *Economy is the science of avoiding needless expense; or the art of using one's income with moderation*.—Sen.

Diogenes *dicebat*, *artem se tradere vera ac falsa dijudicandi*, *Diogenes professed to impart the art of distinguishing between the true and the false*.—Cic.

*Publica prodendo tua necquicquam serves*, *By betraying the public wealth, you would in vain try to preserve your own*.—Liv.

§ 534. The *Gerundive Participle* signifies that a thing is necessary or proper to be done. It is always Passive in

meaning, whether coming from a Verb strictly Passive or from a Deponent. It has the following modes of construction:—

- (A.) It is used in the Nominative Case along with the Verb *est, sunt, etc.*, in agreement with a Substantive, to signify that something ought to be done.
- (B.) It is used (impersonally) in the Neuter Gender along with the Verb *est*, with the same force as in the former case.
- (C.) It is used in all Cases except the Nominative or Vocative, in agreement with a Substantive, as equivalent to a Gerund governing the Accusative.—NOTE. The agent or doer in both (A) and (B) is put in the Dative Case.

§ 535. (A.) If the verb governs an Accusative, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative of its substantive: as,

*Diligentia est cōlenda, We must practise diligence.*—Cic.

Obs. Such a construction as *poenas timendum est, we must fear punishment* (Lucr.), is exceptional, and is borrowed from the Greek.

§ 536. (B.) If the verb governs any other case than the Accusative the Gerundive is used impersonally with *est* in the Nominative Singular Neuter: as,

*Resistendum senectūti est....pugnandum tanquam contra morbum, sic contra senectutem, We must resist old-age; we must combat with old-age as with a disease.*—Cic.

*Corpōri subvēniendum est, We must aid the body.*—Cic.

*Utendum erit verbis iis, quibus jam consuetudo nostra non utitur, We shall have to use words which our present usage does not employ.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. In such cases the Gerundive Participle governs the same Case as the Verb to which it belongs. (See examples.)

Obs. 2. The Dative of the Agent is frequently omitted. (See examples.)

§ 537. (C.) The Gerundive is frequently used instead of the Gerund, when the verb governs the Accusative. The following changes then take place:—

1. The Accusative is put in the same case as the Gerund.
2. The Gerund is changed into the Gerundive.
3. The Gerundive being an Adjective agrees with its Substantive in gender, number, and case: thus

*Ars puēros educandi difficilis est*

becomes

*Ars puērōrum educandōrum difficilis est*

in the following way: (1.) The Substantive *pueros* is put in the same case as the Gerund *educandi*; consequently *puerorum*. (2.) The Gerund *educandi* is changed into the Gerundive *educandus, a, um*. (3.) The Gerundive is made to agree with *puerorum* in gender, number, and case; consequently, *educandorum*. For example:

*Nihil Xenōphonti tam rēgale vidētur, quam stūdiū agrī cōlendi, Nothing seems to Xenophon so princely as the pursuit of tilling the soil.*—Cic.

*Rēgulus retinendi officiī causā cruciatum subiit voluntarium, Regulus for the sake of keeping to his duty submitted to voluntary torture.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. So also are used the Gerundive Participles of *ator, fruor, pōlor, vescor, fungor*: as,

*Ad agrum fruendum invitāt atque allectat senectus, Old age invites and tempts us to the enjoyment of the country.*—Cic.

*Hostes in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vērānt, The enemy had got hopes of obtaining possession of the camp.*—Caes.

Obs. 2. The Gerund is used in preference to the Gerundive, when the use of the latter would cause any ambiguity, especially when the Object of the Verbal Substantive is a neuter Adjective: as,

(*Pars honesti*) in *tribuendo suum cuique versatur, A part of virtue consists in giving to every one his own.*—Cic.

§ 538. The Dative of the Gerundive is very often used with its Substantive to denote a Purpose or Result (§ 299): as,

*Valērius consul cōmītia collēgae subrōgādo habuit, Valerius the consul held the elections for choosing him a fresh colleague.*—Liv.

*Decemviri lēgibus scribundis, Decemvirs for framing a code of laws.*—Liv.

*Tibērius quāsi firmandae vālētūdīni in Campāniam concessit, Tibērius withdrew into Campania ostensibly for the purpose of recruiting his health.*—Tac.

(But here Cic. would have written *ad firmandam valetudinem*.)

Obs. 1. This use of the Gerundive is most frequent in describing the function of an official person or body: as in the expressions, *Triumviri agris dandis, &c.* (See examples above.)

Obs. 2. To this head belong the phrases, *esse solvendo* (sc., aeri, for which *aere* also occurs, alieno), *to be capable of paying, solvent*; *onēri ferendo esse, to be adequate to the bearing of the burden*.

§ 539. The Gerundive is sometimes found with a similar meaning in the Genitive Case: as,

*Rēgium impērium, quod initio conservandae libertātis atque augendae reipublicae fuerat, The kingly government, which at the outset, had tended to the preservation of liberty and the increase of the Commonwealth.*—Sall.

Obs. This is to be regarded as a Genitive of Quality (§ 276).

§ 540. The following usages have been differently explained:—

In castra vēnērunt causā purgandi sui, *They came into the camp for the purpose of clearing themselves.*—Caes.

(Where we might have expected *purgandorum*.)

Non vēreor nē quis hoc me vestri adhortandi (adhortandorum) causā magnifice loqui existimet, *I have no fear that any one will think I am herein speaking boastfully for the sake of encouraging you.*—Liv.

(Aliquid facere) eorum (= ca § 537, Obs. 2), quae sēcundum naturam sunt, adipiscendi causā, *To do a thing for the sake of attaining to those things which are in accordance with nature.*—Cic.

Permissā.....licentiā diripiendi (= diripiendorum) pōmōrum, *Giving leave to pilfer the fruit.*—Suet.

Obs. It is possible that the Gerund may in the above cases be treated as an ordinary Substantive, as we say, "The clearing of themselves," "The doing of those things which are, &c."

§ 541. The Gerund (or Gerundive) is sometimes used in the Ablative Case, after the manner of an Ablative Absolute when it has the force of an Imperfect Tense: as,

L. Cornelius, complexus Appium, non cui simulabat consulendo, dirēmit certāmen, *Lucius Cornelius embracing Appius,—his concern being in reality for another than he feigned,—put an end to the dispute.*—Liv.

Ut non pētisse Saguntinos, sed serie, finitimis domitis gentibus, jungendoque, tractus ad id bellum vidēri posset, *So that he might seem not to have singled out the Saguntines for attack, but in the natural order, after having subdued the neighbouring tribes, and as he was linking them together, to have been dragged into the said war.*—Liv.

(In the above examples, consulendo, jungendo = quum consuleret, jungeret.)

## CHAPTER LI.—THE SUPINES.

§ 542. The two Supines in *um* and *u* are properly the Accusative and Ablative Cases of Verbal Substantives of the Fourth Declension.

§ 543. The Supine in *um* is used only after Verbs signifying motion, and denotes a Purpose. It is thus equivalent to *ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

Fabius Pictor Delphos ad oraculum missus est scitatum quibus precibus deos possent placare, *Fabius Pictor was sent to Delphi, to the oracle; in order to enquire by what prayers they might propitiate the gods.*—Liv.

Cubitum ire (or, of several persons, cubitum discēdere), *To go to bed.*—Cic.

Themistocles.....Argos habitatum concessit, *Themistocles retired to live at Argos.*—Nep.

Obs. The phrase *ire perditum*, to set about deliberately to destroy (Cic., Sall.), should be noted.

§ 544. The Supine in *u* (which is properly an Ablative of Manner, § 311) is used after such Adjectives as *jucundus*, pleasant; *facilis*, easy; *honestus*, honourable; *credibilis*, credible; *mirabilis*, wonderful; and the like, with their contraries, to denote in what respect they are predicated of anything: as,

Quid est tam jucundum cognitu atque auditu, quam sapientibus sententiis gravibusque verbis ornata oratio? *What is so delightful, whether in the learning or the hearing, as speech adorned with wise sentiments and weighty words?*—Cic.

Id dictu quam re facilius, *That were easier in the saying than in the doing.*—Liv.

Nefas est dictu, *There were an impiety in so saying!*—Cic.

Obs. 1. Tacitus uses the Supine in *u* instead of the Infinitive Mood after the Verb *pudet*: as,  
*Pudet dictu, I am ashamed as I say it!*—Agr. 32.

Obs. 2. The Supine in *u* may often be translated by the English Infinitive Mood: as,  
*Mirabile dictu, Marvellous to relate!*—Virg.

## CHAPTER LII.—ADVERBS.

§ 545. Adverbs qualify Verbs, Adjectives, and (other) Adverbs. To these parts of speech they sustain a corresponding relation to that of the Adjective to the Substantive; as in the following examples:

Tantus amor, *So great love.*  
(Substantive qualified by Adjective.)

Adeo amare, *To love to such a degree.*

Adeo amans, *So loving (affectionate).*

Adeo amanter, *So lovingly.*

(Verb, Adjective, and Adverb, qualified by corresponding Adverb.)

§ 546. In the following cases an Adverb is found joined with a Substantive:

(1.) In the case of the Numeral Adverbs *iterum*, *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., as denoting the number of times an office has been held: as,

Consul iterum, tertium, *Consul for the second, third time, etc.*—Liv. (Where in Greek the word *consul* would appear as a participle: ὑπατεύων.)

- (2.) Some Adverbs of place: *as, circa* (very often), *extrinsecus*, and some others: *as*,

*Multae circa civitates, Many surrounding states.—Liv.*  
*Gravibus superne ictibus conflictabantur, They encountered severe blows from above.—Tac.*

- (3.) With some Substantives used participially: *as*,  
*Populus late rex, A nation widely ruling.—Virg.*  
 (A poetical construction.)

- (4.) Occasionally with other Adverbs: *as*,  
*Inter duo simul bella, Between two wars going on at once.—Liv.*  
*Nulla magnopere clade accepta, No serious disaster having been suffered.—Liv.*  
*Paene miles, Hardly (yet) a common soldier.—Cic.*

§ 547. *Partim*.—The Adverb *partim* (originally accus. of pars) is often used as the Subject of a sentence; especially where *partim . . . partim = alii . . . alii*: *as*,

*Eorum autem beneficiorum partim ejusmodi sunt ut ad universos cives pertineant, partim singulos ut attingant, Of those acts of beneficence, some are of a nature to extend to one's fellow-countrymen generally, others to affect individuals only.—Cic.*

*Obs.* In the above example *partim* governs the Genitive (of *beneficiorum*) according to § 271.

*N.B.* Concerning the use of a neuter Adjective as an Adverb, see § 344.

§ 548. The Comparative of Adverbs sometimes governs the Ablative in the same manner as that of Adjectives: *as*,

*Dicto citius, tamēda aequora placat, Quicker than a word he stills the swelling waters.—Virg.*

*Quid prius dicam solitis parentis laudibus, What shall I tell of before the wonted praises of the father?—Hor.*

*Obs.* 1. In prose *quam* is much more frequent: *as*,

*Odēram multo prius hunc quam illum ipsum Clodium, I hated him far worse than that (wretch) Clodius himself.—Cic.*

*Obs.* 2. *Amplius, plus, minus*, are often joined to numerals without influencing their construction: *as*,

*Minus duo millia hominum, Less than two thousand men.—Liv.*  
*Milites Romani saepe plus dimidiat mensis cibaria ferebant, Roman soldiers often carried more than half a month's provisions.—Cic.*

§ 549. Adverbs are compared together in the same way as Adjectives (see § 350): *as*,

*Avidius quam consultius, More eagerly than advisedly.—Tac.*

*Vehementius quam cautē (= cautius), More violently than cautiously.—Tac.*

§ 550. Some Adverbs derived from Adjectives govern a Dative: see § 299.

§ 551. *Sic, ita*.—*Sic* is derived from *hic* and *ita* from *is*; and the two Adverbs strictly differ from each other as do the Pronouns from which they are derived. Thus *sic* takes the place of a description, while *ita* simply makes reference to something in the context: *as*,

*Macte virtute puer: sic itur ad astra, A blessing on thy valour, boy! Thus do men go heavenwards.—Virg.*

(Compare the well-known *Sic vos non vobis*, etc.)

*Ut binae regum facies, ita corpora gentis, As there are two species of kings [queen-bees], so there are sorts among their subjects.—Virg.*

*Ut quisque est vir optimus, ita difficillime esse alios improbos suspicatur, Just in proportion to a man's excellence [in that proportion] does he find most difficulty in suspecting others to be evil.—Cic.*

*Obs.* From the two preceding examples it will be seen that *ita* is the regular correlative of *ut*.

§ 552. An Adverb occasionally appears as Predicate after the Verb *to be*: see § 213, *Obs.* 2.

## CHAPTER LIII.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ 553. Prepositions serve to show the relation of one Substantive to another, or to some other word in the sentence.

§ 554. Some Prepositions are found with the Accusative only; others with the Ablative only; some with the Accusative or Ablative, according to the sense; and some with either the Accusative or Ablative indiscriminately.

*Obs.* *Tenus* is sometimes found with the Genitive: see § 557.

§ 555. Lists of the Prepositions, with the cases they govern, are given in §§ 134-137. The following are the principal uses of the several Prepositions. For further details the student is referred to the Dictionary.

### § 556. I. With the Accusative only.

1. *Ad*.—*To, at, or near; for, in relation to, in comparison with*: *as*,

*Ventum erat ad Vestae (sc. aedem), We had come to the temple of Vesta.—Hor.*

*Ad quintum lapidem, By the fifth milestone.—Nep*

Ad Veios, *Before the walls of Veii.*—Liv.

Omnes ad unum, *All to a single man.*—Cic.

Ad unguem, *To the very nail, i. e. perfectly.*—Hor.

Ad nuptias cōquēre, *To cook for a wedding-feast.*—Plaut.

Natus ad agendum, *Born for action.*—Cic.

Agere ad praescriptum.—*To act according to express rule.*—Caes.

Vir bonus et non illiteratus, sed nihil ad Persium, *A respectable man and no mean scholar, but nothing (in comparison) to Persius.*—Cic.

Obs. Ad Rōmam, *before the walls of Rome, in the vicinity of Rome,* must be distinguished from Rōmae, *actually at Rome.* Before numerals ad is occasionally an Adverb; as,

Oecsis ad hominum millibus quatuor, *As many as 4000 being slain.*—Caes.

Ad duo millia et trēcenti, *As many as 2300.*—Liv.

2. **Adversus, adversum.**—Used of motion, direction, disposition, *towards, or against* : as

Adversus montem, *Towards or up a hill.*—Caes.

Pietas justitia adversus deos (est), *Piety is justice in relation to the gods.*—Cic.

Adversus lēges, *Contrary to the laws.*—Cic.

Adversus vēterem impēratōrem comparābitur, *He will be matched against a veteran general.*—Liv.

Obs. Adversus differs from contra in that it does not, like the latter, always signify *opposition* : from erga, in having a greater variety of applications (see No. 9).

3. **Ante.**—*Before* ; of place, time, comparison : as,

Ante ostium stare, *To stand before the door.*—Ter.

Ante urbem conditam, *Before the building of the city.*—Cic.

Ante omnes carissimus, *Before all most beloved.*—Nep.

Obs. Note especially the phrase ante diem (A.D.) in giving the day of the month : as, ante diem XIII Kāendas Jānuārias (*the 20th of December*), where the preposition strictly belongs to Kāendas, but is made to govern diem as well.

4. **Āpud.**—*Near* ; in the presence of ; in the writings of : as,

Āpud Mantinēam, *In the neighbourhood of Mantinea.*—Nep.

N.B. Ad is more frequent in this sense

Āpud Laecam, *In the house of Laeca.*—Cic.

Verba āpud sēnātum facere, *To make a speech before the senate.*—Cic.

Āpud Xēnōphontem, *In (the writings of) Xenophon.*—Cic.

Obs. Āpud is sometimes used with names of towns in the sense of *at* or *in* : as,

Āpud urbem Nōlam, *In the city of Nola.*—Tac.

5. **Circum, circā.**—*Around, about, near about.* These forms are used somewhat differently

- (a.) **circum.**—More precise than *circā*, *all round* : as,

Urbes quae circum Cāpuam sunt, *The cities which lie round about Capua.*—Cic.

Terra circum axem se convertit, *The earth turns round upon its axis.*—Cic.

Ligato circum collum sudārio, *With a handkerchief tied round one's neck.*—Suet.

Omnium flagitiōrum (= flagitiosorum) circum se cātervas habēbat, *He had about his person gangs of all kinds of profligate characters.*—Sall.

- (b.) **circā.**—Of place ; *round, about, in the neighbourhood of* : of time ; *about, towards* : of number (= *circiter*) ; *near about* : of relation ; *about, respecting* : as,

Circa montem Amānum, *In the vicinity of Mount Amanus.*—Caes.

Lēgātōs circa vicinas gentes misit, *He dispatched ambassadors round to the neighbouring nations.*—Liv.

Circa eandem hōram, *About the same time of the day.*—Liv.

Circa quingentos Rōmānorum, *About 500 of the Romans.*—Liv.

Circa verba dissensio, *A dispute about words.*—Quint.

Obs. Circa in the sense of *concerning* (usually de with *abl.*) is chiefly found in later authors.

6. **Circiter.**—*About* : as a preposition used only with numerals : as,

Octāvam circiter hōram, *About the eighth hour.*—Hor.

N.B. But circiter is usually an Adverb.

7. **Cis, citrā.**—*On this side of ; without* (rare) : as,

Citra or cis Rhēnum, *On this side the Rhine.*—Caes.

Citrā spēciem, *Without* (lit. *on this side, on the wrong side of*) *beauty.*—Tac.

Citra fidem, *Beyond belief.*—Tac.

Obs. The form citra alone is used in the latter (figurative) sense.

8. **Contrā.**—*Opposite to ; against* : as,

Insulae tertium lātus est contra septentriones, *The third side of the island is opposite to (faces) the north.*—Caes.

Contra naturam, officium, *Contrary to nature, duty.*—Cic.

Contra Pōpulum Rōmānum conjūrāre, *To conspire against the Roman people.*—Caes.

Obs. For the distinction between contra and adversus see above.

9. **Ergā.**—*Towards* : of feeling or conduct : as,

Divina bōnitas erga hōmīnes, *The divine goodness towards man.*—Cic.

Obs. Erga is almost always used of friendly feelings or conduct ; contra being used of hostility.

10. **Extrā.**—*Outside of, free from ; except* (rare) : as,

Extra portam Collinam, *Outside the Colline gate.*—Cic.

Extra noxiam, *Free from guilt.*—Ter.

Extra dūcem paucosque praetōrca, *Excepting their leader and a few besides.*—Cic.

11. **Infra.**—*Beneath* ; of place or relation : as,

Infra coelum et sidērā, *Beneath the sky and stars.*—Tac.

Infra se, *Beneath oneself* (in figurative sense).—Cic.

12. **Inter.**—*Between, among ; during* (esp. with gerunds) : as,

Inter Pādum atque Alpes, *Between the Po and the Alps.*—Liv.

Inter tela versāri, *To be in the midst of weapons.*—Cic.

Inter falcārios, *In the quarter (or street) of the scythe-makers.*—Cic.

Inter hōram tertiam et quartam, *Between the third and fourth hour.*—Liv.

Haec inter coenam dictāvi, *The above I dictated in the course of supper.*—Cic.

Inter bibendum, *During drinking.*—Just.

Hi omnes inter se differunt, *These all differ from one another.*—Caes.

Puēri inter se amant, *The boys love each other.*—Cic.

Quod inter nos liceat, *Between ourselves.*—Cic.

13. **Intrā.**—*Within* ; of place, time, or any other relation : as,

Intra mūros, *Within the walls.*—Cic.

Intra hōs sex menses, *Within the last six months.*—Phaedr.

Intra centum, *Within one hundred.*—Liv.

Intra lēgem, *Within the law* (the limit prescribed by law).—Cic.

14. **Juxtā.**—*Hard by ; next to* : as,

Juxta mūrū, *Close to the wall.*—Caes.

Hōmo juxta Varrōnem doctissimus, *The most learned man after Varro.*—Gell.

Obs. Juxta denotes closer proximity than ad or prope.

15. **Ob.**—*Before* (of place) ; *on account of* : as,

Mors ob oculos saepe versata est, *Death was often before his eyes.*—Cic.

Ob rem judicandam pēcūniam accipere, *To take a bribe for one's judicial vote.*—Cic.

Mortem ob rempublicam obire, *To encounter death on account of the state.*—Tac.

16. **Pēnes.**—*In the possession, or power of* : as,

Quem pēnes est potestas, *To whom belongs the power.*—Cic.

Pēnes te es, *Are you in your senses?*—Hor.

Hi (servi) centum dies pēnes accusatorem (erant), *These slaves remained in the hands of the accuser one hundred days.*—Cic.

Obs. Penes is often put after its case, especially a Relative.

17. **Pēr.**—*Through, throughout, during ; by means of ; in the way of ; on account of ; by* (in oaths) : as,

Per agros vāgari, *To roam over the country.*—Liv.

Per hiemem, *Throughout the winter.*—Cato.

Per indūtiās, *In time of truce.*—Liv.

Per explorātōres cognoscere, *To learn by means of scouts.*—Caes.

Per iram facere (aliquid), *To do anything through anger.*—Cic.

Per summum dādecus vitam amittere, *To lose life in circumstances of extreme disgrace.*—Cic.

Per aetātem, *Through (on account of) age.*—Cic.

Per deos atque hōmīnes, *By gods and men.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. The meaning on account of is rare.

Obs. 2. In adjurations per is often separated from its Accusative : as,

Per ego te deos oro, *By the gods I entreat you!*—Ter.

Per ego te, inquit, fili, quaecunque jūra liberos jungunt parentibus, prēcōr, *By whatever claims bind children to their parents, I entreat thee, my son!*—Liv.

18. **Pōne.**—*Behind* (rare) : as,

Pōne castra, *Behind (in the rear of) the camp.*—Liv.

Vinctae pōne tergum mānus, *Hands bound behind the back.*—Tac.

19. **Post.**—*Behind* (in lit. and fig. sense) ; *after* : as,

Post me erat Aegina, ante Mēgara, *Behind me was Aegina, before me Megara.*—Sulpic. ap. Cic.

Post tergum, *Behind one's back.*—Caes.

Nēque erat Lȳdia post Chloen, *Nor was Lydia behind Chloe (in favour).*—Hor.

Post M. Brūtum prōconsulem, *After the proconsulate of M. Brutus.*—Cic.



Maxima post hominum memoria classis, *The largest fleet in (lit. since) the memory of men.*—Nep.

Obs. Post is usually preferred by classical writers to pone, which, as a preposition, became nearly obsolete.

20. **Praeter.**—*Along, past* (of motion); *besides, except, contrary to*: as,

Praeter castra Caesaris copias suas transduxit, *He marched his forces past the camp of Caesar.*—Caes.

Praeter ceteros laborare, *To labour beyond (more than) the rest.*—Cic.

Amicum tibi neminem esse praeter Lucillum, *I see you have no friend except Lucullus.*—Cic.

Praeter spem, opinionem, *Contrary to expectation.*—Cic.

21. **Prope.**—*Near to*; usually of place: as,

Prope oppidum, *Near to the town.*—Caes.

Prope lucem, *Towards daybreak.*—Suet.

Prope seditionem ventum est, *It came very near to a mutiny.*—Tac.

22. **Propter.**—*Near to*; *on account of* (the most frequent meaning): as,

Propter Platonis statuum consedimus, *We sat down near the statue of Plato.*—Cic.

Parere legibus propter metum, *To obey the laws on account of fear.*—Cic.

Obs. Propter sometimes follows its case.

23. **Secundum.**—*By, along*; *directly after, following upon*; *according to*: as,

Iter secundum mare facere, *To journey along the sea-coast.*—Cic.

Secundum vindemiam, *Directly after the vintage.*—Cato.

Vivere secundum naturam, *To live according to nature.*—Cic.

Secundum libertatem vindicias dare, *To grant a claim in favour of personal freedom.*—Liv.

24. **Supra.**—*Above* (in lit. or fig. sense), *beyond*: as,

Supra me Atticus 'acubuerat', infra Verrius, *Next above me sat Atticus, below me Verrius.*—Cic.

Ille supra segites navigat, *One sails over corn-fields.*—Ov.

Dux hostium cum exercitu supra caput est, *The enemy hovers over our head with an army.*—Sall.

Supra millia viginti, *Beyond (more than) 20,000.*—Liv.

Supra modum, *Beyond measure.*—Liv.

Obs. It is rarely used of time: as,

Paullo supra hanc memoriam, *A little before the present date.*—Caes.

25. **Trans.**—*Across, on the farther side of*: as,

Trans mare currunt, *They hurry across the sea.*—Hor.

Trans Tiberim habitat, *He lives on the farther side of the Tiber.*—Hor.

26. **Ultra.**—*Beyond*: as,

Cis Padum ultraque, *On the nearer and farther side of the Po.*—Liv.

Ultra modum, *Beyond a (certain) limit.*—Cic.

Ultra fas, *Beyond what is right.*—Hor.

Ne sutor ultra crepidam, *Let not the shoemaker go beyond his last.*—Vet. Prov.

27. **Versus.**—*Of direction towards* (only of local direction): as,

Arpinum versus, *Towards Arpinum.*—Cic.

Italiam versus navigare, *To sail in the direction of Italy.*—Sulpic. ap. Cic.

Obs. 1. Versus is often used in combination with *ad* or *in*: as,

T. Labienum ad Oceanum versus praececi iubet, *He directs T. Labienus to set out in the direction of the Ocean.*—Caes.

Obs. 2. Versus is put after its case, like the English *-wards*.

## § 557. II. With the Ablative only.

1. **Ab, a.**—*Of separation or origin, from, by*; *of proximity, on the side of*; *to denote the agent after a Passive Verb*: as,

Non longe a finibus Tolosatum absunt, *They are not far from the territories of the Tolosates.*—Caes.

Rem omnem a principio audies, *You shall hear the whole matter from the beginning.*—Ter.

A puero, *From a boy* (= *from boyhood*).—Cic.

Cornix est ab laeva, *The crow is on the left.*—Plaut.

Haece a nobis sunt, *These things are on our side.*—Cic.

Nihil est ab omni parte beatum, *Nothing is in every respect happy (from every point of view).*—Hor.

Ossa ejus clam in Attica ab amicis sepulta (sunt), *His bones were secretly buried in Attica by his friends.*—Nep.

A frigore laborare, *To suffer from cold.*—Plin.

A manu servus, *An amanuensis.*—Suet. (See also § 715.)

Obs. 1. Sometimes only the context can determine whether *ab* is used in the sense of *by* or *from*: as,

Postulatur a populo, *The demand is made by (or from) the people.*—Cic.

Obs. 2. In such expressions as *a manu* (servus), *ab epistolis*, etc., the preposition denotes the *province in which* service is rendered.

Obs. 3. *Ab* is used chiefly before consonants and *a* before vowels (including *h*) only: *abs* is rare, except in compounds.

Obs. 4. The primary meaning of this preposition appears to have denoted *origin*.



2. **Absque** (rare).—*Without* : as,

Absquē te esset, *Without you; were it not for you.*—Plaut.

Obs. According to Zumpt, *absque* occurs but once in Cicero, and there only for the sake of euphony.

3. **Cōram**.—*In the presence of* : as,

Cantābit vīcūs cōram latrōne viātor, *The empty-pocketed traveller will whistle in the presence of the highwayman.*—Hor.

4. **Cum**.—*With, along with* : as,

Esse cum telō, *To be (provided) with a weapon.*—Cic.

Cum pāce laxior annōna rēdiit, *Along with peace returned greater cheapness of provisions.*—Liv.

Ex sēmīne cum dēcimo rēdit, *There is a tenfold (lit. with a tenth) return from the seed.*—Varr.

Obs. 1. *Cum* is not used to introduce the instrument of an action : thus cum gladio interfectus est would not mean, he was slain with a sword, but he was slain having a sword with him.

Obs. 2. But *cum* is often used of the attendant circumstances, or characteristics of an action : as, Summa cum celeritate ad exercitum rēdiit, *He returned with the utmost speed to his army.*—Hirt.

Obs. 3. With the Ablatives of Pronouns *cum* is written as an enclitic : as, mecum, tecum, nobiscum, quibuscum, etc.

5. **Dē**.—*Down from, from* ; of time, during, in the course of ; of material, made of ; concerning : as,

De mūro se prōiecit, *He cast himself down from the wall.*—Caes.

Caupo de via Latīna, *An innkeeper from the Latin way.*—Cic.

Pauci de nostris cādunt, *A few from amongst our men fall.*—

Caes.

Diem de die prōferre, *To put off from day to day.*—Liv.

De die, de nocte, *By day, by night.*—Cic.

De tertiā vīgilia, *In the course of the third watch.*—Caes.

Niveo factum de marmōre signum, *A statue made of snow-white marble.*—Ov.

De republica (scripti libri), *Books written on the subject of the commonwealth.*—Cic.

Obs. The adverbial phrases, de novo, de integro, anew, afresh ; de improvīso, unexpectedly ; de industria, on purpose ; should be noted : also, de (Gallis, &c.) triumphare, to triumph for victories gained over (the Gauls, &c.).

6. **Ex, ē**.—*Out of, from* ; of time, immediately after ; of material, made out of ; on account of ; in pursuance of, in accordance with : as,

Sōlem e mundo tollere videntur, qui amicitiam e vita tollunt, *They seem to take the sun out of the world, who take friendship out of human life.*—Cic.

Ex equo cādere, *To fall from one's horse.*—Cic.

Stātim e somno lāvantur, *They (the Germans) bathe immediately on rising from sleep.*—Tac.

Cotta ex consūlatu est prōfectus in Galliam, *Immediately after his consulate, Cotta started for Gaul.*—Cic.

Quidam ex militibus, *(A certain) one of the soldiers.*—Caes.

Stātua ex aere facta, *A statue made of bronze.*—Cic.

Urbem e suo nōmine Rōmam jussit nōmināri, *He directed the city to be called Rome from his own name.*—Cic.

Quum esset ex aere aliēno commōta civitas, *The city being in a commotion on account of debt.*—Cic.

Ex litēris sēnātus supplicatio decrēta est, *A supplication is decreed in accordance with Caesar's dispatch.*—Caes.

Obs. Note also the phrases, e regione, over against ; ex aequo, in an equal degree ; ex improvīso, unexpectedly, &c.

7. **Prae**.—*Before ; because of ; in comparison with* : as,

Prae se grēgem āgens, *Driving the herd before him.*—Liv.

Prae se ferre, ostentare, *To make a public show of.*—Cic.

Prae maiore loqui (non) pōtuit, *He could not speak for grief.*—Cic.

Prae cōtēris Cato in sēnēctūte floruit, *Cato was distinguished above others in the character of an old man.*—Cic.

Obs. *Prae* in the sense of *because of* chiefly occurs in negative sentences.

8. **Pro**.—*Before, in front of ; instead of, on behalf of ; in consideration of ; in proportion to* : as,

Castra pro moenibus locata erant, *The camp had been pitched in front of the walls.*—Liv.

Pro suggestu (dicere), *To speak from the front of a platform.*—Caes.

Ego pro te molam, *I will grind for you.*—Ter.

Pro patria mori, *To die for one's country.*—Hor.

Pro vectura solvere, *To pay for freight.*—Cic.

Pro Caesaris in se beneficiis, *In consideration of Caesar's favours done to him.*—Caes.

Proelium atrocius quam pro nūmēro pugnantium, *A battle more sanguinary than might have been expected from the number of the combatants.*—Liv.

9. **Sine**.—*Without* : as,

Non sine dis, *Not without the help of the gods.*—Hor.

Nulla dies sine linea, *Not a day without a line.*

10. Tēnus.—*Up to, as far as* : as,

Cápulo tēnus abdīdit ensem, *He buried his sword up to the hilt.*—Virg.

Tauro tēnus, *As far as Mount Taurus.*—Cic.

Obs. 1. *Tenus* is sometimes found with the Genitive : as,

Crūrum tēnus, *Up to the legs.*—Virg.

Obs. 2. *Tenus* always follows its case.

## § 558. III. With the Accusative and Ablative.

1. In.—*In, into ; towards, until ; against.*

## (a.) With the Accusative : always implying motion or direction towards : as,

In coelum ascendēre, *To ascend into heaven.*—Cic.

Chōrus virtūtum in ēqualeum impōsitus, *A whole company of virtues put on the rack.*—Cic.

Belgae spectant in septentriones et orientem sōlem, *The Belgae face towards the north and east.*—Caes.

Dormiet in lūcem, *He will sleep till broad day.*—Hor.

Sōlis defectiones itemque lūnae praedicuntur in multos annos, *Eclipses of the sun and moon are foretold for many years to come.*—Cic.

In praesens, in futūrum, in perpētuum, *For the present, for the future, for ever.*—Cic.

In liberos nostros indulgentia, *Fondness towards our children.*—Cic.

In utramque partem disputare, *To argue a question on both sides.*—Cic.

Orationes in Cātilinam hābitae, *The speeches delivered against Catiline.*—

Obs. 1. Note the adverbial phrases, in commūne, *for the common good* ; in ūniversum, *in general* ; in pējus, *for the worse*.

Obs. 2. Occasionally the Accusative after *in* seems to have the force of the Ablative : as,

Eam optimam rempublicam esse dūco, quae sit in potestatem optimūm, *I deem that the best form of government which is in the power of the aristocracy.*—Cic.

## (b.) With the Ablative : of rest or action in a place ; in or during ; among : as,

Caedes in Appia via facta (est), *A murder was committed on the Appian road.*—Cic.

Sedēre in ēquo, *To sit on horseback.*—Cic.

In omni vita, *In the whole of one's life.*—Cic.

In summo omnium timōre, *During the excessive alarm of all.*—Cic.

Thales qui sapientissimus in septem fuit, *Thales who was the wisest among the seven.*—Cic.

2. Sub.—*Under, up to, etc.*

## (a.) With the Accusative : under, up to (of motion) ; of time, just after or before : as,

Exercētum sub iūgum mittēre, *To pass an army under the yoke.*—Caes.

Sub montem succēdunt milites, *The soldiers make their way up the hill.*—Caes.

Sub noctem, *At nightfall.*—Caes.

Sub galli cantum, *Just about cock-crow.*—Hor.

Sub eas (litteras) statim recitatae sunt tuae, *Directly after that letter was read yours.*—Cic.

## (b.) With the Ablative : under (usually without motion) ; of time, just upon, after : as,

Sub pellibus hiemare, *To winter under skins (or tents).*—Caes.

Sub divo, *Under the open sky.*—Hor.

Sub hoc iūgo Dictator Aequos misit, *Under this (kind of) yoke the Dictator made the Aequians pass.*—Liv.

Sub ditione alicujus esse, *To be under any one's power.*—Caes.

Adhuc sub iudice lis est, *The matter is still before the judge undecided.*—Hor.

Sub adventu Rōmānorum, *Just before the arrival of the Romans.*—Liv.

3. Sūper.—*Above, beyond, concerning.*

## (a.) With the Accusative : above, whether of place or some other relation : as,

Sūper vallum praecipitatus est, *He was pitched headlong over the ramparts.*—Sall.

Nōmentanus erat sūper ipsum, *Nomentanus sat next above (our host) himself.*—Hor.

Sūper omnia, *Above all things.*—Liv.

## (b.) With the Ablative : above, of place ; concerning : as,

Ensis (illī) sūper cervice pendet, *A sword hangs suspended over his neck.*—Hor.

Multa sūper Priāmo rōgītans, sūper Hectorē multa, *Asking many a question concerning Priam, many concerning Hector.*—Virg.

4. Subter.—*Under* : in Prose almost always with the Accusative : as,

Mānum subter tōgam exsēre, *To thrust the hand out from under the toga.*—Liv.

Rhoetēo subter litōre, *'Neath the Rhoetean shore.*—Cat.

5. *Clam*.—Without the knowledge of: used indifferently with the Accusative or the Ablative: as,

*Clam patrem or patre, Without a father's knowledge.*—Ter.

*Obs.* *Clam* is properly rather an adverb than a Preposition.

## CHAPTER LIV.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 559. Conjunctions connect sentences together and show the relation between them. They thus sustain the same relation towards sentences which Prepositions sustain towards Substantives (see § 553).

*Obs.* Sometimes Conjunctions appear to connect words; where however it may generally be shown that they virtually connect sentences: as,  
*Ego et tu crēdimus, I and you believe* = *ego crēdo et tu crēdis*.

§ 560. Conjunctions may be arranged in the following classes: Connective, Adversative, Hypothetical, Concessive, Causal, Conclusive, Final, Temporal.

N.B. For lists of the above, see § 139.

### 1. Connective Conjunctions.

§ 561. *Et* is the Conjunction most used simply to connect words and sentences: as,

*Virtus hōmīnibus instituendo et persuadendo traditur, Virtue is imparted to men by instruction and persuasion.*—Cic.

*Cūrī esse et diligī vōlūmus, We wish to be dear (to others) and to be loved by them.*—Cic.

§ 562. *Et* often introduces the first member as well as subsequent ones: it may then be translated by *both . . . and*; *in the first place . . . and then*; *not only, but also*; and similar expressions: as,

*Te et mōneo et rōgo, ut rēcōrdēre consilium nostrum, I both advise you and request you to call to mind my advice.*—Cic.

*Orātīonēulas et quas postūlas, et plūres etiam mittam, I will send you not only the little speeches you ask for, but others too.*—Cic.

*Sed et ipse errābat, et alios etiam errare cōgēbat, But in the first place he was himself in error, and then he forced others likewise to err.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Very often the introductory *et* is not translated in English: as,

*Hoc et rātio doctis, et nēcessitas barbāris, praescripsit, This lesson reason has taught the civilised and necessity the uncivilised.*—Cic.

(Concerning the Concord of the Predicate in such cases, see § 220.)

§ 563. *Que* is used in preference to *et* when things are closely connected in any way: as,

*Arma contra deos ārasque et fōcos tulit, He bore arms against the gods and their altars, and against our fire-sides.*—Cic.

*Pēdēstres nāvālesque pugnac, Battles by land and sea.*—Cic.

§ 564. *Et . . . nēque (nec)*. When two propositions are connected, one of which is positive and the other negative, the following arrangements are found:

*et . . . nēque (nec); et non.*  
*nēque (nec), et non, . . . et.*  
*nēque (nec), . . . que.*

*Intelligītis et animum ei praesto fuisse, nec consilium defuisse, You see that not only had he presence of mind, but that counsel was not lacking.*—Cic.

*Sextus et rem agnoscit, neque hōmīnem ignōrat, Sextus is [both] acquainted with the affair, and no stranger to the individual.*—Cic.

*Africānus nēque [cessabat] unquam, et interdum colloquio altērius non egēbat, Africanus was never idle, and at times could do without the intercourse of another.*—Cic.

*Is locus mēlior quem et non cōquit sol et tangit ros, That is a better situation where on the one hand the sun does not scorch, and the dew reaches.*—Varr.

*Sed nec illa exstincta sunt, alunturque pōtius et augentur cōgītatione et mēmōria, But in the first place those things are not dead; and then they rather derive nutriment and increase from thought and recollection.*—Cic.

*Obs.* In such cases the *neque (nec)* is usually resolved in English into *and not, on the {one} hand . . . not, or the like.*

§ 565. *Atque (ac* before consonants only) is mostly used when a second member is at the same time to be brought into comparison or contrast with the preceding one:

*Divina atque hūmāna prōmiscua nīhil pensī nēque mōdēratī habēre, Things divine and human without distinction they treated without respect or restraint.*—Sall.

*Vita mīsera atque inhōnesta, A life at once wretched and dishonourable.*—Sall.

*Obs.* 1. *Atque* does not differ essentially from *que*, and is preferred to it when *que*, if used, would follow a short and unaccented syllable. See the above examples.

*Obs.* 2. When several members are connected together, the conjunction may either be repeated after each member, or else omitted altogether: as,

*Virtus et hōnestas et iūdor, Virtue, honour, and shame.*—Cic. (*Not* *virtus, honestas et pudor*.)

*Mētellum multi filii, filiae, nēpōtes, nēptes, in rōgum impēsūrunt, A number of sons and daughters, grandsons and daughters, joined to place Metellus on the funeral pile.*—Cic.

(This latter construction is called *Asyndeton, ἀσύνδετον*; the former *Polysyndeton, πολυσύνδετον*.)

§ 566. *Quum . . . tum, whilst, not only . . . also*, are used chiefly in introducing different particulars respecting the same thing: as,

*Impārātus cum a militibūs tum a pecūnia, Unprepared not only in the article of men but also of money.*—Cic.

*Epistōla summæ quum bēnēvolētiæ tum etiam prūdētiæ, A letter characterised by the utmost good-will as well as the utmost sagacity.*—Cic.

*Obs.* *Tum . . . tum* appears always to mean at one time . . . at another time: as,

*Dissēro in utramque partem, tum Græce tum Lātīne, I debate on both sides, now in Greek, now in Latin.*—Cic.

§ 567. Concerning *non mōdo (solum) . . . vērūm (sed) etiam, not only . . . but also*, it is only necessary to observe, that when the second member is *negative*, a negative may be omitted in the former, the latter being expressed with *sed ne quidem*: as,

*Vobis non mōdo vōluntas fuit, sed ne præda quidem adhuc divisa est, You have not only not had good will in common, but even your spoils have not been shared.*—Cic.

*Obs.* But the negative is quite as often expressed in both: as,

*Ego non mōdo tibi non irascor, sed nō rēprēhendo quidem factum tuum, I not only am not angry with you, but I do not find fault with your conduct.*—Cic.

§ 568. *Nēque (nec), neither . . . nor.* When two or more Subjects of the Third Person are connected by *neque (nec)* . . . *neque (nec)*, the Predicate is made to agree with that Subject along with which it is expressed: as,

*Nec tōga nec fōcus est, Neither toga nor fire-place is there.*—Mart.

*[Vobis] nec ætas, neque hōnōres, neque virtus . . . dulcedīnem vivendi minūere poterit, For you neither years, nor honours, nor worth, will avail to lessen your fondness for life.*—Cic.

§ 569. But in the case of the Personal Pronouns *ego* or *tu*, the Verb may be put in the Plural Number: as,

*Hæc si neque ego neque tu fecimus, If neither you nor I have done these things.*—Ter.

*[Indignābantur] quod in decemviris neque ego neque Caesar habiti essimus, They were indignant that neither I nor Caesar should have been appointed among the Decemvirs.*—Brut. ap. Cic.

*Obs.* 1. In such cases the Person of the Verb is of course determined according to the regular rule. See § 221.

*Obs.* 2. *Neque, nec* are used indifferently before vowels and consonants.

§ 570. *Aut, vel (-vē), or.* *Aut* is a disjunctive word, and introduces something quite different from what has gone

before: *vel* is copulative, and implies not so much a new alternative as a modification of the preceding one: as,

*Omne enūciātum aut vērūm aut falsū est, Every proposition is either true or false.*—Cic. (New alternative "false," and exclusive of the other.)

*Pace vel Quīrini vel Rōmuli dixērī, By favour of Quirinus or (shall I call him) Romulus.*—Cic.

*Vi aut clam agendum est, It must be managed by open force or else by secrecy.*—Cic. (Alternatives directly opposed.)

*Ordo vel pāci dēcōrus vel bello, An order seemingly whether for peace or war.*—Liv. (Both alternatives included.)

*Obs.* 1. The above distinction cannot however be always traced with equal clearness.

*Obs.* 2. *Ve* is abbreviated from *vel*, and has a similar use: as,

*Duābus tribusve hōris, In two or three hours.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 3. *Ve* is also found in the compound *sive* ('seu'): as,

*Sive cāsū sive consilio deorum immortalium, Whether by accident or by the counsel of the immortal gods.*—Caes.

## 2. Adversative Conjunctions.

§ 571. Adversative Conjunctions are those which are used in stating a proposition in some way opposed to what has preceded. They are the following: *sed, autem, vērūm, vērō*, at (poet. *ast*), *atqui, cēterum, tāmen, attāmen, vēruntāmen*, in English, *but, yet*. They do not affect the structure of a sentence.

§ 572. *Sed, autem, but.*—*Sed* denotes a more direct and emphatic opposition than *autem*, and therefore stands at the head of its sentence, while *autem* takes the second place: as,

*Non ego hērus tibi, sed servus sum, I am not your master, but your slave.*—Plaut.

*Hoc non mōdo non laudāri, sed ne concēdi quidem pōtest, This not only cannot be praised, but cannot even be allowed.*—Cic.

*Gyges a nullo vidēbatur, ipse autem omnia vidēbat, Gyges was seen by no one, while he himself saw everything.*—Cic.

*Oratiōes Cæsāris mihi vēmēnter prōbantur; lēgi autem complures, Cæsār's speeches have my warm admiration; and I have read a good many.*—Cic.

§ 573. *Vērūm* and *vērō, but*, are used with the same distinction as *sed* and *autem*. *Cēterum* is similar in its use to *vērūm* or *sed*.

§ 574. *Vērō* is often used as an affirmative particle: as,

*Ego vērō cupio te ad me scribere, I do in truth desire you to write to me.*—Cic.

*Immo vērō, inquit, vivunt, Yea, verily, they do live.*—Cic.

Sometimes it is used where in English we say *yes*: as.

Fuisti, crēdo, in schōlis philōsōphorum? Vēro, ac libenter quidem, *You have attended the schools of the philosophers, I believe? Yes, and with pleasure too.*—Cic.

§ 575. *At*, but; on the other hand; but, you say; is especially used in stating objections: as,

At mēmōria minuitur: crēdo, nisi eam exerceas, *But, say you, the memory decays. I believe, if you do not keep it in practice.*—Cic.

*Obs.* In stating an objection, *at* is often strengthened by *enim*: as,  
At enim cur a me pōtissimum hoc praesidium pētiverunt, *But, you say, why have they come to me rather than any other for this protection?*—Cic.

§ 576. *At* is idiomatically used in sudden transitions, vehement exclamations of displeasure, etc.: as,

Consurgit Turnus in ensem et fērit. . . . At perfidus ensis frangitur in mēdio, *Turnus rises upon his sword and strikes. . . . But, lo! the faithless sword snaps in two.*—Virg.

Una māter Cluentium oppugnat. At quae mater, *The mother of Cluentius is his only assailant. But then what a mother!*—Cic.

At o deorum quidquid in coelo rēgit, . . . quid iste fert tāmulus, *Why, in the name of all the gods that rule above, what means this to-do?*—Hor. (at the beginning of a piece.)

§ 577. *Atqui*, and yet, is similar to *at*: as,

Magnum narras et vix crēdibile. Atqui sic habet, *What you say is astonishing and hardly credible. And yet so it is.*—Hor.

§ 578. *Quodsi* (negative *quodni*, *quod nisi*), but if, and if, is about equivalent to *si autem*: sometimes the *quod* serves as a pure connective: as,

Quodsi quis illorum vērānorum lēgat acta, *But if (or now if) any one would read the actions of those veterans.*—Nep. (Eum. 8, 2.)

Quodsi te sors Afris aut Hispānis aut Gallis praefecisset, *Now if fortune had placed you over Africa, Spain, or Gaul.*—Cic. (Q. Fr. i. 1, 11.)

### 3. Hypothetical Conjunctions.

§ 579. Hypothetical Conjunctions are those which are used in stating an hypothesis: concerning their syntax see §§ 422, sqq.

### 4. Concessive Conjunctions.

§ 580. Concessive Conjunctions are those which may be rendered in English by *although*, *even if*, *granting that*. They

are *etsi*, *ētiamsi*, *tāmetsi*, (*tāmenetsi*), *quanquam*, *quamvis*, *licet*, *ut*, *quum*. They are discussed in treating of the use of the Subjunctive Mood. (See §§ 456, 481, 500, 501.)

### 5. Causal Conjunctions.

§ 581. Causal Conjunctions are those which are used in stating a reason: they can mostly be translated by *because*, *since*, *for*, *seeing that*. (For a list of them see p. 93.) Their syntax, with the exception of *nam* and *enim*, is treated under the Subjunctive Mood (§§ 477, 483; 486-495).

*Nam* (*namque*), is more emphatic than *enim*, and begins its own clause; *enim* stands second and is often used as a Particle (see § 654): as,

Percontatōrem fugito; *nam* garrulus idem est, *Shun an inquisitive person; for he is also a gossip.*—Hor.

Scribe ad me quam saepissime: nonnihil enim me lēvant tuae litērae, *Write to me as often as possible, for your letters relieve me a little.*—Cic. ad Att.

*Obs.* 1. *Nam* is often used elliptically, where the thought is readily supplied: as,  
*Nam* quid ego de Cicērone dicam, [I will not], *for why need I, speak of Cicero.*—Cic. (Fam. 14, 1.)

*Obs.* 2. *Namque* sometimes stands after the first word in a sentence, especially in Livy: see § 716.

### 6. Conclusive Conjunctions.

§ 582. Conclusive Conjunctions are those which are used in drawing a conclusion, and may be translated by *therefore*, *accordingly*, *wherefore*. (For a list of them see p. 94.) They have no effect upon the structure of a sentence.

§ 583. *Ergo*, *therefore*, stands usually, though not always, at the head of its sentence: as,

*Ergo* avārus (is) ērit sed finīte, *Accordingly such a person will be covetous, but to a limited degree.*—Cic.

*Ergo* Quintiliū perpētuis sōpor urget, *So then perpetual slumber weighs upon Quintilius!*—Hor.

Nēmō ergo non miser? Prorsus nēmō. *Is there no one who is not miserable? Absolutely none.*—Cic.

*Obs.* *Ergo* is also used after a Genitive in the sense of *causa*: see § 264.

§ 584. *Igitur*, *accordingly*, *then*, is less emphatic than *ergo*, being rather a particle to express transition, and does not regularly stand at the head of a sentence: as,

Est igitur il quo illa conficiuntur hōmīne mēlius, *That power, then, by which those things are done, is more excellent than man.*—Cic.

*Ratiōnem igitur pontis hanc instituit, The following, then, was the plan of a bridge he resolved on.*—Caes.

*Obs.* Sallust often begins with *igitur* (§ 693): as,  
*Igitur, ex divitiis luxuria atque avaritia . . . invāsere, Accordingly, as the consequence of wealth, luxury and covetousness made their way in.*—Sall.

§ 585. *Itaque*, and so, accordingly, is similar to *igitur*, but denotes a consequence in action rather than in reasoning: as,

*Itaque rem suscipit, Accordingly he undertakes the business.*—Caes.

It is sometimes used with *ergo*: as,

*Itaque ergo, ut magistrātu abiēre, Accordingly, therefore, when they had retired from their office.*—Liv.

### 7. Final Conjunctions.

§ 586. Final Conjunctions are such as are used to denote the purpose or consequence of an action. They are treated in dealing with the Subjunctive Mood (§§ 449-463).

### 8. Temporal Conjunctions.

§ 587. Concerning *antēquam*, *priusquam*, *postquam*, see § 501. Concerning *ut*, *ut primum*, *sīmul atque* (*ac*), *as soon as*, see § 401.

## PART II.—SYNTAX.

### BOOK II.—SYNTAXIS ORNATA.

§ 588. The preceding portion of the Syntax comprises the ordinary grammatical rules: the following is devoted chiefly to the peculiarities of the Latin idiom.

### CHAPTER LV.—SUBSTANTIVES.

#### 1. Common Substantives.

§ 589. *Concrete for Abstract.*—Concrete Substantives are used in preference to abstract to denote,

- (1.) The period of a person's life during which something happens: as,

*Me puero, In my boyhood.*—Cic.

*Defendi rempublicam juvenis, non deseram senex, I defended the commonwealth in my youth, I will not abandon it in my old age.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Similarly *sexagēnarius*, *octogēnarius*, *In one's sixtieth or eightieth year.*

- (2.) The office held: as,

*Consul idem feci, I did the same in my consulate.*—Cic.

*Consule Planco, In the consulate of Plancus.*—Hor.

*Saturno rege, In the reign of Saturn.*—Virg.

§ 590. *Collective for Plural.*—Singular Substantives are not unfrequently used in a collective sense: as,

*Ager bonus pecori, arbore infecundus, Soil good for stock, unproductive in trees.*—Sall.

*Pulvinus rosā fartus, A cushion stuffed with roses.*—Cic. (So Hor. *multa in rosa*, Od. 1, 5, 1.)

*Armato milite, With armed men.*—Virg

§ 591. *Plural for Abstract.*—In cases where the corresponding abstract Substantive is wanting, we often find the plural of the concrete Substantive used to supply the deficiency: as,

Quum videamus tanta officia morientis, *When we see such conscientiousness displayed by him on his deathbed.*—Cic. (Fin. 2, 31, 99.)

Stadia literarum, numerorum, sonorum, *The study of literature, arithmetic, acoustics.*—Cic.

Implorarem vestros sensus, *I would appeal to your sensibility.*—Cic.

§ 592. *Abstract for Concrete.*—The use of abstract Substantives for concrete occurs chiefly in the following cases:

- (1.) Some Substantives denoting *age, rank in life or office*, are used as *Collectives*: as *juventus*, a *body of young men*; *nobilitas*, the *nobility*; *servitium* (also *servitia, pl.*), the *slaves*; *impéria* (*pl.*), *persons in office*; *levis, gravis armatura*, *light or heavy-armed troops*: also less frequently, *advocatio*, the *body of advocati*; *sālūtatio*, of *morning callers*; *rēmīgium*, the *rowers*; *ministrum*, the *servants*; *latrocinium*, *banditti*, etc.

*Obs.* Not *adolescētia* or *senectus* however.

- (2.) Substantives of *quality or character* are used for the persons to which they apply: as,

Neque ego per ignāviam incerta pro certis captārem, *Nor would I by the help of cowardly men grasp at uncertainties for certainties.*—SALL. (Cat. 20.)

Omnium flagitiōrum atque facinōrum circa se cātervas habebat, *Catiline had about him gangs of profligate fellows and desperadoes.*—SALL. (Cat. 14.)

Parendum est caritati hominū, *We must spare those who are dear to us.*—Cic. (Or. 2, 58, 237.)

§ 593. *Generic Plural.*—Sometimes the plural of a Substantive may be rendered by “*kinds of*”: as,

Quatuor perturbationes sunt, tres constantiae, *There are four kinds of mental disturbance, three of tranquillity.*—Cic. (Tusc. 4, 6, 14.)

Somno et quietibus ceteris, *By sleep and other kinds of repose.*—Cic. (Off. 1, 29, 103.)

§ 594. Similarly the plural is used to denote *repeated manifestations of a quality*: as,

Utilitatibus tuis possum carere, *I can dispense with your services.*—Cic. (Fam. 16, 3 fin.)

Ipsorum Deorum saepe praesentiae, *The repeated instances of appearance of gods themselves.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 66, 166.)

So *crudelitates*, *acts of cruelty*; *perfidiae*, of *treachery*; *bönitates*, of *goodness*, etc.

§ 595. *Verbal Substantives.*—A Verbal Substantive is often generalised by the addition of *rerum* (not needing to be translated): as,

Cognitio, ignoratio rerum, *Knowledge, ignorance.*—Cic.

Nimis celeri desperatiōne rerum, *By too precipitate despair.*—Liv.

Natura rerum, *Nature* (in widest sense).—Cic.

§ 596. Instead of a Verbal Substantive we not unfrequently find used a Perfect Participle Passive (see § 528): as,

Post Hasdrubalis exercitum deletum, *After the destruction of Hasdrubal's army.*—Liv.

Propter crebrius de coelo lapidatum, *On account of unusually frequent showers of stones.*—Liv. (29, 10.)

*Obs.* Rarely as the Subject of a sentence however:

Quum occisus dictator . . . pulcherrimum facinus videretur, *When the assassination of the dictator seemed a most glorious achievement.*—Tac. (Ann. 1, 8)

§ 597. *Substantives governing the case of their Verbs.*—This takes place chiefly with Substantives derived from Verbs governing the Dative: as,

Justitia est obtemperatio legibus, *Justice is obedience to the laws.*—Cic. (See § 291, 6.)

Spe domum reditiōnis sublata, *The hope of returning home having been taken away.*—Caes.

*Obs.* The above construction is, however, exceptional. Still more rare is the Accusative after Substantives derived from a Transitive Verb: as,

Quid tibi hanc digito tactio est, *What right have you to touch this woman with your finger?*—Pl.

(For such a construction as *id dare operam*, see § 253.)

§ 598. *Substantives as Adjectives.*—Substantives derived from Verbs denoting the *agent* are sometimes used as Adjectives: as,

Contemptor animus, *A scornful temper.*—Sall.

Foederum ruptor dux et populus, *The treaty-breaking general and his people.*—Liv.

Illa scelērata et pēne delētrix hujus impērii sica, *That accursed dagger [and] well nigh fatal to this empire.*—Cic.

Plēbiscōla tribūnus plēbis, *A popularity-courting tribune.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Similarly we find such expressions as *exercitus tiro*, a *raw army* (Cic.), and the like.



§ 599. *Nēmo*.—Instead of *nullus* we frequently find *nēmo* in apposition with Substantives denoting *men*: as,

*Nēmo vir bonus, nēmo adolescens, nēmo pictor, No good man, no youth, no painter.*—(all in Cic.)

*Obs.* In the same manner we find *quisquam homo, quisquam cēsis*, etc.

§ 600. *Diminutives*.—These are used with great variety of signification; implying *affection, pity, contempt*, and kindred feelings (cf. § 703): as,

*Hac tamen oblectābar spēculā, However I pleased myself with this gleam of hope.*—Cic. *Fam.*

*Mercēdula adducti, Induced by paltry gain.*—Cic.

*Græcūlus cēsariens, The poor half-starved Greek.*—Juv.

*Illā aureolā orātiunculā, That golden little speech.*—Cic. (*N. D.* 3, 17, 43.)

§ 601. *Ellipsis*.—The following Substantives are often left to be understood from the Gender of Adjectives: as,

*Aqua, water*; in the expressions *frigida, calida* (*calda*), *cold, hot water*.

*Caro, flesh, meat*: as, *ferina, the flesh of wild animals, game, venison*; *agnina, lamb*; *bubula, beef*; *porcina, pork*.

*Castra, -orum, camp, soldiers' quarters*: as, *hiberna, winter quarters*; *aestiva, summer quarters*; *stativa, fixed quarters*.

*Febris, a fever*: as, *tertiana, quartana, a tertian, quartan fever*; *frigida quartana, a quartan ague*.

*Pecunia, moneys*; in the phrase *reptundae, moneys to be reclaimed*; *extortion*.

*Pars, part*; esp. in *pl.*: as, *primas, secundas agere, to play the first or second part*.

*Tempus, time*: especially in the phrases, *ex quo, from what time*; *ex illo, from that time, &c.*

§ 602. *Hendiadys* (cf. § 724, 2).—Sometimes two Substantives are used to convey a single notion (*ἐν δὲ δυνάμει*): as,

*Pateris libavit et auro, He poured out libations from bowls of (Lit. and gold.*—Virg.

*Huc accēdit summus timor, quem mihi natura pudorque meus attribuit, To this is added an extreme timidity, which my natural bashfulness (Lit. nature and bashfulness) occasions me.*—Cic.

§ 603. *Plural equivalent to Singular*.—The following Plurals among others are used (especially in poetry) without considerable difference from Singulars:

pectora,	the breast.	regna,	realms, a kingdom.
cervices,	the (back of the) neck.	tecta,	abode.
colla,	the neck.	otia,	repose.
ora ('os'),	the face.	silentia,	silence.
terga,	the back.	pondēra,	weight.

*Obs.* This usage is especially frequent in the case of words whose singular would be less manageable in verse.

§ 604. *Metonymy*.—Sometimes a Substantive is by a figure of speech used to denote something with which it is closely connected: as,

alea,	a gambling-table, is used for	gambling.
Bacchus,	god of wine,	vine.
Ceres,	goddess of corn,	corn.
fascēs,	the fuses,	the consulate.
manus,	the hand,	violence; ownership.
Mars,	god of war,	war, strife.
Minerva,	goddess of art,	art, genius.
nomen,	name,	nation; debt.
sagum,	a war-cloak.	a state of war.
secures,	axes,	power of life and death.
sica,	a dagger,	assassination.
stilus,	a writing-style,	writing; style.
stola,	a matron's gown,	a matron.
toga,	the gown of peace,	the state and arts of peace.
venter,	the belly,	gluttony.
Venus,	goddess of love } and beauty. }	love, beauty.
Vulcanus,	god of fire,	fire.

§ 605. *Synecdoche*.—Sometimes a characteristic part of a thing is put for the whole. The following Substantives among others are so used:

carina,	a keel,	is used for a ship.
caput,	a head,	an individual.
pecten,	a quill or stick } for a lyre, }	the lyre.
puppis,	a stern,	a ship.
tectum,	a roof,	a house.

## 2. Proper Names.

§ 606. *Names of tribes for countries*.—The names of tribes and nations, especially those less known, are often used for the country in which they live: as,

*Caesar ex Mēnapiis in Trēveros vēnit, Caesar came out of the country of the Menapii into that of the Treveri.*—Caes.

*Lēgatus in Persas prōfectus est, He set out as ambassador into Persia.*—Nep.

*Obs.* In the case of obscure tribes there often exists no separate name for the country.

§ 607. The singular of a national name, as *Rōmānus, Poenus, Graecus*, and the like, is often used where the sense requires the plural (comp. § 590): as,

*Romani consēcrō pugnam ..... contra elādere Poeni, The Romans were for coming to close quarters; the Carthaginians on the other hand were content to battle them.*—Liv.

*Obs.* This idiom is common in Livy, especially in his more animated passages.

§ 608. Names of nations are sometimes used adjectively by the poets : as,

*Galla* (= Gallica) *crūdēlitas*, *Gallie cruelty*.—Mart.

*Syra* (= Syria, Syriaca) *merx*, *Syrian wares*.—Hor.

*Obs.* Similarly *Rōmulus*, and some other proper names, are used as Adjectives : as,

*Romula* (= Romulea) *tellus*, *The land of Romulus*.—Virg.

§ 609. *Patronymics*.—In the poets Masculine and Feminine Patronymics (see § 184) are used instead of *jilius* and *jilia* : as,

*Priāmides* *Hēlēnus*, *Helenus son of Priam*.—Ov.

*Atlantis* *Maia*, *Maia daughter of Atlas*.—Ov.

*Obs.* 1. But the proper name and the patronymic are not used together as above, except where needful for the sake of distinction.

*Obs.* 2. In the plural number the poets often use a characteristic patronymic as a national name : as,

*Aeneādae*, *The house of Aeneas*, i.e. *the Romans*.—Lucr.

*Rōmūlidae*, *The sons of Romulus* (in same sense).—Virg.

## CHAPTER LVI.—ADJECTIVES.

§ 610. The principal uses of Adjectives have been already explained (Chap. XLIII.). It only remains to notice a few peculiarities.

§ 611. *Adjectives equivalent to Substantives* (comp. §§ 340-342).—Under this head two cases remain to be noticed :

- (1.) A Substantive and Adjective are often equivalent to a Substantive and a Genitive Case (§ 263) : as,

*Servilis* *tāmulus* (= *tamulus servorum*), *The servile tumult or war*.—Cæc.

*Pecūniæ aliēnæ* (= *aliorum*), *The money of others*.—Cic.

*Decemvirāle* (= *decemvirorum*) *odium*, *The hatred entertained for the Decemviri* (§ 268).—Liv.

*Xenophonticus* (= *Xenophontis*) *Hercules*, *The Hercules of Xenophon*.—Cic.

- (2.) An Adjective is used in agreement with a Substantive, where the English idiom would employ the corresponding abstract Substantive derived from the Adjective : as,

*Definire amicitiam p̄ribus officiis et v̄luntatibus*, *To define friendship to consist in reciprocity of good offices and good-will*.—Cic.

*Opes factionis, vestra p̄tientia, nullum jus*, *The strength of the oligarchy ; your tameness of spirit ; the absence of rights* (Lit. the no right).—Sall.

*Obs.* The converse is perhaps as frequent : as,

*In hac r̄riētate st̄diorum*, *In these various pursuits* (= in his variis studiis).—Cic.

§ 612. *Nullus*.—The Adjective *nullus* in colloquial language is sometimes used adverbially (= non) : as,

*Philōtinus non mōdo nullus v̄nit, sed, etc.*, *Philotinus not only does not come, but, &c.*—Cic. Ep.

*Si non quaerit, nullus dix̄ris*, *If he does not ask, don't you say*.—Ter.

*Obs.* 1. In such cases *nullus* is more emphatic than *non*.

*Obs.* 2. Very often we may trace the proper force of *nullus* with verbs : as, *Nōl̄te existim̄re, me quum a v̄obis discess̄ro, nusquam aut nullum f̄re*, *Do not suppose that when I have left you I shall not exist any where or AT ALL* (= *be a person at all*).—Cic. (Cat. Maj. 22.)

*Hæc b̄na in t̄b̄lis publicas nulla r̄dīerunt*, *These goods have not been entered in the public books AT ALL*.—Cic. (Rosc. Am. 44, 128.)

§ 613. *Sexcenti*.—This numeral is used to denote an indefinitely large number : as,

*Sexcenta millia mund̄orum*, *Hundreds of thousands of worlds*.—Cic. *Sexcentae ep̄istolæ*, *An immense number of letters*.—Cic.

## CHAPTER LVII.—PRONOUNS.

§ 614. *Strengthening of Pronouns*.—It has been already observed (§ 357) that the Personal Pronouns are not usually expressed when they are the Subjects of sentences, unless for the sake of emphasis. They may be rendered still more emphatic by the following means :

- (1.) By the addition of *ipse* ; with which however the words *ego*, *tu*, etc., are not usually expressed (see § 377).
- (2.) By the suffixes *met*, *te* (see § 75, *Obs.* 1) : as *eḡomet*, *t̄emet*, *nosmet*, etc. The suffix *met* may be added to all cases of the pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, excepting the Gen. Pl. of *ego*, *tu*, and the Nom. Sing. of *tu* : -*te* is used only with *tu* (*tute*).

*Obs.* The suffixes are often combined with *ipse* : hence, *nosm̄etipsos*, *nobism̄etipsis*, etc.

- (3.) By the addition of the enclitic *ādeo*: as,  
*Tuque ādeo, And thou especially.*—VIRG. (G. 1, 24).  
 (Comp. Catull. 64, 28.)

Similarly with other Pronouns (comp. § 653): as,

*Id ādeo, si placet, considerāte, That very point, if you please, consider.*—CIC. (Cacc. 30, 87.)

§ 615. Sometimes a Pronoun (especially *ille*) is redundant in the second member of a double sentence, when it has been expressed or implied in the former. It then adds vivacity to the expression: as,

*Nunc dextra ingēminans ictus, nunc ille sinistra, Now with his right hand redoubling his blows; now [he does it] with his left.*—VIRG. (Æ. 5, 457.)

*Nec dulces amōres  
 Sperne puer, neque tu chorēas, Nor scorn in youth  
 sweet loves, nor scorn [thou] the dance.*—HOR. (Od. 1, 9, 16.)

Obs. This idiom appears to be imitated from the Greek. Compare

\**Ἦ τις ἐκ Πύλου ἀζει ἀμύντορας . . .*

\**Ἦ οὐ καὶ Σπάρτηθεν.*—HOM. (Od. 2, 327.)

§ 616. *Ille* is also sometimes used idiomatically with an appositive Adjective (§ 216), to which it gives emphasis: as,

*Philosophi quidam, minime mali illi quidem, sed non satis acuti  
 Certain philosophers [those] far from bad men indeed, but not very acute.*—CIC. (Off. 3, 9, 39.)

Similarly with an Adverb: as,

*Enucleāte ille quidem et polite, sed . . . , Clearly it is true [he speaks], and with polish, but, &c.*—CIC. (Br. 30, 115.)

Obs. When so used, *ille* is attended by *quidem*.

§ 617. *Ipse*.—The ordinary rule for the case of *ipse* has been already given (§ 377). The following remarks are added by Zumpt (§ 696):

- (1.) Cicero is partial to construing *ipse* as the subject even when the emphasis belongs to the object: as,

*Ut non modo populo Romano sed etiam sibi ipse condemnatus videretur, So that he seemed not only to the Roman people a condemned man, but even [himself], to himself.*—CIC. (Verr. 1, 6, 17.)

(Compare the foll.: non ita abundo ingenio ut te consoler, quum ipse me non possim, id. Fam. 4, 8: quid est negotii continere eos quibus praeis, si te ipse contineas, id. Q. Fr. 1, 1, 2.)

- (2.) When joined to a possessive pronoun in a reflective clause *ipse* usually takes the case of the subject: as, meam *ipse* legem negligo, tuam *ipse* legem negligis, not meam *ipsius*, tuam *ipsius*, etc. The genitive is necessary only where *ipse* refers to another than the subject: as, tuā *ipsius* causā [ego] hoc feci, etc. But exceptions to this rule occur both in Cic. and elsewhere.

§ 618. *Et ipse* is used when a new subject is added to a predicate already expressed or implied: as,

*Cornelio minus copiarum datum, quia L. Manlius et ipse . . . in Galliam mittēbatur, To Cornelius was allotted a smaller force, because L. Manlius was also being sent into Gaul.*—LIV. 21, 17. (It having been already mentioned that Cornelius was going into Gaul.)

*Is et ipse Alpinus amnis . . . difficillimus transitu est, This (the Durance being also an Alpine stream, is very difficult to cross.*—LIV. 21, 31. (Two Alpine streams having been before mentioned.)

§ 619. The neuter of *is* (*et id, idque*) is used without reference to any particular substantive (comp. § 374), when an additional particular is stated (= "and that") as,

*Doctum hominem cognovi, et studiis optimis deditum, idque a puero, I have known him to be a man of letters and devoted to the best pursuits, and that from a boy.*—CIC. Fam. 13, 16.

(Similarly in Greek καὶ ταῦτα.)

§ 620. *Idem*.—The ordinary correlative of *idem* is *qui* (see § 379). Instead of the Relative we also find *atque* (*ac*), *et*; more rarely *ut*, *cum*; and (in poetry only) the Dative: as,

*Annius (est) erga te idem ac fuit, Her feelings towards you are the same as they were.*—TER.

*Si quaeratur idemne sit pertinacia et persēverantia, If the question be asked whether obstinacy is the same thing as perseverance.*—CIC.

*Utrique idem faciunt, ut si laevam partem negligērent, dexteram tuērentur, Both act as if they were to neglect the left side and defend the right.*—CIC.

*Eodem mecum patre genitus, Born of the same father with me.*—TAC.

*Invitum qui servat idem facit occidenti, He who saves a man's life against his will does the same as one who should murder him.*—HOR. (Comp. Gr. ταῦτ' ἐμοὶ βούλει.)

§ 621. *Qui, quis, aliquis*, etc.—The following use of *qui* in parenthetical clauses, and stating the ground of something requires to be noted:

*Si mihi permisisses rem, qui meus amor in te est, confēcissem, If you had left the matter in my hands, such is my affection for you (= pro meo in te amore), I would have settled it.*—CIC.

*Pater tuus si vivēret, quā severitate fuit, tu profecto non vivēres, If your father were living, such was his sternness, you certainly would not be living.*—Cic.

(Qua severitate, Abl. of Quality : see § 318.)

§ 622. **Quis** is sometimes used in a tone of impatience or indignation (Gr. *ποιός* cf. Aristoph. Eq. 162): as,

*Quem tu mihi Staseam, quem Peripateticum narras? Don't talk to me of your Staseas, your Peripatetics!*—Cic. (Or. 1, 23.)

§ 623. The interrogative **quid** is used in animated language to pass from one point to another, where it may be rendered by “and then :” as,

*Quid leges vēreres mōresque mājōrum? quid auspīcia? etc., And then, the laws and customs of our ancestors; and then the auspices, etc.*—Cic. (Or. 1, 10.)

*Quid in levioribus studiis? And then in less serious pursuits, etc.*—Cic. (Cat. Maj. 14, 50.)

Obs. The expression is elliptical, *dicam* or some other verb being understood.

§ 624. **Quid** is often used interrogatively where persons are concerned : as,

*Quid nobis duobus laboriosius dici aut fingi potest? What can be mentioned or conceived more overwhelmed with trouble than we two?*—Cic. (Mil. 2, 5.)

§ 625. **Quis**.—It has been already stated that **quis**, as an Indefinite Pronoun, is chiefly found after *si*, *ne*, *num*, or in composition (§ 383). But it is sometimes used alone as the least emphatic *any* (= Gr. *τις*), when it is generally an enclitic : as,

*Simplior quis est? Is one simpler than ordinary?*—Hor. (S. 1, 3, 63.)

*Morbus aut egestas aut quid ejusmodi, Disease or privation or anything of that kind* (= *τοιούτων τι*).—Cic.

§ 626. **Nescio quis**, *I know not who*, i. e. *some one* or *other*, is treated as if it were a compound of **quis**, the *nescio* having no effect upon the syntax : as,

*Pacōni nescio cūjus querelis, By the complaints of one Paconius, whoever he may be.*—Cic.

*Prope me hic nescio quis loquitur, Some one or other is speaking here close to me.*—Pl.

Obs. Strictly *nescio quis* forms a sentence by itself, its verb being supplied from the other part of the sentence.

§ 627. **Si quis**, *if any*, is sometimes nearly equivalent to *quicumque*, *whosoever*, *whatsoever* (like Gr. *εἰ τις* = *ὅστις*): as,

*Nuda fere Alpium cūcūmīna sunt, et si quid est pābūli, obruunt nives, The summits of the Alps are mostly bare, and if there is any pasture (= what little pasture there is) is buried beneath the snows.*—Liv.

*Arāneolae quāsi rēte contextunt, ut si quid inhaeserit conficiant, Spiders spin a kind of net that they may destroy whatever gets stuck fast in it.*—Cic.

*Illi etiam, si quos fudimus, apparent, Those also whomsoever we have put to rout appear (again).*—Virg.

Especially when a modest statement is to be made : as,

*Ea, si quam habemus, facultas, Whatever ability—if any—I possess.*—Cic.

§ 628. **Quōtus**, *what number?* is an ordinal, corresponding to *primus*, *secundus*, etc. It is used idiomatically : as,

*Tu quōtus esse vellis rescribere, Write back what number you mean to make.*—Hor. (Ep. 1, 5, 30.)

*Quōtus erit iste dēnārius, qui non sit ferendus, What shall be the precise number of denarii that is not to be allowed?*—Cic. (Verr. 2, 3, 94.)

Especially **quōtusquisque** (or as two words), when it is implied that the number is small : as,

*Quōtus enim quisque formosus est, For what a small proportion of men are handsome!*—Cic. (N. D. 1, 28, 79.)

§ 629. **Alius**.—The use of **alius** . . . **alius** has already been noted (§ 390). The following additional examples may be useful :

*Dolus malus est, cum aliud agitur, aliud simulatur, It is fraud, when one thing is actually done, and another pretended.*—Cic.

*Aliis miserandus, aliis irridendus esse videtur, To some he seems to deserve pity, to others ridicule.*—Cic.

**Alius** is often repeated in a different case (= *one . . . another*) : as,

*Alius alio mōre viventes, Living one in one way, another in another.*—Sall.

*Alias ex aliis fingendo mōras, Inventing one excuse for delay after another.*—Liv.

*Alii super alios, One on the top of the other.*—Liv.

Obs. So with an adverb in the second place, as *alius alio*, *alius aliter*, *one in one way*, *another in another*, etc.

§ 630. **Alius** is followed by *atque* (*ac*), *et*, *praeter*, *nisi*, *quam* : as,

*Tullia longe aliā in fortunā est atque ejus pietas et dignitas postulabat, Tullia is in a much worse position than her affection and rank entitle her to.*—Cic.

*Lux longo alia est solis et lychnorum, The light of the sun is very different from that of lamps.—Cic.*

*Nihil aliud est discere nisi recordari, Learning is nothing else than remembering.—Cic.*

*Rogavit num quid aliud ferret praeter arcam, He asked whether he was carrying anything else besides the box.—Cato ap. Cic. (A rare construction.)*

*Lysander nihil aliud molitus quam ut omnes civitates in sua teneret potestate, Lysander attempted nothing short of holding all the states under his own power.—Nep.*

*Obs.* The Ablative (of comparison, § 319) after *alius* is altogether exceptional: *Neve putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum, And deem none happy other than the wise and good.—Hor. (Ep. 1, 16, 20.)*

## CHAPTER LVIII.—VERBS.

§ 631. The principal uses of the Moods and Tenses have been already explained (§§ 392, sqq.). The following observations are of a miscellaneous character.

§ 632. *Impersonal use of the Passive.*—This construction (see § 234, *Obs.* 2) is very frequent in the best writers, and is often preferred even where the same sense might be expressed by the Active Voice: especially—(1) When the Subject, being obvious, is readily supplied; (2) When it is indefinite: as,

(1.) *De Tarentinis magna contentione in senatu actum, The case of the Tarentines was warmly debated in the senate.—Liv.*

*Supplementum scriberent consules permissum, The consuls were empowered [by the Senate] to fill up vacancies by enlistment.—id.*

*Tumulus in quo pugnatum erat, The rising ground where the battle had taken place.—id.*

(2.) *Tumultuatum in castris fuerat, There had been a disturbance made [by some persons] in the camp.—id.*

*Ipsos appropinquare legatos allatum est, News was brought that the envoys themselves were at hand.—id.*

*De quo putas ad me missum esse, sit missum neene nescio, As to the point you think word has been sent me about [name of the sender purposely kept back], whether it has been sent or no, I know not.—Cic. Att. 12, 28. (See Nägelsbach, p. 313.)*

*Obs.* In such cases, for the most part, attention is called rather to the action than the agents.

§ 633. *Passive as Middle or Reflective* (see also § 252).—Passive Verbs have not unfrequently a reflective sense,

like the Greek Middle Voice: as, *mōvēri, to move* (oneself); *verti, to turn* (oneself), *revolve*; *prēmi, to depress* (oneself), *sink*; etc.: as,

*Quod semper mōvētur aeternum est, That which moves for ever is eternal.—Cic.*

*Vertitur intēreā coelum, Meantime the heavens revolve.—Virg.*

*Mundus . . . prēmītur Libyae dēvexus ad Austros, The world sinks and slopes downwards towards the south of Africa.—id. (G. 1, 241.)*

*Obs.* Such was probably the origin of the Deponent Verbs (comp. Greek Deponents in -μαι): as, *utor, I serve or help myself*, hence *use*; *nitōr, I support myself (upon), lean (upon)*; *fungor, I quit myself*: etc.

§ 634. *Perfect used ἀορίστως.*—The Perfect Indicative is often used, especially in poetry, of that which regularly or repeatedly takes place: as,

*Illius immensae rūpērunt horrea messes, That man's enormous crops burst his barns.—Virg. (G. 1, 49.)*

*Saepe etiam stēriles incendere prōfuit agros, Often too it does good to fire the barren fields.—(ib. 84.)*

*Hinc apicem Fortuna sustulit, illic pōuisse gaudet, From one head Fortune removes the diadem, on another she is pleased to rest it.—Hon. (Od. 1, 34. fin.)*

*Obs.* In the last example, the Perfect Infinitive is used in the same way. The term *Aoristic* is applied to this construction, because the Aorist is regularly so used in Greek.

§ 635. *Ellipsis of the Verb.*—This of course occurs only in the case of verbs which may be without difficulty supplied:

(1.) The Copula (§ 213, *Obs.* 1) is very often omitted in short aphoristic sentences: as,

*Omnia praeclara rara, All fine things [are] rare.—Cic.*

*Quot hōmīnes, tot sententiae, Many men, many minds.—Ter.*

Also in descriptions: as,

*Anīmus audax, subdōlus, vārius; cujuslibet rēi sīmūlātōr ac dissīmūlātōr; etc., His spirit [was] daring, crafty, versatile; capable of assuming any mask or any disguise.—Sall.*

(Sallust is partial to this kind of brevity: § 689.)

*Obs.* This ellipsis chiefly occurs where the Verb would be in the Present Tense (including the *Praesens Historicum*: § 393).

*Esse* is more frequently omitted than expressed in the Future Infinitive Active: as,

*L. Cincio ns xxcd constitui me cūrātūrū Idibus Febr., I have settled to pay into the hands of L. Cincius 620 sesteria, on the 13th of February.—Cic.*

- (2.) *Inquam, inquit*, or some such verb is frequently omitted when the words spoken follow. Especially in such phrases as

*Tum Cotta, tum Crassus, Then [said] Cotta, Crassus, etc.—Cic. de Or. (passim).  
Quid multa, Why [should I say] many words?—id.*

*Obs. 1.* But after *tum* the verb is very often presently added: as, *Tum ridens, Scaevola, non luctabor, inquit, tecum Crasse amplius, Thereupon with a smile, says Scaevola, I shall not dispute the point with you any further, Crassus.—id.*

*Obs. 2.* To this head belongs the common superscription of letters, *sulutem (sc. dicit), Cic. Ep. (passim).*

- (3.) In dedications, *dicat*, or some such word: as,

*Aeneas haec de Dāniis victoribus arma, Aeneas this trophy [dedicates], from the victorious Greeks.—Virg.*

*Obs.* So in titles of books: as,

*Cicēronis de Officiis ad filium suum Iulium [scriptus], A book of Cicero concerning moral duties, addressed to his son.*

- (4.) *Dent, duint*, in prayers: as,

*Di meliōra, The gods [grant] a better lot (like our God forbid!)—Cic.*

- (5.) In colloquial language, any verb that may be readily supplied: as,

*Inde cōgito in Arpinum (sc. ire), After that I purpose [going] to Arpinum.—Cic.*

*A me Caesar pecūniam (sc. postulat), Caesar [expects] money from me!—id. (Phil. 2, 29, 72.)*

*Ne multa (sc. dicam): clamōres (sc. sēcūti sunt), Not to make a long story of it, acclamations [followed].—id. (Att. 1, 16.)*

*. . . . Verbum cāve (sc. dicas) de nuptiis,*

*Ne ad morbum hoc etiam (sc. accēdat), Take care not [to say] a word about the wedding, lest in addition to her illness [there be added] this further shock.—Ter. (And. 1, 5, 65.)*

- (6.) When it may be supplied from another Verb in the same sentence: as,

*Ventrem nihil aliud [facere] quam datis voluptatibus frui, The belly they said [did] nothing else than enjoy the pleasures afforded it.—Liv. (2, 32.)*

§ 636. *Repetition of Verb.*—This takes place—

- (1.) In answering a question (where in English “Yes” or “No” would be used): as,

*Nempe negas ad beatē vivendum satis posse virtutē?—Prorsus nego, You deny then that virtue is of sufficient avail for a happy life?—Yes, I do, altogether.—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 5, 12.),*

*Dasne aut mārēre ānimos post mortem, aut morte ipsā intērire?—Do vērō, Do you grant that the soul either survives after death, or perishes at the moment of death?—Yes I do.—ib. (1, 11, 25.)*

*Obs.* But not always: as, “

*An tu haec non crēdis!—Minime vērō, Don't you believe in those things?—No, indeed!—ib. 1, 5, 10.*

- (2.) Instead of the brief expression *idque, et id*, “and that” (§ 619), the verb of the preceding clause is often repeated: as,

*Pompēius summos in republica hōnōres assēcūtus est, et assecutus est (= idque) mātūrius quam quisquam ante eum, Pompey attained to the highest honours in the state, and that at an earlier period than any one before him.—Cic.*

- (3.) When a second action is performed on the same object, the preceding verb is often repeated as a participle: as,

*Quum urbem vi cēpissent, captamque dirīpuissent, Having taken the city by storm, and then pillaged it, etc.—Liv. (22, 20.)*

*Eam rem consules ad Patres dēferunt; sed dēlatam consilire ordine non licuit, The consuls laid the matter before the senate; but they were not allowed to consider it [the matter as laid before them] in a regular way.—id. (2, 28.)*

§ 637. *Substantival Use of Participles.*—What has been said (§ 339) respecting the use of Adjectives Substantively, applies generally to Participles. The following remarks are of a more special nature.

§ 638. *Imperfect Participle.*—The substantival use of this Participle is most frequent in the Plural. It is less frequent in the oblique cases of the Singular, and in the Nom. Sing. does not occur at all: as,

*Addidit et āliam fidētis spēciem, He added an additional token of confidence [Lit. of one feeling confidence].—Liv. (27, 2.)*

*Erranti monstrāre viam, To point out the way to one who has strayed.—Enn. ap. Cic.*

*[Quisque] acūtius atque acrius vitia in dicente quam recta videt, Everybody sees faults in a speaker more keenly and vividly than excellencies.—Cic. (Or. 1, 25, 116.)*

*Soli ratione utentes iure ac lege vivunt, Only those who make use of reason live according to right and law.—id. (N. D. 2, 62, 151.)*

*Hoc gēnus dēliberantium pellatur e mēdio, Let this class of questioners be banished from our midst.—id. (Off. 3, 8, 37.)*

*Quid est tam commūne quam . . . mārē fluctuantibus, litus ēiectis, What is so common as to those tossed on the waves, the sea; to those shipwrecked, the shore?—id. (Rosc. A. 26, 72.)*



Multae bestiae insectantes odoris intolérabili foeditate depellunt, *Many creatures drive away their pursuers by the intolerable disgustingness of their smell.*—Cic. (N. D. 2, 50, 127.)

Obs. 1. Instead of the Nom. Sing., and often of the Nom. Plur., we find either the verbal substantive in -tor, or a Relative clause.

Obs. 2. Sometimes, especially in the Gen. Plur., the Imperfect Participle is so used as to be equivalent to an abstract Substantive: as,

Clamores pœcentium, *Cries of dismay.*—Liv. (22, 5.)

Diversitas trãdientium, *Disagreement of tradition.*—Suet. (Cal. 8.)

(For more examples, see Nægels. p. 93.)

§ 639. *Future Participle.*—The substantival use of this participle is less frequent, and belongs chiefly to later writers: as,

Illud quod tantum pœturi vident, *An object which only the doomed to death behold.*—Tac. (G. 40.)

Mire auditurum dicturi cûra dœlectat, *Care on the part of one about to speak greatly pleases him who is to hear.*—Quint. (11, 3, 157.)

Tam vãrie se gessit, ut nec laudatûrum magna, nec vituperatûrum mediocris matéria deficiat, *He conducted himself in such different ways that while to the eulogist ample material, to the censor what was not inconsiderable is afforded.*—Vell. (2, 101.)

§ 640. *Perfect Participle Passive.*—This participle is used substantively, both in the Masculine of persons, and in the Neuter of things or acts.

§ 641. The *Masculine* is so used chiefly in the Plural: as,

Numerum iure caesorum obtinere, *To be put in the category of the justly slain.*—Cic. (Off. 2, 12, 43.)

Ut de vi et majestate damnati ad populum provocent, *That those condemned for violence and treason should appeal to the people.*—id. Phil. 1, 9, 21 (Næg. p. 89).

§ 642. The *Neuter* is so used—

(1.) To denote an act: most frequently in the Plural, but also in the Singular: as,

Facta illustria et gloriôsa, *Deeds distinguished and glorious.*—Cic. (Fin. 1, 11, 37.)

Ceterorum neque dictum obscurum potest esse... neque temere dicto concedi, *As for the rest neither can what they say remain in the dark, nor what they say indiscreetly be condoned.*—id. (Rosc. A. 1, 3.)

Obs. Sometimes the use of such words fluctuates between that of Substantives and that of Participles; as in the second of the above examples. So we find recte facta (Cic. Leg. 2, 4, 9), as well as facta illustria, fortia, etc. In the following example the two usages seem to be combined:

Movemur saepe illoquo acute concluso, *We are often affected by some acute argument.*—Cic. Tusc. (1, 32, 78.)

(2.) In the Neut. Sing. (but not in the Nom. Case), with the force of abstract Substantives: v. § 528. Especially in such phrases as ex compósito, *by agreement*; ex empto, ex vendito, *by purchase, by sale, etc.*

§ 643. *Zeugma.*—Sometimes a Verb which is strictly appropriate only as applied to one Substantive, is by a modification of its meaning applied to two: as,

Românis Germânisque idem conducere [putabam], et pacem quam bellum probabam, *I deemed the interests of Romans and Germans to be the same, and approved of peace rather than war.*—Tac. (Ann. 1, 58.)

(Here probabam has to be taken in the modified sense of putabam in the first member of the sentence.)

Nos Maurici Rusticique visus, nos innocenti sanguine Senecio perfudit, *Us the sight of Mauricus and Rusticus [horrified], us Senecio drenched with guiltless blood.*—Tac. (Agr. 45.)

Tacitus is fond of this construction.

Obs. Zeugma may also occur with other parts of speech besides Verbs: as,

Vir facundus et pœcis artibus [expertus], belli inexpertus, *An eloquent man and experienced in the arts of peace, not so of war.*—Tac. (Hist. 1, 8.)

## CHAPTER LIX.—ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

§ 644. *Adverbs.*—Ita, besides its ordinary use (§ 551) has the following peculiar constructions:

(1.) After non, haud, it is equivalent to admôdum, *very*: as,

Sunt ea (simulâcra) pœrampla et praeclara, sed non ita antiqua, *Those statues are very magnificent and admirable, but of no very great antiquity.*—Cic.

Haud ita multum (praedae) militi dâtum, *No large proportion of the spoil was given to the soldiers.*—Liv.

Nec ita multo post, *And not very long after.*—Cic.

Obs. In such cases there is an ellipsis: not so much so as might have been expected, &c.

(2.) In adjurations: as,

Ita me dii âment, hœonestus est, *So may heaven love me, he is a fine gentleman!*—Ter. (Eun. 3, 2, 21.)

Obs. In the same way sic is used: see Hor. Od. 1, 3, 1.



§ 645. *Satis* not unfrequently = "considerably," "fairly," "well;" as,

*Satis* cum periculo, *With considerable risk*.—TER. (And. 1, 1, 104.)

*Plautius* erat magna et in ea tumulus *satis* grandis, *There was an extensive plain, and in it a mound of considerable size*.—CAES. (B. G. 1, 43.)

*Homo* nec infectus et *satis* literatus, *A person not without elegance and a fair scholar*.—CIC. (Off. 3, 14, 58.)

§ 646. *Minus*, *parum*, *male*.—These three Adverbs are often used with a negative force, when they are equivalent to a softened *non*: as,

*Terentia minus* belle habuit, *Terentia has not been very well*.—CIC. (Fam. 9, 9.)

*L. Cotta . . . minus* in Senatum venit, *L. Cotta hardly comes into the Senate at all*.—(ib. 12, 2.)

*Parum* succedit quod ago, *My business is not getting on much*.—TER. (And. 4, 1, 56.)

*Parum* claris lucem dare cogit, *He will make him throw light on what is not clear*.—HOR. (A. P. 448.)

*Ego* illum male sanum semper putavi, *I have always thought him of unsound mind*.—CIC. (Att. 9, 15.)

*Male* gratus, *Ungrateful*.—OV. (Her. 7, 27.)

Obs. *Minus* especially = *non*, after *quo* [quominus], *sin*. *Parum* is never a decided negative; but always means *less than might be expected*.

§ 647. *Nullus* in colloquial language = *non*: see § 612.

§ 648. *Prepositions* (see § 553, sqq.).—When a Preposition occurs in composition with a Verb, it is often repeated after the Verb: as,

*Exire* ex navi, *To disembark from a ship*.—NEP.

*Exire* ex urbe, *To depart from the city*.—CIC.

Sometimes a different Preposition is used: as, *exire* de navi, a patria (CIC.).

§ 649. When in English two Prepositions are joined with the same Substantive, in Latin the Substantive is usually repeated: as,

*Haec* quum *contra* legem *proque* lege dicta essent, *When these speeches had been made for and against the law*.—LIV. (34, 8.)

*Darius* decedit; relictis filiis et in regno et ante regnum susceptis, *Darius died leaving behind him children born both during and before his being king*.—JUST. (2, 10.)

Obs. But in the case of Prepositions which may also serve as Adverbs, the construction may be as in English: as,

*Intra* extraque munitiones, *Within and without the fortifications*.—CAES. (B. C. 3, 72.)

*Supra* subterque terram, *Above and below ground*.—LIV. (39, 4.)

Or the Substantive may be expressed with one Preposition and understood with the other: as,

*Super* theatrum circaque, *Above and round about the theatre*.—LIV. (24, 39.)

*Iliacos* intra muros et extra, *Within the Trojan walls and without them*.—HOR. (Ep. 1, 2, 16.)

§ 650. *Inter* is sometimes repeated: as,

*Inter* Peliden et *inter* Achillem, *Between the son of Peleus and Achilles*.—HOR. (Ep. 1, 2, 12.)

*Nilil inter* te atque *inter* quadrupedem interesse (putas), *You think there is no difference between you and a brute*.—CIC. (Par. 1, 14.)

*Certatum inter* Ap. Claudium maxime, et *inter* P. Decium Murem, *The contest was very warm between Ap. Claudius and P. Decius Mus*.—LIV. (10, 7.)

Obs. Zumpt remarks that this construction is especially frequent with *interesse*.

§ 651. When the same Preposition belongs in English to two Substantives, the corresponding Preposition in Latin is repeated with the latter Substantive only when it denotes something quite distinct from the former: as,

*Legati* ab Aeduis et ab Treveris veniebant, *Embassies arrived [separately] from the Aedui and from the Treveri*.—CAES. (B. G. 1, 37.)

*Cur* de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent, *Why did they despair either of their own valour, or of his conduct?*—(ib. 40.)

Otherwise it is not repeated: as,

*In* Caesare populoque Romano, *In Caesar and the Roman people*.—(ib. 32.)

*Apud* Ariovistum et Sequanos, *In the hands of Ariovistus and the Sequani*.—(ib. 33.)

## CHAPTER LX.—CONJUNCTIONS AND OTHER WORDS AS PARTICLES.

§ 652. The Conjunctions, as such, being treated above (§§ 559, sqq.), the following observations will be devoted to their use, and that of other short words as particles.

Obs. The term *particle* (see § 11) is especially applied to uninflected words without any syntactical power, but serving to call attention to some particular part of a sentence.

§ 653. *Adco*.—This particle is attached to single words for the sake of emphasis. In this way it is used after

Pronouns (§ 614) and other words, including the Conjunction *atque*: as,

*Multum adeo* [is] . . . *arva jūvat*, *Much does such an one improve the soil.*—Virg.

*Hoc significat, atque adeo aperte ostendunt*, *This they hint and indeed openly show.*—Cic.

§ 654. *Enim*, though often used elliptically, for the most part retains its logical sense of *for* (see § 581). It is however sometimes merely a particle of emphasis = *indeed*, in fact: as,

*Tum Metilius Tr. Pl.*, id *enim* *frendum esse negat*, *Thereupon Metilius, tribune of the commons, declares that that is really not to be put up with!*—Liv. (22, 25.)

*Quid tute tecum?*—*Nihil enim*, *What were you saying to yourself?*—*Nothing at all.*—Plaut.

*Obs.* In the same way is sometimes used *nam* and also the compound *et̄enim* (= Gr. καὶ γάρ). *Nam* is sometimes equivalent to *namely*, for example: cf. Virg. G. 1, 451.

§ 655. *Nempe* (= *nam-pe*), *forsooth*, so it seems, why, occurs at the beginning of a sentence, and gives animation: as,

*Si Flacidius dat tantam pecuniam Flacco, nempe* *idecirco dat ut rata sit emptio*, *If Flacidius gives so large a sum of money to Flaccus, I suppose the reason he gives it, is that the bargain may be good.*—Cic.

*Nempe dixi*, *I said, did I?*—Hor. (S. 1, 10, 9.)

*Nempe negas ad beatē vivendum satis posse virtutem*, *You deny then, it seems, that virtue is sufficient for a happy life?*—Cic. (Tusc. 5, 12.)

*In quā tandem urbe . . . ? Nempe in eā quae*, etc., *In what city pray? Why (or forsooth) in that which, &c.*—Cic. (Mil. 3, 7.)

§ 656. *Quidem*, *indeed*, *at least*, *even*, is usually placed next after the most emphatic word of a sentence, which it serves to mark: as,

*Sibi quidem persuaderi*, etc., *He for his part was convinced*, etc.—Cic.

*Nihil sane ex me quidem audire potuisses*, *You would not have been able to hear a word from me, at any rate.*—Cic.

Especially in connexion with *ne*: when *ne . . . quidem* = *not even*: as,

*Nulla ne minima quidem aura*, *Not even the least breath of air.*—Cic.

*Obs.* 1. *Quidem* is often equivalent to the Greek γάρ. When *ne . . . quidem* = *not even*, the emphatic word is put between the two particles.

*Obs.* 2. For the use of *quidem* after *ille*, see § 616.

*Obs.* 3. With the first person singular, *equidem* (= *ego quidem*) is used: also sometimes with other persons, see Lat. Dict. s. v.

§ 657. *Utique* is formed from *ūt* or *ūti*, and signifies *at any rate*, *certainly*: it usually follows the word to which it chiefly refers: as,

*Illud v̄ro utique* (= Gr. γούν) *scire cupio*, *There is one thing at any rate I should like to know.*—Cic.

*Annum quidem utique tēcto*, *You must at any rate maintain the limit of a year.*—Cic.

After *non* it may be translated by *certainly*: as,

*Univerſo pars continetur: non utique accedit parti quod univ̄ersum est*, *The part is contained in the whole: but certainly the whole does not belong to a part.*—Quint.

§ 658. *Duntaxat* is similar to *quidem*, but usually precedes the word to which it refers: it may be translated by *just*, *at least*, *only*: as,

*Duntaxat ad hoc*, *Just for this purpose.*—Hor.

*Genus eloquentiae duntaxat ad̄olescens adhuc Strabōnis Caesaris sc̄c̄tus videtur*, *He appears, at least while still a young man, to have imitated Strabo Caesar's style of oratory.*—Suet.

*Peditatu duntaxat procul ad sp̄ciem utitur*, *He employs his cavalry, only at a distance for show.*—Caes.

§ 659. *Cert̄a*.—The use of the Adverb *certe* = *certainly*, *at least*, must be distinguished from that of *certo*, *for certain*, *of a truth*: as,

*Certe equidem pejorem puerum quam te vidi n̄m̄nem*, *Verily, a worse lad than you I never saw.*—Pl.

*Res fortasse verae; certe gr̄aves*, *Matters, perhaps true, but at least important.*—Cic.

§ 660. *V̄ro*, *d̄emum*, *indeed*, *at length*, are used for the sake of giving a strong emphasis to the words to which they are attached: especially in the phrases, *is d̄emum*, *that and nothing short of it*; *tum v̄ro* (Gr. τότε ἔν), *then if never before*, *then verily*: as,

*Tum v̄ro ard̄emus sc̄it̄ari*, *Then more than ever we are fired with curiosity.*—Virg.

*Is d̄emum vitam aequā lance pensitabit*, *That man, and no other, will form a fair appreciation of life who, etc.*—Plin.

§ 661. *Cun̄que* is rarely found alone; occurring for the most part in such compounds as *quicunque*, *ubicunque*, etc. When it does occur alone, it is equivalent to the Greek ποτέ, *ever*, *at any time*: as,

*Mihi cun̄que salve rit̄e v̄ocanti*, *Be gracious to me whensoever duly invoking thee.*—Hor. (Od. 1, 32, 15.)

*Obs.* In poetry *cun̄que* is not unfrequently separated from the word to which it belongs by *Timesis*: as,

*Quae d̄emant cun̄que d̄ol̄orem*, *Whatever things may remove pain.*—Lucr.

## CHAPTER LXI.—ON THE ORDER OF WORDS.

§ 662. The terminations of the *inflected* words in Latin show at once their relation to each other; and the arrangement of these may therefore be varied without affecting the sense. Thus the words,

Scipio Hannibālem vicit

will have the same meaning whether they are arranged thus or in any other way: as,

Hannibālem Scipio vicit,

Hannibālem vicit Scipio, etc.

In English, from the Subject being only known by its position at the beginning, only one arrangement yields a certain sense.

*Obs.* But the *uninflected* words have in general the same positions as in English: see §§ 678, sqq.

§ 663. In ordinary language, however, the arrangement of words is pretty regular; the Subject leading off the sentence, and the Predicate following: as,

Alexander mortuus est; Nix est alba, etc.

*Obs.* According to the preceding section (*Obs.*), various preliminary uninflected words may precede the sentence proper: such as Conjunctions, Adverbs of Time and Place, etc.

§ 664. *Object.*—When a sentence consists of Subject, Verb, Object, the usual order in Latin is,

1	2	3
Subject,	Object,	Verb,

these several parts being each attended by their adjuncts. The following may serve as examples of such simple sentences:

Haec Bābylōniā condidit, *She (Semiramis) it was who founded Babylon.*—Just.

Hannibāl urbem tripartito aggrēditur, *Hannibal attacks the city with his army in three divisions.*—Liv.

Ingrātus ūnus omnibus mīseris nōcet, *A single ungrateful person does injury to all the unfortunate.*—P. Syr.

*Obs.* 1. The same rule applies to Verbs Transitive proper (§ 234), and to such as govern a Dative or Ablative case.

*Obs.* 2. Not only the Accusative, but also the other oblique cases usually precede the Verb: as, *glādiis* pugnāre, *glādio* hūmērum appētēre; *viam ferro* pātefacēre, *vītam illi* eripēre, etc. The Accusative generally precedes another Case, unless the latter be emphatic.

§ 665. But when the Predicate or Object is emphatic it may be brought to the beginning, the Subject often coming last: as,

Vicit ratiōnem āmentia, *The victory was gained over reason by frenzy.*—Cic.

Arma vīrumque cāno, *Arms and the man I sing!*—Virg.

Haec ego omnia compēri, *All these things have I brought to light.*—Cic.

*Obs.* Inquam, inquit, say I, says he, are always used parenthetically: as, mīhi vērō, inquit, Cotta, etc.: cf. § 635, 2.

§ 666. The *first place* in a sentence being the most prominent, it is, where emphasis is needed, assigned to the most emphatic word: as,

Fuit, fuit, ista quondam in rēpublicā virtus, *There was,—yea there was once—that vigour in the commonwealth.*—Cic.

Ad mortem te Cātīlīna dūci jampridem oportēbat, *To execution, Catiline, thou oughtest long since to have been conducted!*—Cic.

Elephanto nulla bēluarum prudētiōr est, *Than the elephant there is not a single quadruped more sagacious.*—Cic.

§ 667. Also the *last place* in a sentence may become strikingly emphatic for any word whose ordinary place would have been earlier: as,

Arbōres sērit diligēns agrīcōla quārum adspiciet bācam ipse nunquam, *The industrious husbandman plants trees the fruit whereof he will never see at all.*—Cic.

Prōvinciam cēpisti dūram, *The task you have undertaken is hard.*—Ter.

Apud Helvētios longe ditissimus fuit Orgetōrix, *Among the Helvetii by far the richest man was Orgetorix.*—Caes.

Maeccēnas ātāvis ēdite rēgibus, *Thou Maecenas sprung from the loins of kings.*—Hor.

Especially, sometimes, the last word of an Hexameter: as,

Tantum religiō pōtuit suādēre mālōrum, *To such ills could superstition tempt!*—Lucr.

Partūriunt montes, nascētur ridīcūlus mus, *The mountains are in labour; forth will come an insignificant mouse!*—Hor.

Albānique patres atque altae moenia Romae, *And Alban sires, and walls of lofty Rome.*—Virg.

*Obs.* In free conversational language or familiar letters, the arrangement approaches the English more closely: as,

Ego quum accēpissē tuas lītēras Nōnīs Aprīlībus, *Having received your letter on the 5th of April.*—Cic.

(Periodic order: ego quum lītēras tuas Non. Apr. accēpissē.)

§ 668. A *Substantive or Adjective in Apposition* follows the word to which it refers: as,

Urbs Rōma, Cicero orator, Consul Tullius, Plinius minor, etc.

Obs. 1. Consul Tullius or Tullius consul might be equally correct. The former would inform us that the consul's name was Tullius; the latter that Tullius held the office of consul.

Obs. 2. Any adjuncts serving to qualify either word, may separate the two: as,

Attius Navius, inclitus eā tempestate augur, A. Navius, a famous augur of the time.—Liv.

Egerius (frātris hic filius erat regis) Collatiae in praesidio relictus, Egerius—this was the king's brother's son—being left in charge of Collatia, &c.—Liv.

Obs. 3. Sometimes one or more unimportant words not adjuncts of either, are allowed to stand between: as,

Evander tum ea profugus ex Peloponneso regēbat lōca, Evander, at the time an exile from Peloponnesus, ruled in these parts.—Liv.

Lacedaemōni contra, omnium hērdi bōnōrum, quum dīvitiae jam ānimos facerent, Wealth now inspiring the Lacedaemōni, on the contrary, who was heir to [his] entire property, with arrogance.—Liv.

§ 669. A *Dependent Genitive* (1) usually stands next after the governing substantive; unless (2) it is emphatic, when it generally precedes: as,

(1.) Agnitio ānīmī,—nātūra Deōrum,—figūrae Deōrum,—actio vitae, omnis cūratiō et administratiō rerum—(all from one chapter of Cic.: N. D. 1, 1.)

(2.) Doctissimōrum (hōmīnum) sententiae,—sūpientis grāvitas atque constantia,—maximārum (rerum) ignōratiō.—(Cic. same chapter.)

Obs. 1. Also the Genitive often precedes when the other Substantive has an attributive: as, summa philōsōphōrum dissensio (Cic.), hoc oraculi responso (Nep.), mirabilis pugnandi cupiditas (Nep.), nulla novandi res causa (Liv.), triste dictatoris impērium.

Obs. 2. The Genitive may be made still more emphatic by being separated from the Substantive on which it depends: as,

Ne hiemis quidem spatio, Not in winter time even.—Liv.

Quod Darii regno ipsorum nitēretur dōminatiō, Because on the rule of Darius depended their own authority.—Nep.

§ 670. When the Subjective and Objective are combined, the former generally precedes and the latter follows the Substantive: as,

Cognosce hōmīnis (Subj. Gen.) principium magistrātuum gerendōrum (Obj. Gen.), Mark the man's commencement of holding office.—Cic. (Verr. 1, 13, 34.)

Cur eōrum (Subj. Gen.) spem reliquam fortunārum (Obj. Gen.) vī extorquere cōaris, Why do you attempt to wring from them their (only) remaining hope of recovering their fortunes?—Cic. (Div. in Q. Caecil. 6, 21.)

§ 671. *Adjectives*.—The ordinary position for an attributive Adjective is immediately before its Substantive: as,

Multas virtutes,—majore religiōne,—in tam propinquo loco (all from Nep. Them. 8); —ingens multitudo,—tam longi operis,—amplissimis verbis,—publica laetitia,—insēquens annus,—consularis potestas,—Fidēnātū bello,—ancipiti proelio,—ex majōribus castris (from Liv. 5, 8, 9): etc.

Obs. 1. Some of the Adjectives in the above examples are emphatic; but the position does not render them so. On the contrary, the place next after the Substantive, as being less usual, is not unfrequently more emphatic: as, tempestate maximā (Nep. Them. 8), donum amplum (Liv. 5, 16), O puerum pulchrum (Cic. Off. 1, 40, 144), etc.

Obs. 2. A monosyllabic Adjective more frequently follows its Substantive: as, res rusticae, res nāvālis, di immortales. Yet Cic. has magna spes, omnis spes, etc.

§ 672. Great emphasis may be given to an Adjective by separating it from its Substantive, so as to let it produce a more independent impression: as,

Num tibi haec parra videntur adjumenta, Deem you these small helps?—Cic. (Mur. 18, 38.)

Sit idem magnificentissimos et nullos unquam fecisse ludos, Be it all the same thing (for a candidate) to have given the most magnificent games or none ever at all.—ib. (19, 41.)

Filiam ejus parvulam arripuit, He seized hold of his daughter, an infant.—Nep. (Them. 8.)

Tribus in unum bellis collatis, Three wars being accumulated all in one.—Liv. (5, 13.)

Obs. In poetry, it is very common for a Substantive to be separated from its epithet by several words, without any special emphasis being intended. The Substantive and epithet then often stand in corresponding parts of a line.

Especially if the Adjective becomes in this way either the first or last word in a sentence: as,

Labor omnia vincit  
Imprōbus, Toil untiring conquers all (difficulties).—Virg.

Hanc naturae tam diligentem fabricam, imitata est hominum verecundia, This so careful contrivance of nature, human modesty has copied.—Cic. (Off. 1, 35, 127.)

Quod aliud iter haberent nullum, Because, other route (they said) they had none.—Caes. (B. G. 1, 8.)

§ 673. But the place immediately before a Substantive is for the (quasi-enclitic) pronominal Adjectives meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, an emphatic position: as,

Clamores maximos pro vestra salute neglexit, He thought little of the loudest outcries in comparison with the safety of you.—Cic. (Mil. 2, 3.)

Per vos, ac per vestram fidem, By means of you, and your protection.—ib. (2, 4.)

Quum sua manu sororem esse interfectam fateretur, When he confessed that by his own hand his sister had been put to death.—ib. (3, 7.)

Meam potentiam invidiose criminabatur, He made invidious charges against (what he called) my unconstitutional power.—ib. (5, 12.)

(Compare Nep. Paus. IV. 2, where, writing to Xerxes, Pausanias says, *des ei filiam tuam*, and immediately after, *Graecian sub tuam potestatem se redacturum pollicetur*. In the former case a prominence of the word *tuam* might seem likely to give offence; in the latter it could not be other than flattering.)

§ 674. Different forms of the same word, when used to indicate some contrast, correspondence, or reciprocity, are put close to each other: as,

*Minus mñnum lavat*, *Hand washes hand* (= *One good turn deserves another*).—Vet. Prov. in Sen.

*Haeret pede pes densusque viro vir*, *Foot is locked to foot and man to man*, in dense array.—VIRG. (Aen. 10, 361).

*Omnia mea mēcum porto*, *I carry all my property about me*.

*Magnaque cum magno veniet tritura calore*, *And a great crop [Lit. thrashing] with great heat will ensue*.—VIRG. (G. 1, 190.)

*Magnum magno cōnāmīno misit*, *The mighty (stone) with mighty effort he threw*.—OV. (Met. 3, 59).

§ 675. The *ille* of celebrity (§ 365) follows the Substantive to which it refers; as,

*Mēdēa illa. Acādēmīa illa* (Cic.), *testula illa*, *The (fatal) oyster-shell used in ostracism* (Nep.): comp. § 365.

Obs. But when an Adjective is added, the *ille* may precede the Substantive: as, *vehemens ille consul*, Cic. in Cat. 2, 6.

§ 676. Some Adjectives regularly follow the Substantives to which they refer. So do especially those which are equivalent to a dependent Genitive, or may be rendered in English by a Substantive and a Preposition: as,

*Pōpalus Rōmānus*, *Pōpalus Albānus* (= *Romae, Albae*); *vincula publica* (= *pōpuli*), *the prison of state*; *dii publici*, *the gods of one's country* (Nep.); *mōtus civicus* (= *civium*), *a commotion amongst citizens*; *pontifex maximus*, *aes aliēnum*; etc.

Obs. But we find always *tribūni militum consulari potestate*, not *potestate consulari*; and in the case of some words the usage varies, as *pugna nāvalis* or *navalis pugna*; *civitas maritima* or *maritima civitas*.

§ 677. Sometimes an Adjective is put after a Substantive because of its close connexion with what immediately follows: as,

*Bellum multiplex fuit eodem tempore*, *There were going on at the same time a multitude of wars*.—LIV.

*Rōmānis indignitas major quam cūra*, *The Romans felt more indignation than concern*.—LIV.

*Cavendum est ne tarditatibus utāmur in ingressu mollioribus*, ut [= adeo molles ut] *pompārum ferealis similes esse videāmur*, *We must take care not to use in walking such effeminate slow movements as to look like the vessels carried in religious processions*.—CIC.

*Non Idibus Dēcembribus, die sollenni*, *sed extemplo Kālendis Octobribus*, [*They had entered on office*] *not on the 13th of December, the day proper for so doing, but at once on the 1st of October*.—LIV.

§ 678. *Adverbs* are usually placed immediately before the word they qualify: as, *satis magnus*, *diligenter cūrare*, etc. But they may be emphasised in a similar manner to Adjectives (comp. §§ 672, sqq.): as,

*Nusquam ōpēra sine emolūmento est*, *Nowhere is work without its need*.—LIV.

*Clam se ab custōdibus subduxit*, *He, without being noticed, got away from his keepers*.—NEP.

(For *nunquam* at the end of a sentence, see § 667.)

Obs. *Non* when it refers to a single word, stands immediately before it: as,

*Dāvus sum, non Oedīpus*, *Dāvus am I, not Oedipus*.—TER.

*Hōmo non aptissimus ad jōcandum*, *A man not the best hand at a joke*.—CIC.

But when it refers to the entire proposition, it often stands at the beginning: as,

*Non, mēdius fīdīus, possum prae lacrymis rēliqua scribēre*, *I cannot, I vow, write the rest for tears*.—CIC. (ad Att.).

§ 679. When two words stand in the same relation to another word, they must either both precede or both follow it: as,

*Divīnū datum atque oblātum* (*not datum divinitus atque oblatum*); —*suā spe ac praedicatione* (*not spe sua, &c.*); —*cum summa voluntate et expectatione Pōpuli Rōmāni* (*not cum voluntate summa P. R., &c.*); —*sēvère religiosēque dicere*; —*amicōrum stūdio officiōque*; — *hōmo audacissimus atque amentissimus*.—(All from Verr. Act. I. 1-3.)

§ 680. *Prepositions*.—The ordinary position of the different Prepositions has been explained above (Chap. LIII.). Concerning the connexion of two Prepositions with the same Substantive see § 649.

A Preposition may be separated from its Case not only by an attributive (as, *ex mārītīmis civitātibus*, *ad bēne vivendum*), or a dependent Genitive (as, *ex Caesaris castris*), but also (1) by the enclitic *que* (poet.); or (2) by an Accusative of the object governed by a transitive participle: as,

(1.) *Eque sacrā rēsōnant exāmīna quercu*, *And the swarms hum from the sacred oak*.—VIRG.

(N.B.—*Adque rēgem*, in Nep. Dat. 7, is probably a false reading for *ad regemque*.)

(2.) *Nec enim in constituentibus rempublicam, nec in bella gērentibus, etc.*, *For not among those who manage politics or wage wars, etc.*—CIC. (Br. 12, 45.)

*In sum cuique tribuendo*, *In giving each his due*.—(ib. 21, 85.)

*Obs.* 1. Sometimes when the governed Substantive has an attributive, the Preposition stands between the two: as, una ex re (Cic.); &c.

*Obs.* 2. Concerning *per* separated from its Substantive in adjunctions, see § 556, 17. *Obs.*

§ 681. *Conjunctions*, as connecting and showing the relation between sentences, naturally precede the members they serve to introduce: for examples see Chap. LIV. The principal exceptions are there treated. Concerning *ne* . . . . . quidem, see § 656.

Also some Adverbs of Time and Place, as *intērim*, *intērea*, *sīmul*, *jam*, *nunc*, *tunc*, *tum*; *ibi*, *hic*, *illuc*, etc., when they contain a reference to what has preceded, stand at the beginning.

*Obs.* *Inde* is very often treated as an enclitic: as,

Dēdi *inde* Inermes coepti, &c.; Agi *inde* de Apollinis dōno, &c.; Ob-sidio *inde* urbis, &c.—Liv.

§ 682. *Subordinate clauses*.—Participial or adverbial clauses and clauses with *quum* (see § 526), also Relative clauses when serving the purpose of definition, are let into the body of a period: as,

At Xerxes Thernōpŭlis expugnātis, prōtinus accessit astra, *But Xerxes after having forced the pass of Thermopylae, approached the city.*—Nep.

Jamque, nuntiāto augurio, quum duplex nūmērus Rōmulo se ostendisset, utrumque rēgem sua multitudo consalutāverat, *And now, when the augury had been published, and the double number presented itself to Romulus, the different parties had each saluted their own king.*—Liv.

Compare also the following:

Palatium primum, in quo ipse erat edūcātus (Rel. clause), mūniit: sacra diis aliis Albano ritu (Adverb. clause), Graeco Herculi ut ab Evandro instituta erant (Adv. clause), faciit.—Liv. (1, 7).

Magna pars [virginum] forte, ut in quem quaeque incidērat (Adv. clause), raptae.—Liv. (1, 9).

Athenienses [dixit] suo consilio, quod commūni jure gentium facere possent (Rel. clause), deos publicos suosque, patrios ac penātes, quo facilius ab hoste possent defendere (comp. § 634), mūris saepuisse.—Nep. (Them. 7).

§ 683. But when a Relative clause introduces an altogether fresh predication it forms a new sentence or clause by itself: as,

Inde non prius ēgressus est quam rex eum, datā dextrā, in fidem rēcepit, Quam praestitit, *He did not quit the spot, until the king, giving him his right hand, took him under his protection: which he made good.*—Nep.

Postquam audiērunt mūros instrui, lēgātōs Athēnas misērunt, qui id fieri vētarent, *When they heard that the walls were being built, they sent ambassadors to Athens, to forbid its being done.*—Nep.

*Obs.* In accordance with the above is the idiomatic practice of Latin authors of carrying forward narrative by means of the Relative.

§ 684. Similarly a Subjunctive clause with *ut* or *ne*, when not simply explanatory, follows the sentence to which it is attached: as,

Triplex portus constitutus est, isque moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitate aequipararet, *A threefold port was formed and surrounded by walls, so as to vie with the city in importance.*—Nep.

Tullius praecēperat suis, ne quid prius quam mandata agerent, *Tullius had instructed his envoys not to attend to anything before their commission.*—Liv.

But in the following examples the clause with *ut*, *ne*, being explanatory, naturally precedes:

Sed quia in civitate bellicosa, plures Rōmuli quam Nūmae similes rēges putābat fore, ne sacra regiae vicis dēsererentur, flāminem Jōvi assiduū sacerdotem creavit, *But as in a martial commonwealth, he thought there would be more kings like Romulus than like Numa,—to prevent the sacred rites falling to the share of the king from being neglected,—he appointed a perpetual flamen to Jove.*—Liv.

His, ut assidue templi antistite: essent, stipendium de publico stāuit, *To these—in order that they might serve the temple uninterruptedly—he assigned a salary from the public treasury.*—Liv.

*Obs.* It is not possible to define precisely the kinds of clauses treated of in the preceding sections. The longer clauses more frequently follow.

§ 685. Most sentences, and even clauses, are capable of being divided into shorter members, each of which is arranged according to the same general principles as an entire sentence: as,

Atqui tōtus hic locus, philosophōrum putātur proprius, *The whole of this subject, however, is regarded as belonging to philosophy (not rhetoric).*—Cic.

Quidquid erit igitur, quācumque ex arte, quācumque de genere, id orator si tanquam clientis causum didicerit, dicet melius et ornātius quam ille ipse ejus rei inventor atque artifex, *Whatever it may be, therefore, from whatever art or science, and from whatever branch, the orator will, if he will only study it as he would his client's brief, speak upon it more effectively and impressively, than even the original discoverer or proficient therein.*—Cic. (Or. 1, 11, 51.)

*Obs.* After the enunciation of an emphatic word, the remaining words in the same member are unemphatic. In the second sentence the adverbs *melius*, *ornātius*, follow the verb *dicet* because of their close connexion with the following words *quam*, etc. (comp. § 677.)

§ 686. Regard must in all cases be had to euphony, concerning which it is impossible to lay down precise rules. It may however be remarked that a trochaic ending (—) for a sentence is preferable to an iambic or dactylic one. Thus the following endings occur in the first chapter of the De Oratore:

Esse possent, constitisset, fefellerunt, exstiterunt, recolendas, discernen, redundarunt, roganti, voluntati; the only iambic ending in the same chapter being confeceram.



## PART II.—SYNTAX.

BOOK III.—REMARKS ON THE STYLES OF SALLUST,  
CAESAR, CICERO, LIVY AND TACITUS.

## CHAPTER LXII.—STYLE OF SALLUST.

§ 687. The style of Sallust is marked by brevity and frequent use of antithesis; also by the recurrence or peculiar use of certain words and constructions; and by some archaisms.

*Obs.* There is something artificial about the style of Sallust. This is most apparent in the moralising introductions with which he has prefaced his Catiline and Jugurtha. In simple narrative or description he is often exceedingly vigorous and animated: see for example his delineation of the character of Catiline (c. 5); his account of the seizure of the dispatches of the Allobrogian embassy (ib. 44, 45); of the siege of Zama (Jug. 60); of the Philaeni (ib. 79).

§ 688. *Brevity.*—This is a general feature of the style of Sallust, and is seen most strikingly in such concise expressions as the following:

*Vitam silentio transire, to go through life without causing one's name to be heard of, (Cat. 1); —ingenium, corpus, the entire faculties of the human mind or body, (ib. 2); —quae homines arant, navigant, aedificant, the different kinds of activity put forth in husbandry, navigation, and building or architecture, (ib. 2); —amare, potare, to indulge in the pleasures of licentiousness or intoxication, (ib. 11); —manus, venter, gambling, gluttony, (ib. 14); —virtus, all kinds of excellent qualities; especially of the mind, (passim); —ars, any kind of occupation or course (passim).*

§ 689. *Asyndeton* (§ 565. *Obs.*).—In accordance with his love of brevity, Sallust is fond of dispensing with connectives; as in the following examples:

*Quibus profecto contra naturam, corpus voluptati, animus oneri fuit, To whom—in opposition to what nature intended, unquestionably—the body was the only source of pleasure [and] the mind a burden.—(Cat. 2.)*

*Mare saevum, importunum; ager frugum fertilis, bonus pecori, arbore infecundus: coelo terraeque penuria aquarum, The sea [is] rough [and] without harbours; the soil fertile [and] good for stock [though] unproductive in trees; sky and earth [are alike] deficient in supply of water.—(Jug. 17.)*

(Compare also Cat. 5.)

*Obs.* Sallust is equally partial to the omission of the copula; as in the latter of the above examples.

§ 690. *Antithesis.*—The following may serve as specimens of the very frequent use of this figure by Sallust:

*Nam pro pudore, pro abstinentia, pro virtute, audacia, largitio, avaritia vigebant, For in place of modesty, of clean-handedness, of virtue, flourished effrontery, corruption, covetousness.—(Cat. 3.)*

*Laudis avidi, pecuniae liberales, Covetous of praise; liberal with money.—(ib. 7.)*

*Concordia maxima; minima avaritia, erat, There was the utmost degree of harmony, the least of covetousness.—(ib. 9.)*

(Compare the whole of the last-named chapter: also Cat. 54, etc.)

§ 691. *Historical Infinitive.*—Sallust makes very frequent use of this construction (see § 517), which is particularly suited to animated description. This is well seen in his vivid picture of the state of the capital during the panic caused by the conspiracy (Cat. 31), or of the restlessness and insecurity of the guilty Jugurtha (Jug. 72).

§ 692. *Alius . . . aliud.*—This concise idiom (see § 629) is probably more frequent in Sallust than in any other writer. Thus we find—

*Aliud alio ferri.—(Cat. 2.)*

*Alius alii natura iter monstrat.—(same chapter.)*

*Alius alio more viventes.—(ib. 6.)*

*Alius alium hortari.—(same chapter.)*

*Praeterea alium alio [mittit].—(ib. 27.)*

*Alios in alia loca [praemisisse].—(same chapter.)*

And in many other places.

§ 693. *Sed, nam, igitur.*—Sallust begins a great many of his sentences with one or other of these conjunctions (probably after the model of the Greek  $\delta\epsilon$  or  $\alpha\lambda\lambda\acute{\alpha}$ — $\gamma\alpha\rho$ — $o\tilde{\iota}\nu$ ). This has a somewhat bald and monotonous effect. Thus in the first short chapter of the Catiline, *nam* and *sed* each begin two sentences; and in five consecutive chapters (ib. 7—11), *sed* begins nine sentences; *igitur*, four; and *nam* (or *namque*), three.

*Obs.* By other authors *igitur* is placed second in a sentence, not first.

§ 694. *Favourite or peculiar words.*—There are some words (1) which Sallust is fond of repeating; others (2) which are rarely used by other writers or not in the same sense: the following are the principal of these:

- (1.) *Mortales* in sense of *homines* (passim). *Pöpulares*, for *accomplices* (Cat. 22, 24).



*Tempestas* for (*particular*) *time* (Gr. *καipός*): *as*,

*Eā tempestāte* (Cat. 7, 17, 22, 26; Jug. 8, &c.), *quā tempestāte* (Jug. 79).

*Āgo* and its frequentative *āgito*, in various senses: *as*,

*Civitas laeta āgēre*, *The whole city* (acted *as*) *full of joy*.—(Jug. 55.)

*Incultius āgēre*, *To live in a more uncivilized manner*.—(id. 89.)

*Multa āgītāre*, *To turn over, meditate upon many things*.—(Cat. 53.)

*Vagos āgītāre*, *To live a wandering life*.—(Jug. 19.)

*Agītāre* (absol.), *To move, gesticulate*.—(Jug. 60.)

*Varius incertusque āgītābat*, *He acted in an inconstant and hesitating way*.—(ib. 74.)

*Habeo*, in various senses: *as*,

*Virtus clāra aeternaque hābētur*, *Virtue is a glorious and imperishable possession*.—(Cat. 1.)

*Aequābilis sēse res hūmānae hābērent*, *Human affairs would go on more steadily*.—(ib. 2.)

*Actātem prōcul a rēpublica hābēre*, *To spend one's life aloof from public affairs*.—(ib. 4.)

*Nēque quicquam pensi hābēbat*, *Nor had he any consideration*.—(ib. 5.)

*So, confidēre atque hābuēre*, *sicūtī plērāque mortālium hābentur*, *nōmen rēgium hābēbant* (ib. 6),—*in promptu hābēre*, *libidinem hābēbant* (ib. 7), and so on.

## (2.) Peculiar uses of words:

*Mēdiocris*, in sense of *equitable, good* (Gr. *ἐπιεικής*): Jug. 6.

*Gignentia*, for *plants, vegetation*: Jug. 79, *med*.

§ 695. *Archaisms*.—Sallust somewhat affects these: the following may be noted:—

- (1.) Accusative pl. of Substantives and Adjectives in *es* and is in *is* rather than *es*: *as*, *omnis*, etc.
- (2.) Genitive sing. of 4th Decl. in *i* for *us*: *as*, *sēnāti* (Cat. 30, 36, 51).
- (3.) Such contracted Genitives as *ingēni* (Cat. 1), *impēri* (ib. 6), *auxili* (ib. 40), &c.
- (4.) He always uses *o* after *v*, and not *u*: *as* *divorsi* (Cat. 2), *convortit* (ib. 6), &c.

*Obs.* This last mode of spelling, however, appears to have been the usual one in the time of Sallust.

## CHAPTER LXIII.—STYLE OF CAESAR.

§ 696. The style of Caesar has few peculiarities. It is clear, direct, and unaffected. He is said to have carefully avoided unusual words or expressions.

*Obs.* The 'Commentaries' of Caesar were designed, as the name implies, to serve as "notes" or memoranda for history (see Suet. Caes. 56). But Cicero remarks that while "silly persons" (inepti) might think the adorned materials of Caesar a good field to show off their fine writing, sensible people would shrink from meddling with what was in itself so excellent ("sanos quidem homines a scribendo deterruit:" Brut. 75).

§ 697. Caesar is generally brief and concise, though evidently without studying to be so like Sallust. Perspicuity is evidently more consulted than brevity. Hence perhaps, he often repeats the antecedent along with the Relative pronoun; as in the following:

*Erant omnino duo itinēra*, quibus itinēribus dōmo exire posset.—B. G. 1, 6.

*Diem dicunt quā die* ad ripam Rhōdāni omnes convēniant.—(same chapter.)

*Re frumentāriā comparātā* equitibusque dēlectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germānos audiēbat.—ib. 4, 7.

§ 698. He is partial to the construction of the  *Ablative Absolute*. Thus many passages begin with some such phrase as "Quibus rēbus cognitis" (B. G. 19, etc.), "bello confecto" (ib. 30), "eo consilio dimisso" (ib. 31), "hac oratione hābitā" (ib. 32), "his rēbus cognitis" (ib. 33), &c.

§ 699. A great many particulars are often gathered up in one sentence. Thus some of Caesar's periods contain perhaps more members than those of any other narrative writer: *as*,

*Quod ubi Caesar compērit*, omnibus his rēbus confectis quarum causā transducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germānis metum infliceret, ut Sigambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret,—diebus omnino dēcem et octo consumptis,—satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus,—se in Galliam rēcepit pontemque rescidit, *When Caesar was informed of this*, as he had accomplished all the objects he had in view in crossing [the Rhine],—namely, to strike terror into the Germans, to inflict vengeance on the Sigambri, and to raise the blockade of the Ubi,—having spent in all eighteen days and no more; thinking that enough had been achieved whether for his credit or his ends, betook himself back into Gaul and broke down the bridge.—(B. G. iv. 19).

*Obs.* These inconveniently long periods doubtless owe their origin to haste of writing (see § 696, *Obs.*). For other examples see B. G. vii. 33, 34, 36.

## CHAPTER LXIV.—STYLE OF CICERO.

§ 700. The style of Cicero is that of a man who has at his command all the resources of the language. Every period is a work of art, and the cadences are full and sonorous. But perhaps the finest charm is to be found in his letters. He there allows himself more natural liberty in the use and coining of words, as well as in the structure of his sentences, while yet we nowhere miss that grace which is inseparable from Cicero.

Only a few points will be noticed here, since the peculiarities of Cicero are mostly rhetorical rather than grammatical.

§ 701. He is fond of doubling his words; that is to say, he often uses together two or more words of nearly identical meaning, in order to convey a fuller or more precise sense. Thus we often meet with such combinations as the following:

*Amicus necessariusque*,—*sûperbia atque arrogantia*,—*sermo atque fama*,—*ignominia et turpîtudo*,—*lêvitas et inconstantia*,—*cûra atque ôpera*,—*sine iudicio contrôversiaque*;—*rêgère et administrare*,—*môleste graviterque ferre*,—*committère et credere*,—*struere et moliri*, etc. (all from the *Cluentius*).

*Obs.* In his frequent use of such parallel words Cicero was no doubt studying partly a more complete and exhaustive expression, and partly the cadence of his sentences.

§ 702. In his more rhetorical passages Cicero makes a bold use of Abstracts for Concretes (§ 592, 2): as,

*Prôvinciam ad summam stultitiam nêquitiamque vênisse*, *The province had fallen into the hands of the greatest fools and knaves*.—(*Verr.* 5, 15.)

*Exercitus collectus ex agraria luxuria*, *An army collected from all the profligates of the country*.—(*In Cat.* 1, 3.)

*Iste mêtus*, *That fearful villain* (*Clodius*).—(*pro dom.* 55.)

§ 703. *Diminutives*.—He makes a free use of these, and appears to coin them when it suits his purpose: as,

*Contortulae* quaedam et *minutae conclusiunculæ*, *Paltry little quibbling arguments*.—(*Tusc.* 2, 18.)

*Nummûlis acceptis*, *Having received some paltry coins*.—(*Att.* 1, 16.)

*Brûti nostri vulticulus*, *The dear (little) face of our Brutus*.—(*Att.* 14, 20.)

*Quintus filius Antônii est dextella*, *My nephew Quintus is Antony's right-hand man* (perhaps implying some contempt).—(*ib.*)

*Obs.* This free use of diminutives is found chiefly in his letters and the conversational parts of his philosophical and other works.

§ 704. *Vidêri*.—Cicero is partial to the use of this verb, and sometimes uses it to soften a statement, where in English it cannot be translated: as,

*Restat ut de impêrâtore ad id bellum dëlîgendo dicendum videâtur*, *It remains for me to speak respecting the choice of a commander for the said war*.—(*Manil.* 10, 27.)

(*Comp. ib.* 20, where the same phrase is repeated.)

*Obs.* This use of *videor* corresponds to that of *δοκέω* in Greek (cf. *Xen. Anab.* 1, 3, 12); and sometimes occurs in other authors besides Cicero: as,

*Nêque id sine causâ arbitrâri vidêbantur*, *Nor were they [did they seem to be] without reason for that opinion*.—(*Nep. Alc.* 6.)

§ 705. *Versâri, râtio*.—These two words are used by Cicero very frequently, and in various senses: the following examples are taken from a large number in *Nägelsbach* (*Stilist.* pp. 167, 297):

(1.) *Versâri*: *to be engaged in; to be in connexion with, in the domain of; to deal with; to be at work*: as,

*In omni gènere furandi atque praedandi versâri*, *To be engaged in every kind of thieving and robbery*.—(*Verr.* 5, 1.)

*Uterque in summâ sêvêritate versâtur*, *Both of them (Cato and Cæsar) take the ground of extreme severity*.—(*In Cat.* 4, 4.)

*Meus labor in privâtorum përiculis versâtus*, *My exertions which have to do with the perils of private citizens*.—(*Manil.* 1 2.)

*Versâtur magnus error*, *A great delusion prevails*.—(*Leg. Agr.* 2, 3, 7.)

(2.) *Râtio*: *account, consideration; dealings; relation, province or domain* (German, *verhältniss*); *calculation; reasoning; theory, system, mode*: as,

*In râtionem inducère*, *To take into account*.—(*Verr.* 1, 4.)

*Râtionem habent cum terrâ*, *They (farmers) have to do with the soil*.—(*de Sen.* 15.)

*Diversa stadia in dissimili râtione*, *Diverse activities in a different field*.—(*In Cat.* 2, 5.)

*Dômestica, bellica râtio*, *The domain or department of home affairs, of war*.—(*Off.* 1, 22.)

*Râtio vênêficii*, *The domain, department or ground of the (alleged) poisoning*.—(*Clu.* 1.)

*Pëtitionis tuæ râtio*, *The question or matter of your canvass* (little more than = *petitio tua*).—(*Fam.* 15, 13, 1.)

*Sine ullâ divînâ râtione*, *Without taking the gods into consideration at all*.—(*N. D.* 3, 35.)

## CHAPTER LXV.—STYLE OF LIVY.

§ 706. Livy is the greatest master of prose narrative. The periods of Cicero are those of a public speaker; those of Livy combine the stateliness of a historian with the copious flow and artistic grouping suitable to descriptive narration.

*Obs.* There seems to be no foundation for the opinion that the later decades were inferior in excellence to the earlier ones. (See Lewis, R. Hist. i. p. 233.) Livy was charged by his contemporaries with a certain provincialism (*Patavinitas*); but it is not known wherein the alleged peculiarities consisted.

§ 707. *Figurative language.*—Livy makes frequent use of metonymy (§ 604), and other figures of speech. Thus we find Mars for bellum (*passim*); ministēria, servitia, for ministri, servi (§ 592); praetōrium, not only for the office of commander-in-chief (21, 3), but also for a commander-in-chief's council of war (21, 54); praerōgātiva, for a prior election (21, 3); agrestium fuga, for *agrestes fugientes* (3, 69); rōbōra vīrorum for *rōbusti vīri* (2, 54); etc.

§ 708. *Genitive.*—Livy uses the Genitive after Adjectives with more freedom than earlier writers: as,

Trēpidi rerum suarum (= de rebus suis), *In alarm about their own interests.*—(5, 11.)

(See remarks on style of Tacitus: § 721.)

§ 709. *Singular for Plural.*—This use has been already noticed (§ 607).

§ 710. *Indicative for Subjunctive.*—Instead of the Subjunctive in Relative clauses of the *oratio obliqua* (§ 465), Livy not unfrequently uses the Indicative (even when such usage cannot be explained by 467, *Obs.*): as,

Proconsulem P. Cornēlium, multōrum exemplo qui in māgistrātu non triumphāverunt (= triumphaverint), triumphātūrū esse, *P. Cornelius might (he said) enjoy his triumph as proconsul, after the precedent of a number who had not done so while actually in office.*—(36, 39.)

Q. Fabium dicere, se . . . ab Rōmā Aequis bellum afferre, eādē dextrā armatā, quam pacatam ille antea dāderat (= dederit), *Q. Fabius said, he brought war from Rome to the Aequians, with the same right hand armed which he had before offered them in peace.*—(3, 2.)

§ 711. The Subjunctive is often preferred to the Indicative after *dōnec*, *antēquam*, *priusquam*, even when simple facts are spoken of: see §§ 499, 501 (*h.*)

§ 712. *Perfect Subjunctive after Past Tenses.*—This construction (§ 433) is perhaps more frequent in Livy than in any other writer. Compare the following:

Eo fuit (*past-indef.*) hābitu oris, ut . . . ridentis etiam spēcīem prae-  
buerit, *He wore such an expression on his features as to present the appear-  
ance of a laugh (Lit. of one laughing).*—(21, 2.)

Haud dubium [fuit], quin nisi firmata extrēma agmīnis fuissent,  
ingens in eo saltu accipiēda clādes fuērit, *There was no doubt that had  
not the rear-guard been strengthened, a serious defeat must have been sus-  
tained in that pass.*—(21, 34.)

Transeuntē Apenninū adeo atrox adorta tempestas est, ut Alpium  
foeditatem prōpe supērāverit, *As he was crossing the Apennines, he was  
assailed by a tempest of such violence as almost to surpass the horrors of  
the Alps.*—(21, 58.)

(In all the above cases Cicero would probably have used the Imper-  
fect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.)

§ 713. *Gerund and Gerundive.*—Livy is partial to the use of these verbal forms, which he uses with greater freedom than any other writer. (Compare § 541.) The following examples of his use of the Gerundive may be useful:

[Saguntinis] oppugnandis (*Ab. Absol.*) haud dubie Rōmāna arma  
mōvēbantur, *By the attack upon Saguntum there was no question of a war  
with Rome being provoked.*—(21, 5.)

(Cicero would have said Saguntinis oppugnatis.)  
Possidendis agris (= possessione agrorum) contentus, *Content with  
holding the (public) lands.*—(6, 14.)

Quum vix mōvendis armis (= ad arma mōvenda) spātium esset,  
*There being hardly room to move their arms.*—(23, 27.)

Ubi prōmōvendo adjunctam (= promotam atque adjunctam) mūro  
vidērunt turrem, *When they saw that the tower, by being gradually pushed  
forward, had been brought close to the wall.*—(23, 38.)

His avērendis terrōribus (= ad hos avērendos terrores: cf. § 538)  
in trīdium feriāe indictae, *To avert these terrors, a holiday of three days  
was notified.*—(3, 5.)

§ 714. *Adverbs.*—Several Adverbs are often found in com-  
bination; as,

Nunquam alius aude publice privātique Lātīnū nōmēn Rōmāno  
impērio conjunctius fuit, *Never at any time before was the Latin name  
(nation) more connected, both as nations and individuals, with the Roman  
people.*—(2, 21.)

Si quando unquam ante alias, *If ever before.*—(31, 5.)

(The above or a similar combination of adverbs occurs again and  
again in Livy.)

§ 715. *Prepositions.*—Livy is somewhat peculiar in his use of certain Prepositions, especially *ab* (*a*), *ad*, as seen in the following examples:

- (1.) **Ab, a.**—*Directly after; by way of: on the part of* (cf. § 557, 1): *as,*

*Ab (= ex) his praeceptis contionem dimisit, Immediately after (giving) these instructions, he dismissed the assembly.—(41, 34.)*

*Ab irrisu (= per irrisum) linguam exserere, To put out the tongue in ridicule.—(7, 10.)*

*Ab regibus, On the part of the royalists.—(37, 23.)*

*Ad exsolvendam fidem a consule (= consulis), To the making good of a promise on the part of the consul.—(27, 5.)*

*Mettus Curtius ab Sabinis (= Sabinorum) princeps, Mettus Curtius leader on the part of the Sabines.—(1, 12.)*

- (2.) **Ad.**—*At the instance of; in the department of: as,*

*Ad (= propter) metum, ad spem veniae dedere se, To surrender in (at the promptings of) fear, or of hope of pardon.—(36, 13.)*

*Ad desiderium relictarum (sc. boum), mugire, To bellow at missing the heifers that had been left behind.—(1, 7.)*

*Tribuni militum ad legiones (= legionum), The military tribunes of the legions.—(7, 5.)*

*Servi ad remum, The slaves at the oar.—(34, 6.)*

§ 716. **Namque** is frequently placed by Livy (as by later writers generally) second instead of first in a sentence: *as,*

*Omnium namque laborum, etc., (5, 11.)*

*Ibi namque in tabernis, etc., (3, 44.)*

## CHAPTER LXVI.—STYLE OF TACITUS.

§ 717. Tacitus lived a century after the latest of the aforementioned masters of Latin prose. The language had then lost somewhat of its original chasteness and severity, but from an increased vocabulary and greater freedom of expression, it was perhaps better fitted to express the conceptions of an original and vehement writer like Tacitus.

§ 718. Tacitus delights to express himself in striking and original ways. He has great variety of phraseology; his turns of thought are often abrupt and even startling; and he frequently suggests much more than he expresses. He uses freely many idioms rarely or never found in writers of the preceding century, and his language has much of a poetical complexion.

§ 719. The scale of this work does not admit of a full treatment of so various a subject as the style of Tacitus. For fuller particulars the student is referred elsewhere.\* We shall notice only the more prominent points.

§ 720. (A.) **VARIETY.**—This is shown chiefly in the following particulars:

- (1.) *Different forms of the same word: as,*

*Plebs and plebes—senectus and senecta—oblivium and oblivio—quotiens and quoties—tegumen, tegumen and tegmen—parentum (gen. pl.) and parentium, &c.*

- (2.) *Different grammatical constructions without difference of meaning: as,*

*(Legionem .... pro ripa componeret), subsidio (Dat. of Purpose or Result: § 297) victis et terrorem (Apposition) adversus victores, As an assistance to them if conquered, and a terror to their conquerors.—Ann. 12, 29.*

*Corpore ingens, animi (§ 285) immoceans, In body huge, in mind (ambition) unmeasured.—Hist. 1, 53.*

*Cum Parthus (§ 607) distraheret turmas, Sarmatae irrurent, While the Parthians tried to separate the squadrons, and the Sarmatians rushed, &c.—Ann. 6, 35.*

Especially in comparisons (§ 350):

*Vehementius quam caute, Agr. 4.*

*Claris majoribus quam vetustis, Ann. 4, 61.*

*Quanto inopina, tanto majora, Ann. 1, 68.*

*Quanto quis clarior, minus fidus, Hist. 3, 58.*

- (3.) *Various words and phrases employed to denote the same thing: as,*

*Finis sponte sumptus—quaesita mors—suo ictu mortem invenire—finem vitae sibi ponere—voluntario exitu cadere—vitam relinquere—etc., all to denote self-destruction.*

*Venas, brachia exsolvere, resolvere, abrumpere, interseindere, abseindere, incidere—levem ictum venis inferre—all of opening the veins in order to cause death.*

- (4.) *Peculiar uses of words.*—Tacitus not only uses (a) many new words, but also (b) old ones in rarer meanings: the following may serve as examples:

(a) *Centurionatus, exstimulator, instigatrix, inturbidus, quinquiplicare, praeposce, provivere, pervigere, superstagnare, superurgere.*

\* See Böttcher's 'Remarks on the Style of Tacitus,' prefixed to Dr. Smith's Tacitus, from which the present sections are, to a great extent, taken.

(b) Adductus, in sense of *severe*: hence, adductus regnari, to be under stricter rule.—(Ger. 43.)

Expédire, to go on an expedition (Gr. στρατεύεσθαι).—(Hist. 1, 88.)

Extensus, *hostile*: hence externa mōliri, to make hostile movements.—(Hist. 3, 5.)

Diversus, also *hostile*: as diversa ācies, the enemy's line.—(Ann. 14, 30.)

Annus, *yearly crop*.—(Ger. 14.)

Sinister = mīlus.—(Agr. 5.)

§ 721. (B.) PECULIAR IDIOMS.—Under this head fall—

(1.) His use of the Genitive (see § 285):

(a) After Adjectives; as, immōdicus ānīmi, ingens ānīmi, vētus op̄is ac labōris, virtūtim stērilis, &c. &c.

(b) With the Gerundive, to denote a purpose (see § 539): as, Aegyptum prōficiscitur cognoscendae antiquitātis, He sets out for Egypt, in order to study its antiquities.—(Ann. 2, 59.)

Vitandae suspiciōis, an quia pavīdis consilia in incerto sunt, Either in order to avoid suspicion, or else because the plans of the timid fluctuate.—(Ann. 3, 9.)

(2.) His free use of the Dative of purpose (see § 297); as,

Rēpertus est nūdus . . . exercitādo corpōri, He was found stripped for exercise.—(Ann. 14, 59.)

Num . . . cētera expugnandis urbibus attālissent, (He asked) whether they had brought the other (appliances) for taking cities.—(Hist. 3, 20.)

(3.) Of the Accusative without a Preposition after verbs of motion: as,

Ripam accēdere—oppidum irrupere—advolvi gēnuā—incidere locum, &c.; in which cases a Preposition is mostly used by Cicero. Tacitus has also such expressions as vertices montium insidēre, Ger. 43; summa collium insidēre, Agr. 37. (Comp. § 236.)

(4.) Of the Ablative Absolute (see § 333. Obs. 2).

(5.) His frequent use of an Adjective instead of the Genitive of a Substantive: as,

Calānae expēditionēs, The expeditions of Caius (Caligula).—(Hist. 4, 15.)

Mētus hostilis, Fear of the enemy.—(Ann. 12, 51.)

Obs. This idiom is found in earlier writers (§ 611): it is its frequent use that is peculiar to Tacitus.

(6.) Of the plural of Abstract Substantives: as, audāciae (Ann. 1, 74), irācundiae (14, 4), etc., where the use of the plural indicates separate manifestations of the abstract quality (see § 594).

(7.) Of the Infinitive:

(a) As Historical (comp. § 517):

Tacitus uses this idiom more frequently than any other writer (Sallust included: § 691). He has it even after such Adverbs of time as ubi, cum: as,

Ubi crudescere seditio, When the mutiny was growing fiercer.—(Hist. 3, 10, &c.)

(b) After verbs of advising, commanding, preventing, &c., instead of the Subjunctive and ut, ne, quin, quōmīnus. Thus we find,

Obstitit Occānus in se simul atque in Herculem inquiri (= quomīnus inquireretur, § 463), Ocean prevented inquiry at once into himself and Hercules.—(Ger. 34.)

(8.) Zeugma (see § 643).

§ 722. (C.) ABRUPTNESS, &c.—This is seen in the unexpected turns often given by Tacitus to a sentence: as,

Ferrum clātum dēfērebat in pectus—nī proximi dextram vi attinissent, He raised his sword, and was in the act of plunging it into his bosom—[and would have done so] had not the by-standers held his hand by main force.—(Ann. 1, 35.)

Germānia a Sarmātis Dācisque mētū aut montibus sēparātur, Germany is bounded on the side of the Sarmatians and Dacians by fear or by mountains.—(Ger. 1.)

Cibos et hortāmīna pugnantibus gestant, They carry to the combatants provisions and encouragement.—(Ger. 7.)

§ 723. Tacitus is a writer who suggests more than he says, and his brief comments are frequently marked by bitterness and irony. This is seen in the following sentences:

Nec corrumpere et corrumpi saeculum vocatur, Nor is the conduct of seducer and seduced there called "the [fashion of] the age."—(Ger. 19.)

Māneat, quaeso, daretque gentibus, si non amor nostri, at certe odium sui; quando urgentibus impērii fatis, nihil jam praestare fortuna majus potest quam hostium discordiam,—Fortune can now confer on us nothing better than strife amongst our foes.—(Ger. 33.)

Sanctiusque ac reverentius visum de actis deorum credere quam scire, —It seemed more pious and devout to believe in the doings of the gods than to know about them.—(Ger. 34.)

§ 724. (D.) POETICAL COMPLEXION.—This is felt throughout in reading Tacitus; and consists partly in the use of the "poetical" constructions which have been illustrated. The following points may be added:

- (1.) The use of abstract substantives in concrete sense :  
as,

Titus ingens rerum fiducia accessit, *In Titus he found a great prop of his fortunes.*—(Hist. 4.)

Militiae = *militēs* (Hist. 3, 18).

Exsilia = *exsiles* (Hist. 1, 2).

Mātrīnōnia = *uxores* (Ann. 2, 13).

- (2.) Hendiadys (see § 602): as,

Nec ullum in barbāris sacvitiac gēnus omisit ira et victōria,  
*Nor did the rage of the victors fail to practise any species of cruelty known among barbarians.*—(Agr. 16.)

Sūper sexāginta millia . . . oblectātiōni oculisque ceciderunt,  
*More than 60,000 were slain for the gratification of our eyes.*—(Ger. 33.)

- (3.) A general use of elevated and figurative language :  
as,

Glōria frontis, *Pride of aspect (of the tall, handsome horns of cattle).*—(Ger. 5.)

Nūdi aut sagnlo lēves, *Naked or lightly [clad in] a soldier's mantle.*—(ib. 6.)

Sēra jūvenum Vēnus, *Their youth are late in arriving at the age of puberty.*—(ib. 20.)

Silvam, | auguriis patrū et prisēa formidine sacram [a Hexameter line], *A forest consecrated by the auguries of ancestors, and awe of old.*—(ib. 39.)

## PART III.—PROSODY.

§ 725. PROSODY treats of the *Quantity* of Syllables and *Metre*, or the laws of Verse.

*Obs.* *Prosody* is a Greek word (προσῳδία), which signifies literally the tone or accent of a syllable.

### CHAPTER LXVII.—QUANTITY.

§ 726. The Quantity of a Syllable is either long (—), short (·), or doubtful (=).

#### (A.) GENERAL RULES.

§ 727. All diphthongs are long: as, āurum, *gold*, pōēna, *punishment*, cūi, *to whom*.

EXCEPTION.—*Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel: as, prae-acutus, *sharpened at the end*.

*Obs.* 1. A vowel arising from a diphthong remains long: as, oc-cīdo, *to kill*, from caedo, *to strike*; con-clūdo, *to shut up*, from claudo, *to shut*.

*Obs.* 2. Some Greek diphthongs are shortened: as, pōesis (ποίησις), *plātēa* (πλατεία) as well as *plātēa*.

§ 728. All contracted syllables are long: as, cōgo from cōāgo, *to collect*, bōbus from bōvibus, *to or by oxen*, jūnior from jūvēnior, *younger*, prūdēns from prōvīdēns, *possessed of foresight*.

§ 729. A vowel is long by position, when it is followed by two or more consonants, by a double consonant (*x, z*), or by *j*: as, mēnsa, *a table*, dūx, *a leader*, Amāzon, *an Amazon*, ejus, *of him*.

*Obs.* In Prosody, quantity is for the sake of convenience regarded as belonging only to Vowels. Thus in the word nūx (*a nut*), root nūc-, the vowel *u* is said to be long (by position): though strictly speaking, it is the syllable which is lengthened by the addition of the consonant *s*, the vowel retaining its quantity as in other cases; nūc-i, nūc-em, nūc-es, etc.



EXCEPTION 1. Bijugus, *yoked two together*, quadrjagus, *yoked four together*.

Obs. 1. *Qu* is a single consonant: hence, *āqua*, *water*. *It* is a simple breathing: hence, *ādhuē*, *as yet*.

Obs. 2. A syllable is also long by position when one consonant ends a word, and another consonant begins the next word: as, in *mare*, *into the sea*; *fruitūr vita*, *he enjoys life*.

Obs. 3. But if a word ends in a short vowel, and the following word begins with two consonants, the vowel *usually* remains short: as,  
In *solio Phœbus claris lucēntē smāragdis*.—Ov.

Obs. 4. But a short vowel rarely stands before *sc*, *sm*, *sp*, *sq*, and *st*.

EXCEPTION 2. Before a mute and either of the liquids *l* or *r*, a vowel naturally short becomes doubtful: as, *dūplex* or *dūplex*, *twofold*, *pātris* or *pātris*, *of a father*. It generally remains short before *tl*, as, *Atlas*; *cl*, as *assēcla*; and *fl*, as *melliflūus*, *flowing-with-honey*.

Obs. 1. It is only in Greek words that a vowel remains short before a mute and either of the liquids *m* or *n*: as, *Tēcnessa*, or *Tēcnessa*, *Prōene* (or *Prōgne*), *cēnus* (or *cēgnus*), *a sean*.

Obs. 2. A vowel naturally long remains long before a mute and a liquid: as, *āceres* from *acer*, *sharp*.

Obs. 3. In composition, if one syllable ends with a mute, and the other begin with a liquid, the vowel is long by position: as, *ōb-ruo*, not *ōb-ruo*, *to over-whelm*, *sūb-latum*, not *sūb-latum*, *lifted up*.

§ 730. A vowel followed by another vowel is usually short: as, *pius*, *pious*, *flēo*, *to weep*, *pūer*, *a boy*: or if *h* intervenes between the vowels, as *trāho*, *vēho*.

EXCEPTIONS. The following vowels are long before another vowel:

1. The *a* in the old Genitive of the First Declension: as, *aquāi*.
2. The *a* and *e* of proper names in *-aius*, *-cius*: as, *Caius*, *Pompēius* (*Cajus*, *Pompējus*).
3. The *e* in the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension, when a vowel precedes: as, *diēi*: but *rēi* and *fidēi* except in archaic poets.
4. The *e* in the Interjection *ēheu*.
5. The *i* in the Genitive *aius* (but always short in *alterius*). In the other Genitives in *ius*, the *i* is long in prose, but doubtful in poetry: as, *illius*, *ipsius*, *unius*.
6. The *i* in *fio* when not followed by *r*: as, *fio*, *fiebam*, *fiam*, but *fierem*, *fieri*.
7. The *i* in *dīa* (*δῖα*), *divine*.
8. The *i* in *Diana* is doubtful: *Dīana* and *Dīana*.
9. The *o* in the Interjection *ōhe* is doubtful: *ōhe* and *ōhe*.
10. All vowels long in the original Greek words: as, *āēr* (*ἀήρ*), *Aenēas* (*Αἰνείας*), *Alexandria* (*Ἀλεξάνδρεια*), *Briseis* (*Βρισηΐς*).

§ 731. *Radical Vowels*.—No rules can be given for the quantity of Root Vowels, which is only to be learnt from the Dictionary: as, *lēvis*, *light*, *lēvis*, *smooth*, *lēgo*, *I pick*, *read*, *lēgo*, *I depute*, etc.

§ 732. The Root Vowel has sometimes been lengthened in the Present Tense: as, *dūco*, *I lead*, root *dūc* (compare *dux*, *dūcis*: *ēdūco*, *I educate*); *dīco*, *I say*, root *dīc* (compare *index*, *-dīcis*, *mālēdicus*, etc.).

§ 733. The Vowels used in connecting two or more roots are short: as, *rēgīfūgium* (name of a festival), *rēgīficius*, *kingly* (*rex*, *fūgo*, *fācio*); *ōpīfēr*, *aid-bringing* (*ops*, *fēro*); *lānīger*, *wool-bearing* (*lāna*, *gēro*); *magnīlōquus*, *grandly speaking* (*magnus*, *lōquor*), etc.

Obs. In *levāmentum*, *instrūmentum*, *lenīmentum*, etc., *a*, *u*, *i* are Stem Vowels.

§ 734. Derivative or Compound words retain the quantity of the words from which they are derived: as,

*gēr-ābam*, *gēr-ens*, *lānī-gēr*, from *gēr-o*.  
*rēg-ius*, *rēg-īna*, *rēg-ī-fūgium*, from *rex*, *rēg-is*.

EXCEPTIONS: *cūrūlis* (*sella*), *the curule chair*, from *currus*.  
*tēgūla*, *a tile*, " *tēgo*.  
*sēdes*, *a seat*, " *sēd-eo*.  
*lūcerna*, *a lantern*, " *lūc-eo*.  
*sēcīus*, *otherwise*, " *sēcus*.  
*prōnūba*, *match-maker*, " *nūbo*.  
*jūcundus*, *pleasant*, " *jūvo*.  
*hūmānus*, *human*, " *homo*.  
*sūpor*, *sleep*, " *sōpio*.  
*pējēro* and *dejēro*, compounds of *jāro*.

with some others.

Obs. 1. Some exceptions are rather apparent than real: as, *index*, *-dīcis*, *an informer*; *praedīco*, *I affirm*; *mālēdicus*, *evil-speaking* (all with *i* short), compared with *dīco*, *I say*, *addīco*, *I assign to*, etc. Here all the words must alike be referred to the root *dīc*, which is lengthened in the Present Tense of *dīco*, but keeps its natural quantity in the other derivatives.

Obs. 2. In *cognitum*, *agnitum* (from *nōtum*), the Prefix has led to the abbreviation of the Vowel. Compare *cāpio*, *accēpio*, etc., *a* being a fuller vowel sound than *i*.

§ 735. In dissyllabic Perfects and Supines the first syllable is long: as,

*lāvo*, *lāvi*, *lōtum*, *to wash*.  
*vīdeo*, *vīdī*, *vīsum*, *to see*.  
*mōveo*, *mōvī*, *mōtum*, *to move*.  
*jūvo*, *jūvī*, *jūtum*, *to assist*.

EXCEPTIONS. 1. A vowel before a vowel remains short: as, *rūi*.



2. The following Perfects have the first syllable short :

Bibi, dēli, fāi, tūli.  
Stēti, stīti, fidī, scēli.

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

3. The following Supines have the first syllable short :

Dātum, rātum, sātum, rātum,  
Itum, cītum, litum, sītum (quitum).

For the meanings, see §§ 149. *sqq.*

From sto comes stātum : from sisto comes stātum.

§ 736. The first syllable of the reduplicated Perfect is short : as pōposci from posco, *to demand* ; tētīgi from tango, *to touch* ; cēcīdi from caedo, *to cut*.

§ 737. The prefix **pro** is short in prōcella, *a storm*, prōcul, *far off*, prōfānus, *profane*, prōfestus, *not kept as a holiday*, prōficiscor, *to set out*, prōfiteor, *to profess*, prōfugio, *to flee to a distance*, prōfundus, *deep*, prōfundo, *to pour forth* (with a few exceptions, *e.g.* : "Has postquam moesto prōfudit pectore voces," Cat.), prōnepos, *great-grandson* (but prōnepos once in Sidonius), prōpitius, *propitious*, prōtervus, *wanton* : it is doubtful in prōcuro, *to manage another's affairs*, prōpago, *offspring*, prōpago, *to propagate*, prōpino, *to drink to another*, prōpello, *to push forward* (Lucr. only) : it is long in all other words : as, prōcedo, *to go forward*, prōcurro, *to run forward*, &c.

§ 738. **Di** is short only in dīrimo (disimo), *to separate*, and disertus, *eloquent*.

§ 739. **Ne** is short only in nēque, *neither* ; nēqueo, *to be unable* ; nēfas (and its derivatives), *unlawful* ; nēfandus, *abominable* ; long in other words, as nēmo (ne-hemo or homo), *no one*.

§ 740. **O** for **ob** is short in ōmitto, *to let go by*, and ōperio, *to shut up*.

§ 741. **Si** is short in sīquidem.

§ 742. **Re** is always short, except rēfert (= rem fert), *it concerns* (but rēfert from rēfero).

§ 743. **Ve** is long, except in vēhemens (= vē-mens), *forceful*.

§ 744. Monosyllabic words ending in a vowel are long : as, sī, tū, tē, mē, sē, nē, ē, dē.

EXCEPTIONS. The enclitics are short : as, quē, vē, nē, cē, tē (tutē) pē (reapsē), ptē (suaptē) : quā (usu. preceded by sī, num, etc.) *Nom. Sing. Fem. and Nom. Acc. Pl. Neut.* from quis.

## (B.) RULES RESPECTING FINAL SYLLABLES.

### I. FINAL VOWELS.

§ 745. **a** is long :

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the First Declension : as, mensā.
  2. In the Vocative Sing. of the First Declension of Substantives in as and es (excepting tes) : as, Aeneā, Anchisā.
- Obs.* But those in es (excepting tes) more frequently make ē : see § 746, 2.
3. In the Imperative Active of the First Conjugation : as, amā.
  4. In Prepositions, Adverbs, and Numerals : as ā (āb), contrā, suprā ; anteā, frustrā ; trigintā, quinquagintā.

(But see next paragraph : 4.)

**a** is short :

1. In the Nominative and Vocative Sing. of the First Declension : as, mensā.
2. In the Voc. of Greek nouns in tes, as Orestā.
3. In the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural of all Neuters : as, regnā, mariā, cornuā.
4. In the Adverbs itā, postea, the Conjunction quā, and the Interjection ejā.

*Obs.* **a** in Acc. Sing. from a Gk. word in eus is doubtful : as Thesē.

§ 746. **e** is long :

1. In the Ablative Sing. of the Fifth Declension : as, diē ; and consequently in hodiē, quare. Also in the contracted forms of the Genitive and Dative : as, fidē (= fidēi).
2. In Greek words in e of the First Declension : as, epitomē, Anchisiadē (Voc. of Anchisiades) ; and in Greek Neuters Plural contracted : as, Tempē, cetē.

3. In the Imperative Active 2nd Person Sing. of the Second Conjugation: as, *monē*. But the following are doubtful: *vidē*, *valē*, *cavē*; and sometimes (esp. in the comic poets), *habē*, *tacē*, *manē*, *jubē*.
4. In the Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declension: as, *doctē*, *aegrē*: with the exception of *benē*, *malē*, *supernē*, *infernē* (in Lucr. and Auson.), *internē*.
5. In the Adverbs *ferē*, *fermē*, and the Interjection *ohē*.

*Obs.* Concerning monosyllables in *e*, see § 744.

*e* is short in all other words: as, *dominē*, *regē* (subs. and verb), *fuērē*.

§ 747. *i* is generally long: as, *puerī*, *corporī*, *dicī*, *audī*, *docuistī*, *vigintī*.

*i* is short:

1. In *nisi*, *quasi*, *sicubi*, *necubi*, and in the very rare form *cū* for *cū*.
2. In the Dative and Vocative of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension: as, *Dat. Paridī*, *Voc. Alexī*.

*i* is doubtful in *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ibī*, *ubī*.

*Obs.* *ū* *lique* always; but always *ibidem*, *ubique*. We find also *cū* *lique*.

§ 748. *o* is mostly common: as, *amō*, *amatō*, *leō*, *octō*.

But *o* is long:

1. In Datives and Ablatives of the Second Declension: as, *dominō*, *deō*, *magnō*.
2. When it represents the Greek *ω*: as, *Didō*, *Plutō*.
3. In monosyllables: as, *dō*, *prō*.

*o* is short in *egō*, *duō*, *modō*, *only*, *putō*, *I think*, and *cedō*, *tell me* (both used parenthetically), *nesciō*, *I know not* (in the phrase *nesciō quis*), and *quando* when compounded with *quidem*: as, *quandōquidem*.

§ 749. *u* is always long: as, *cornū*, *auditū*.

## II. FINAL CONSONANTS.

§ 750. *as* is almost always long: as, *mensās*, *civitās*, *laudās*.

*as* is short only:

1. In *anās*, *anātis*, *a duck*.
2. Acc. Plur. of Greek Substantives of the Third Declension: as, *Arcadās*. And some Greek Noms. as *Iliās*, &c.

*Obs.* In *vas* (*vādis*) the Nom. is probably doubtful.

§ 751. *es* is almost always long: as, *vulpēs*, *a fox*, *leonēs*.

*es* is only short:

1. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing. of some dissyllabic and polysyllabic Substantives in *es*, which have the penultimate short in the Genitive: as, *milēs*, *ītis*, *interpēs*, *ētis*: and *adj. praepēs*, *ētis*; but *mercēs*, *ēdis*; *pēs*, *pēdis*; *abiēs*, *abiētis*.
2. In the Nom. and Voc. Plur. of Greek Substantives: as, *Arcadēs*: also *Hippomanēs* (*Nom. Sing. Neut.*), *Demosthenēs* (*Voc. Sing.*).
3. From *esse*, *to be*: as, *es*, *adēs*, *potēs*.
4. In the Preposition *penēs*.

§ 752. *is* is usually short: as, *navīs*, *lapidīs*, *regīs*, *regerīs*.

But *is* is long:

1. In *Dat.* and *Abl.* Plural of Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns: as, *musīs*, *dominīs* (contr. from *musa* + *is*, *domino* + *is*: see §§ 17, 19. *Obs.*), *nobīs*, *vobīs*.
2. In Acc. Plur. of Third Declension (archaic for *es*): as, *omnīs* (or *omneis*) for *omnēs*.
3. In Second Person Sing. of Present Indic. of Fourth Conjugation: as, *audīs* (= *audi* + *is*: see § 104).
4. Also in the contracted forms *velīs*, *nolīs*, *malīs*; *sīs*, *possīs*.

*Obs.* 1. In *Fut. Perf. Indicative*, the *is* of Second Person Sing. is common, as *fuērīs*.

*Obs.* 2. Monosyllables are mostly long: as, *vis* (noun and verb), *glīs*: but *is*, *quis* (prons.), are short.

§ 753. **os** is almost always *long*: as, puerōs, honōs (ōris), arbōs (ōris). (But arbōr, honōr, etc.: see § 760.)

**os** is only *short*:

1. In the Nom. Sing. (archaic) of the Second Declension: as, avōs, servōs (= avus, servus): see § 19. *Obs.*
2. In impōs (ōtis), compōs (ōtis).
3. In the Gen. Sing. of Greek Substantives: as, Thetidōs: and in some Greek Noms., as Argōs (neut.): besides ōs, oſsis, already mentioned.

§ 754. **us** is usually *short*: as, dominūs, gradūs, sumūs.

It is *long* only:

1. In the Nom. Sing. of the Third Declension, which have long *u* in the penultimate of the Genitive: as, virtūs, ūtis: but pecūs, pecūdis.
2. In the Gen. Sing., and Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. of the Fourth Declension: as, manūs.
3. In contractions from the Greek, as Sapphūs: but we have polypūs, Oedipūs, from ποῦς.

§ 755. **ys** in some Greek words is *long*: as Phorcys, Erimys: in Tethys it is common (Tethys).

§ 756. Final syllables in **b, d, t** are short: as, āb, apūd, amāt.

EXCEPTIONS. Some (rare) contracted forms of verbs ending in *t*: as, irritāt for irritavit (Lucr. 1, 71): see § 110, 1.

§ 757. **c**. Final syllables in **c** are mostly short: as, nēc, donēc.

EXCEPTIONS. Lāc, milk; hīc (adv.), here (the pronoun hīc is doubtful); hūc, hither; sic, thus: the Imperatives dic, dūc (shortened from dīce, dūce). Fāc is short (for faciē).

§ 758. **l**. Final syllables in **l** are short: as, semēl, animāl.

EXCEPTIONS. Monosyllables: as, sōl, sāl, nīl.

§ 759. **n**. Final syllables in **n** are short: as, carmēn, tamēn, ān.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Monosyllables: as, rēn (a kidney), sīn (= sī non, but if not), splēn (the spleen), ēn (to), nōn (not).

2. Greek Accusatives from nouns in *as* and *es* (First Decl.): as, Aeneān, Anchisēn, Penelopēn.

3. Greek Nominatives of the Third Declension: as, Iacchaeomōn, Titān, Actaeōn.

§ 760. **r**. Final syllables in **r** are short: as, puēr, vīr, sempēr.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. Most monosyllables: as, fūr (a thief), pār (subs. and adj.), lār, vēr, cūr. (But cōr, the heart, is short.)

2. A few Substantives in *er* taken from the Greek: as, aēr (ἀἴρ), the air; aethēr (αἰθήρ), the sky.

N.B. Celtibēr is common. (Mart.)

## B. METRE.

§ 761. RHYTHM (ῥίθμος, ῥυθμός) consists in the recurrence of accent or stress of voice at regulated intervals; as in the following lines:

Quadrupē | dāntē pū|trēm sōn|tū quātīt | ūngulā | cēmpūm.—Virg.

Pāssēr | dēlic|ac mē|ac pū|ellac.—Catullus.

Flāmīnā | cōnstitu|rnt ā|cātō.—Hor.

§ 762. This stress of the voice is called **Arsis** (ἀρσις, ictus), and is denoted by the sign '. It nearly always falls on a long syllable, or on two short syllables, representing one long: as, vīdimus, ārma, tēnūia, dēcrat. The unaccented syllable is called **Thesis** (θέσις), and is denoted by the sign `: as, ārmā.

Obs. Sometimes, though rarely, the Arsis falls upon a short syllable, which is thereby made long: as, Itāllam (Virg. Aen. I. 2). The Grammarians call this *Diastole*.

§ 763. The subdivisions or measures of a metrical line are called *feet* (pēdēs): thus the first of the above lines contains six feet; the second five; and the third four.

The following are all the feet which have distinctive names:

### 1. OF TWO SYLLABLES.

- ~~ Pyrrhichius (Pyrrhic)... pātēr, lō.ē.
- ~ ^ Iambus ..... ādēst, mēō.
- ^ ~ Trochaeus (Trochee).... ārmā, flēvīt.
- Spondēus (Spondee)..... ōrās, ēmī.

### 2. OF THREE SYLLABLES.

- ~~~ Tribrachys ..... hōmīnēs, rēxpē.
- ~ ~ Dactylus (Dactyl)..... ōmnīā, fēcīmūs.

- ∪ ∪ ∪ Anapaestus (Anapaest) . ābēō, lēgērēs.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ Amphibrāchys . . . . . āmābāt, diēbūs.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ Creticus or Amphimacer, ēxplēō, sērvītās.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ Bacchius . . . . . āmicōs, sūpēllēr.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ Antibacchius . . . . . āudirē, rēxissē.  
 --- Molossus . . . . . haūsistī, dīvināē.

## 3. OF FOUR SYLLABLES.

- ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ Proceleusmaticus . . . . . īntīlā, cēlēritēr.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ Ionicus a Minore . . . . . ōnērābānt, gēnērōsī.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ——— a Majore . . . . . ālciscūtūr, sōlāmīnē.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ Choriambus . . . . . ēriptānt, simplicitās.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ Antispastus . . . . . īnēchaustūs, pērillūstrīs.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ Paeon Primus . . . . . ēxīgūūs, rēspiciāt.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ——— Secundus . . . . . ōbēdīt, dōmēsticūs.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ——— Tertius . . . . . īmīcūs, pēpūlērē.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ——— Quartus . . . . . īntīō, mēsēricōrs.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ Epitritus Primus . . . . . lābōrāndō, sōlūtāntēs.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ——— Secundus . . . . . ādmīnistrāns, impērātrīx.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ——— Tertius . . . . . āuctōritās, īntelligēns.  
 ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ——— Quartus . . . . . āssērtātōr, īnfīnitūs.

Obs. Two Iambi, Trochees or Spondees together, are sometimes called Diliambus, Ditrochaeus, and Dispondeus respectively.

§ 764. Verses are called Monometer, Dimeter, Trimeter, Tetrameter, Pentameter, or Hexameter, according to the number of measures (*μέτρα*) which they contain.

Obs. A Dactyl or Choriambus constitute each one *measure*: an Anapaest, Iambus, or Trochee only a *half-measure*.

Hence a line consisting of six Dactyls is called *Hexameter* (ἕξ, *six*); while a line consisting of the same number of Iambi or Trochees, is called *Trimeter* (τρεις, *three*); and a line consisting of four Anapaests, *Dimeter* (δύο, *twice*).

§ 765. Elision (ἐλipsis) or Synaloepha (συναλοιφή) is the striking-out of a vowel, or a syllable ending with *m*, at the end of a word, when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*, and is indicated by the sign ~: as,

Cōntīcūtēre ōmnes (read, cōntīcūtēr'ōmn[ē]s)

Mē mīserūm exclāmāt (mē mīser'ēxclām[āt].)

Pērq̃ue hīēmēs (pērq̃u'hīē[mēs]).

Ūmbrārum hāec sēdēs (ūmbrār'hāec sēd[ēs]).

Obs. 1. Monosyllabic words are rarely elided, and least of all at the beginning of a verse: as,

Si ad vitulam spectas,

Obs. 2. The Elision of a long vowel before a short one is rare: as, intimō amore.

Obs. 3. The Elision of an iambus is avoided: as, disce mō exemplo.

Obs. 4. If *est* follows a final vowel, the *e* of *est* is elided, and not the final vowel: thus,

nostra est, nostri est, nostrum est, should be written and read  
nostra'st, nostri'st, nostrum'st.

Obs. 5. Sometimes a final long vowel remains in *Hiatus*, and is not elided: as,

Ter sunt | conat | i in | ponere | Pelio | Ossam.—Virg.

Obs. 6. The Interjections ō, heu, ah, prob, are not elided: as,  
Ō pater | ō hōmīn | um di | vumque aet | erna pot | estas.—Virg.  
Ah egō | non alit | er trist | es e | vincere | morbos.—Tib.

Obs. 7. Occasionally a long vowel or diphthong at the end of a word becomes short before a word beginning with a vowel: as,

Te Cory | dōn, ō A | exi | tra | hit sua | quemque vol | uptas.—Virg.  
Insulāe | Ioni | o in mag | no quas | dira Ce | laeno.—Virg.

N.B. This is an imitation of the Greek usage.

Obs. 8. Earlier writers sometimes elide *s*: as,

Nam si de nihilo fierent, ex omnibu' rebus.—Lucr.

§ 766. Synaerēsis (συναίρεσις) is the combination of two vowels into one, and is indicated by the sign ~, ~. It is admissible only in the case of words which metrical laws would otherwise exclude, and more especially in the case of proper names at the end of a verse: as,

Si len | to fue | rint al | vēāria | vimine | texta.—Virg.

Caucasi | asque re | fert volu | eres fur | tumque Pro | methēi.—Virg.

So Orphēā, Typhōēā.

Synaeresis is chiefly found in the following words: dēinde, prōinde, abiēte, ariēto, dēesse and its derivatives, antēhāe, and in the whole verb antēire.

§ 767. Diaerēsis (διαίρεσις) is the separation of a diphthong into two syllables: as, pictāi.

## I. DACTYLIC HEXAMETER METRE.

§ 768. The Dactylic Hexameter, usually called simply Hexameter, is employed especially in epic poetry, whence it is also termed the Heroic Verse. It consists properly of six dactyls ( $\text{—} \cup \cup$ ), the last of which is shortened by one syllable, so that the place of the last syllable is supplied by a trochee ( $\text{—} \cup$ ), or, as the final syllable of each verse is common, by a spondee ( $\text{—} \text{—}$ ). Instead of the first four dactyls, spondees may be used, but the fifth foot is regularly a dactyl. Hence, the following is the scheme of the verse:

1	2	3	4	5	6
$\text{—} \cup \cup$	$\text{—} \cup \cup$	$\text{—} \cup \cup$	$\text{—} \cup \cup$	$\text{—} \cup \cup$	$\text{—} \text{—}$
$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$	$\text{—} \text{—}$

§ 769. The following are examples of the different combinations of the first four feet:

## 1. Four Dactyls.

- (a) Rādīt Itēr liquidū celerēs nequē commovet alas.

## 2. One Spondee and Three Dactyls.

- (b) Impēnsūque sūf potērit sup̄erare cruoris,  
(c) Tēpōrā lābuntūr tacitisquē senescimus annis,  
(d) Nūtimūr in vētītū sēmpēr cupimusque negata,  
(e) Aspiciunt oculis sup̄eri mortalia justis;

## 3. Two Spondees and Two Dactyls.

- (f) Dūm virēs annique sinūt tōlerate labores,  
(g) Quārūm quāc mediāst nōn ēst habitabilis aestu,  
(h) Cūrvāque manūs et adūncōs cresecr' in unguēs,  
(i) At pātēr ut tērrās mūdūmquē rabescere vīdit,  
(k) Nūmīnā nec spēm sine poenā nostra sinamus,  
(l) Cōtingerant rapidās limōsi Phasidos undas;

## 4. Three Spondees and One Dactyl.

- (m) Nātūram expellās furcā tāmēn usque recurret,  
(n) Ut desint virēs tāmēn ēst laudanda voluntas,  
(o) Aut prōdēsē vōlūt aut dēlectare poetae,  
(p) Partūriūt mōntēs nascētūr ridiculus mus;

## 5. Four Spondees.

- (q) Ex aequō captis ardēbant mentibus ambo.

§ 770. Sometimes, but rarely, the fifth foot is a spondee, but then the fourth foot is a dactyl. Such a verse is called *Spondaic*. It usually concludes with a word of four syllables or one syllable: as,

Constitit atque oculis Phrygia agminā cfrēmspexit:  
Cara deum soboles, magnūm Jōvis incēmētum:  
Cum patribus populoque, penātibus et magnis diis.

Obs. Very rarely indeed do we find such a line as,  
Aut levis ocreas lentō ducunt argento.—Virg. Aen. VII. 634.

§ 771. Every Hexameter verse must have at least one *Caesura* (from *caedo*, "to cut") which is a division of the foot, so that one part of it is in one word, and another part of it in another word. Hence the following line has five *Caesuras*:

Dōnce || eris || felix || multōs || numerābis || amīcos.

§ 772. The *Caesura* may be either strong or weak. The *strong Caesura* is when the foot is cut after its first long syllable: as,

Arma virūmque canō || Trojaē qui prius ab oris.

The *weak Caesura* is when the foot is cut after the first short syllable of a Dactyl: as,

Ō passī graviōra || dabit deus his quoque finem.

§ 773. The *Caesuras* are named after the number of the half feet in Greek (*ἡμι-* and *μέρος*): hence, *Triemimeral*, after the first three half feet; *Penthemimeral*, after the first five half feet; *Hepthemimeral*, after the first seven half feet; *Ennehemimeral*, after the first nine half feet.

Obs. The two short syllables of the Dactyl are counted as one half foot.

§ 774. Every Hexameter verse has either the *Penthemimeral*, or *Hepthemimeral* *Caesura*. The *Penthemimeral* strong *Caesura* is the most common. The *Hepthemimeral* is generally used along with the *Triemimeral*: as,

Fama malūm || quo nōn aliūd || velocius ūllum.

§ 775. Besides the Pause of the *Caesura*, a Hexameter usually has another pause, when the foot terminates with the word. Thus, in the following line, there are two pauses in addition to the *Penthemimeral Caesura*: as,

Tāntae | molis erat || Romānam | cōdere gentem.

§ 776. The last word of a Hexameter line usually consists of either two or three syllables. But a foreign word of four or more syllables is occasionally found in this position; especially if difficult to introduce elsewhere. Compare Virg. Aen. 3, 680 (cŷpă | rissī); Bucol. 8, 1 (Ālphēsī | boei); etc.

*Obs.* 1. A monosyllable may end a line if closely connected with another preceding it. Hence such endings as laus ēst (Hor.), ūsa ēst (Virg.), are admissible.

*Obs.* 2. Also a single monosyllable may be chosen to end a line, with a view to a particular effect: as,

Vértitur intéré coelum, ét ruit ōceanó Nóx (Virg.).

§ 777. It is not usual except for the conveyance of a particular idea, to make the first four feet of a Hexameter entirely dactyls or entirely spondees. An accumulation of dactyls produces a rapid movement: an accumulation of spondees a heavy movement. These effects are designedly produced by Virgil in the following lines:

Quádrupedánte putrém sonitú quatit úngula cámpum.

Ílli intér sesé magnā vi bráchia tollunt.

§ 778. *Hypermeter*.—Lines are thus designated which have a syllable over the full measure (*ὑπὲρ μέτρον*). But this is only allowed when the redundant syllable ends in a vowel (or *m*), and the following line begins with a vowel: as,

Inseritur vero ex fetu nucis arbūtās hōrīda,  
Et steriles, &c.—Virg.

Jamque iter emensi turres ac tēctā Lātīnōrum  
Arlua cernebant, &c.—Virg.

*Obs.* In Virgil, the redundant syllable is in most cases the enclitic -que.

## II. DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

§ 779. The Dactylic Pentameter is found only in conjunction with a Hexameter, the distich thus formed being called an Elegiac couplet: as,

Póstera lūx oritúr. Línguís animísque favéte,  
Núnc dicēda boná || sūnt bona vérla díe.—Ov.

It has the following scheme:

— ∞ | ∞ ∞ | — || ∞ ∞ | ∞ ∞ | ∞

Hence it appears:

1. That it consists of two members, separated by a Pause (the Penthemimeral).
2. That each member consists of two *entire* feet, originally Dactyls, followed by an imperfect or *half* foot, consisting of a monosyllable. ( $2\frac{1}{2} + 2\frac{1}{2} = 5$ . Hence the name Pentameter.)
3. That the first two Dactyls only may be replaced by Spondees.
4. That it has six arses, but only four theses (§ 762).
5. That the last syllable of the verse is common.

*Obs.* The best poets, however, generally take care that a short syllable at the close shall end with a consonant: as,

Vix Priamús tantí || tótaque Trója fuit.—Ov.

§ 780. The two Dactyls in the latter half of the verse are unalterable: the first half admits of the following four varieties:

1. Two Dactyls: as,  
Crédidímús gēnērī || nómīnībúsque tuís:
2. A combination of a Spondee and a dactyl: as,  
Trájectám gládió || mórtē perfre juvát:  
Cúm málā pér lóngás || cónvaluere morís: (most usual form):
3. Two spondees: as,  
Súprēmám bellís || ímposuísse manum.

§ 781. The following are the principal rules observed by the most accurate poets in the structure of Pentameter Verse:

- (1.) The ending of the line is regularly a dissyllable.
- (2.) A monosyllable at the close of either half of the line is avoided.
- (3.) Elision is avoided both at the end of the first half and altogether in the second.

*Obs.* The best model for Elegiac Verse is Ovid.

(For further particulars see Principia Lat. Part III.)

## III. TRIMETER IAMBIC (ACATALECTIC) VERSE.

§ 782. The Romans called this Verse *Senarius* from its six feet; it originally consisted of three double-iambi (*εἰσδιῖται ἰαμβικά*), but amongst the best poets it has the following form:—

1 2 3 4 5 6  
 — — | — — | — — | — — | — — | — — |

§ 783. Hence it appears that the odd places (1, 3, 5) admit spondees instead of iambi: the 5th foot being regularly a spondee. The principal caesura is the penthemimeral: as,

Mētūs pavōrquē || fūnus ēt frēndēs dolōr,  
 Prōuāst timōri || sēmpēr in pēiūs fidēs.

Obs. A Verse is called *Catalectic* (*καταλίστω*, to leave off), when the last foot wants one or sometimes two syllables; *acatalectic*, when it is complete; *hypercatalectic*, when there is a syllable over.

§ 784. As the long syllable can be resolved into two short (except in the case of the last syllable of the verse), we often find

- (A.) A tribrach in the 2nd and 4th place.  
 (B.) An anapaest or a dactyl in the 5th place.  
 (C.) A tribrach, an anapaest, or a dactyl in the 1st and 3rd place: as,

Quae poēnā mānēat mēmet ēt sedēs scio;  
 Hic laēva frēnis dōctā mōdērandīs manus;  
 Pyrrhī manū mactētūr ēt tūmūlūm riget,  
 Tu tū malōrum māchinātrix fācinōrum;  
 An āliqua poēnae pars meae ignotāst mihi,  
 Lācēruere fixis ūnguībūs venae fluant,  
 Quin pōtius ira cōncitūm pectūs doma;  
 Fas omne cēdāt ābēat expulsi pudor,  
 Evāsīt ēt pēnētrāle fūnestum attigit,  
 Parum ipse fidēs mīhimet in tutō tua.

Obs. 1. The complete scheme of Iambic Trimeter, as used by Horace in his Epodes, is given below: § 807.

Obs. 2. Iambic *Dimeter* (*acatalectic*) corresponds with Iambic Trimeter, minus the first measure. See below, § 802, Obs.; 807.

§ 785. Very rarely both the long syllables in the same foot are resolved so as to make a proceleusmatic (— — —): as,

Pāvēt ānīmus, ārtus hōrridūs quassāt tremor.

Obs. 1. By the less exact poets a spondee instead of an iambus is introduced into all the places except the 6th foot: as,

Ut mōs ēst vūlgi pāssim ēt cērtatīm ruit.

Obs. 2. We sometimes find even in good authorities examples of the original pure iambi: as,

Sābīnūs illē quēm vidēbīs hōspītēs,  
 Gēnēr sūcērqūē pērdīdīstīs omniā.

§ 786. *Choliambus*.—A kind of *limping* movement is given to the Senarius, by substituting a trochee for an Iambus in the sixth foot. Such a verse is called choliambus (*haliambus*), scazon (*σκάζω*, to limp), or senarius claudus (*limping senarius*). Being at the end of a line, a spondee (— —) may be used for the trochee. The scheme is,

1 2 3 4 5 6  
 — — | — — | — — | — — | — — | — —

Quae tū volēbās || nēc puēlla nolēbat,

An aēmulātūr || improbi jocōs Phaēdrī.

The iambus is indispensable in the 2nd, 4th, and 5th feet.

Obs. 1. The choliambus is only adapted for use in short poems.

Obs. 2. Rarely, instead of the penthemimeral caesura, we find a principal pause or verse-caesura at the end of the iambus in the 2nd place and a foot-caesura before the fourth *arsis*, as,

Quodcūmqūe agīt || renīdet hūc habēt mōrbum.

Obs. 3. In this scheme the resolution of a long syllable into two short is allowed only in the commencing syllable and in those on which the *arsis* falls in the first four feet: examples are,

Et cūpīt et īstat ēt pēcātūr ēt dōnat,

Et mūlta frāgrat tēsta sēnībūs autūmnīs,

Āquīlsque sīmīles fācēre nōctūds quācrīs.

N.B.—The scazon is also called *Hipponactius* from its reputed inventor Hipponax, and was employed in Greek by Babrius in his *Aesopian fables*.

## IV.—TROCHAIC TETRAMETER (CATALECTIC).

§ 787. *Comic Tetrameter*.—This verse, also called *Quadratus* from having four measures (see § 764), *Octonarius Catalecticus*



from having eight feet all but a syllable, and *Septenarius* from having only seven full feet, has the following scheme:—

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8  
 — | — | — | — || — | — | — | —

Pérecépá pūgnám Pōpilli || fáctā Cōrnēlī cānē,  
 Nullā vōx hūmāna cōstat || ābsque sēptem litteris.

§ 788. Consequently it has a pause or verse-caesura exactly in the middle, *i.e.* before the fifth *arsis*. In the 1st, 3rd, 5th, and 7th feet it preserves the pure trochee (which, however, may be resolved into a tribrach); but in the 2nd, 4th, and 6th feet it admits, instead of the trochee, a spondee (which can be resolved into a dactyl, an anapaest, or occasionally a proceleusmaticus); and the last syllable of the verse is common: as,

Rōtā rēsistat mēmbra tōrquens || tāngāt Íxíōn hūmum,  
 Méque ōvāntem scēlērē tānto || rāpīte īn āltos gūrgitēs,  
 Ímpīum rāpīto átque mērsū || prēmītē pērpētūis mālīs,  
 Úndā mīserīs grātā Lēthes || vōsq̄e tōrpentēs lācūs.

#### V.—ANAPAESTIC DIMETER.

§ 789. The Anapaestic Dimeter Acatalectic Verse consists regularly of *four* anapaests (which are interchangeable with spondees), and has always a principal caesura exactly in the middle of the line: we obtain, therefore, the following varieties:—

##### 1. Four Anapaests.

(a.) Fūgīāt trēpidī || cōmēs éxillī.

##### 2. One Spondee and Three Anapaests.

(b.) Jām nōn stābilīs || rūt āretōphylāx,

(c.) Sōlītāe mūndī || pēlērē vicēs,

(d.) Phrygiūmq̄e nēmūs || mātīs Cŷbēlēs,

(e.) Áltātūq̄e sitīs || lātice īngēstō.

##### 3. Two Spondees and Three Anapaests.

(f.) Signūm cēlsī glāciālē pōlī,

(g.) Jām caerulēis evēctūs āquīs,  
 (h.) Intēr sūbitōs stētīt hōrrōrēs,  
 (i.) Plācidūs fessūm lōnisquē fōvē,  
 (k.) Vōlucēr mātīs gēnūs Ástraeae,  
 (l.) Sēnis īn jūgūlō telūm Pŷrrhī.

##### 4. Three Spondees and One Anapaest.

(m.) Lāxōs aurā cōmplētūs sinūs,  
 (n.) Errāt cursū lēvis īncertō,  
 (o.) Hic quī nitidō taurūs cōrnū,  
 (p.) Pātēr ō rerūm pōrtūs vitāe.

##### 5. Four Spondees.

(q.) Nūc vēlocēs figīs dāmās.

The spondees in the 1st and 3rd feet (but not elsewhere) may be resolved into dactyls (which dactyls, however, must not be immediately followed by an anapaest), so that we obtain the following:

##### 6. One Dactyl and Three Spondees.

(r.) Nōn cāpīt ūmquā māgnōs mōtūs,  
 (s.) Et cōngēstō paupēr īn aurōst.

##### 7. One Dactyl, Two Spondees, and One Anapaest.

(t.) Sordidā pārvae fōrtūnā dōmūs,  
 (u.) Sivē fērocīs jūgā Pŷrēnēs,  
 (v.) Mollī pētūlāns hācūs īn hērbā,  
 (w.) Libēt īnfāustōs mittērē quēstūs.

##### 8. One Dactyl, One Spondee, and Two Anapaests.

(x.) Pēctōrā lōngīs hēbētātā mālīs,  
 (y.) Vācūae rēparānt ūbērā mātēs.

9. *Two Dactyls and Two Spondees.*

(z.) Cōntrāhīt īgnēs lūcē rēnātā.

§ 790. The last syllable of each line is *not* common; for in the Anapaestic system there exists a *Synaphēa* (συνάφεια) or *connexion* of all the verses, so that a short syllable at the end of one line should (though exceptions may very rarely be found) itself end in a consonant, and be followed by a word in the next line beginning with a consonant: as,

Grege dīmissō pabūla carpīt  
Ludit pratō, etc.

§ 791. After a series of Dimeter Anapaestics it is usual to close the system with a monometer which for the most part takes the form of the *versus Adonius* (— — — | — —): as,

Nos ē tantō visī populō  
Dignē premerēt quos inversō  
Cārdinē mūdūs.

Other forms are — — — — —: as,  
cōmpēnsāt Itēr; vicinā pōlō;  
— — — — —: as,  
pēreūtē, mōrī;

and (very rarely) — — — — —: as,  
ite ad plānetūs.

This break may occur after a series of any length, and the last syllable is then common.

## VI.—HENDECASYLLABIC VERSE.

§ 792. The Hendecasyllabic Verse (ἑνδεκα, *eleven*), also called Phalaecian (from the poet Phalaecus, Φάλακκος), has in its most elegant form the following metre:—

— — | — — — | — — | — — | — — |

consisting of one spondee, one dactyl, and three trochees, for the third of which, as the last syllable of a verse is common, a spondee may stand. As,

Tām bellūm mīhī | pāssēr|em ābstū|līstīs,  
Sōlēs | ōcēdō|re ēt rēd|frē | pōssunt.

*Obs.* 1. Occasionally the liberty is taken of commencing with a *trochee* or *iambus*: as,

Neū tibi libeat foras abire,  
Minister vetuli puer Falerni.

*Obs.* 2. A still greater liberty, seldom indulged in, is the substitution of a spondee for the dactyl in the second part: as,

Quas voltū vīdī tamen serenās.

§ 793. The monotony which might be apprehended from the uniformity of the measure is to a great extent obviated by the freedom it enjoys from any fixed laws of caesura and elision: as,

Frūstra blānditiāē || venītis ad me,  
Dēfessūs || tamen omnibūs || medullis,  
Amicōs || medicōsque cōnvocate,  
Electīssima pēssimi || poetae,  
Quōt sunt quōtque fuēre Mārce Tulli.

*Obs.* Hypermeter lines (for the conditions relating to which see § 778) occur sometimes in this metre: as,

Quaenam te mala mens miselle Rāvīde  
Agit praecipitem.

## VII.—CHORIAMBIC VERSE.

§ 794. Choriambic has usually a spondaic commencement or base (βάσις or ἀνάκρουσις) and an iambic conclusion (κατάληξις). The principal forms of it are—

1. With one *choriambus*,

— — | — — — | — —, as:

Audax | omnia per|peti,  
Cui frons | turgida corn|ibūs.

2. With two *choriambi*,

— — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —, as:

Seu ru|pit teretes || Marsus aper | plagās,  
Myrto|um pavidus || nauta sec|et marē.

*Obs.* This and the following form (3) are called Asclepiadean (from the grammarian Asclepiades). The latter is called long Asclepiadean.

3. With three *choriambi*,

— — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — —, as:

Morda|ces aliter || diffugiunt || sollicitu|dinēs,  
Quae mens | est hodie || cur eadem || non puero | fuit.

§ 795. By Catullus (but not by Horace and the more correct poets) the spondaic commencement in the first form is changed for a trochaic or iambic: *e. g.* :

Mōnti|um domina ut | fores,  
Pūell|ae et pueri in|tegri.

This form is called GLYCONIAN (from the poet Glycon), and Catullus closes a series of them with what is called (from the poet Pherecrates) a PHERECRATIAN verse, of which the scheme is

— ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪,

and an example,

Lūte|ūm pēdē sōc|eum.

Horace, however, uses the first form only in connexion with other rhythms, as in the following stanzas:—

- (1). Ō fons Bāndusiāe || splēdidior vitrō, } (2nd chor. form) :  
Dūlcī dīgnē mēro || nōn sinē flōribus, }  
Crās donābēris haedō (Pherecratian verse) :  
Cui frōns tūrgidā cōrnibus (1st chor. form) :

- (2). Scribēris Vāriō || fōrtis et hōstium } (2nd chor. form) :  
Vīctōr, Macōnī || cārmīnis āltē }  
Quān rēm cūquē fērōx || nāvibus aut ēquis }  
Mīles, tē dūcē, gēssērīt (1st chor. form).

And (3) the couplet,

Quēm tū Mēlpōmēnē sēmēl (1st chor. form) :  
Nāscētēm plācidō || lūmīnē vīdēris (2nd chor. form) :

Obs. 1. Neglect of the verse-caesura in the second and third forms is very rare: *e. g.* :

Dum flagrantia de — torquet ad oscula,  
Non incendia Car—thaginis impiae.  
Arcanique fides || prodiga per — lucidior vitro.

Obs. 2. In the second form it may be noticed :

1. That elision after the caesura causes nothing unpleasant to the ear, *e. g.*  
Auditam modere|re arboribus fidem :
2. That each foot may consist of a single word: as,  
Quassas indocilis || pauperiem pati :
3. That a short syllable is (rarely) lengthened by *arsis* :  
Perrupit Acheronta Hercules labor.

Obs. 3. The following are examples of Hypermeter lines (see § 778) in a system of Choriambic (Glyconian) verses of the first form :

Unguentate glabris mārte  
abstinere.  
Munere assidue vālentem  
exerceat juventam.  
Sancta nomine Rōmūlique  
antique.  
Saltuumque rēcōndītōrum  
amnumque sonantum.

#### VIII.—MINOR IONIC AND GALLIAMBIC VERSE.

§ 796. There is but one ode in Roman literature written in *ionic à minori* verses (Horace Od. lib. iii. 12): it appears to have four divisions, each consisting of ten connected *ionic à minori* feet without *hiatus* or *common* syllable at the end of the line: the scheme is

∪ ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ ∪ — | ∪ ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ ∪ —  
∪ ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ ∪ — | ∪ ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ ∪ —  
∪ ∪ ∪ — ∪ ∪ ∪ —

Miserarum est neque amorī | dare ludum neque dulci,  
Mala vino lavare; aut ex|animari metuētes  
Patruae verbera linguae.

One short ode is not sufficient to enable us to ascertain the laws of this metre.

§ 797. An offshoot of the *ionic à minori* verse is the Galliambic (so named from the Galli or priests of Cybele, for whose rites its vibratory rhythm was well adapted). The general scheme is,

∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ — || ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪.

Examples are :

Itaque ut domum Cybēbes || tetigere lassulae,  
Aliena quae petētes || velut exulēs locā.

Then by the change, at the beginning of each half-verse, of the two pyrrhics (∪ ∪) into a long syllable, and the resolution of the long syllable at the 1st, 2nd, 4th, and (especially) the 5th *arsis* into two short, we obtain

— ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ — || — ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪ ∪, as :

Jām jān dolēt quod ēgi || jān jānque poenitēt.

— — — — — || — — — — —, as :

Ego vīrdis algida līdae || nīve amēta lēcā colām.

— — — — — || — — — — —, as :

Dea mágna dēa Cybēbe || dea dōmīna Dīndymī.

Lastly there occurs, but rarely, a partial return to the original *Ionic à minori* form by changing the *iambus* after the first *beat* (ictus) in each half-verse into a trochee (never, however, in both halves at once), so that we obtain either

— — — — —, — — — — — ||

for the first half, as in

Hīlārātē aērē cītātīs || errōribūs animūm; or

|| — — — — —, — — — — —

for the second half, as in

Aberó foro palāestra || stādīo ēt gŷmnāsīs.

Obs. The 'Atys' of Catullus is written in this metre.

#### IX.—LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

§ 798. Logaoedic Verse (λόγος, ἀοιδή) consists of Dactyls succeeded by Trochees. The following species are used by Horace :—

(1.) — — — | — — — || — — | — —

(2.) — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — || — — | — — | — —

Frōnde novā puer || ūm palūmbes  
Sólvitur áeris hiēms gratā vice || vērīs ēt Favóni.

It will be seen that in the latter, the first three Dactyls may be replaced by Spondees, but not the fourth; which moreover must end with a word. The final Trochee may be replaced by a Spondee.

The Logaoedic metres are found only in combination with others. (§§ 802, 811.)

#### X.—ASYNARTETE VERSE.

§ 799. An asynartete (ἀσυνάρτητος) or heterogeneous verse is one combining two dissimilar rhythms; as Dactylic

and Iambic, or Iambic and Trochaic. The following kinds occur, but only in combination with other metres :—

— — — | — — — || — — — | — — — | — — —  
— — — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

Nivésque deducunt Jovem || nūc mare nūc silvae  
Móllibus in pueris || aut in puéllis úrere.

Obs. The Logaoedic is less correctly regarded as an asynartete metre.

#### XI.—SAPPHIC VERSE.

§ 800. The Sapphic Strophe or Stanza, so called from Sappho of Lesbos, was Latinized by Horace, who adopted the following scheme :

— — | — — | — — — | — — | — — | — — (thrice)  
— — — | — —

Cláre | Maécenás | eques | út | patérni  
Flúminis | ripae | simul | ét | jō | cōsā  
Rédder | et | laud | és | tibi | Váti | cāni  
Móntis | imágo.

§ 801. The following may serve as illustrations of the caesura :—

1. Cláre Maécenás || eques út patérni.
2. Méreuri || faciúde' nēpós || Atlántis.
3. Laureá || donándus' Ápollinári.
4. Férvet inmensús-que' ráit || profúndo.
5. Léuis Ílithyíā' túcre mátres.

Obs. 1. The caesura with elision should not be imitated, e.g. :

Ímbriúm divínā avís imminentum.

Obs. 2. Once a short syllable is lengthened by *arsis* at the caesura :

Angulus ridēt, ubi non Hymetto.

Obs. 3. Of Hypermeter lines (see § 778) the following are specimens :—

Romulae genti date remque prōlēmque  
et decus omne.

Mugiunt vaccae tibi tollit hinnitum  
apta quadrigis equa.

Dissidens plebi numero bēatōrum  
eximit virtus.

Obs. 4. In the Sapphic stanza there is a close connexion between the third line and the Versus Adonius; hence Horace sometimes divides a word between them : as,

Labitur ripa Jove non probante ux-  
orius amnis.  
Thracio bacchante magis sub inter-  
lunia vento.

*Obs. 5.* Horace differs from his model Sappho in making the fourth syllable always long instead of short.

## XII.—ALCAIC VERSE.

§ 802. The Alcaic Strophe or Stanza, so called from Alcaeus of Lesbos, was Latinized by Horace, who adopted the following scheme:—

— | — | — || — — | — — (twice)  
— | — | — | — | — | — | (Trochaic Dimeter with anacrusis —)  
— — | — — | — — | — — (Logaoedic).

It should be observed, however, that the *long* first syllable is preferable; and that the concluding syllable of each line, if not in itself long, usually ends with a consonant: as,

Nōn | sēmp̄r | ſmbres || nūbibus | hīspidōs  
Mānānt in | āgros || aut̄ mare | Cāspiūm  
Vex|ānt in|āequālēs pro|cellae  
Ūsque nec | Ármenī|s in | ōris,

But a short syllable is found in both places: as,

Vi|dēs ut | ālta || stēt nive cāndidum  
So|rācte | nēc jam || sūstineānt onūs  
Sil|vae lab|ōran|tēs ge|hūquē  
Flūmina | cōnstit̄er|nt ac|ūto.

*Obs.* The third line may also be scanned as Iambic Dimeter Hypercatalectic:—

— — — | — — — | —

But the fifth syllable is invariably long: comp. § 784, *Obs. 2.*

§ 803. The practice of Horace, after he himself had become more perfect in his metres (*i. e.* in his later Odes), should both in Sapphic and Alcaic verse be chiefly imitated. The following appear to be the best caesural verse divisions:

### 1. In the first two lines:

Dissolve frigus || ligna super foco  
Large reponens; || atque benignius.

*Obs.* An elision here does not interfere with the caesura: as,  
Regum timendor||um in proprios greges.

### 2. In the third:

- (a.) Non vultus instantis || tyranni.  
Quos inter Augustus || recumbens.  
Deprome quadrimum || Sabina.  
(b.) Spargent olivetis || cupressi.  
(c.) Si fractus illabatur orbis.

### 3. In the fourth, in order of frequency.

- (a.) Impavidum || ferient ruinae.  
(b.) Nec virides || metuunt colubros.  
(c.) Flumina constiterint || acuto.  
(d.) Aut digito || male pertinaci.  
(e.) Levia personuere saxa.  
(f.) Cuncta supercilio || moventis.

*Obs. 1.* Once a short syllable is made long by *arsis* at the second *arsis* of the fourth line:

Caeca timēt aliunde fata.

*Obs. 2.* A monosyllable at the place of the caesura in the first two lines is unusual, though sometimes found in Horace:

Non est meum, si || mugiat Africa,  
Carthagini jam || non ego nuntios,  
Quid debeas, o || Roma Neronibus,  
Te copias, te || consilium, et tuos,  
Te fontium qui || celat origines.

*Obs. 3.* *Et* is frequently—but not in the fourth Book of the Odes—found (usually with an elision) at the end of a line; but a monosyllable in the last place is generally (*esp.* if preceded by another) disagreeable to the ear; *e. g.*:

Cur non sub alta vel platano vel hac.

*Cf.* O quae beatam diva tenes Cyprum et } and Aedesque labentes deorum et  
Memphim carentem Sithonia nive: } Foeda nigro simulacra fumo.

*Obs. 4.* A short syllable is never found at the place of the caesura in the first two lines, and the resolution there of the long syllable into two short, as in

Hinc omne prinēpī || um hūc refer exitum

is very exceptional.

*Obs. 5.* The caesura is hardly ever omitted: such a line as

Mentēque lym̄pat — am Mareótico

is altogether abnormal.

*Obs. 6.* Hypermeter lines are occasionally admitted: *e. g.*:

Sors exitura et nos in aeternum  
Exilium, etc.

Obs. 7. The *genit.* case in *ii* is not admitted: *i* is the form: e. g.:  
vis consili expers, etc.

Obs. 8. The hiatus in jam Daedaleo || ocior Icaro, is not to be imitated.

### XIII.—DOUBLE OR ALTERNATING VERSES.

§ 804. This system, to which the Elegiac verse belongs, has been carried out by Horace in great variety.

§ 805. There is one ode (Od. I. 8) in which the odd lines have the following scheme (choriambic without base):

— — — — | — — —, as:  
Lydā, dīc | pēr ōmnēs:

and the even the following (also choriambic, with Trochaic Dimeter base: sometimes called *long Sapphic*):

— — | — — | — — — — || — — — — | — — —, as:  
Tē dēiōs ōrīō Sybārīn || eūr prōpērās | āmāndo.

§ 806. Horace has also one ode (Od. II. 18) in which a Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic verse in the odd lines is followed by an Iambic Trimeter Catalectic in the even. The latter verse has such a pause (or verse-caesura) that the rhythm of the latter half becomes trochaic. The scheme is:

— — — — | — — —  
— — — — || — — — — —, as:  
Nōn ēbūr nēq̄ue aurēum,  
Mēā rēnīdēt || īn dōmō lācūnār.

Obs. 1. The metre is called by the scholiast Aeron *Hipponeactean* from the already-mentioned poet Hippónax.

Obs. 2. The last syllable is common; and there is no synaphea, as may be seen from

Rapacis Orci || fine destinata  
Aula divitem manet.

§ 807. Horace has imitated Archilochus in many instances: in the first ten Epodes we have after his model the following scheme:

— — — — || — — — — — (Trimeter Iambic Acatalectic),  
— — | — — — — | — — — (Dimeter Iambic Acatalectic), as:

Beātūs illē | quī prēcūl nēgōtīis,  
Ūt | priscā gēns mōrt | āllum:  
Pōsītosque vernās | dītis exāmēn domus:  
Sēnīle guttur fregerit:

Nēc mūnūs hūmēris | efficacīs Hērēulīs:

Viderē prōpērantes domum:  
Pavidumque leporem ēt | advenam \*lāquēō gruem:  
Jucunda captat praemia:

Quid dixit aut quid tacuit, etc.

Quod si pudicā mūlier in partem juvet.

Obs. A diphthong is (very rarely) shortened before another vowel, as:

Ēt|Ēsquillīnās ālites (§ 765, Obs. 7).

§ 808. Another combination, after Archilochus, is (once Od. IV. 7) formed by the *second* half of a Pentameter appended to a Hexameter verse, as:

Diffugere nivēs; redeunt jam gramina campis

Arboribusque comae.

Obs. The Hexameter may be varied according to the rules already laid down, but the even lines must always correspond to the *second* half of the Pentameter.

§ 809. Another, after Archilochus (Epod. XIII.), consists of a Hexameter, to which is appended an *asynartete* line made up of a Dimeter Iambic and the second half of a Pentameter: as,

Horrida tempestas coelum contraxit, et imbres

Nivēsque deducunt Jovē || nunc mare, nunc silvae;

Threicio Aquilone sonant; rapiamus, amici,

Occasionem de die || dumque virent genua;

Cetera mitte loqui: deus haec fortasse benigna

Reduct in sedem vicē. || Nunc et Achaemenio.

Obs. The even line in the above is the even line *reversed* of Epode XI.

§ 810. Another, after Archilochus (Epod. XI.), consists of a *senarius* (see TRIMETER IAMBIC ACATALECTIC), to which is appended an *asynartete* line made up of the *second half* of a Pentameter together with an Iambic Dimeter Acatalectic (see § 784, Obs. 2): as,

Amore qui me praeter omnes expedit

Mollibus | in pueris || aut in puellis urere:

\* (Once).

Hic tertius December, ex quo destiti,  
 Inachia fure/rē, || silvis honorem decutit :  
 Unde expedire non amicorum queant,  
 Libera consili|ā || nec contumeliae graves.

*Obs.* The hiatus in

Vincere mollitiz || amor Lyeisci me tenet  
 is explained, as is the short syllable at the verse-caesura, by the fact o.  
 the two halves of the line being composed in distinct measures, in each of  
 which the last syllable of the verse is common.

§ 811. Another (Od. I. 4), after Archilochus, consists of  
 a logaoedic line (§ 798, 2), followed by an Iambic Trimeter  
 Catalectic: as,

Pallidā | mōrs aeq|uō puls|at pēdē || paup̄rēm tābērnās,  
 Rēgūmq̄e tūrrēs. Ó bēatē Sēxti :  
 Altern|o terr|am quat|unt pedē || dum graves Cyclopum,  
 Volcanus ardens urit officinas.

§ 812. Moreover, Horace has (Od. I. 7, 28; Epod. XII.)  
 a Hexameter followed by a line made up of three dactylic  
 feet (of which the last must be pure) and a spondee or  
 trochee (Dactylic Tetrameter Catalectic), the scheme of  
 which is,

┌ ┐ | ┌ ┐ | ┌ ┐ | ┌ ┐, as :  
 Laudabunt alii claram Rhodon aut Mitylenen,  
 Aut Ephēs|ōn bimār|isvē Cōr|inthi ;  
 Moenia, vel Baccho Thebas vel Apolline Delphos  
 Insign|ēs, aut | Thēssālā | Tēmp̄ :  
 Nec tam Larissae percussit campus opimae,  
 Quām dōmūs | Albūnē|ae rēsōn|āntis.

§ 813. And, lastly, Horace has (Epod. XIV. and XV.)  
 a Hexameter followed (1) by an Iambic Dimeter Acata-  
 lectic: as,

Nox erat et coelo fulgebat luna sereno  
 Intēr minōra sīderā ;

Or (2), by a *senarius* (Epod. XVI.): as,

Altera jam teritur bellis civilibus aetas  
 Suis et ipsa Roma viribus ruit.

*Obs.* This metre is called Pythiambic.

#### XIV.—THE PRIAPEAN VERSE.

§ 814. The Priapean Verse (Catull. XVII., XVIII., and  
 XIX.) consists of the placing together (unintermingled)  
 of a Glyconic and Pherecratian verse, so that the scheme is

— | ┌ ┐ ┐ | — | ┌ ┐ || — | ┌ ┐ ┐ — ;

Paup̄r|īs tūgūrī | pātēr || fili|ūs-quē cōlōnī,  
 Hājūs | nām dōmīnī | cōlūt || mē dē|ūmq̄e sālūtānt,  
 Quēretis | āridā rūst|icā || cōnformātā sēcūrī,  
 Altēr | āssidūā | cōlēns || dilig|ēntiā ūt hērbā.

*Obs.* 1. The spondee of the Pherecratian half of the verse becomes more fre-  
 quently than not an Iambus.

*Obs.* 2. Catullus occasionally makes a short syllable long at the pause (or  
 verse-caesura) || : e. g. :

Nutrio magis et magis || et beabo quotannis.

#### XV.—THE SATURNIAN VERSE.

§ 815. The Saturnian was the oldest native Roman verse,  
 and it remained in use till the Hexameter was introduced  
 by Ennius. Its rhythm is controlled not by the quantity  
 of syllables as long or short, but by word-accent only.

It consists of two members, each of which has three  
 accents. The first member has a monosyllabic anacrusis.  
 The following two lines may serve as specimens; the  
 former ascribed to the poet Naevius, the latter a retort  
 upon him by one of the 'Metelli':—

Fatō Romae Metēlli || fiunt cōsulēs.  
 Dabūt malūm Metēlli || Naevio poētae.

§ 816. The Saturnian line has been described as Iambic  
 Trimeter Hypermeter, or Trochaic Trimeter with ana-  
 crusis; but it is better to regard it as a distich written in  
 a single line, as in the old English ballad metre.

*Obs.* The oldest English metre consists in like manner of a distich regu-  
 lated only by word-accent, often treated as a single line: as,

Īn a sōmer sēson,  
 Whēn sōfte wās the sōnne (Piers Plowman).

§ 817. In the Saturnian metre Naevius wrote his poem  
 on the Second Punic War, the first line of which is,

Virūm mī (mīhī) Casinēna || insērē (i. e. insequare) versūtum.



The song of the Arval Brothers (Donaldson, *Varron.* p. 194), some fragments of Salian hymns, and probably certain inscriptions and epitaphs are also in this metre.

*Obs.* An old Latin translation of the inscription of Pyrrhus has been thought to show a mixture of Saturnian and Hexameter verse :—

Qui ántedhác invícti | fuvére vírī || pátēr | óptimē Ōlǵmpt  
Hos égo in púgna víci ||  
Victúsque súm ab ísdēm || (see *Varron.* p. 228).

Or, as we may perhaps write the lines,

Qui ántedhác invícti || Fú|vērē vírī pátēr | óptīm' Ōlǵmpt ||  
Hos égo in púgna víci || Víc|túsque súm ab | ísdēm ||

#### XVI.—THE TELIAMBIC OR MIURIC VERSE (*dock-tailed*; from

μειῶ, οὐρά).

§ 818. The Teliambic Verse is a Hexameter terminated with an Iambus (τέλος, ἱαμβος) instead of a Spondee (— — for — —). As the last syllable of the line is common, the Iambic may become a Pyrrhic (— —). As,

Diríge ōd|ōrís ēq|uōs ād | cērtā cūb|illā | cānēs.

*Obs.* The effect of this line is similar to that of the Choliambic (§ 786), the rhythm being suddenly interrupted.

## APPENDICES.

### APPENDIX I.—THE ALPHABET.

§ 819. The Latin Alphabet was derived from the Dorian Greeks of Cumae and Sicily. Of the twenty-four letters of the Grecian Alphabet, the Latins omitted θ, φ, and χ, and changed the Digamma or Vau (Ϝ), having the power of V or W, into F. It consisted originally of twenty letters, to which X, making the whole number twenty-one, was added at a very early period:

1. A.	8. H.	15. P.
2. B.	9. I.	16. Q.
3. C.	10. K.	17. R.
4. D.	11. L.	18. S.
5. E.	12. M.	19. T.
6. F.	13. N.	20. V (U).
7. Z.	14. O.	21. X.

§ 820. That Z, corresponding to the Greek Zeta, was found in the earliest Roman Alphabet, is evident from its occurrence in the *Carmen Saliare* (Vel. Long. p. 2217, Putsch.). See the fragment given by Varro (*L. L.* vii. 26, Müller).

§ 821. The Latins originally wrote CS instead of X. We have the express statement of Priscian that X was introduced after the other letters, and was therefore placed at the end of the alphabet (i. 4, 14). It appears to have first come into use in the time between the Decemviral legislation and the capture of Veii; but the first document in which it is found is the *Senatus Consultum de Bacchanalibus*, B.C. 186.

§ 822. It appears, that when the Dorian Alphabet was introduced among the Latins, C was the *Guttural Media*, corresponding to the Greek γ, and K the *Guttural Tenuis*, corresponding to the Greek κ. But at a very early stage of the Latin Alphabet, the difference between the Guttural Media and Tenuis disappeared, as it did in the Etruscan and Umbrian Alphabets, so that C and K came to have the same sound. C was thus used to express both the Tenuis and Media. Hence in the Twelve Tables *ni cum eo pacit* and *ni pacunt* occur; from the same verb as *pango*, *pepigi*. So in the Columna Rostrata we find the forms *leciones*, *macistratos*, *cefociont*, *pucnandod*, *Cartu-*

*cienses*, equivalent to *legiones*, *magistratus*, *exfugiant*, *pugnando*, *Carthaginienses*. In like manner C. and Cn., the ancient representatives of the names Gaius and Gneus, were retained down to the latest times. As K gradually went out of use, being only retained in a few words, of which the chief were *Kaeso*, *Kalendae*, *kalumnia*, *kapot*, the difference between the Tenuis and Media again became marked, and a new letter G, formed from C by adding a tail to the latter, was introduced to indicate the Media. This letter is found in the time of the First Punic War, on the sarcophagus of L. Scipio Barbatus, and was placed in the alphabet between F and H by a freedman of Sp. Carvilius Ruga, the old letter Z having by this time become obsolete. (Plut. *Quaest. Rom.* c. 59.)

§ 823. Hence Cicero mentions an alphabet of twenty-one letters, of which X was the last (*Nat. Deor.* ii. 37; cf. Quintil. i. 4, § 9), although in his lifetime Y and Z were introduced in writing Greek words in Latin.

§ 824. The Emperor Claudius introduced three new letters; namely, an inverted Digamma,  $\text{𐌂}$ , to distinguish the consonant *v* from the vowel *u*; the Antisigma,  $\text{𐌃}$ , to express the sounds *bs* and *ps*, answering to the Greek  $\psi$ ; and the sign of the Greek aspirate  $\text{𐌄}$ , to express the intermediate sound between the vowels *i* and *u* (v. § 917). These letters were used in inscriptions, some of which are extant; but they soon went out of use (Tacit. *Annal.* xi. 14); and Priscian and the other grammarians mention therefore an alphabet of only twenty-three letters, in which *x* and *y* are included.

#### (A.) THE CONSONANTS.

##### I. Gutturals.

##### K. C.

§ 825. The early history of these letters has been already explained (§ 822). The Latin C, except at an early period, has the same sound as *k* in the cognate languages. Hence it stands in place of *g* and *h* before a tenuis and the sharp sibilant *s*:

rectum,	rexī [rec-si],	from rego.
auctum,	auxī [auc-si],	„ augeo.
tractum,	traxī [trac-si],	„ traho.
vectum,	vexī [vec-si],	„ veho.

§ 826. C represents *d* before a guttural tenuis: as,

iccirco, for idcirco	quicquam, for quidquam
quicquid, „ quidquid	nequicquam, „ nequidquam.

The forms with *c* are the orthography of the best MSS.

§ 827. C disappears:—

1. Before *n*: as,

ara-nea [= arac-nea] comp.	ἀράχνη	de-ni [= dec-ni] comp.	decem
la-na [= lac-na] „	λάχνη	qui-ni [quinc-ni] „	quinque.
lu-na [= luc-na] „	luceo		

2. Before *t* when the nasal precedes: as,

quin-tus [= quinc-tus]	Quin-tius [= Quinc-tius].
------------------------	---------------------------

3. Before *t* and *s* if C is preceded by the liquids *r* or *l*: as,

ar-tus [= arc-tus],	comp.	arceo
far-tus [= farc-tus],	„	farcio
tor-tus [= torc-tus],	„	torqueo
hor-tus [= hore-tus],	„	herctum
co-hortes [= co-horctes],	„	
cor-tis [= corc-tis],	„	ἔρκος
mul-si [= mule-si],	„	mulceo.

§ 828. C had its hard or K sound even before *e* and *i* (with the single exception mentioned in § 829), and was not sibilated as it is in English. Hence we find:

(1) That C in Latin words before *e* and *i* is always expressed in Greek by K: as,

ensor, Gr. Κήνωρ	Cicero, Gr. Κικέρων
Celsus, Κέλσος	patricii, πατρίκιοι.

(2) That the Romans, in writing Greek words in Latin, always expressed K by C: as,

Cecrops,	Cilix,	Cineas,	Cybele,
cerdo,	Cimon,	cithara,	Cyprus.

The K sound of C was retained even in the latest times of the Western Empire, since we find the German words borrowed from the Latin written with a *k*: as,

Germ. Kaiser,	Lat. Caesar,	Germ. kerker,	Lat. carcer,
keller,	cellarium,	kirsche,	cerasus.

§ 829. On the other hand, the fact that in several Latin words *ci* and *ti* before a vowel were written indifferently, proves that these

sounds must have been pronounced similarly, and been equivalent to a sibilant. Thus we find in inscriptions :

tribunitiae and tribuniciae ;

and on the other hand,

mundiciei for munditiei,  
disposicionem ,, dispositionem.

So likewise in inscriptions we have both forms in proper names : as,

Larcus	and	Lartia,	Accius	and	Attius,
Marcius	„	Martia,	Abucius	„	Abutius,
Mucius	„	Mutius,	Neracius	„	Neratius.

In the oldest MSS. we have a similar fluctuation : thus we find,

solacium	and	solatium,	suspicio	and	suspitio,
convicium	„	convitium,	secius	„	setius.

It must be observed, however, that this interchange of *ci* and *ti* takes place only before a vowel : we never find, for instance, *milicis* instead of *militis*, or *felitis* instead of *felicis*. The later Latin grammarians expressly state that *ti* had a sibilant sound. Thus the grammarian Pompeius, says : “ Quotienscunque post *ti* vel *di* syllabam sequitur vocalis, illud *ti* vel *di* in sibilum vertendum est ; ” and we learn from Isidorus (*Orig.* i. 26) that the pronunciation was *justizia*, *milizia*, *malizia*, *nequizia*. Hence in modern Italian arose such forms as *palazzo* from *palatium* ; *Piacenza* from *Placentia*, &c.

A similar sibilant before *i* occurs in Greek : thus *πάσσω*, *θάσσω*, *μάσσω*, represent *παχίων*, *ταχίων*, *μακίων*, and *βράσσω*, *κρέσσω* or *κρείσσω* represent *βραδίων*, *κρετίων* : in like manner *φυλάσσω*, *τάσσω*, *ταράσσω* represent *φυλακίω*, *ταγίω*, *ταραχίω*. (See Curtius, *Gr. Gr.* § 57).

*Obs.* Still the fluctuation between *ci* and *ti* with a vowel following did not really occur in many words in which it is usually given. For example :

1. *Contio* (not *concio*) is the only form found in the oldest MSS. of Plautus and Gaius. The former orthography is in accordance with the etymology ; for the form *coventionid* (= *coventione*) in the S. C. de Baecchanalibus proves that *contio* is a contraction of *coventio*.
2. *Nuntius* (not *nuncius*) alone occurs in the best inscriptions and MSS. This form also is in accordance with the etymology. The old form was *nountios* connected with *novus*. From *novus* was derived a verb *novēre* ; from the present participle of which, *novens*, *norent-is*, came, with the suffix *ius*, the word *norentius*, just as *Florus*, *florere*, *Florentia*. Then *norentius* was shortened into *nountius*, as *nocendinae* into *noundinae* (*nundinae*).
3. *Indutiae* (not *induciae*) (*Gell.* i. 25).  
*Fetialis* (not *Fecialis*), comp. *Gr.* *φειάλιος*.  
*Otium* and *Negotium* are the only correct forms.

4. *Condicio*, on the other hand, alone occurs in the best inscriptions and MSS. It is doubtful, however, whether the word is derived from *condicere* or *condere* ; and consequently whether *condicio* or *conditio* is etymologically the more correct.

## Q.

§ 830. The Guttural Tenuis Q is the Koppa (Q) of the Dorian Alphabet. The Latin grammarians were therefore mistaken in supposing it to be of late introduction, and merely a representative of CV (*Vel. Long.* p. 2218 ; *Mar. Victorin.* p. 2456).

§ 831. Q, as a general rule, was used only in the combination of QV, followed by a vowel, with which it formed one syllable. Hence it was remarked by the ancient grammarians that *v* in this combination was neither a consonant nor a vowel : since, if a consonant, it would make the preceding vowel long ; if a vowel, it would coalesce with the following vowel, in either of which cases the word must have been *ēqvites* or *ēqvites*. The real pronunciation of *v* in the combination QV seems to have been nearly the same as that of the English *w*. We know that the vowel *u* is closely connected with the labials. Hence QV is a Guttural tenuis followed by a labial semivowel, and forms a transition between the Guttural tenuis *k* and the Labial tenuis *p*. The close connexion of QV with these sounds is seen by a comparison of the same word in Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, and the Italian dialects :—

K.	Q V.	P.
<i>Sansk.</i> kis,	<i>Lat.</i> quis,	<i>Oscan.</i> pis,
„ kat,	„ quod,	„ pod,
<i>Gr.</i> κόση,	„ quanta,	<i>Umbrian.</i> panta,
		<i>Gr.</i> πόση,
<i>Sansk.</i> átvar,	„ quattuor,	<i>Umbrian.</i> petur,
	„ quinque,	<i>Gr.</i> πέντε,
		<i>Sansk.</i> pañcan,
<i>Lat.</i> cocus,	„ coquo,	<i>Lat.</i> popina,
<i>Lat.</i> secundus,	<i>Lat.</i> sequor,	<i>Gr.</i> ἑπομαι.

§ 832. In inscriptions of the Republican period, the relative pronoun generally has QV in forms written subsequently with a C : as,

quouis	later	cujus,
quoiei	„	cui,
quom	„	cum, &c.

It must not, however, be inferred from this, that QV was more ancient than C. The Sanskrit form of the relative *ka*, *ki* and

the Ionic forms in Greek, *κοῖος, κόσος*, &c., prove that *k* was the original letter. Even in many Latin words *C* appears in the roots and *QV* in the derivatives: as,

Qurites	from	Cures (curis),
inquilinus	„	incola,
sterquilinium	„	stercus,
querquetulanus	„	quercetum,
inquinare	„	cunire.

§ 833. Instead of *QV*, when the vowel *u* followed, *Q* was frequently written alone, especially from the time of the Gracchi: thus we find in inscriptions:

qura	instead of cura,	pequdes	instead of pecudes,
pequnia	„ pecunia,	persequio	„ persecutio.
pequlatu	„ peculatu,		

### G.

§ 834. The late introduction of the medial *G* into the Latin Alphabet (taking the position of the obsolete *z*) when *c* became exclusively a Tenuis, has been already mentioned (§ 822). In many words the Latin *c* and the Greek *κ* were softened into *G* before vowels and the liquids *l, m, n, r*: as,

#### 1. Before vowels:

Sigambri	for	Sicambri,	gurgulio	for	curculio,
negotium	„	nec-otium,	Saguntum	„	Ζάκυνθος,
gobius	„	κωβίος,	triginta	„	τριάκοντα,
gubernator	„	κυβερνήτης,	sexaginta	„	ἑξήκοντα,
gummi	„	κόμμι,	mulgio	„	μυκάομαι.

#### 2. Before liquids:

neglego	for	nec-lego,	Gnossus	for	Cnossus,
gloria (see Obs.)	„	cluo, κλύω,	Gnidus	„	Cnidus,
grabatus	„	κράβατος,	Pyragmon	„	Pyraemon.
Agrigentum	„	Ἀκράγας,			

Obs. From the Stem *clu-*, with the suffix *or*, came a Substantive *clu-or* (like *hon-or*, &c.), from which with a second suffix *ia* was formed *cluoria* (like *uxorius* from *uxor*). *Cluoria* was shortened into *cloria* (*gloria*), as *puer* into *por* in *Marci-por*.

§ 835. *G* at the beginning of words, and followed by the liquids, is frequently dropped: as,

lamentum	compare	clamare,	navus	compare	i-gnavus,
lactis	„	γάλακτος,	nosco	„	co-gnosco.
natus	„	gnatus,			

§ 836. *G* disappears before *s*, when it is preceded by the liquids *r* or *l*: as,

spar-si,	spar-sum,	from	spargo,	mul-si	from	mulgeo,
ter-si,	ter-sum	„	tergeo,	ful-si	„	fulgeo.
al-si		„	algeo,			

§ 837. *G* sometimes disappears before *m*: as,

conta-minari	from	ta(n)go,	exa-men	from	exago.
--------------	------	----------	---------	------	--------

In other words, such as *agmen*, *tegmen*, the *g* remains.

§ 838. *G* before *t* either disappears or is changed into the tenuis *c*: as,

au-tor,	au-tumnus,	from	augeo,
	and		
auc-tor,	auc-tumnus,	„	„

§ 839. *G* often disappears before *v*: as,

nives (nigves),	compare	ninguo,
fruur (fruguur),	„	fruges, fructus,
fluvium (flugvium),	„	fluxi,
conniveo (connigveo),	„	connixus; cf. nico, nicto,
vivo (vigvo),	„	vixi, victus.

In the same way the following words seem to have had originally a *G*, which disappeared before *v*:

brevis,	comp.	Gr. βραχύς,	
levis,	„	„ ἐλαχύς,	Sansk. laghu,
pravus,	„	„	„ prahvas,
malva,	„	„	„ μαλάχη.

§ 840. *G* followed by the semivowel *i* with an accompanying vowel often disappears (the *i* in such cases was pronounced as a *y* though written *j* in English): as,

ma-ior,	major (orig. mag-ior)	comp.	mag-is,
Ma-ius	(orig. Mag-ius)	„	mag-nus,
me-io	(orig. mig-io)	„	mingo, δμίχω.

Obs. *Ma-ius* signifies the "growing-month," as the root *mag*, Sansk. *mah*, signifies originally "to grow."

§ 841. In like manner *d* disappears, when followed by the semivowel *i* and an accompanying vowel, as *Jovis* instead of *Diovis*, *Janus* instead of *Dianus*.

## H.

§ 842. H was originally a Guttural aspirate; the traces of which are still retained in *traxi*, *tractum*, from *traho*, and *vexi*, *vectum*, from *veho*: for H could not have been changed into the guttural tenuis *c* before *s* and *t*, unless it had had a guttural sound. But in all other cases, H in Latin, is only the rough breathing, corresponding to the Greek spiritus asper.

§ 843. H in Latin often represents *f*, a sound peculiar to the Italian languages: as,

hoedus	for	foedus,	haba	for	faba,
hordus	„	fordus,	hircus	„	fircus,
hostis	„	fostis,	hariolus	„	fariolus,
horreum	„	farreum,	hebris	„	febris, &c.

§ 844. H at an early period was often dropped in pronunciation; and it appears from the grammarians that there was great fluctuation in usage, the same word being sometimes aspirated and sometimes not. Hence we find in Inscriptions and MSS., the following words written both with and without the aspirate:

harundo	and	arundo,	heres	and	eres,
haruspex	„	aruspex,	hora	„	ora,
hoedus	„	oedus,	humerus	„	umerus,
hasta	„	asta,	Hamilcar	„	Amilcar,
harena	„	arena,	Hasdrubal	„	Asdrubal,
hedera	„	edera,	Hannibal	„	Annibal,
herciscere	„	erciscere,	Hammon	„	Ammon.

We learn from the grammarian Nigidius Figulus that the provincials aspirated many words which had ceased to be aspirated in the capital ("rusticus fit sermo, si aspires perperam" in Gell. xiii. 6, § 3); but the tendency was undoubtedly to drop the *h*, until at length it completely disappeared, as is the case in the modern Italian.

§ 845. H in the middle of words between two vowels was frequently dropped; but the older form was also retained along with the more modern. Thus, while *nemo* always occurs instead of *nehemo*, we find in use at the same time:

Ahala	and	Ala,	nihil	and	nil,
vehemens	„	vemens,	colours	„	cors,
prehendo	„	prendo,	dehibeo	„	debeo,
mihi	„	mi,	praehibeo	„	praebeo.

## II. Labials.

## P.

§ 846. It has been already remarked that in the Indo-European languages the Guttural Tenuis *C* or *K* frequently passes into the Labial Tenuis *P*, and that the Latin *QV*, which is a Guttural with a Labial semivowel attached, formed the transition between them (§ 831).

§ 847. In the Oscan and Umbrian *p* often represents an original *k*: see examples in § 831. In Latin this is rarely the case; and even the few Latin words, which have *p* instead of the original *c*, are probably all borrowed from other dialects. Thus *popina* is the Oscan form of *coquina*, from *coquo*; *palumbes* probably comes from the Oscan, *columba* being the pure Latin form. *Epona*, which is usually derived from *equus*, is unquestionably a Celtic word. *Lupus* is the Greek *λύκος*, but it probably also comes from an Italian dialect. If *limpidus* be the same as *liquidus*, the former must be regarded as a dialectical variety, *liquidus* being the pure Latin form.

§ 848. *P* at the end of a word, when the final vowel was dropped, was, as a general rule, softened into the medial *b*: as,

ab	Gr.	ἀπό	Sansk.	άπα,
sub	„	ὑπό	„	ύπα,
ob	„	ἐπί	„	ύπα.

But *b* before the tenuis *t* and the sharp sibilant *s*, was pronounced as *p*. Hence there arises a fluctuation in the orthography, some writing *ps*, *pt* according to the pronunciation, and others *bs*, *bt* according to the etymology; *ab*, *sub*, and *ob* being regarded as the original forms. Down to the Augustan age, the orthography according to the pronunciation was the more usual; and hence we find, in the inscriptions of the two last centuries of the republic, such forms as *apstulit*, *apstinere*, *opsignetur*, *opsidione*, *optinebit*, *supsignent*.

The grammarians follow sometimes the pronunciation and sometimes the etymology, without any valid reason.

Obs. 1. That *b* was pronounced as *p* before *t* is evident from Quintilian (i. 7, § 7): "Cum dico *obtinuit*, secundam *b* litteram ratio poscit, aures magis audiunt *p*."

Obs. 2. The oldest MSS. have usually the forms *pt*, *ps*.

§ 849. *P* is sometimes inserted between *m* and a dental to facilitate the sound: as,



Obs. Hence the Latin *f* sometimes answers to the Gr.  $\theta$ : as,

Gr.  $\theta\acute{\upsilon}\rho\alpha$  Lat. fores,  
 $\theta\eta\rho$  „ fera.

§ 856. In the middle of Latin words the *f* underwent two changes: (1) the aspirate was lost and the labial alone remained; or (2) the labial sound was lost and the aspirate only remained.

(1) Loss of the aspirate in *f*:

Sansk. pra-bhava (excellens) comp. with Lat. probus,  
 Gr.  $\acute{\alpha}\mu\phi\omega$  „ ambo,  
 $\delta\mu\phi\alpha\lambda\omicron\varsigma$  „ umbilicus.

In the same way the Sanskrit suffix *-bhyam* (as in tu-bhyam Dat. of 2nd personal pronoun) corresponds to the Gr.  $-\phi\iota$ , the Oscan *-fe*, and the Latin *-bi* instead of *fi*. Hence *b* has arisen out of *f* in *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, *i-bi*, *u-bi*.

So also *b* has arisen out of *f* in the terminations *-bam* and *-bo* of the Imperfect and Future, which come from the root *fv* in *fui*, as *eram* and *ero* come from the root *es* in *est*.

In the Perfect terminations *-vi*, and *-ui*, for *fui*, the *f* has been disturbed by the following semivowel, like the *d* in *viginti* (v. § 852) and the *g* in *nives* (v. § 839).

(2) Loss of the labial in *f*:

hoedus for foedus, haba for faba,  
 hordus „ forlus, hircus „ fircus,  
 hostis „ fostis, hariolus „ fariolus.  
 horreum „ farreum,

In *mi-hi* the *f* has become a mere aspirate, while in the corresponding forms it has become *b*: as *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, &c.

So also in the pronominal adverbs in *-im*, as *ill-im*, *ist-im*, &c., the original termination was *-fim*, corresponding to the Sanskrit *-bhyam*. The *f* first became *h*, so that from *illo-fim*, *isto-fim*, arose *illo-him*, *isto-him*: then *h* disappeared between two vowels, according to the general practice; and *illo-im*, *isto-im* were then contracted into *illim*, *istim*.

Obs. The forms *ex-im*, *i-n-de*, *u-n-de*, *ali-cu-n-de*, &c. are of the same origin, the old forms *i-fim* and *(c)u-fim* coming from the pronominal roots *i* (is) and *cu* (qui), *f* sinking into *h*, and disappearing between the two vowels.

### III. Dentals.

#### T.

§ 857. The Dental Tenuis T had the same sound as in the cognate languages.

That *t* in the middle of words, whether sibilated or not, had a

sharp, firm, sound, appears from the fluctuation in the orthography of *t* and *ti* in many words: as,

Metius and Mettius, literae and litterae,  
 Atilius „ Attilius, quatuor „ quattuor.

§ 858. T had a weaker sound at the end than at the beginning and middle of words. Hence we find the *t* of the 3rd Person of verbs sometimes dropped in Latin, as it always is in Greek. Even in old Latin inscriptions we have the 3rd persons *dede*, *dedro*, *dederi*, *consuere*. In the 3rd Person Plural of the Perf. Active the termination *ere*, instead of *erunt*, occurs in the best period of the language.

In the later popular dialect, the *t* of the 3rd Person Singular and Plural is constantly dropped. Thus we find in Christian inscriptions the following forms of the Singular,

vixse, fece, quiesce,

and in the latest inscriptions the following forms of the Plural,

fecerun, quiescun.

The modern Italian has followed the example of the Latin in dropping the *t* of the 3rd Person. Thus the Italian *diede* corresponds to the old Latin form *dede*; the Italian *visse*, *fece* to the later Latin *vixse*, *fece*; the Italian *diedro* to the old Latin *dedro*; the Italian *dicono*, *amano*, &c., to the later Latin *fecerun*, *quiescun*, a final *o* being added.

§ 859. On the sibilation of *t* followed by *i* and another vowel v. § 829.

#### D.

§ 860. The Dental Media D at the end of words was pronounced nearly like the Tenuis *t* (Comp. Quint. i. 7, § 5). Hence we find in the best MSS. *t* at the end of words instead of *d*, and in the same MS. both forms often occur alongside of one another: as,

it	and id,	at	and ad,
quot	„ quod,	aput	„ apud,
quit	„ quid,	set	„ sed,
istut	„ istud,	haut	„ haud.
aliut	„ aliud,		

§ 861. By a comparison with the Sanskrit, we learn that *t* was the original termination of the Neuter of the Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives: thus *quod* corresponds to the Sanskrit *kat*. So, also, the Preposition *ad* or *at* corresponds to the Sanskrit *ati*. The termination of the Ablative Singular in Sanskrit is *t*, which was in like manner softened in old Latin into *d*, and finally dropped.



Hence we find in the Columna Rostrata, the old Ablatives *allod*, *murid*, *dictatored*, *navaled*, and similar forms in other inscriptions.

*Obs.* *Med* and *ted* are found in Plautus as Ablatives of *ego* and *tu*. *Sed* is also an Ablative of *sui*, signifying originally "by one's self," and then "apart," "but." In composition the *d* is dropped: as, *secerno*, *secedo*. In the same way *pro*, originally *prod* (cf. *prodeo*, *prodigus*), was an Ablative. Adverbs in *e* from Adjectives of the 3rd Declension were originally Ablatives: hence we find *facilumed* in the S. C. de Bacchan.

§ 862. The softening of a final *t* into *d*, and then the disappearance of the latter appears in many other Latin words.

1. We have the three forms *haut*, *haud*, and *hau*.

2. In the Imperative the *d* arising out of *t* is regularly dropped in Latin: comp.

esto	with the Oscan	estud,	facito with the Oscan	factud,
agito	"	actud,	liceto	"
			licitud.	

3. It has been already noticed that the *t* of the 3rd Person of Verbs is frequently dropped (v. § 858). That the *t* was in such cases first softened into *d* appears from forms found in inscriptions, such as the Latin *fecid*, *exead*, and the Oscan *fefacid*, *hipid*, *fuid*, &c.

§ 863. In the middle of Latin words there was also a fluctuation in the pronunciation and orthography of *d* and *t*, especially after *r* and *u*. Thus Quintilian (i. 6 § 30) in ancient inscriptions found:

Alexanter for Ἀλέξανδρος, Cassantra for Κάσανδρα.

Compare also

Triquetra	and Triquedra	(Quintil. i. 4, § 16),
quatuor	"	quadratus,
quatrduo	"	quadraginta,
mentiri	"	mendax.

§ 864. On the disappearance of *d* followed by *v* at the beginning of words, as *duellum* (bellum), *duis* (bis), *duonus* (bonus) *dviginti* (viginti); and on its disappearance followed by *i*, as *Janus* (Dianus), *Diovis* (Jovis), v. §§ 852, 841.

§ 865. On the change of *d* into *l* and *r*, v. §§ 870, 873, 874.

§ 866. *D* followed by *i* and another vowel, was in later times sibilated, like the tenues *c* and *t*. Servius says in reference to the pronunciation of the country Media: "*di* sine sibilo proferenda est; Graecum enim nomen est, et *Media* provincia est" (ad Virg. *Georg.* ii. 126). From this it is evident that in the time of Servius (the 5th century A.D.), the adjective *media* was sibilated, and hence pronounced like the Italian *mezza*. That this was the usual pronunciation of *di* at the beginning of the 7th century is evident from the words of Isidorus (*Orig.* xx. 9, p. 627 Lind.): "*Mosizicia* quasi *modicia*, unde et modicum, *z*, pro *d*, sicut solent Itali dicere

*hozie* pro *hodie*." Thus arose the Italian forms *pranzo*, *razzo*, *mezzo*, *orzo*, &c. from *prandium*, *radium*, *medium*, *hordeum*, &c.

#### IV. Liquids.

##### L.

§ 867. The letter *L*, as we learn from Pliny, had *three* sounds in Latin:—"L triplicem, ut Plinio videtur, sonum habet,—*exilem*, quando geminatur secundo loco posita, ut 'ille, Metellus,'—*plenum*, quando finit nomina vel syllabas, et quando aliquam habet ante se eadem syllaba consonantem, ut 'sol, silva, flavus, clarus,'—*medium* in aliis ut 'lectum, lectus.'" (Prisc. i. 38.)

§ 868. (1) *L* therefore had its *fullest* sound at the end of words, like *sil*, *mel*, *consul*, *vigil*. This is the reason why *l* always retains its place at the end of Latin words, while so many other consonants in the same position disappear. *L* had also the same full sound in other parts of a word immediately preceded by a mute: as, *clarus*, *gloria*, *plenus*, *pluo*, *flavus*. It had probably the same full sound when *c*, *t* and *st* were dropped: as,

lactis	comp.	γάλακτος,
lamentum	"	clamare,
latus	for	tlatus (tolatus),
litem	"	stlitem (Fest. p. 313, 314, M.),
locum	"	stlocum (Quint. i. 4, § 16).

*L* had the same full sound at the end of syllables followed by another consonant: as, *al-bus*, *pul-cher*, *al-geo*, *ful-geo*, *pul-mo*, *ful-men*, *al-vus*, *ul-va*, *sil-va*.

§ 869. (2) *L* had a *lighter* sound at the beginning of words, as in *latere*, *laetari*, *lectus*, *lotus*, &c., and in the middle of words between vowels, as in *tal**is*, *fid**elis*, *fac**ilis*, *host**ilis*. Since the *l* in this position was pronounced only lightly with the tongue, it was frequently interchanged with *r*. Thus the suffixes *-alis* and *-aris* (§ 187, No. 9) are the same, *-alis* being used when *r* precedes, and *-aris* when *l* precedes: as,

austr- <i>alis</i>	vall- <i>aris</i> ,	mur- <i>alis</i>	proeli- <i>aris</i> ,
rur- <i>alis</i>	sol- <i>aris</i> ,	corpor- <i>alis</i>	regul- <i>aris</i> .

For the same reason we have *caeruleus* instead of *caeluleus* from *caelum*, and *Parilia* instead of *Palilia* from *Pales*.

§ 870. In consequence of the lighter sound of *l* in the beginning and middle of words, we find it interchanged in these positions with *d*: as,

lacrima instead of dacrima (Fest. p. 68 ; Mar. Victor, p. 2470),

levir	„	Gr. δάκρυον,
lautia	„	δαίτηρ,
lingua	„	dautia (Fest. p. 68),
oleo comp.	odor,	Goth. tuggo, Eng. tongue,
		Gr. ὀδωδα.

*D* represents *l* in :

cadamitas	for calamitas (Mar. Victor. p. 2456),
Capitodium „	Capitolium (Ib. p. 2470).

§ 871. (3) *L* had its lightest sound, according to Pliny, when it was the second *l* of *ll*. The difference in sound between *l* and *ll* seems to have been so slight that in inscriptions many Proper Names were written indifferently with one *l* and with two : as, *Ofilius*, and *Opilius*, *Silius* and *Sillius*, &c.

For the same reason we find in the best MSS. both *mille* and *mile*, *millia* and *milia*. The more correct orthography of these two words seems to have been *mille* and *milia*. The reason for this is that *i* before *a* was pronounced as *y* ; and as the second *l* seems to have had nearly the same sound (like the second *l* in French), the combination of sound *millia* (=milyya) was nearly impossible. Since the second *l* had nearly a *y* sound, we understand how in Greek βάλλω arises from βαλιω, τάλλω from τολιω, &c. (See Curtius, *Gr. Gr.* § 252.) In the same way in Latin :

percello	arises from percelio	Perf. perculi,
pello	„ pelio	pepuli,
tollo	„ tolio	tetuli.

## R.

§ 872. Of all the liquids, and indeed of all the consonants, *R* is the most closely related to the vowels. In Sanskrit there is a vowel *r* sound distinguished by a separate character from the consonant *r*.

§ 873. In Latin an original *s* constantly becomes *r* between two vowels : as,

Lares	for Lases,	Ferrius	for Fersius,
arae	„ asae,	Valerius	„ Valesius,
feriae	„ fesiae,	Papirius	„ Papisius,
arena	„ asena,	quaero	„ quaeso.
Spurius	„ Spusius,		

In the same way :

aeris	from aes,	Veneris	from Venus,
cruris	„ crus,	Cereris	„ Ceres,
generis	„ genus,	pulveris	„ pulvis,
temporis	„ tempus,	cineris	„ cinis.

So also in composition :

dir-imere for dis-imere,	dir-ibere for dis-hibere,
--------------------------	---------------------------

The termination *-rum* of the Genitive Plural is instead of *-sum* in such words as *faba-rum*, *bono-rum*, *die-rum*, *bove-rum*, &c.

Even at the end of words *s* sometimes becomes *r* : as,

arbor for arbos,	honor for honos,
labor „ labos,	lepor „ lepos.

The *r*, which is the sign of the Passive, arises in like manner from the *s* of the Reflective Pronoun *se*.

*Obs.* The time, at which *s* began to be changed into *r*, is partly indicated by the statement of Cicero (*ad Fam.* ix. 21), that L. Papirius Cursor, who was consul B.C. 336 (consequently in the time of the Samnite wars), was the first of his family named Papirius, while all his ancestors were called Papisii.

§ 874. *D* was also changed into *r*, especially in the preposition *ad* in composition. Thus we find in the grammarians and inscriptions :

arvenae for advenae,	arfinae for adfinae,
arvocati „ advocati,	arfuissae „ adfuissae,
arvorum „ advorum,	

So also in the usual forms :

arbitr for adbitr (comp. adbitere),
arcesso „ adcesso,
meridies „ medidies (from medius dies).

## N.

§ 875. Priscian says (i. 39, H), “*N* quoque plenior in primis sonat et in ultimis partibus syllabarum, ut *nomen*, *stamen*, exilior in mediis ut *omnis*, *damnum*.” This statement is so far true, that *N* had a full sound at the beginning of words, and a weaker sound in the middle after *m* : but the other part of his statement is opposed to facts.

§ 876. *N*, at the beginning of all words, had a sharp, full sound. Hence we find no examples in which *N* in this position undergoes any change.

§ 877. *N*, at the end of words, was pronounced more feebly, as is clear from its frequent disappearance in this position. As for instance in the Nominative case of all Stems in *on* : as *leo* from *leon*, *homo* from *homon*, &c. So also in such forms as *ceteroqui* for *ceteroquin*, *alioqui* for *alioquin*.

§ 878. *N*, in the middle of words, when it represents *m* and stands before *d* and *t*, had a full sound ; as, *eorundem*, *tandem*, *dun-*

*tuxat, septentrio*. It had the same sound in the middle of words between two vowels. Hence the orthography in this position often fluctuates between a single and double N: as, *Porsena* and *Porsenna*, *Caecina* and *Caecinna*, &c. In the oldest MSS. of Plautus, Virgil, Lucretius, and Gaius, words are sometimes written with a single *n* when the etymology requires two: as, *conubium*, *conectere*, *conexus*; which forms are only to be explained by the fact that N in this position had so full a sound as to render the two letters unnecessary.

§ 879. But N, in the middle of words, had a very faint sound before the aspirate *h*, the semivowels *j* (= *y*) and *v*, and the sibilant *s*, and hence frequently disappears before these letters:

1. Before *h*: as,

cohaereo,	cohors,
coheres,	cohortari.
cohibere,	

2. Before *j* (= *y*) and *v*: as,

coicio	compared with	conicio (conjicio),
cojectura	"	conjectura,
cojunnx	"	conjunnx,
cojuncti (whence cuncti)	"	conjuncti,
coventionid (in S. C. de Bacch.)	"	conventio (whence contio, v. § 829, <i>Obs.</i> ).

3. Before *s*, which is still more frequent. In Lucretius, Plautus, and Inscriptions the *n* of the *nt* of the termination of the Imperfect Participles sometimes disappears, when the *t* of the Stem has been dropped before *s*, the sign of the Nominative: as,

animas	instead of animans,	lacrimas	instead of lacrimans,
cogitas	" cogitans,	dormies	" dormiens,
curas	" curans,	obedies	" obediens.

The *n* also disappears in the Suffix *-iens*: as,

quoties	instead of quotiens,
toties	" totiens,
quinquies	" quinquiens.

Also in the Suffix of the Ordinal Numbers *-esimus* for *-ensumus*: as,

vicesimus	instead of vicensumus,
quadragessimus	" quadragensumus,
duodevicesimus	" duodevicensumus.

Also in the Suffix of the Gentile Adjectives *-ensis*:

Apuleis	instead of Apulensis,
Ostesis	" Ostensis,
Narbonesis	" Narbonensis.

Also in the Stems of words: as,

cesor	instead of censor,
cosul	" Consul,
mesis	" mensis,
mostrum	" monstrum,
tosor	" tonsor.

§ 880. N had a guttural sound before the gutturals *c*, *g*, *ch*, *x*, and was probably pronounced like the French *n*. Some of the ancient writers, as we learn from Varro (ap. Prisc. i. 39), sought to express this sound by *g*, writing

Agchises	instead of Anchises,
agceps	" anceps,
aggulus	" angulus.

Hence we can explain the forms

ec-ce	instead of en-ce,
ec-quis	" en-quis,
ec-quando	" en-quando.

## M.

§ 881. Priscian says (i. 38, H): "*M* obscurum in extremitate dictionum sonat ut *templum*, apertum in principio ut *magnus*, mediocre in mediis ut *umbra*." This statement seems to be correct.

§ 882. M accordingly, at the beginning of Latin words, had the same full sound as it had in the cognate languages. It had a weaker sound in the middle of words before the labial consonants, as in *umbra*. Further, in the middle of words M was changed into:—

1. The guttural *n* before the gutturals *c*, *g*, *g*: as, *anceps* (for *ambiceps*), *quanquam*, *congero*.

2. Into the dental *n* before the dentals *d*, *t*: as, *tantunden*, *veruntamen*, *eandem*.

3. Into the faint nasal sound (which frequently was not written) before *j* (= *y*), *v*, and *s*: as, *conjunnx* or *cojunnx*, *consul* or *cosul*, &c. (v. § 879, 3.)

In composition the *m* of *circum* and of *com* frequently disappears before a vowel: as,

circuire, circuitus,	coagulum,	coactus,
coemptio,	coire,	cooptare, &c.

§ 883. M, at the end of words, was pronounced so faintly as to be almost inaudible. This is expressly stated by the ancient writers (Priscian, l. c.; Quintil. ix. 4, § 40; Donatus, *ad Ter. Adelph.* ii. 1, 53, "*m* littera est nimium pressae vocis ac paene nullius"). In

Latin verse, a word ending in a vowel and *M* was for metrical purposes regarded as ending only in a vowel. Hence *M* was frequently not written at the end of words; its disappearance is of importance for the history of the Latin Declensions and Conjugations.

§ 884. In the verb, the *m*, which is the sign of the first Person Sing., is usually dropped in the Indicative, but retained in the Subjunctive. This *m* must have disappeared very early, as it is also dropped in Greek in verbs in *-ω*, and retained only in verbs in *-μ*. In Latin the *m* is preserved in only two verbs in the Present Indicative *s-u-m* (= *es-u-m*, comp. Gr. *εἰ-μί*) = *ἐσ-μί* and *inqua-m*. Even the first Person of the Subjunctive is sometimes found without the *m* in old Latin, as is always the case in the Greek verbs in *-ω*. Thus we are told that in Cato and other ancient writers the following forms were found:

attinge for attingam	(Festus, p. 26, M.),
dice „ dicam	( „ p. 72),
ostende „ ostendam	( „ p. 201),
recipie „ recipiam	( „ p. 286).

§ 885. In nouns, the final *m* is sometimes written and sometimes omitted in inscriptions of the time of the Punic wars: thus we find such forms as *dono* and *donom*, *viro* and *sacrom*, &c. But from the time of the S. C. de Bacchanalibus, the final *m* of the nouns regularly appears.

§ 886. From these facts we may conclude, that the final *m* was in early times pronounced so faintly that the Romans were in doubt whether to express it by a letter or not; but that from the time of the Syrian and Macedonian wars, probably in consequence of the increased intercourse with Greece, the *m* was pronounced by the educated. But that it still continued to be omitted in the popular dialect is evident from the inscriptions scribbled by the populace on the walls of Pompeii, in which the *m* of the Accusative is usually wanting: as, *tota*, *puella*, &c. for *totam*, *puellam*, &c.

§ 887. From the third century A.D., the *m* of nouns and other words is constantly omitted in inscriptions, because it had by this time ceased to be pronounced in the popular dialect. This dropping of the *m* first in pronunciation and then in writing seems to have been one of the main causes of the destruction of the Latin Declensions in the popular language.

## V. Sibilants.

### S.

§ 888. The grammarians give us hardly any information respecting the pronunciation of *S*; but it clearly had more than one sound in Latin.

§ 889. *S*, at the beginning of words, is found only before consonants in the combinations *sp*, *sc*, *st*: it must have had a sharp hissing sound in such words as *spargere*, *scindere*, *stare*.

§ 890. *S*, at the beginning of words, must also have had a sharp sound before vowels, as it has in the same position in the Romance languages: as Lat. *sapere*, Ital. *sapere*, French *savoir*.

§ 891. *S*, in the middle of words, was pronounced sharply both before and after consonants. This is shown by the change of the Labial Media into the Tenuis before *s*: as, *nup-si*, *lap-sus*, &c. (v. § 848): and also by the fact that *s* is retained only before sharp sounds, while it is dropped before *m*, *n*, *l*, in the same manner as before *d*: as,

ca-mena,	po-no,	corpu-lentus,	ju-dex,
(cas-mena),	(pos-no),	(corpus-lentus),	(jus-dex),
o-men,	ce-na,		i-dem,
(os-men),	(ces-na),		(is-dem),
po-moerium,	ahe-neus,		di-duco,
(pos-moerium),	(ahes-neus),		(dis-duco),
du-mosus,	vide-n',		tre-decim,
(dus-mosus),	(vides-n'),		(tres-decim).

Sometimes it is changed into *r* before the same sounds: as,

car-men,	veter-nus,	diur-nus,
(cas-men),	(vetes-nus),	(dius-nus).

In the same way *s*, on account of its sharp sound, disappeared before *f* at the beginning of words: as, *fullo* compared with *σφάλλω*, *fungus* with *σφόνγγος*, *fundā* with *σφενδόνη*, *fidis* with *σφίδη*.

§ 892. *S*, in the middle of words, had a softer sound between two vowels, as it has in the Romance languages: as, Lat. *rosa*, Ital. *rosa*, French *rose*. This is also shown by the change of *s* into *r* between two vowels (v. § 873), which could not have been of such frequent occurrence had not the *s* in this position been the softer sibilant.

*Obs.* In *spes* and *dies*, the *s* belongs to the Stem, and has been dropped in the Gen. and Dat. Sing. cases, *spe-i* = *spes-i*, *die-i* = *dies-i*. That the *s* of *spes* belongs to the Stem is proved by the Nom. and Acc. Pl. *speres* in Ennius, and by the verb *spero*. That the *s* of *dies* belongs to the Stem appears from the forms *diur-nus* = (dius-nus), *ho-dier-nus* (= ho-dies-nus), and *Dies-piter*.

§ 893. *S*, at the end of words, was from the earliest times very faintly sounded in Latin. In many of the Case-endings, *s* was dropped altogether. Thus it disappeared in the Nom. Sing. of such words as *Numa*, *poeta*, *puer*, *vigil*; in the Gen. Sing. of the 1st, 2nd, and 5th Declensions, originally ending in *a-is*, *o-is*, *e-is*, from which

arose the later forms *ae*, *i*, *ei*; in the Nom. Pl. of the 1st and 2nd Declensions, where *a-is* and *o-is* were the original forms of the later *ae* and *i*. In verbs, in like manner, the *s*, which was the sign of the 2nd Person Sing. of the Imperative, was dropped, *rege*, *mone*, *audi* having originally ended in *s*. So also in the 2nd Person Sing. of the Pres. and Imperf. Indic. and Subj., and of the Fut. Indic. Passive, we have the forms *amare*, *amere*, *amabare*, *amarere*, *amabere*, together with *amaris*, *ameris*, &c. The adverbs *magis* and *potis* were also at an early period written *mage* and *pote*.

*Obs.* The proof of the above statements would occupy too much space; but we may take as an example the Gen. Sing. of the 1st Declension. From the original termination *a-is*, as, *terra-is*, arose two sets of forms:

(1.) The final *s* was dropped, whence the forms, which frequently occur in the old poets and even in Virgil:

vital, pictai, aquai.

Both syllables were originally long, *āi*, which were first contracted into *ai* and subsequently into *ae*.

(2.) Or the final *s* of *a-is* was preserved, and *ai* was then either contracted into *ae*: as, *dimidiaes*: or the *i* was dropped: as, *terraes*.

The form in *ae*s frequently occurs in both the republican and imperial inscriptions, especially in the names of females: as,

Pesceniaes, also dimidiaes,

Heraes, suaes.

The form in *as* is frequently found in the older poets: as,

terraes, fortunās,

vias, escas.

It is retained in later writers in the common word *paterfamilias*.

§ 894. In the inscriptions of the time of the Punic war we find words of the 2nd Declension in the Nominative case without *s*: as, *Terentio*, *Albenio*, &c. In the Roman poets, down to the time of Cicero, the final *s*, followed by a word beginning with a consonant, did not make the preceding vowel long, which proves that it was not then pronounced. Cicero styles this pronunciation *subrusticum* (*Orat.* 48, 161), which shows that the *s* was still dropped in his time in the country dialect. In the later Imperial inscriptions the final *s* in the case-endings usually disappears. This omission of the final *s*, like the similar disappearance of the final *m*, was one of the main causes of the destruction of the Latin Declensions.

## Z.

§ 895. It has been already shewn (v. § 820) that *Z* was found in the oldest Roman alphabet and that it occurred in the Carmen Saliare. At what time it disappeared is unknown. It is not found in the Twelve Tables, and we are told that the tragic poet Attius did not use it. It first came into use again in Cicero's time, but then only in Greek words.

§ 896. The Romans, in the time of Plautus and Pacuvius, expressed the Greek *z* at the beginning of words by *s*, and in the

middle of words by *ss*: hence they wrote and pronounced *Saguntum*, *Sethus*, *sona*, *badiisso*, *Atticisso*, &c. Such forms in the present MSS. of Plautus, as *zona*, *Zacynthus*, *badizo*, *trapezita* were introduced in the recension of the text by the grammarians, in accordance with the orthography of their time.

§ 897. Since in Latin, *s* at the beginning of words, and *ss* in the middle of words after a short vowel, had the sharp sibilant sound, the Greek *ζ* must have sounded to the earlier Romans like their sharp sibilant.

§ 898. It would seem that in later times the Roman *z* had in it something of a *d* sound as well as of a sibilant. Hence in the later Imperial times when *di* followed by a vowel was sibilated, *di* was sometimes expressed by *z*: hence we find *diabolus*, *diaconus*, &c. written *zabolus*, *zaconus*, &c. (v. § 866). In like manner the sibilated *j* was expressed by *z* in the later popular pronunciation: whence we find in an inscription *Zesu* for *Jesu*.

## X.

§ 899. Whether *X* is classed among the gutturals or the sibilants is immaterial, as it represented both sounds united. It is here placed with the sibilants, because in course of time it degenerated into a mere sibilant.

§ 900. It has been already shewn that *X* did not belong to the earliest Roman alphabet, but still was written at a period earlier than the most ancient inscriptions (v. § 821). It is only an accident that we do not find it in the short inscriptions of the earliest times. It first appears in the S. C. de Bacchanalibus in the words: *exdeicendum*, *exdeicatis*, *extrad*.

§ 901. From the time of the Gracchi, that is from the time of Lucilius and Attius, who did much to fix the Latin orthography, *X* was frequently written *xs*: as, *saxsum*, *marxume*, *proxsimum*, *deduxsit*, *lers*, &c. This orthography is found even in monuments of the Augustan age, and still later on tombs of the Christian era.

§ 902. It is clear from the simple *X* being sometimes written *xs*, that the sibilant was pronounced very strongly. From this predominance of the sibilant we may account for the fact, that before consonants the guttural part of *x* disappeared and the sibilant *s* alone remained; whence we find in inscriptions *sescentas*, *Sestius*, *praestes-tati*. The remaining *s* then disappeared before those consonants with which it did not harmonize, that is, before *d*, *n*, *m*, *v* (v. § 891): as, *se-decim*, *se-ni*, *se-mestris*, *se-vir*.

§ 903. In the later Imperial times, the guttural element in *X* seems to have been entirely dropped in the popular pronunciation, and the letter to have been pronounced simply as *s* or *ss*. In inscriptions of the fourth century we find such forms as *visit* for *vixit*.

That X did not then differ in sound from *s* or *ss* is proved by the mistakes of stone-cutters, who made

xancto for sancto, millex for miles, tigris for tigris;

and by the forms in MSS.,

frassinus for fraxinus, tossicum for toxicum, cossim for coxim.

Hence in Italian the X is always softened into *s* or *ss*: as,

<i>Ital.</i> saggio	<i>Lat.</i> exagium,	<i>Ital.</i> massimo	<i>Lat.</i> maximum,
spiegare	explicare,	prossimo	proximum,
esempio	exemplum,	sasso	saxum.

## VI. Semivowels.

### J.

§ 904. The same character, namely *I*, was used by the Romans to express the vowel *i* and the semivowel *j*.

The semivowel *J*, as we learn from Priscian (i. 18, H), had its simplest sound at the beginning of simple words, and at the beginning of the second member of compound words: as,

ab-judico	ad-jungo	con-jectus
e-juro	de-jectus	di-judico.

In such cases *J* was pronounced like the English *y*.

§ 905. If the *J* was followed by *i*, the *J* was dropped: therefore the correct orthography is—

eicit not ejicit,	proicit not projicit,
reicit „ rejicit,	coicit „ cojicit.

A short vowel thus preceding *J* in composition remained short, just as before a simple consonant: as,

bijugus, quadrijugus, trijugus, altijugus.

§ 906. *J* in the middle of simple words between two vowels had a fuller sound, more similar to a vowel. Hence, as we learn from Quintilian (i. 4, § 11), this sound was represented by a double *i* by Cicero, who wrote, for example, *aiio* and *Maia* (cf. Prisc. i. 18, vii. 19). We find in inscriptions such forms as *Pompeius*, *eiIus*, *cuiIus*, *maiIorum*, the second *I* in some cases being written higher than the other letters.

§ 907. Since the vowel, which precedes *ii*, is always long, the rule has been laid down by both ancient and modern grammarians, that *J* makes the preceding vowel long (v. § 729). But why *J* should have this power which no other consonant possesses, and why the vowel should remain short in such words as *bijugus*, &c. (v. § 905), remained unexplained. It has been shown by more modern scholars, that in all cases in which a long vowel stands before

*J*, the vowel is either long by nature, or has been lengthened to compensate for the omission of a consonant. Thus the vowel *ē* is long by nature in all proper names ending in *ējus*: as Actēius, Agnēius.

The guttural is omitted before *J* in:

māior, māius	for māgiōr,
Māius (Māius) „	Māgius,
pulējum	„ pulēgium,
mējo	„ mīgio (cf. mingo),
āio	„ āgio (cf. Sansk. ah, “dicere”).

*v* is omitted before *J* in:

Gājus (Gāius) for Gavius.

*r* in:

pējero for perjero (cf. perjurium).

*s* in:

dījudico for disjudico.

*s* with *n* preceding in:

trā-jicio for transjicio.

*s* with *c* preceding in:

sē-jugis for sexjugis.

§ 908. In the later popular pronunciation *J* was sibilated and pronounced nearly like the English *j* and the Italian *gi*. In a very late inscription we find *coniuncta*, written for *conjuncta*. Hence the Italian words *giunto*, *giovane*, *giogo* from *junctum*, *juvenem*, *jugum*.

### V.

§ 909. The same character, namely *V*, was used by the Romans to express the vowel *u* and the semivowel *v*.

The semivowel *v* was reckoned by Cicero among the labial consonants. (Mar. Victorin. p. 2462.) The Emperor Claudius, as already remarked (v. § 824), introduced for this sound the character **J**, which, however, after his death fell into disuse.

§ 910. Many Greek words, which originally began with a Digamma, begin in Latin with a *v*: as,

vomo,	ἐμέω,	vitulus,	ἵταλος,
voco,	ἐπώ,	ver,	ῥῆρ,
volvo,	ἐῖλω,	vestis,	ἑσθής,
vinum,	οἶνος,	vespera,	ἑσπέρα,
viola,	ῖον,	Vesta,	Ἑστία.

§ 911. The Latin *v* was expressed in Greek, after the disappearance of the Digamma, by either *ou* or *β*: and the same word is sometimes written indifferently in either way: as,



Varro,	Οὔαρρον,	Βάρρων,
Vala,	Οὐάλης,	Βάλης,
Valentia,	Οὐαλεντία,	Βαλητία,
Valerius,	Οὐαλέριος,	Βαλεριανός,
Venusia,	Οὐενουσία,	Βενουσία.

This fluctuation in the orthography between *ou* and *β* proves that *v* in Latin occupied an intermediate sound between the vowel sound *ou* and the consonant *β* in Greek, which was the case with the Greek **F**. *V* would therefore seem to have been pronounced in the beginning of words like the English *v*.

§ 912. *V* never stands at the beginning of words followed by another consonant. Hence the following Greek words, in which *β* represents the lost Digamma in the Aeolic and Doric dialects, are written in Latin without the *v*.

βρίζα, comp. radix	βρέχω, comp. rigo
βρόδον, „ rosa	βρυχάσμαι, „ rugio.

*V* rarely comes into contact with a preceding consonant, except the liquids *r* and *l*. It either (1) drives out the preceding consonant, or (2) is changed into *u*, or (3) disappears altogether.

(1.) *D* disappears before *v* (v. § 842) in :

viginti,	suavis.
----------	---------

*G* disappears before *v* (v. § 839) in :

nives,	fruor,	fluvium,	conniveo,	vivo.
--------	--------	----------	-----------	-------

*F*, having previously become *h*, disappears before *v* (v. § 856) in :  
proba-vi for proba-fui, &c.

(2.) *V* is changed into *u* in the suffix *-vus* after Mutes and *n* : as,

vacuus,	perpetuus,
mortuus,	ingenuus.

But if *r* or *l* precedes, the suffix *-vus* retains its original form : as,

alvus,	acervus,
calvus,	i curvus.

(3.) *V* disappears altogether before *d*, *t*, and *s* : as,

te, tibi, comp. tu, tuus, . . .	Sansk. tvam,
se, sibi, „ sui, suus, . . .	„ svas.

*Obs.* A comparison of these pronouns with the Sanskrit shows that *v* was the original form, subsequently changed into *u*, and then dropped.

§ 913. In like manner *v* rarely comes into contact with a consonant following ; for, when a vowel following is dropped, *v* becomes *u*, and then coalesces with the preceding vowel into a diphthong. Thus *av* becomes *au*, when the vowel following is dropped : as,

fautor	from	favitor,
nauta	„	navita,
auceps	„	aviceps,
audeo	„	avideo ; comp. avidus.

So *ov* becomes *ou* (afterwards written *u*), when the vowel following is dropped : as,

nuper	for	novumper (v. <i>Obs.</i> 1),
nunc	„	novumce (v. <i>Obs.</i> 2),
Jupiter	„	Jovipiter,
Juno	„	Jovino,
jucundus	„	Jovicundus,
prudens	„	providens.

In such cases *v* was probably pronounced like the English *w*.

*Obs.* 1. In *nuper* for *novum-per*, the preposition is added as an enclitic, like *parum-per*, *sem-per*, *pauclis-per*, *tantis-per*, *aliquantis-per*.

*Obs.* 2. *Norum-ce* becomes first *novum-ce*, *num-ce*, and then *nun-c* ; just as *hum-ce* becomes *hun-c*, and *tum-ce* becomes *tun-c*.

§ 914. *V* between vowels is frequently dropped : as,

petii	for petivi,	malo	for mavolo,
commorunt	„ commoverunt,	actas	„ aevitas,
amarunt	„ amaverunt,	ditior	„ divitior,
nolo	„ novolo,	vita	„ vivita.

The *v* in the Perfect of the First Conjugation seems to have been usually omitted in the popular pronunciation ; hence the perfect forms of the modern Italian *lavorai*, *amai*, *chiamai*, &c.

## (B.) VOWELS.

§ 915. The vowels appear to have been pronounced in Latin much as they are in the modern Italian. According to the organs with which they are pronounced, *A* has the nearest relation to the Gutturals, *I* to the Dentals, and *U* to the Labials ; while *E* has an intermediate sound between the Guttural *a* and the Dental *i*, and *O* an intermediate sound between the Guttural *a* and the Labial *u*.

§ 916. We learn from Quintilian that *e* in some cases had an intermediate sound between *e* and *i* ("in here neque *e* plane neque *i* auditur," i. 4, § 18), which sound was expressed in the prae-Augustan period by *ei*.

§ 917. There was in Latin an intermediate sound between *i* and *u*, very nearly equivalent to the sound of the Greek *υ*, the French *u*, and the German *ü*. This sound is frequently mentioned by gram-



marians ("medius est quidam inter *i* et *u* sonus," Quint. i. 4, § 7; "pinguius quam *i*, exilius quam *u*," Mar. Victor, p. 2465; "*i* scribitur et paene *u* enuntiatur," Vel. Long., p. 2235; "sonum *y* Graecae videtur habere," Prisc. i. 6). It occurred in the following words according to the grammarians:—

\* Before *m* in:

<sup>i</sup> maxumus,	<sup>i</sup> pulcherrumus,	<sup>i</sup> sumus,
<sup>i</sup> intumus,	<sup>i</sup> acerrumus,	<sup>i</sup> contumax,
<sup>i</sup> extumus,	<sup>i</sup> justissumus,	<sup>i</sup> contumelia,
<sup>i</sup> lacrumae,	<sup>i</sup> volumus,	<sup>i</sup> existumat,
<sup>i</sup> optumus,	<sup>i</sup> nolumus,	<sup>i</sup> monumentum,
<sup>i</sup> minumus,	<sup>i</sup> possumus,	<sup>i</sup> alumenta.

Before *b*, *p*, and *f* in:

<sup>i</sup> manubiae,	<sup>i</sup> aucupium,	<sup>i</sup> aurufex.
<sup>i</sup> lubido,	<sup>i</sup> mancupium,	
<sup>i</sup> intubus,	<sup>i</sup> aucupare,	
<sup>i</sup> artubus,	<sup>i</sup> manupretium,	
<sup>i</sup> manubus,		

There are many words of a similar kind. This variation in the orthography is found chiefly before Labials. In the old inscriptions all such words appear with *u*, but in the inscriptions in the time of Caesar, Cicero, and Augustus, with an *i*. We are expressly told by the ancient grammarians that Caesar and Cicero employed the *i*, though the country-people used the more ancient pronunciation with the *u* (Cassiod. p. 2284; Vel. Long. p. 2216).

The Emperor Claudius attempted to introduce the new character *ɪ*, for this intermediate sound between *i* and *u* (v. § 824); but it is curious that this character in inscriptions does not occur in any of the words already mentioned, but only as a representative of the Greek *υ*, as in: Aeg *ɪ*pti, C *ɪ*cnus, Bath *ɪ*llus, &c.

Even in late inscriptions we sometimes find the *u* in such words; so that the intermediate sound between *u* and *i* seems never to have passed completely into *i*. In modern Italian the *i* is the most frequent, as in *ottimo*, *massimo*, *prossimo*, *intimo*, *libidine*, &c. But the *u* is still retained in *monumento* and *documento*.

§ 918. The following arrangement shows the comparative weight of the vowels in Latin, *a* being the heaviest and *i* the lightest:

*a*, *o*, *u*, *e*, *i*.

## APPENDIX II.—LATIN AUTHORS.

### § 919. A. *Præ-classical Period* (B.C.).

CN. NÆVIUS (3rd cent.):—Epic poem on the First Punic War; and other poetry.

Q. ENNIUS (239-169); born at Rudiae in Calabria:—Epic poem on Roman History; Dramas, Satires, etc.

M. PACUVIUS (cir. 220-130); probably born at Brundisium:—Tragedies.

L. ATTIVS or ACCIVS (170-cir. 90); son of a freedman:—Tragedies.

M. PORCIUS CATO (234-149):—History of Rome; Treatise *De Re Rustica*.

CAECILIUS STATIVS (ob. 168); born at Milan, and a slave by birth:—Comedies.

L. AFRANIIVS (flor. 94):—Comedies.

*Obs.* With the exception of the treatise on farming (*De Re Rustica*) by M. Porcius Cato, only fragments of the works of the above authors have come down to us.

### § 920. B. *Golden Age*.

T. ACCIVS (more properly MACCIVS) PLAUTVS (254-184, B.C.); born at Sarsina in Umbria:—Comedies, twenty in all extant, besides fragments.

P. TERENTIIVS AFER (195-159, B.C.); a freedman, and native of Carthage:—Comedies (*six*).

M. TERENTIIVS VARRO (116-28, B.C.); born at Rome:—wrote *De Lingua Latina*, and *De Re Rustica*; besides a work on Roman History, and others not extant.

M. TULLIVS CICERO (106-43, B.C.); born at Arpinum:—Rhetorical works; Speeches in private and public cases; philosophical and ethical works; Letters.

C. JULIVS CAESAR (100-44, B.C.); born at Rome:—Commentaries or memoirs of his own times, viz., the Gallic and Civil Wars.

T. LUCRETIIVS CARVS (95-52, B.C.); born at Rome:—Poem in six books, expounding the Epicurean philosophy ("De Rerum Natura").

C. VALERIVS CATVLLVS (87-47, B.C.); of Verona:—Lyric and elegiac poetry.

- C. SALLUSTIUS CRISPUS (86-35, B.C.); born at Amiternum:—Historical works; of which the Catiline and Jugurtha are extant.
- P. VIRGILIUS (or VERGILIUS) MARO (70-19, B.C.); born at Andes near Mantua:—Bucolics, Georgics; Aeneid; also some short pieces.
- Q. HORATIUS FLACCUS (65-8, B.C.); born at Venusia:—Odes, Satires, familiar and critical Epistles in Verse.
- CORNELIUS NEPOS (flor. cir. 30, B.C.); of Verona; Lives of eminent men.
- ALBIUS TIBULLUS (? 54-18, B.C.); born at Pedum near Tibur:—Elegiacs.
- SEX. AURELIUS PROPERTIUS (? 51-19, B.C.); born in Umbria:—Elegiacs.
- T. LIVIUS PATAVINUS (59-19, B.C.); of Patavium (Padua):—History of Rome; of which only about one-fourth part is extant.
- P. OVIDIUS NASO (43 B.C.-18 A.D.); born at Sulmo:—Elegiacs; "The Metamorphoses," a poem in 15 books, and other works.
- M. VITRUVIUS POLLIO (? temp. August.):—work on architecture.
- M. MANILIUS (? temp. August.):—Astronomical poem.

§ 921. C. *Silver Age.*

- T. PHAEDRUS (flor. cir. 15, A.D.); freedman of Augustus:—Fables.
- M. ANNAEUS SENECA, father of L. Seneca (60 B.C.-15 A.D.); born at Corduba (Cordova), in Spain:—Rhetorical works.
- L. ANNAEUS SENECA (? 5 B.C.-65 A.D.); born at Corduba:—Philosophical and ethical works; also Tragedies; unless the author of these be a third Seneca.
- C. VELLEIUS PATERCULUS (cir. 19 B.C.-31 A.D.); probably born at Rome:—History.
- L. JULIUS MODERATUS COLUMELLA (flor. cir. 20 A.D.); born at Gades (Cadiz):—Agriculture.
- A. PERSIUS FLACCUS (A.D. 38-65); born at Volaterrae in Etruria:—Satires (*six*).
- C. SILIUS ITALICUS (A.D. 25-100):—Epic poetry ("Punica").
- M. ANNAEUS LUCANUS (A.D. 38-65); born at Corduba:—Epic poem ("Pharsalia").
- C. PLINIUS SECUNDUS (A.D. 23-79); born either at Verona or Comum:—Natural History (35 books).

- C. PLINIUS CAECILIUS SECUNDUS, nephew of the foregoing (61-?); probably born at Comum:—Epistles and Oratory.
- VALERIUS MAXIMUS (1st cent. ?):—Historical Anecdotes.
- C. VALERIUS FLACCUS (1st cent.); born at Padua:—Epic poetry.
- Q. CURTIUS RUFUS (date and place of birth unknown):—History of Alexander the Great.
- M. FABIUS QUINTILIANUS (ob. 88 A.D.); born at Calagurris in Spain:—Work on Rhetoric.
- P. PAPINIUS STATIUS (ob. A.D. 95); born at Naples:—Poetry.
- M. VALERIUS MARTIALIS (A.D. 43-cir. 105); born at Bilbilis in Spain:—Epigrams (14 books).
- D. JUNIUS JUVENALIS (latter part of 1st cent. A.D.); born at Aquinum:—Satires.
- L. ANNAEUS FLORUS (?):—Summary of Roman History.
- C. CORNELIUS TACITUS (cir. A.D. 60-120); place of birth unknown:—History of Rome from Augustus; Life of Agricola; Treatise on Germany.
- C. SÜETONIUS TRANQUILLUS (latter part of 1st and beginning of 2nd cent. A.D.); place of birth not known:—Lives of the Caesars, etc.
- POMPONIUS MELA (latter part of 1st cent.); born in Spain:—First systematic writer on Geography in Latin.
- T. PETRONIUS ARBITER (ob. 66, A.D.):—Satires.
- AULUS GELLIUS (fl. 150, A.D.):—"Noctes Atticae," a kind of literary miscellany.
- L. APULEIUS or APPULEIUS (2nd cent.); born at Madaura in Africa:—Philosophical and imaginative works.
- GAIUS or CAIUS (fl. 160, A.D.):—Legal works.
- D. MAGNUS AUSONIUS (4th cent.); born at Burdigala (Bordeaux):—Poetry.
- JUSTINUS (?):—History.
- AUR. THEODOSIUS MACROBIUS (ob. 395):—Critical and antiquarian works.

## APPENDIX III.—THE CALENDAR.

§ 922. The months in the Roman (Julian) Calendar corresponded to our own. But *Julius* and *Augustus* were called *Quinctilis* and *Sextilis* down to the time of the emperor Augustus. The names of the months were adjectives, with which *mensis* was understood or might be expressed.

The days of the month were not, as with us, counted straight on from the beginning of the month to the end. Instead of this, three fixed points were taken in each month, and any particular day was reckoned as so many days from the nearest of those points in advance of it.

These three points were called,

- (1). *Kalendae, arum*; the *Kalends*: being the 1st day of the month.
- (2). *Nōnae, arum*; the *Nones*: being either the 5th or 7th day of the month, i. e., *nine* days before the Ides.\*
- (3). *Idūs, uum (f.)*; the *Ides*: being either the 13th or 15th day of the month. Thus the Ides divided the month into two nearly equal parts.

\* The following lines contain the names of the months in which the *Nones* (and consequently the *Ides*) fall late:

" In March, July, October, May,  
The *Nones* fall on the seventh day."

Consequently in the remaining eight months they fall on the fifth.

§ 923. The first day of a month being called its "*Kalends*," the last day of the preceding month is called *the day before the Kalends* (*pridie Kalendas*). Thus, the 31st of December is called *the day before the Kalends of January*: often written *pridie Kal. Jan.* Then the day before that is the 3rd of the *Kalends*, and so on back to the Ides, and from thence again to the *Nones*, which form fresh points of calculation, as seen in the following table:—

## CALENDAR FOR THE MONTH OF DECEMBER.

1. KALENDIS DECEMBRIBUS.	17. XVI. ante Kalendas Januarias.
2. IV. ante Nonas Decembres.	18. XV. " "
3. III. " "	19. XIV. " "
4. Prīdie Nonas Decembres.	20. XIII. " "
5. NONIS DECEMBRIBUS.	21. XII. " "
6. VIII. ante Idus Decembres.	22. XI. " "
7. VII. " "	23. X. " "
8. VI. " "	24. IX. " "
9. V. " "	25. VIII. " "
10. IV. " "	26. VII. " "
11. III. " "	27. VI. " "
12. Prīdie Idus Decembres.	28. V. " "
13. IDIBUS DECEMBRIBUS.	29. IV. " "
14. XIX. ante Kalendas Januarias.	30. III. " "
15. XVIII. " "	31. Prīdie " "
16. XVII. " "	

§ 924. In order to reduce an English to a Roman date, the number of the day in the English Calendar must be subtracted from that of the nearest fixed point in advance of it in the Roman Calendar of the same month. And as the Romans counted inclusively from one day to another, a unit must be added to the number thus obtained. Thus, the 10th of December is not the 3rd before the Ides, but the 4th, &c. Also, as the *Kalends* form an extra day, beyond the month, a unit must be added to the number of days in the month, in counting on to them.

*Obs.* Hence the rule,—After subtracting, add *one* for the *Nones* or *Ides*, and *two* for the *Kalends*.

§ 925. In giving the day of the month as a date, the Ablative was used (§ 322): as, *Kalendis Martiis*, *Idibus Martiis*, *die quinto ante Kalendas Martias*. Both *die* and *ante* were often omitted, as *XIV. Kal. Mai.*, which may be either Accusative or Genitive. But another very common way was to begin with *ante*, when the Ablative became changed into the Accusative under its government: as, *ante diem decimum quartum Kalendas Maias*, usually written *a. d. XIV. Kal. Mai.* In this construction the Accusative *Kalendas* remained unchanged, as if it were still governed by *ante*.

§ 926. The expression *ante diem* must be considered as an indeclinable Substantive, since we find it often preceded by prepositions which govern the Accusative or Ablative: as,

In *ante dies octāvum et septimum Kalendas Octōbres cōmītiis* dicta dies. *The time was fixed for the comitia for the eighth and seventh days before the Kalends of October.*—Liv. 43, 16.

*Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octobres.* *A public thanksgiving was appointed (to begin) from the fifth day before the Ides of October.*—Liv. 45, 2.

§ 927. When a day needed to be intercalated in the Julian Calendar, it was done by reckoning the 6th of the *Kalends* of March twice. Hence the name for Leap-year, *Bissextile* (*bis-sextus*). The two *sixths* (24th and 25th February) appear to have been distinguished as *prior* and *posterior*.

NOTE.—A complete Calendar for an ordinary year is given on the following page:—

## § 928. CALENDARIUM.

Our days of the Month.	March, May, July, October, have 31 days.	January, August, December, have 31 days.	April, June, September, November, have 30 days.	February has 28 days, and in Leap Year 29.
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15. 16. 17. 18. 19. 20. 21. 22. 23. 24. 25. 26. 27. 28. 29. 30. 31.	KALENDIS, I. II. III. IV. V. VI. VII. VIII. IX. X. XI. XII. Idus. XIII. XIV. XV. XVI. XVII. XVIII. XIX. XX. XXI. XXII. XXIII. XXIV. XXV. XXVI. XXVII. XXVIII. XXIX. XXX. XXXI.	KALENDIS, I. II. III. IV. V. VI. VII. VIII. IX. X. XI. XII. Idus. XIII. XIV. XV. XVI. XVII. XVIII. XIX. XX. XXI. XXII. XXIII. XXIV. XXV. XXVI. XXVII. XXVIII. XXIX. XXX. XXXI.	KALENDIS, I. II. III. IV. V. VI. VII. VIII. IX. X. XI. XII. Idus. XIII. XIV. XV. XVI. XVII. XVIII. XIX. XX. XXI. XXII. XXIII. XXIV. XXV. XXVI. XXVII. XXVIII. XXIX. XXX. XXXI.	KALENDIS, I. II. III. IV. V. VI. VII. VIII. IX. X. XI. XII. Idus. XIII. XIV. XV. XVI. XVII. XVIII. XIX. XX. XXI. XXII. XXIII. XXIV. XXV. XXVI. XXVII. XXVIII. XXIX. XXX. XXXI.

## APPENDIX IV.—MONEY.

§ 929. The original monetary unit of the Romans was the *as* (*assis*), or *pound*, viz., of *copper*. The fractions of the *as* were designated as follows:—

Uncia,	one ounce;	$\frac{1}{12}$	of an <i>as</i> .
Sextans, ntis,	two ounces;	$\frac{1}{6}$	that is, $\frac{1}{6}$ "
Quadrans, ntis,	three "	$\frac{1}{4}$	" "
Triens, ntis,	four "	$\frac{1}{3}$	" "
Quincunx, ncis,	five "	$\frac{1}{2}$	" "
Sēmis, issis,	six "	$\frac{1}{2}$	" "
Septunx, ncis,	seven "	$\frac{1}{2}$	" "
Bes, bēsis,	eight "	$\frac{1}{2}$	" "
Dodrans,* ntis,	nine "	$\frac{1}{2}$	" "
Dextans,† ntis,	ten "	$\frac{1}{2}$	" "
Deunx, ncis,	eleven "	$\frac{1}{2}$	" "

\* = de-quadrans. † = de-sextans.

Obs. The substantive *as* and its fractions are used of other units. Thus *terna jūgēra et septuaginta* (Liv.), is *three acres and seven-twelfths (a-piece)*: *hēres ex asse*, *heir to the entire estate*, *ex dodrante*, *to three-fourths*, etc. So *fenus ex triente factum erat bessibus* (Cic.), *interest had risen from  $\frac{1}{3}$  per cent. (per month) to  $\frac{2}{3}$ ; or from 4 to 8 per cent.* (Madvig.)

§ 930. From being originally a full pound in weight, the *as* was gradually reduced, till, in the time of Augustus, it was a small coin, of little more than nominal value ("*vilem redigatur ad assem*," Hor. Sat. 1, 1, 43). The *dēnārius* was a silver coin, first coined five years before the first Punic war, and was originally equal to 10 asses. But in the later times of the republic the unit of business calculations was the *sestertius* (*sesterce*), being the fourth part of a denarius, and equal to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  asses, or a little more than *2d*. The *sesterce* was also a silver coin, and both it and the denarius maintained a uniform value, notwithstanding the depreciation of the unit on which both were based.

Obs. *Sestertius* is a contraction for *sēmis tertius*, lit. *the third is minus a half*, i. e.  $2\frac{1}{2}$ . This was often written *IIS*, whence the common abbreviation *HS* or *Hs*.

§ 931. Sums of 1000 and under are counted regularly: *as*, mille sestertii, 1000 *sesterces*; trecenti sestertii, 300 *sesterces*. But in expressing several thousand sestertii, the neuter plural *sestertia* was employed, with which *millia* must be understood, unless expressed: *as duo sestertia* or *duo millia sestertiūm*, 2000 *sesterces*.

§ 932. To express sums of a million of sesterces and upwards the multiplicative Numeral Adverbs, *dēcies*, &c., are used with *sestertium* or *HS*, the words "*centēna millia*" being understood. Thus

dēcies sestertium (= decies centēna millia sestertium, *ten times a hundred thousand sesterces*) is *one million sesterces*. (Sometimes we find only decies centena, "millia sestertium" being understood.) In like manner sexāgies sestertium is *six millions of sesterces*.

In such expressions sestertium must have been originally a Gen. Pl.; but it came to be regarded as a Neuter Substantive in the Singular, and was declined accordingly: as,

Argenti ad summam sertertii dēcies in aerārium rettūlit, *he brought into the treasury up to the sum of one million of sesterces*.—Liv. 45, 4.

Syngrapha sestertii centies, *a Bill of ten millions of sesterces*.—Cic. Phil. 2, 37.

Serviliae sexāgies sestertio margaritam mercātus est, *he bought Servilia a pearl for six millions of sesterces*.—Suet. Caes. 50.

Greater and smaller sums may be combined in one statement: as, accēpi vicies dūcenta trīginta quinque millia quadringentos dēcem et septem nummos, *2,235,417 sesterces*.—Cic. Ferr. 1, 14.

## APPENDIX V.—ROMAN NAMES.

§ 933. A Roman citizen had ordinarily three names, as Marcus Tullius Cicero, Caius Julius Caesar. Of these the middle one was properly called nōmen, being *the name of his gens*; the third, cognōmen, being that of *his family* (fāmilia); the first, prænōmen, or *fore-name*, being that by which he was known from the other members of the same family, and answering to our "Christian name."

In addition to these, some persons had what was called agnōmen, or an *appendage* to the name proper: as, Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus. When a person was adopted into another gens, he took the entire name of the individual adopting him, but appended to it that of his former gens as an *agnomen*, with the adjectival termination, -anus. Thus, the son of L. Aemilius Paullus, adopted by P. Cornelius Scipio, became P. Cornelius Scipio *Aemilianus*.

Obs. 1. The same individual might have more than one *agnomen*. Thus the P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus mentioned above, was also called P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Aemilianus.

Obs. 2. The name of father and grandfather were often added by way of distinction. Thus C. Fannius (Cic. Am. 1, 3) is called M. F., i. e. Marci filius; and Cn. Pompēius Strabo, father of the triumvir, is called Cn. Pompēius, Sex. F., Cn. N. Strabo; i. e. son of Sextus, grandson of Cnaeus.

Obs. 3. Women are designated by the gentile name of their family, as Julia, Pompēia, Sempŕonia.

Obs. 4. In some cases an individual had only two names: as, C. Marius.

§ 934. The whole of a man's name was of course rarely, if ever, used in speaking to him, though it was employed in the headings of letters, and in documents generally. The family name (cognomen) was mostly used in addressing those not of the same family; the use of the gentile name (cognomen) had something formal and respectful about it; that of the fore-name (praenomen) was confined to members of the same family or intimate friends. Even an honourable agnomen, like Magnus, Africanus, was transmitted to his family by the person who bore it.

§ 935. When a slave was manumitted by a citizen, he took the praenomen and gentile name of his manumitter, and added to it some other appropriate name (often that by which he was before called), as cognomen. Thus Cicero's freedman, Tiro, is called M. Tullius Tiro. As additional names of freedmen, may be mentioned, Q. Horatius Flaccus (the father), P. Terentius Afer; L. Cornelius Chrysogonus, etc.

## APPENDIX VI.—ABBREVIATIONS.

### § 936. A. PRAENOMINA.

A.	Aulus.	Mam.	Mamercus.
App.	Appius.	N. or Num.	Numerius.
C.	Caius.	P.	Publius.
D.	Decimus.	Q.	Quintus.
Cn. (Gn.)	Cnaeus.	S. or Sex.	Sextus.
K.	Kaeso.	Ser.	Servius.
L.	Lucius.	Sp.	Spurius.
M.	Marcus.	T.	Titus.
M'. Mauis.		Ti.	Tiberius.

### § 937. B. TITLES, &c. (ANCIENT).

Aed.	Aedilis.	O. M.;	Optimus Maximus
Cos.	Consul.		(surnames of Jupiter).
Coss.	Consules.	Pont. Max.	Pontifex Maximus.
Des.	Designatus.	Quir.	Quirites.
D.	Divus (applied to deceased emperors).	S.P.Q.R.	Senatus Populusque Romanus.
Imp.	Imperator.*	Tr. Pl.	Tribunus Plebis.
P. C.	Patres Conscripti,		

\* In republican times this was an honorary title, bestowed by the Senate upon victorious generals. By the emperors it was used to signify their possession of supreme power. In the former case it was used after the name: as, M. Tullius Cicero Imperator; in the latter it was prefixed, as Imperator C. Julius Caesar.

## § 938. C. MISCELLANEOUS (ANCIENT).

A.	Absolvo, <sup>1</sup> Antiquo. <sup>2</sup>	F. F. F.	Felix, faustum, fortunatum.
C.	Condemno. <sup>1</sup>		
N. L.	Non liquet. <sup>1</sup>	H. C. S. E.	Hic conditus situs est. <sup>3</sup>
U. R.	Uti Rogas. <sup>2</sup>	H. M. H. N. S.	Hoc monumentum heredes non sequitur. <sup>3</sup>
A. U. C.	Anno urbis conditae.	L.	Libertas.
D. D.	Dono dedit.	M. P.	Mille Passuum.
D. D. D.	Dat, dicat, dedicat.	N.	Nepos.
D. M.	Dis Manibus. <sup>3</sup>	Ob.	Obiit.
D. O. M.	Deo optimo, maximo.	Resp.	Respublica.
F.	Filius.	S. C.	Senatus consultum.
S. D. or S. only.	Salutem dicit.	S. V. B. E. E. V.	Si vales bene est, ego valeo. <sup>4</sup>
S. P. D.	Salutem plurimam dicit. <sup>4</sup>	Pot.	Potestas.
F. C.	Faciendum curavit. <sup>3</sup>	V.	Vixit. <sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Judicial formula.      <sup>2</sup> Used in voting (with respect to laws).  
<sup>3</sup> Sepulchral.      <sup>4</sup> Epistolary.

## § 939. D. MODERN.

A.B. or B.A.	Artium Baccalaureus.	leg.	lege, legendum.
A.M. or M.A.	Artium Magister.	LL.B.	Legum Baccalaureus.
A.C.	Ante Christum.	LL.D.	Legum Doctor.
et.	cetera.	M.B.	Medicinae Baccalaureus.
cf.	confer, conferatur.	M.D.	Medicinae Doctor.
cod. codd.	codex, codices.	MS., MSS.	Manuscriptus (liber), or pl.
D.	Doctor.	Mus. D.	Musicae Doctor.
del.	dele, deletur.	N.B.	Nota bene.
ed., edd.	editio, editiones.	N.T.	Novum Testamentum.
e.g.	exempli gratia.	Obs.	Observa.
etc.	et cetera.	P.S.	Post scriptum.
h.e.	hoc est.	q.v.	quod vide.
I.I.S.	Jesus Hominum Salvator.	sc.	scilicet.
I.N.R.I.	Jesus Nazaraeus Rex Judaeorum.	sq., sqq.	quod sequitur, or pl.
J.C.	Jesus Christus.	S.T.B.; S.T.D.; S.T.P.	Sanctae Theologiae Baccalaureus, Doctor, Professor.
I. ctus (Ictus).	Juris consultus.	V. cel., V. cl.	Vir celeberrimus, clarissimus.
ibid., ib.	ibidem.	V.D.M.	Verbi divini Minister.
id.	idem.	V.T.	Vetus Testamentum.
J.U.D.	Juris Utriusque Doctor.		
l.e., ll. cc.	locus citatus, loci citati.		

## INDEX.

(The Numbers indicate the Sections. The Words in Italics are contained in the Accidence.)

- A changed to e in comps., 206, 1, 2.  
to i " 206, 1.  
to u " 206, 3.  
a, ab, 557, 1;—in sing., 715.  
abline, constr. 325, obs. 2.  
abbreviations, 916.  
ablative, of 1st Decl., in *abus*, 17, obs. 4.  
of 3rd Decl., in *i* and *e*, 33.  
of 3rd Decl. (pl.), in *is*, 45.  
Ablative, syntax of, 302, sqq.; of Separation, 303, sqq.; of motion from, 261; after opus, 308; of Origin, 309, sq.; after ortus, etc., 310; of Cause, etc., 311, sqq.; after pass. verbs, without ab, 311, obs.; after verbs denoting feelings, 313; of Price, 316; of duration, 249, obs. 2; Absolute, 332, sqq.; absol. without subs., 333; without participle, 334; of Quality, 318; of comparison, 319; of comparison, after *alius*, 690, obs.; measure, 321; Time when, 322; Time, within which, 323; Time, how long ago, 324; Place, 326, sqq.  
Abstruse, 557, 2.  
Abstract subs. in plur., 593, 594;—in Tac., 721, 6.  
Abstract, expr. by *plur.* of concrete, 591.  
for concrete, 592; 610, obs.; in Tac., 724, 1.  
ac, atque, 567.  
acatalectic verse, 782, obs.  
accent, where placed, 8.  
accusative of 3rd Dec., in *im*, 31.  
(pl.), in *is* and *es*, 37.  
Greek, in *a*, 40, 1.  
in *in*, 40, 2.  
(pl.), in *en* (3rd Dec.), 40, 3.  
(pl.), in *as*, 44, 1.  
syntax of, 234, sqq.; cognate, 235, double, 243; after intrans. verbs, 236; 253; after passives, 243, obs. 4; 244, obs. 3; 253, obs. 1; after verbs comp. with prep. 239; factitive, 245; of motion towards, 259; in Tac. 729, 3; of time, space, 249; in exclamations, 250; of closer definition, 251; Greek, 252; of neuter prons., 253; used adverbially, 254; after verbs of remembering, etc., 258, obs. 1.  
and infinitive, 507, sqq.  
acer, acris, acre, 58.  
aceus, term. of adj., 187, 2 obs.  
acuo, 163, 1.  
ad, 556, 1; in Livy, 715; used adverbially, 715, obs.  
adeo, emphatic, 614, 3; 653.  
adipiscor, 171, 16.  
p. part. in pass. sense, 101, obs. 1.  
Adjectives, 55, sqq.  
in *er* (*era*), (*erum*), 56, obs. 1.  
in *ur*, 56, obs. 2.  
derivative, 186, 190.  
governing genitive: of capacity, 276; of guilt, 279, obs. 3; of fullness, etc., 276, 317; of price, 316; of origin, 310; of feeling, 314.  
governing dative: of advantage, etc., 298.  
peculiarities of: equiv. to subs. (*imus*, *summus*), 341; equiv. to genitive case, 611, 1; in Tac., 721, 5; in neuter = abstract subs., 342; with force of adverbs, 343; neuter = adverbs, 344.  
compared together, 350.  
position of, 671; when emphatic, 672.  
two, requiring conjunction, 340.  
Adonian verse, 791.  
adulor, constr. of, 291, obs. 3.  
Adverbs, termin. of, 196, sqq.  
compared, 129; irregular, 130.  
classified, 133.  
derivative, 196.  
derived from numerals, 72, 73.  
pronouns, 133.  
joined with subs., 546; compared together, 549; combined in Livy, position of, 678. [714.  
adversus (prep.), 556, 2.  
ae (diphthong), 6, obs.  
changed to *i* in compounds, 206, 5.  
aedes, sing. and pl., 51.  
aemulor, constr. 291, obs. 4.  
agnomen, 913.  
agnosco, 167.  
ago and comps., 158, 41.  
ago, agito, in Sall., 694.  
aio, 121.  
-al, term. of subs., 182, 6.  
Aleaic verse, 802.  
algeo, 154, 13.  
aliquis, 82, obs. 3.  
aliquis and quis, 383.  
-alis, term. of adj., 187, 5.  
alius, 57.  
alius . . . aliis, 390, 619.

alius in diff. cases, 629.  
sequence of, 630; foll. by abl., 630, obs.  
alo, 160, 1.  
Alphabet, 819, *sqq.*; whence derived, 819.  
alter, 57.  
alternating verse, 804.  
alteruter, 82, obs. 6.  
ambage, 52, 1.  
ambio (irr.), 116, obs. 5.  
amicio, 168, 13.  
amphibrachys, 763.  
amphimacer, 763.  
amplexus in pass. sense, 101, obs. 1.  
amplius, constr. of, 349.  
-anus, term. of adj., 187, 8; 188; 189, 3;  
190, obs.  
an, in direct double questions, 414.  
appy in simple questions, 415.  
after *haud scio*, etc., 438.  
anapaest, 763; anapaestic verse, 789.  
ango, 158, 21.  
anhelo, with acc., 237, obs.  
animi, constr. of, 237, obs.  
ante, 556, 3.  
verbs, comp. with, 292, obs. 3.  
or post, constr. of, 325, obs. 1.  
antequam, 500, 501.  
antibacchius, 763.  
antispastus, 763.  
antithesis, in Sallust, 690.  
apage, 124.  
aperto, 168, 14.  
apiscor, 171, 16.  
apodosis, what, 424; expr. by *debeo*, etc.,  
428, obs.; suppressed, 426.  
apposition, 214; of adjectives, 216; in case  
of urbs, civitas, 215 (comp. 229); equiv.  
to *as*, when, 217.  
apud, 556, 4; = *at*, *ib.*, obs.  
aqua, *ae*, 51.  
-ar, term. of subs., 182, 6.  
ar = ad, 874.  
arceo and comps., 156, 1.  
arcesso, 162, 6.  
Archilochus, imitated by Hor., 807, *sqq.*  
ardeo, 154, 4.  
arguo, 163, 2.  
-aris, term. of adj., 187, 5, obs.  
-arium, term. of subs., 182, 2.  
-arius, term. of adj., 187, 9.  
of subs., 182, 1.  
arsis, 762.  
Article, none, 10.  
Arral brothers, chant of, 817.  
-as, term. of adj., 189, 4.  
as, parts of, 929.  
Asclepiadean verse, 794, obs. 1.  
asking, verbs of, 244.  
assentior, 172.  
assis, 281, obs. 2.  
assuefacio, assuesco, constr. of, 293, obs. 2.  
asynartete metre, 759.  
asyneton, 565, obs. 2; in Sall., 689.  
at, 575; in sudden transitions, 576.  
atque, *ac*, 503.  
after compar., 352.  
atque, 577.  
attraction of dative, 295, obs.; 296, obs. 1, 2.  
of relative (in gender), 380; in  
case, 380, obs.  
after infinitives, 513.

-atus, term. of subs., 182, 4.  
of adj., 187, 12.  
audeo, 119, B.  
augeo, 154, 1.  
ausim, 111, 3.  
aut and vel, 570.  
autem, 572.  
authors, Latin, 919, *sqq.*  
auxilium, *a*, 51.  
ave, 124.  
aven, 156, 2, 1.  
-az, term. of adj., 186, 4.  
B, power of, 850; = *du*, 852; becomes *v*,  
853.  
bacchius, 763.  
Barbaria, -ies, 53, 3.  
being, verbs of, constr., 232.  
belli, constr., 258; bello, 328.  
bene (compar.), 131.  
bibo, 157, 13.  
-bilis, term. of adj., 186, 3.  
bonus (compar.), 66.  
bos, 30.  
-bulum } term. of subs., 181, 9.  
-brum }  
-bundus, term. of adj., 110, 3.  
C, original power of, 825, 828; lost before *n*,  
*nt*, etc., 827; how long retained its force,  
828; = *t* before *ia*, *io*, etc., 829.  
Cado and comps., 159, 13.  
caedo and comps., 159, 14.  
Caesar, style of, 695; his commentaries, 695,  
obs.; his freq. use of abl. absol., 698; long  
periods, 699.  
caesura, in hexameter, 771; penthemimeral,  
etc., 773; in pentameter, 773; in iambic  
trimeter, 783. (See under the diff. metres.)  
calender, Roman, 922, *sqq.*  
calleo, 156, 2.  
calling, verbs of in passive, 232.  
callus, -lum, 53, 1.  
calveo, 156, 2, 2.  
cando and comps., 159, 20.  
cano, 156, 2, 1.  
cano and comps., 160, 14.  
capesco, 162, 7.  
capio and comps., 157, 11.  
capite, capitis, constr., 280, obs. 1.  
carbasus, -a, 54.  
carcer, -eres, 51.  
cardinal numerals, 69, 73.  
carpo and comps., 157, 1.  
Cases, meanings of, 15.  
castrum, -a, 51.  
catalectic verse, 783, obs.  
cause, in abl., 311.  
caveo, 153, 1.  
caveo, constr. of, 291, obs. 7.  
-ce, with pron., 78, obs. 1.  
cædo, cello, 124.  
cælo, 159, 10.  
celo, constr. of, 243; see obs. 3.  
censo and comps., 150, 6.  
cerno, 161, 1.  
certe and certo, 659.  
ceterum, 573.  
change of *a* to *i*, *e*, *u*, in comp., 206.  
*ae* to *i* in comp., 206, 5.  
*au* to *o* in comp., 206, 6.  
*e* to *i* in comp., 206, 4.  
*e* to *i* in subs., 21, obs. 2.

change of *e* to *u* in subs., 28, obs. 2.  
*i* to *e* in subs., 29, obs. 1.  
*o* to *i* in subs., 25, obs. 1.  
*o* to *u* in subs., 28, obs. 2.  
*u* to *i* in subs., 28, obs. 3.  
consonants: see the several letters,  
ebcliambus, 786.  
choriambic metre, 794, *sqq.*; the foot, 763.  
*ci*, how pronounced, 829.  
Cicero, style of, 700, *sqq.*; doubles words,  
701; uses abstr. subs. for concrete, 702;  
his diminutives, 703; various senses of  
versor, ratio, 704, 705.  
cico, 151, 6.  
cingo, 158, 4.  
circa, circum, 556, 5.  
circiter, 556, 7.  
circum, in comp., 240, 246.  
circundo, constr., 272, obs. 3.  
cis, citra, 556, 8.  
clitor, compar., 66.  
civitas, constr. of, 215; 257, obs. 2.  
clam, 558, 5.  
Claudius, adds to alphabet, 824.  
claulo and comps., 159, 1.  
coelum, -i, 54.  
coeno, -atus, 119, B. obs.  
coepi, 120.  
cognate accusative, 235.  
cognosco, 167.  
collective subs., constr., 222.  
collective use of sing., 590.  
colo, 160, 2.  
comic tetrameter, 787.  
commentarius, -um, 53, 1.  
commisitor, 171, 17.  
como, 160, 15.  
comparative degr., 61.  
of adj. in -ius, 64, IV.  
= "too" or "somewhat," 351.  
comparison of adj. and adv. together, 350,  
549; in Tac., 720, 2.  
words, 204-208.  
concealing, verbs of, 243.  
concord, 212.  
of Verb, 219, *sqq.*; of Adj., 223,  
*sqq.*; of Rel., 228.  
concrete for abstr. subs., 589.  
conditio, etym. of, 829, obs.  
congruo, 163, 15.  
conjugations, how distinguished, 89.  
1, 2, 3, 4, 92-98; 3 and 4,  
100.  
periphrastic, 102.  
conjunctions, 139.  
with subj., 483, *sqq.*  
connective, 561, *sqq.*  
adversative, 571, *sqq.*  
hypothetical, 579, 1.  
causal, 581.  
conclusive, 582.  
final, 586.  
temporal, 587.  
as particles, 652.  
convinco, 153, 8.  
consulo, 160, 3.  
consulo, constr. of, 291, obs. 7.  
contentus, with abl., 314.  
contio, orthog. of, 829, obs.  
contra, 556, 8.  
contracted verbs, 104, 106.

contracted syllables; quant. of, 728.  
cupula, 213, obs.; omitted in Sall., 689, obs.  
cupuo, 156, 3.  
coram, 557, 3.  
correlatives, 83; syntax of, 379.  
credo, 159, 18.  
crepo and comps., 149, 1.  
cresco, 167, 1.  
creticus (foot), 763.  
cubo and comps., 149, 2.  
cudo, 159, 21.  
cujas, 77, obs. 4.  
cujus, 77, obs. 3.  
cumbo and comps., 157, 9; 149, 2.  
-cundus, term. of adj., 186, 4, obs.  
cupio, 157, 16.  
cupressus, -i, and -es, 53, 4.  
cum, 557, 43; plural Verb after, 220, obs. 3;  
denoting manner, 312.  
cunque, 661; tmesis of, 661, obs.  
cur, 133.  
curo, takes acc., 291, obs. 2.  
curro and comps., 161, 6.  
D, lost before *s*, 23, obs. 1.  
final nearly = *t*, 860.  
final often lost, 862.  
termination of Abl., etc., 861.  
changed to *i*, 870.  
changed to *r*, 871.  
dactyl, 763.  
dactylic hexameter, 758.  
pentameter, 779.  
tetrameter, 812.  
(daps), 52, 1.  
dative in -ibus, 17, obs. 4.  
-is for -ibus, 45.  
dative, syntax of, 287, *sqq.*; of remoter  
object, 287; of advantage, 288; after  
Adjectives, 298; dativeus ethicus, 290;  
after various Verbs, 291, *sqq.*; after sum  
= habeo, 296; denoting agent after Passive  
Verbs, 293; esp. after gerundive, 294;  
after impers. Verbs, 295; double, after  
licet, etc., 295, obs.; of names, by attrac-  
tion, 296, obs. 1; of purpose or result,  
297; esp. in Tac., 721, 2; after idem, 620;  
after adverbs, 299; exceptional uses of  
Greek dative, 300; denoting motion to-  
wards, 301.  
dativeus ethicus, 290.  
de, 557, 5.  
deceit, 126.  
deceit, constr. of, 242.  
declensions, 17, *sqq.*  
dedecet, constr. of, 242.  
defective comparison, 66.  
substantives, 52.  
verbs, 120.  
defetiscor, 171, 19.  
definition, genitive of, 275.  
accus. of closer, 251.  
deleo, 151, 1.  
demo, 160, 16.  
demonstrative pronouns, 364, *sqq.*  
demum, 660.  
denarius, 930.  
dentalis, 857, *sqq.*  
deponents, what, 84.  
conjugated, 101.  
derivative, 192.  
lists of, 163-172.



deponents p. part. of, in pass. sense, 101, obs. 1.  
 semi, 101, obs. 3; 119.  
*depro*, 162, 1.  
 derivation of subs., 131, *sqq.*  
 desideratives, 194, 3.  
*deterior*, 66.  
 determinative pronouns, 79; constr. of, 370, *sqq.*  
*deus*, 19, obs. 6.  
*dextra*, 128.  
*di*, sibilated, 866.  
*diaceris*, 767.  
*diastole*, 762.  
*dico*, 158, 1.  
*dies*, m. and f., 54.  
 stem of, 892, obs.  
 different forms of same word placed together, 674.  
 digamma, how represented, 819.  
 dignus, with abl., 320; foll. by qui, 480; 1 y infin. mood, 480, obs.  
 dimeter, etc., 764.  
*diminutive subs.*, 183.  
 verbs, 194, 4.  
 diminutives, use of, 600, 703.  
 diphthongs, short, 765, 7.  
*disco*, 158, 39.  
 dissyllable pret. and supine, quant. of, 735.  
 distributives, 71, 71.  
 use of with plurals differing in sense from sing., 71, obs. 1.  
*(ditio)*, 52, 1.  
*dū* (compar.), 131.  
*dires*, 60, obs. 2.  
*divido*, 159, 2.  
*do* and comps., 149, 3, 1; 159, 18.  
*docco*, 150, 1.  
 constr. of, 243, obs. 2.  
*domi*, constr. of, 258.  
*dominor*, constr. of, 291, obs. 6.  
*domo*, 149, 3.  
*domum*, constr. of, 260.  
*domus*, 51, 4.  
 donec, constr. of, 499.  
 double or alternating verse, 804.  
*du*, becomes b, 852.  
*dubito*, constr. of, 438.  
*duco*, 158, 2.  
*duim* (from *do*), 111, 2.  
*dum*, with pres. Indic., 393, obs. 2; with Ludic. or Subj., 497.  
*dummodo*, 498.  
*duntaxat*, 658.  
*duo* (num.), 68.  
 dupl. etc., constr. of, 280, obs. 2.  
 E changed to I, etc.: see CHANGE.  
 -e term. of adj., 196.  
 e, ex, 557, 6.  
*ecce*, *ecce*, 133.  
*ecce*, *ecce*, 79, obs. 1.  
*ecce*, en, constr. of, 250, obs. 1.  
*ecce*, 78, obs. 2.  
*ecquid* as interr. particle, 413.  
*equis*, 82, obs. 2.  
*edius*, with abl., 310.  
*edo*, 115.  
 subj. edim, 111, 2.  
*edo*, 159, 18.  
*ego*, 159, 3.  
 elision, 765.

*ellum*, 78, obs. 2.  
 ellipsis, of son or daughter, 266, obs. 3; of aedes, 266, obs. 4; of various substantives, 601; of verb, 635.  
*emo* and comps., 160, 15, *sqq.*  
 en and ecce, constr. of, 250, obs. 1.  
 eulm and nam, 501.  
 enim as particle, 634.  
*-ensis*, term. of adj., 189, 1; 190, obs.  
*eo*, 116.  
 comps. of, 116, obs.  
*epicenes*, 141.  
 epistolary style, 398, 424.  
 epitritus, 763.  
*estur* (from *edo*), 115, obs. 1.  
*equidem*, 656, obs. 3.  
 eram in aor. sense, 397.  
 erga, 556, 9.  
 ergo, with genitive, 264.  
 -us, as conjunction, 523.  
*est mihi* = *habeo*, 296.  
 et, 561; et...et, 562; et...neque, 564.  
 ethicus: see dative.  
*etsi*, etiamsi, 503.  
*-etum*, term. of subs., 182, 7.  
*eumpse*, etc., 79, obs. 2.  
*-eus*, term. of adj., 187, 1; 188, obs.  
*-eus*, 188, obs.  
*eventus*, -um, 53, 4.  
 expedit, constr. of, 295.  
*expergitur*, 171, 20.  
*experior*, 172, 2.  
*exterior* (compar.), 66.  
 extra, 556, 10.  
*ezuo*, 163, 5.  
 F peculiar to Italian language, 854; corresponds to the Digamma, 854; not identical with φ, 854; = bh in Sanskrit; becomes h, 856.  
*Facceto*, 162, 8.  
*facio* and comps., 158, 42; (also 205, obs.).  
 pass. of, 119, obs. 1.  
 factitive accusative, 245.  
 fallit, constr. of, 242, obs.  
*fallo* and comps., 160, 12.  
*farcio* and comps., 168, 1.  
*fari*, 123.  
*fateor* and comps., 170, 1.  
 p. part. in pass. sense, 101, obs. 1.  
 feet, metrical, 763.  
*ferreo*, 153, 7.  
 fetialis, orthog. of, 829, obs.  
*ficus*, -i and -ūs, 53, 4.  
*fido*, 119, B.  
 fido, with dat., 291; with abl., 313.  
*figo*, 158, 30.  
 final consonants, quant. of, 750, *sqq.*  
 vowels, quant. of, 745.  
*findo*, 159, 32.  
*fingo*, 158, 23.  
*fit*, 119.  
 quantity of, 119, obs. 2.  
 first word, emphatic, 666.  
 first person, precedence of, 211, obs.  
*flaveo*, 156, 2, 4.  
*flecto*, 158, 31.  
*fluo*, 151, 2.  
*(fligo)* in comps., 158, 5.  
*floci*, constr. of, 281, obs. 2.  
*floro*, 156, 4.

*fluo*, 158, 51.  
*Julio*, 159, 24.  
*foleo*, 159, 2, 5.  
*foras*, 132.  
*(fors)*, 52, 2.  
*fortuna*, sing. and pl., 51.  
*foveo*, 153, 3.  
*frango* and comps., 158, 47.  
*fremo*, 160, 7.  
*frendo*, -eo, 159, 34.  
*frenum*, -i and -a, 54.  
 frequentative verbs, 194, 1.  
 fretus, with abl., 314.  
*frico*, 149, 9.  
*frigo*, 154, 14.  
*frigo*, 158, 6.  
 fruor, with abl., 315.  
*(fruz)*, 52, 1.  
*frugi* (as adj.), 60, obs. 3.  
 compared, 66.  
*fruor*, 171, 1.  
 fugi, constr. of, 242, obs.  
 fullness, or want, Adjectives denoting, 276, 317.  
 fungor, with abl., 315.  
 future tense, 390; = Imperative, 420, obs. 2.  
 future Infinitive, how expr., 518.  
 future-perfect, 405; of what is to be done instantly, 406; sign of often not expr. in English, 407.  
 G, when added to the alphabet, 822; lost before liquids, 835; before s, 836; before m, 837; before t, 838; before l, 839.  
 Galliambic verse, 797.  
*gaudeo*, 119, B.  
*gemo*, 160, 8.  
 genders of subs., 141.  
 generalization with *rerum*, 595.  
 generic plural, 593.  
 genitive sing. -as, -ai (1 Dec.), 17, obs. 2.  
 pl. -um (1 Dec.), 17, obs. 3.  
 pl. -um (2 Dec.), 19, obs. 4.  
 sing. -i = li (2 Dec.), 19, obs. 2.  
 pl. -um, 20, 4; 43.  
 -um and -um, 21, obs. 1; also 35, 36.  
 (Greek), -i, 39, 1.  
 -os, 39, 2.  
 -us, 39, 3.  
 genitive, constr. of, 263, *sqq.*; after substantives, 263; of the possessor, 265; after sum, 266; Subjective, 267; Objective, 268; Objective, after Adjectives, 276, obs. 1; Parative, 269; of Quality, 274; of Definition, 275; after Adjectives, 276, *sqq.*; after Verbs, 278, *sqq.*; after *to accu-*, etc., 279; Genitive of price (tant., etc.), 281; (Hocci, etc.), 281, obs. 2; after verbs of feeling, etc., 282; with interest and refert, 283. Exceptional uses of, 284; of separation, 284; Greek genitive, 285; in apposition with possessive Pronoun, 287, obs. 2; in Tac. after Adjectives, 721, 1; in Livy, 708.  
*gero*, 161, 4.  
*gerund*, 86, 3.  
 gerund, constr. of, 532; governs a case, 533; foll. by genitive, 540; converted to Gerundive, 537; where preferred to Gerundive, 537, obs. 2; as abl. absol., 541.  
*Gerundive in undus*, 110, 3.  
 gerundive, ord. use of, 534; as imperf. part. pass. 522, obs. 2; with est, impers., 536; of Purpose or Result, in dat., 538; also in gen., 539.  
 gerundive and gerund, freq. use in Livy, 712.  
*gignuntia*, intrans. in Sall., 694, 2.  
*gigno*, 160, 11.  
*glisco*, 167, 2.  
*gloria*, etym. of, 834, obs.  
*glubo*, 157, 2.  
 Glyconian metre, 795.  
 government, syntactic, 217.  
*gradior* and comps., 171, 3.  
*grandinal*, 126.  
*gratia*, sing. and pl., 51.  
*gratia*, constr. of, 264, obs.  
*gratis*, 132.  
 Greek Subs. (1 Dec.), 18.  
 (2 Dec.), 20.  
 (3 Dec.), 38.  
 Greek usage of Genitive, 284, 285.  
 of Dative, 300; (296, obs. 2).  
 gubernor, governs acc., 291, obs. 6.  
 gutturals, 825, *sqq.*  
 H, original power of, 842; representing f, 843; often silent, 844; omitted in writing, 844; lost between vowels, 845.  
 habeo in Sall., 694.  
*haereo*, 154, 5.  
*haurio*, 168, 3.  
*hebeo*, 156, 2, 6.  
 haud scio an, 438.  
 hei and vae, with dat., 250, obs. 2.  
 Hendecasyllabics, 792.  
 hendecasyllabics, 792.  
 in Tac., 724, 2.  
 heteroclitia, 53.  
 heterogonea, 54.  
 hexameter verse, 768.  
 endings of, 776.  
 hic (pron.), use of, 364.  
 hic and ille, 366, 367.  
 Hipponactean verse, 786 (note), 806, obs. 1.  
 historical present, 393; foll. by past-Subj., 423, obs.  
 historical Infinitive, 517; in Sall., 691; in Tac., 721, 7.  
*horreo*, 156, 5.  
*humco*, 156, 2, 7.  
*humi*, constr. of, 258.  
 hypercatalectic verse, 782, obs.  
 hypermeter lines, 778.  
 hypothetical sentences, 424, *sqq.*; with Indic., 424, 1; with Subj., 424, 2, *sqq.*; and Indic. in apodosis, 428, obs.; without regular protasis, 429.  
 I as vowel of connexion, 207.  
 changed to e, 29, obs. 1.  
 dropped in stems in -al, -ar, 29, obs. 2.  
 -ia, term. of subs., 185, 1.  
 Iambic trimeter, 781, 807; *scæzon*, 786.  
 dimeter, 784, obs. 2.  
*iambus*, 763.  
*-ianus*, term. of adj., 188.  
*-icius*, or -itius, do., 187, 2.  
*ico*, 158, 45.  
*-icus*, term. of adj., 187, 3; 188, obs.; 190.  
*-icus*, do., 187, 3, obs.  
*id quod*, constr. of, 230.  
*idem*, 79.

idem, attendant of qui, 372, 379, *obs.* 3;  
emphatic after Relative, 373; = *also*, and  
yet, 375; sequence of, 620; foll. by dat.,  
620.  
-idus, constr. of, 186, 2.  
-ies, term. of subs., 181, 10.  
igitur, 584; often first in its sentence in  
Sall., 693.  
-ile, term. of subs., 182, 8.  
-ilis, term. of adj., 186, 3; 187, 4.  
ille, of celebrity, 365; distinguished from  
hic, 366, 367; repeated pleonastically,  
615; with adj. or adv., 616; position of,  
675.  
imbuo, 163, 3.  
impedimentum, -a, 51.  
Imperative, Pres., 417.  
Future, 418.  
imperfect: see Past-imperf.  
imperfect part., 523; as substantive, 638,  
impero, foll. by acc. and infin., 451, 3.  
impersonal verbs, 125.  
impersonal verbs, with acc., 241, 242; with  
dat., 295.  
in, prep., 558, 1.  
in, adv. term., 857, *fin.*  
ina, term. of subs., 182, 3.  
ineptives, 164-167; 194, 2.  
Indeclinable subs., 48; gender of, 141, 3.  
Indef. pronouns, use of, 383, *sqq.*  
Indicative, used predicatively, 392, *sqq.*;  
interrog., 408; for Subj. in oratio obliqua,  
710.  
Indirect questions, 434.  
indulgeo, 154, 2.  
induo, 163, 4.  
indutiae, orthog. of, 829, *obs.*  
inferior, 66.  
Infinitive in *ier*, 111, 1.  
Infinitive, as Subject, 505; as Object, 506;  
Accusative and Infinitive, 507, *sqq.*; after  
verbs of *willingness, ability, etc.*, 512, *sqq.*;  
in exclamations, 516; Historical, 517;  
circumlocution for future Inf., 518; in  
oratio obliqua, 465; in questions in oratio  
obl., 469; after adjectives, 506, *obs.* 2.  
infra, 556, 11.  
ingratis, 132.  
inquam, 122.  
Inquit, ellipsis of, 635, 2.  
Instar, constr. of, 264, *obs.* 3.  
Instrument, in abl., 311.  
inter, 556, 12; repeated, 650.  
Interest, constr. of, 283 (see *obs.*).  
interior, 66.  
interfectio, 140.  
internecio, 52, 1.  
interrogative particles, 409.  
Sentences: see questions.  
Intra, 556, 13.  
Intransitive verbs, of 2nd Conj., 193.  
of 3rd Conj., 195.  
in pass., 84, *obs.* 2; 234,  
*obs.* 2.  
with trans. sense, 236.  
inus, term. of adj., 187, 7; 188; 189, 2.  
Invidio, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 5.  
invitus, used adverbially, 343.  
io, term. of subs., 181, 3.  
Ionic a minori, 796.  
ipse = *very*, just, 376.

ipse constr. of, 377, 617.  
(et) ipse, 618.  
is, ea, id, use of, 370; dative and acc. of,  
omitted, 371; the attendant on qui, 372,  
379, *obs.* 3; et is, isque, 374, 619.  
Iste, force of, 368; used contemptuously,  
369.  
ita, use of, 551; = *very*, 644, 1; in adjura-  
tions, 644, 2.  
itaque, 585.  
J, power of, 904; lost before i, 905; repre-  
sented by il, 906; making preceding vowel  
long, 907; becomes equiv. to gi, 908.  
Jacio and comps., 158, 46.  
Janus = Dianus, 841.  
jocus, -i and -a, 54.  
Jovis = Diavis, 841.  
jubeo, 154, 6.  
Jubeo, takes acc. and Inf., 451, *obs.* 2.  
jugerum, 53, 6.  
jungo, 158, 7.  
Jupiter, 30.  
juro, -atus, 119, B. *obs.*  
Jussu: see Imperative.  
jussu, etc., 313, *obs.* 1.  
juvat, constr. of, 242, *obs.*  
juvenis (compar.), 66, *obs.* 1.  
juvo, 149, 2, 1.  
Juvo, takes acc., 291, *obs.* 2.  
Juxta, 556, 14.  
K, when used, 5, *obs.* 822.  
L, power of, 267; changed to r after another  
l, 869.  
labials, 846, *sqq.*  
labor, 171, 4.  
laccio, 162, 9.  
lacio and comps., 158, 20.  
laedo and comps., 159, 3.  
lambio, 157, 14.  
last word in sent. emphatic, 667.  
lateo, 156, 6.  
latet, constr. of, 242, *obs.*  
Latin, when and where spoken, 1.  
languages derived from, 1.  
Latin authors, lists of, 919, *sqq.*  
laurus, -i and -us, 53, 4.  
lavo, 149, 2, 2; 163, 12.  
lego and comps., 158, 47.  
lentus, term. of adj., 187, 11.  
letters introduced by Claudius, 824.  
libens, used adverbially, 343.  
libet, 126.  
licet and comps., 170, 2.  
licet, libet with dat., 295.  
conj. with Subj., 502.  
lingo, 158, 9.  
lino, 160, 26.  
linquo, 158, 48.  
liquet, 126.  
liquids, 867, *sqq.*  
liquor (dep. verb), 171, 5.  
littera, sing. and pl., 51.  
liveo, 156, 2, 8.  
Livy, style of, 706, *sqq.*; his Patavinity, 706,  
*obs.*; his use of metonymy, 707; of the  
Genitive, 708; of collective singular, 709;  
of Indic. in oratio obl., 710; of Gerund  
and Gerundive, 713.  
locative, 256, *obs.* 1.  
locus, -i and -a, 54.

locus, via, in abl., 329.  
logaedic verse, 798.  
longe, with superlative, 354.  
loquor, 173, 6.  
luco, 154, 16.  
lucescit, 126.  
ludo, 159, 4.  
lulus, sing. and pl., 51.  
lugeo, 154, 17.  
luo, 161, 16.  
luzuria, -ies, 53, 3.  
M, power of, 881; becomes n before a gut-  
tural or dental, 882; faintly heard when  
final, 883; lost in 1st pers. sing. of present  
tense, 884; omitted in acc., 885.  
marreo, 156, 2, 9.  
magno, parvo, constr. of, 316, *obs.* 2.  
magnus (compar.), 131.  
magnus (compar.), 66.  
Malus, etym. of, 840.  
male (compar.), 131.  
male = non, 646.  
malum, mallem, 446, *obs.*  
malo, 113.  
malo, with subj., 447.  
malus (compar.), 66.  
mando (3 Conj.), 159, 26.  
maneo, 154, 7.  
manner, abl. of, 311.  
materiam, -ies, 53, 3.  
mea, tua, etc., 283, *obs.* 1.  
medeor, 170, 3.  
medeor, medicor, with dat., 291, *obs.* 3.  
medicinis, in Sall., 694.  
medius (filius), 133.  
mehercle, 133.  
mei, tui, use of, 268, *obs.* 4.  
memini, 120.  
memini, constr. of, 273, *obs.* 1.  
-men, term. of subs., 181, 7.  
menda, -um, 53, 2.  
-mentum, term. of subs., 181, 8.  
mereor (-eo), and comps., 170, 4.  
mergo, 158, 27.  
-met, with prons., 77, *obs.* 2; 614, 1.  
metior, 172, 7.  
meto, 159, 15.  
metonymy, 604; also, 592, 2: in Livy, 707.  
metres, 764.  
metuo, 163, 18.  
meus, tuus, position of, 673.  
mico and comps., 149, 7.  
militiae, constr. of, 258.  
milla, 69.  
millia, orthog. of, 871.  
mingo, 158, 24.  
minuo, 161, 6.  
minus = non, 646.  
misceor, 150, 3.  
miseror, 170, 5.  
miseret, 126.  
miseret, constr. of, 241; 287.  
miseror, with acc., 282, *obs.* 3.  
mito, 159, 11.  
modal subs., constr. of in abl., 312, *obs.*  
moderor, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 6.  
(non) modo... sed etiam, 567.  
molitia, -ies, 53, 3.  
molo, 160, 4.  
money, Roman, 929, *sqq.*

-monia, term. of subs., 185, 5.  
monometer, 764.  
moods, 85.  
morior and comps., 152, 5.  
morior and comps., 171, 7.  
mortales, in Sall., 694, 1.  
motion towards, in acc., 259; in dat., 301.  
moveo, 153, 4.  
mulceo, 154, 8.  
mulgeo, 154, 9.  
multiplicative numerals, 71, *obs.* 2.  
multum (compar.), 131.  
multum, etc., with gen., 270.  
multus (compar.), 66.  
(mungo), emungo, 158, 9.  
N, power of, 875; when final, sometimes  
lost, 877; disappearing before j, s, etc.,  
879; guttural sound of, 880.  
nam, namque, 581; used elliptically, 581,  
*obs.* 1; = *namely*, 654, *obs.* 2; second in  
sentence, 581, *obs.* 2.  
names, Roman, 933, *sqq.*  
names of towns, constr. of, 256, *sqq.*  
nanciscor, 171, 22.  
nascor, 171, 23.  
national names used adjunct., 608.  
natus, with abl., 210; with acc., (annos), 249,  
*obs.* 3.  
nauci, constr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.  
-ne, in single direct questions, 410; in  
double, 414, 416; in indirect questions,  
436.  
ne, neve, with Imperat., 417, *obs.*; with  
subj., equiv. to imperat., 420.  
ne, after verbs of commanding, etc., 451; of  
purpose, 454; combined with ut, 455.  
ne... quidem, 656.  
necne, 414, *obs.*  
neco, 149, 11.  
necto, 158, 32.  
nemo = nullus, 599.  
neo, 151, 3.  
nequam, 60, *obs.* 3.  
compared, 66.  
neque, nec, 568; with plur. verb, 569.  
nequeo, 118.  
nescio, 82.  
nescio an, 438.  
nescio quis, 623.  
neuter, tra, trum, 57.  
neuter of adj. as adv., 199.  
neuter adj. in predicate, 227.  
neuter-passives, 119.  
neut.-pl. in -ia (3 Dec.), 34.  
ni (nisi), 425.  
ningit, 126; 158, 22.  
nileo, 156, 7.  
nitior (dep. verb), 171, 8.  
nitior, foll. by Infin., 451, *obs.* 2.  
niz, stem of, 22, *obs.*  
"No" ; how expr. in Lat., 133, C. *obs.*  
noctu, 132.  
noli, periphr. for imperat., 420, *obs.* 1.  
nolo, 113.  
nolo, foll. by subj., 447, 2.  
nom. pl. in -es, 42.  
nominative, as subject, 231; after Infin.,  
233.  
non, position of, 678, *obs.*  
non modo (solum)... sed, 567.  
nomme, 401.

nos, precise meaning of, 221.  
 nos, noster = ego, meus, 358.  
 nosco and comps., 167.  
 nostras, 77, obs. 4.  
 nostri, nostrum, 359.  
 nōvi, 120.  
 novus (compar.), 66.  
 nubo, 157, 3.  
 nubo, with dat., 289.  
 nullus, 57; gen. of in -i, 82, obs. 6.  
 nullus = non, 612.  
 num. in direct questions, 133; in indirect, 413; in double questions, 416, obs. 2.  
 numerals, 73.  
 numeral adverbs, 72, 73.  
 nunc, etym. of, 911, obs. 2.  
 nuntius, etym. and orthog. of, 829, obs.  
 nuo and comps., 163, 17.  
 nuper (compar.), 131.  
 nuper, etym. of, 911, obs. 1.  
 O, lighter than a, 917; changed to u, 28, obs. 2; dropped in carnis, 25, obs. 2.  
 o, term. of adv., 197.  
 ob, 556, 15.  
 object, case of, 214.  
 objective genitive, 268; combined with subjective gen., 268, obs. 3.  
 obliqua oratio, 464, sqq.  
 oblique, 171, 24.  
 oclor (compar.), 66.  
 odi, 120.  
 oe (diphthong), 6, obs.  
 oleo (to smell), 156, 8.  
 oleo, constr. of, 237.  
 oleo (to grow), in comps. 151, 5; see also, 165, obs.  
 olli = illi, 78, obs. 3.  
 omnis = nullus, 386.  
 opera, sing. and pl., 51.  
 operio, 168, 15.  
 opis, sing. and pl., 51.  
 oportet, 126.  
 oportet, constr. of, 242, obs.  
 opperit, 172, 4.  
 (ope), 52, 2.  
 opto, constr. of, 447, 1.  
 opus, with abl., 308; as adj., 308, obs.  
 -or, term. of subs., 181, 1.  
 oratio obliqua, 464, sqq.; questions in, 468.  
 order of words, 662, sqq.  
 ordinal, 172, 9.  
 ordinis, 70, 71.  
 orior (3 and 4 Conj.), 100, obs. 3; 172, 10.  
 oriundus, with abl., 310, obs.  
 oris, with abl., 310.  
 -ous, term. of adj., 187, 10.  
 otium, orthog. of, 829, obs.  
 P, often represents k in Oscan and Umbr., 847; softened to b when final, 848; euphonic after m, 849.  
 paciscor, 171, 25.  
 paeon, 761.  
 pando, 159, 27.  
 pango and comps., 158, 35.  
 parco, 158, 36.  
 pario, 161, 8.  
 pars, sing. and pl., 51.  
 particip. form in -undus, 110, 4.  
 participles, 86.  
 fut. act. how formed, 109; irreg., 109, obs. 2.

participles, deficiency of in Lat., 522; how supplied, 526; frequent use of, 530; used substantively, 637, sqq.; become adjectives, 277.  
 imperf. act., 523.  
 future act., 527.  
 perfect : see perfect participle.  
 gerundive : see gerundive.  
 particles, 652, sqq.  
 partim... partim, 547.  
 partitive genitive, 269.  
 parts of speech, 9.  
 parum = non, 646.  
 parvus, comp., 66.  
 pascio, 167, 5.  
 passive voice, inflected, 95, sqq.  
 followed by a, ab, 234, obs. 1.  
 passive of intrans. verbs, 234, obs. 2; when used, 632.  
 past tenses foll. by pres., 473, 2.  
 past-imperf. tense Indic., 394; of what is customary, 395; of what is attempted, 396; epistolary, 398.  
 past-imperf. of sum = perf., 397.  
 past-imperf. Subj. = past perf., 429, obs.  
 past-perfect or pluperfect Indic., 402; for Subj., 401; epistolary, 404.  
 past-perf. Subj. in hypoth., 427; cf. 473, 1.  
 pater, 156, 9.  
 patior, 171, 9 (see comps.).  
 patronymics, 184.  
 patronymics, use of, 609.  
 pause, in Hexameter, 775.  
 paxo, 153, 6.  
 pecto, 158, 33.  
 pecto and comps., 160, 13.  
 penleo and comps., 152, 6.  
 penulo and comps., 159, 15.  
 penes, 556, 16.  
 pentameters, 779.  
 per, 556, 17.  
 percello, 160, 20.  
 perfect Indic., its twofold meaning, 400; after postquam, simul atque, 401; for pluperf. subj., 428; used Aoristically, 634.  
 perfect Subj. after past indef., 423 (note); in Livy, 712.  
 perfect participles with act. sense, 524; of deponents, with pass. sense, 525; equiv. to verbal subs., 596; used substantively, 640, sqq.; neuter of = abstract subs., 528.  
 Phalaeian metre, 792.  
 Pherecratian metre, 795.  
 piget, 126.  
 piget, constr. of, 281, obs. 2.  
 pinco, 162, 2.  
 pinus, 1 and us, 53, 4.  
 pisco, 162, 3.  
 placet, 126.  
 plango, 158, 10.  
 plaudo and comps., 159, 5.  
 plebs, plebes, 53, 5.  
 plecto, 158, 34; see also 171, 15.  
 pleo and comps., 151, 4.  
 plivo and comps., 149, 8.  
 pluit, 126; 163, 19.  
 plural of 5th Decl., 47, obs. 4.  
 plural with diff. meaning from sing., 51.  
 pluperfect, see past-perfect.  
 plural of concrete subs. for abstr. sing., 591.

plural of abstr. subs., 593, 594.  
 = singular, 602.  
 nos = ego, 358.  
 of verb after sing. subject, 222 (see obs.).  
 pluris, minoris, constr. of, 281.  
 plus, amplius, constr. of, 349.  
 poenitet, 126.  
 poenitet, constr. of, 241, 282.  
 polleo, 156, 2, 10.  
 polysyndeton, 565, obs. 2.  
 pone, 556, 18.  
 pono, 162, 4.  
 popina = coquina, 847.  
 populares, in Sall., 694.  
 posco, 158, 40.  
 position, syll. long by, 729.  
 possessive pronouns, 77.  
 poss. pron., constr. of, 363.  
 possum, 112.  
 post, 556, 19.  
 posterior, compar., 66.  
 postquam, with perf., 401; with pluperfect, 401, obs.; with Indic. and Subj., 501.  
 potential, Subj., 429.  
 potior, constr., 315.  
 potus, part., 119, B, obs.  
 prae, 557, 7.  
 quant. of in comp., 727.  
 praedicare, 233; concord of, 215.  
 praenomen, 931.  
 praeter, 556, 20.  
 praeterit, constr. of, 242, obs.  
 prandeo, 152, 1.  
 pransus, 524.  
 precis (prec), 52, 2.  
 prefixes, 178.  
 prehendo, 159, 28.  
 primo, 160, 25.  
 prepositions, 134, sqq.; inseparable, 138.  
 prepositions, gov. of, 553, sqq.; separated from case, 680; two prep., constr. of, 649; repeated before 2nd subs., 651; government in comp. 238, sqq.; repeated after comp. verb, 239, obs. 2; 648.  
 present tense, 392; historical, 393; after dum, 393, obs. 2.  
 present Subj. in hypoth., 426.  
 priapean verse, 814.  
 primary words, 180.  
 primus, constr. of, 341.  
 prior, compar., 66.  
 prior, primus, with verb, 345.  
 prius, compar., 131.  
 priusquam, constr. of, 500, 501.  
 pro, 557, 8.  
 quant. of in comp., 737.  
 proficiscor, 171, 26.  
 promo, 160, 17.  
 pronouns, 74, sqq.  
 pronouns, uses of, 357, sqq.; personal, not expr., 357; reflexive, 360; possessive, 361; often not expr., 363, obs.; demonstrative, 364; determinative, 370; relative, 378, indefinite, 383.  
 peculiarities in use of, 614, sqq.  
 prope, compar., 131.  
 prupe, prep., 556, 21.  
 proper names, peculiarities in use of, 606.  
 propior, compar., 66.  
 proportionals, 71, obs. 3.  
 propter, 556, 22.

prosody, 725, sqq.  
 prospicio, provideo, constr. of, 291, obs. 7.  
 protasis, 424; not fully expr., 429.  
 psallo, 160, 21.  
 pyrrhic, foot, 761.  
 Pythianic metre, 813, obs.  
 Q, origin of letter, 830; power of, 831; qu often represents k, p, 831; without u, 833.  
 quaero and comps., 161, 9.  
 quaeo, 124.  
 quality, gen. of, 274; abl. of, 318.  
 quam qui, with superl., 355.  
 quamvis with Subj., 502; with Indic., 502, obs.  
 quando (causal), 495.  
 quanquam, with Indic., 503; with Subj., 503, obs.  
 quantity, 726; of contracted syllables, 728; of radical vowels, 731; of connecting vowels, 733; of derivatives and compounds, 734; of the reduplication of verbs, 736; of final vowels, 745, sqq.; of final consonants, 750.  
 quantity, marks of, 7.  
 -que, diff. from et, 563.  
 questions, direct single, 408, sqq.; direct double, 414, sqq.  
 Indirect, 434; appy so, 437.  
 in oratio obliqua, 468, 469.  
 qui, 81.  
 comps. of, 82, obs. 5.  
 qui, concord of, 228.  
 with Subj.: hypothetical, 475; causal, 476, 477; of purpose (= ut), 478; after dignus, etc., 480; after is, talis, tantus, 481; in such plur. as sunt qui, 482; in parenthetical clauses, 621.  
 qui, adv., 81, obs. 2.  
 quia, with Indic. and Subj., 486.  
 quicunque, 80, obs. 2.  
 quid = "and then," 623; referring to persons, 624.  
 quidam, use of, 385; as softening an expr., 385, obs.  
 quidem, 656; after ille, 616.  
 (ne) quidem, 656.  
 quiesco, 167, 6.  
 quippe, 492; ironical, 493.  
 quis and qui, 81, obs. 1.  
 quis, comps. of, 81, obs. 3; 82, obs. 2.  
 quis, as enclit., 383, 625; nescio quis, 623; si quis, 627; used impatiently, 622.  
 quisnam, 81, obs. 3.  
 quispiam, 384.  
 quisquam, 82, obs. 4.  
 quisquam and ullus, 386, 387.  
 quisque, plur. after, 222, obs. 2; with superl., 356; used distributively, 388.  
 quisquis, 80, obs. 2.  
 quo, conj. 453; in connexion with comp., 453.  
 quod, a quasi Rel., 491; after verbs, 488; after impers. expressions, 489; hypoth., with subj., 490.  
 (non) quod (quo), 497.  
 quod sciam, 475, obs.  
 quodsi, quodni, 491, obs.; 578.  
 quol, quolus, 80, obs. 1.  
 quotus, use of, 628.

quam with Subj., of historical sequence, 484; causal, 483; with Indic., 483; 483, 1.  
 quum. . . tum, 566.  
 R, power of, 872; standing for s, 873; for s of pron. refl., 873; for d, 874.  
 radical vowels, quant. of, 731.  
 rado, 159, 6.  
 rapio and comps., 157, 8.  
 ratio, in Cic., 705.  
 rastrum, i and a, 54.  
 re, quant. of, 738.  
 reſert, constr. of, 283.  
 reflect, pronouns, 360, *sqq.*  
 verbs, 84, *obs.* 1: comp. 252.  
 rego and comps., 158, 11.  
 rego, with acc., 291, *obs.* 6.  
 relative, concord of, 228; govt. of, 228, *obs.*; diff. gender from anteced., 229; with superl. clause, 381; has its ant. in a poss. pron., 267, *obs.* 3; attraction of, 380.  
 relative adj., govt. of, 382.  
 reliquus, constr. of, 341.  
 remembering, verbs of, 278.  
 reminiscor, 171, 18.  
 renideo, 156, 2, 11.  
 reor, 170, 7.  
 repetition of verb, 636; in part. form, 636, 3.  
 repo, 157, 4.  
 requies, 53, 5.  
 result, dat. of, 297.  
 rhythm, 761.  
 rideo, 154, 10.  
 rigeo, 156, 10.  
 ringor, 171, 11.  
 rodo, 159, 7.  
 roots, 176.  
 rostrum, a, 51.  
 ruling, verbs of, 291, 17.  
 rumpo, 157, 12.  
 ruo, 163, 7.  
 rure, ruri, rus, 258, *sqq.*  
 S, power of, 888; lost before m, n, l, 891; in case endings, 891; becomes r, 891; not sounded in nom., 894.  
 saepe, compar., 131.  
 saepio, 168, 7.  
 salio and comps., 168, 10.  
 Sallust, style of, 687, *sqq.*; brevity of, 687; asyndeton, 689; antithesis, 690; use of hist. inf., 691; of allus., allus., 692; begins sentences with igitur, etc., 693; favourite words, 694; archaisms, 695.  
 salve, 124.  
 sancio, 168, 4.  
 Sapphic metre, 800; long, 805; joined with Adonian, 801, *obs.* 4; in Sappho and Hor., 801, *obs.* 5.  
 sapio and comps., 157, 17.  
 sarcio, 168, 5.  
 satis = admodum, 645.  
 Saturnian verse, 815.  
 satus, with abl. 310.  
 scabo, 157, 15.  
 scalpo, 157, 5.  
 scando and comps., 159, 29; *scateo*, 156, 2, 12.  
 scazon, Iambus, 786.  
 scimto, 159, 33.  
 scribo, 157, 6.

se, sul, 360; in subord. propositions, 362.  
 secu, 149, 10.  
 secundum, 556, 23.  
 secus, compar., 131.  
 sed, autem, 572.  
 sedeo and comps., 152, 2.  
 semideponents, 101, *obs.* 3.  
 semivowels, 904, *sqq.*  
 senarius, 782.  
 senex, decl., 30; compar., 66.  
 sentio, 168, 6.  
 separation, abl. of, 303; gen. of, 284.  
 sepeſio, 168, 11.  
 sequence of tenses, 423.  
 sequor, 171, 12.  
 servo, 161, 10.  
 serpo, 157, 7.  
 sestertius, a, 910.  
 seu, sive, 570, *obs.* 3.  
 sexcenti, indef., 613.  
 si, 425, *sqq.*  
 si quis, force of, 627.  
 sibilants, 288, *sqq.*  
 sic, 551; in adjuration, 644, *obs.*  
 sulo, 159, 37.  
 sileno, 156, 11.  
 similis, constr. of, 293, *obs.* 2.  
 simul atque, with perf., 401.  
 sine, 557, 9.  
 singular, wanting in subs., 50.  
 after two or more subs., 220, *obs.*; equiv. to plur., 590, 607.  
 sino, 160, 27.  
 sino, with Subj., 447, *obs.* 1.  
 sis = si vis, 113, *obs.* 3.  
 sisto and comps., 159, 19.  
 sitio, with acc., 237, *obs.*  
 sive, seu, 570, *obs.* 3.  
 soleo, 119 B.  
 solus, 57.  
 solvendo esse, 538, *obs.* 2.  
 solvo, 163, 13.  
 sono, 149, 4.  
 sorbeo, 150, 5.  
 spargo, 158, 28.  
 specio and comps., 158, 12.  
 sperno, 162, 2.  
 spes, stem of, 892, *obs.*  
 spondae lines, 770.  
 spondee, 763.  
 spondeo and comps., 157, 7.  
 sponte, 52, 4.  
 spu, 163, 8.  
 squaleo, 156, 2, 13.  
 statu, 163, 9.  
 stems, 104, 179.  
 sterno, 161, 3.  
 sternuo, 163, 20.  
 sterto, 159, 38.  
 (stinguo), 158, 17.  
 sto and comps., 149, 3, 2.  
 strepo, 157, 10.  
 strideo, 152, 4; and -o, 159, 30.  
 stringo, 158, 26.  
 struo, 158, 52.  
 studeo, 156, 12.  
 styles of prose authors, 687, *sqq.*  
 rivaldo, 154, 11.  
 subject and pred., 210, 211; enlargement of, 210, *obs.*; case of, 231; position of, 663.

subjective gen., 267; 268, *obs.*  
 Subjunctive, 421; = Imperat., 419; hypothetical, 425; potential, 429; *optativus*, 430; 443, *sqq.*; *concessivus*, 432; *dubitativus*, 440; after ut, ne, 449, *sqq.*; in oratio obliqua, 467, *sqq.*; how translated, 85, *obs.*  
 subord. clauses, position of, 682.  
 substantives, peculiarities in use of, 589, *sqq.*; concr. for abstr., 589; abstr. for concr., 592; used collectively, 590; plur. = abstr., 591; governing case of verbs, 597; used adjunct., 598; repeated after 2nd prep., 649.  
 subter, 558, 4.  
 susco, 167, 7.  
 suffixes, 177.  
 suggestus, um, 53, 4.  
 sugo, 158, 13.  
 sui, suus, 360, 361.  
 sum, 90; stem of, *obs.* 2; comps. of, *obs.* 3.  
 sumo, 160, 18.  
 suo, 163, 10.  
 super, 558, 3.  
 superior, compar., 66.  
 superlative, 62.  
 superlatives, use of, 353, *sqq.*; with quam, quantus, 353; with unus, 354; with quisque, 356; with rel., 381.  
 supines, 86, 2; 108.  
 supino, constr. of, 542.  
 suplico, constr., 289.  
 supra, 556, 24.  
 synaeresis, 766.  
 synaloepha, 765.  
 syncope in perf., 110, 11.  
 SYNTAX, 209, *sqq.*; of concord and govt., 218.  
 SYNTAXIS ORNATA, 588, *sqq.*  
 T, power of, 857; sibilated before i and vowel, 829; lost in 3rd pers. sing., 858.  
 Tacitus, style of, 717; its variety, 720; peculiar idioms, 721; abruptness, 722; suggestiveness, 723; poetical complexion, 724.  
 taedet, 126.  
 taedet, constr. of, 241, 282.  
 tango, 158, 38.  
 tantil, etc., constr. of, 281, *obs.* 2.  
 tantum, etc., gen. after, 270.  
 Tartarus, a, 54.  
 -tas, term. of subs., 185, 3.  
 -te, suffix of prons., 614, 2.  
 teaching, verbs of, 243.  
 tego, 158, 14.  
 telamblc verse, 818.  
 temno, 160, 19.  
 temperi, compar., 131.  
 tempero, constr. of, 291, *obs.* 6, 7.  
 tempestas, in Sall., 694.  
 tempto, orthog. of, 849, *obs.*  
 tendo and comps., 159, 16.  
 tenes and comps., 152, 2.  
 tenses formation of, 106, 107; endings, etym. of, 107, *obs.*  
 sequence of, 423.  
 -ter, term. of adv., 198, 196, *obs.* 2.  
 tergeo, 154, 12.  
 tergo, 158, 29.  
 tero, 161, 12.  
 tetrameter, trochaic, 787.  
 dactylic, 812.  
 texo, 158, 50.

thesis, 762.  
 ti, true pron. before a vowel, 829.  
 -tia, term. of subs., 185, 2.  
 -tim, term. of adv., 200.  
 timeo, 156, 13.  
 tingo, tinguo, 158, 15.  
 -tio, term. of subs., 181, 3.  
 tollo, 160, 33.  
 tonal, 126.  
 tonleo and comps., 152, 8.  
 tono, 149, 6.  
 -tor, trix, term. of subs., 181, 2.  
 torqueo, 154, 23.  
 torreo, 150, 4.  
 totus, 57.  
 towns, constr. of names of, 256, *sqq.*  
 tribrach, 763.  
 trimeter, Iambic, 782, 807.  
 trochaic dim., 806.  
 tetram., 787.  
 trochee, 763.  
 -tulo, term. of subs., 185, 4.  
 tuor and comps., 170, 8.  
 tundo and comps., 159, 17.  
 tum. . . tumi, 566, *obs.*  
 -tura, term. of subs., 181, 5.  
 turgeo, 156, 18.  
 -tus, term. of subs., 181, 4.  
 traho, 158, 18.  
 tremo, 160, 9.  
 tribuo, 163, 11.  
 trudo, 159, 8.  
 u interchanged with i, 918.  
 ulcisor, 171, 27.  
 ullus, 57.  
 ultra, 556, 26.  
 ulterior, compar. 66.  
 -ulus, adjunct. term., 186, 4, *obs.*  
 ungo, unguo, 158, 16.  
 unus, 68; in plur., 68, *obs.*  
 -ura, term. of subs., 182, 4.  
 urgeo, 154, 19.  
 uro, 161, 5.  
 ut, of purpose, etc., 450, *sqq.*; concessive, 432.  
 ut non, 456.  
 ut qui, utpote qui, 477.  
 uter, 57.  
 uterunque, 80, *obs.* 3.  
 uterque, plur. after, 222, *obs.* 2.  
 utinam, 444.  
 utique, 657.  
 utro, 171, 3.  
 utro, with abl., 315.  
 V, power of, 909; a labial, 909; represents the digamma, 910; how expr. in Greek, 911; becomes u, 912, 913; disappears before d, t, s, 912, 3; between vowels, 914.  
 vaco, with dat. 289.  
 vado, 159, 9.  
 vae, with dat., 250, *obs.* 2.  
 vapulo, 119, 2.  
 vas, 53, 6.  
 -ve, vel, 568.  
 veho, 158, 19.  
 vello, 160, 22.  
 veneo, 119, 3.  
 venio, 168, 12.  
 venit in mentem, constr. of, 278, *obs.*  
 verb, 84; irreg., 112; defect. 120; impers., 125; derivative, 191, *sqq.*

verbs, of being, etc., constr. of, 232; teaching, 243; concealing, 243; asking, 244; remembering and forgetting, 278; of accusing, etc., 279; of assisting, resisting, favouring, envying, etc., 291 (and see the several cases).  
with diff. constr., 271, *obs.*  
repetition of, 636.  
*verberare*, 52, 3.  
*verecor* and comps., 170, 9.  
*vero*, *verum*, 573; *tum vero*, 660; *vero* affirmative, 574.  
*verro*, 161, 13.  
*versor*, in *Cic.*, 705.  
*versus*, prep., 556, 27.  
*versus* *Hippocrateus*, 786 (*note*).  
*oconarius*, 787.  
*verum* and *vero*, 573.  
*vescor*, 157, 28.  
*vescor*, with *abl.*, 315.  
*vesper*, *vespera*, 53, 2.  
*vesperascit*, 126.  
*vestras*, 77, *obs.* 4.  
*vestri* and *um*, 273, *obs.* 2.  
*veto*, 149, 5.  
*veto* with *inf.*, 451, *obs.* 2.  
*viciis*, 52, 2.

*video*, 152, 3.  
*videor*, constr. of, 232, *obs.*; redundant, 704.  
*vigeo*, 156, 14.  
*vincio*, 168, 8.  
*vinco*, 158, 49.  
*vinco*, 156, 15.  
*vis*, 52, 2.  
*viso*, 162, 4.  
*vito*, 158, 53.  
*vocative*, of 2nd decl. in *i*, 19, *obs.* 3.  
*vocative*, synt. of, 335; same as *nom.*, 337; with *o*, 336.  
*volo*, 113.  
*volo*, foll. by subj., 447, 2.  
*romo*, 160, 10.  
*roreo*, 153, 5.  
vowels, 915; comparative weight of, 917.  
*wish*, subj. of, 443, *supp.*  
*X*, an addition to *alph.*, 821; found in *S. C.* de *Bacch.*, 900; sometimes written *xs*, 901; lost before *d*, *n*, etc., 902; becomes *s*, 903.  
*Yes*, how expr., 133, *obs.*; 574.  
*Z*, found in earliest *alph.*, 826; became *obsol.*, 822, *fin.*; reintroduced, 823; sometimes = *di*, 898.  
*zeugma*, 643.

THE END.

## PRINCIPIA LATINA. A SERIES OF ELEMENTARY WORKS

BY WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D.

CLASSICAL EXAMINER IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON.

(This series is now complete.)

1.

### PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART I.—A FIRST LATIN COURSE.

COMPREHENDING GRAMMAR, DELECTUS, AND EXERCISE-BOOK.

With Vocabularies. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

(A Key to the above may be obtained, gratis, by Teachers only, on written application to the Publisher or Author.)

2.

### PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART II.—LATIN PROSE READING BOOK.

SERVING AS AN INTRODUCTION TO

ANCIENT MYTHOLOGY AND GEOGRAPHY, ROMAN ANTIQUITIES AND HISTORY.

With Notes and a Dictionary. 12mo. 3s. 6d.

3.

### PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART III.—LATIN POETRY.

CONTAINING

1. EASY HEXAMETERS AND PENTAMETERS. 2. ECLOGÆ OVIDIANÆ.
3. PROSODY AND METRE. 4. FIRST LATIN VERSE BOOK.

12mo. 3s. 6d.

(A Key to the Verse Book may be obtained, gratis, by Teachers only, on application.)

4.

### PRINCIPIA LATINA, PART IV.—LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.

CONTAINING

THE RULES OF SYNTAX, WITH COPIOUS EXAMPLES, EXPLANATIONS OF SYNONYMS, AND A SYSTEMATIC COURSE OF EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX.

12mo. (Nearly ready.)

(A Key to the Latin Exercises may be obtained, gratis, by Teachers only, on application.)

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.

# LATIN DICTIONARIES,

BY WM. SMITH, LL.D.

CLASSICAL EXAMINER IN THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON, AND EDITOR OF THE DICTIONARIES OF  
'GREEK AND ROMAN ANTIQUITIES, BIOGRAPHY, MYTHOLOGY, AND GEOGRAPHY,' &c.

1.

## A LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY,

BASED ON THE WORKS OF FORCELLINI AND FREUND.

*Third Edition, 1862. One Volume (1200 pp.), Medium 8vo. 21s.*

This work holds an intermediate place between the Thesaurus of Forcellini, and the ordinary School Dictionaries. It makes no attempt to supersede Forcellini, which would require a dictionary equally large; but it aims at performing the same service for the Latin language as Liddell and Scott's Lexicon has done for the Greek. It therefore avoids those minute subdivisions and numerous quotations

which, however useful in a Thesaurus, render a Dictionary less practically useful to students. In the New Edition very many false references, which are found in all Dictionaries even the most recent, have been corrected. Great attention has been paid to etymology, in which department especially this work is admitted by the most competent scholars to maintain a superiority over all existing Latin Dictionaries.

"Of Latin and English Lexicons, the best representation of the scholarship of the day is undoubtedly that of Dr. Wm. Smith."—Rev. J. W. DONALDSON, D.D., *late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.*

2.

## A SMALLER LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY.

WITH A DICTIONARY OF PROPER NAMES, AND TABLES OF THE ROMAN CALENDAR,  
WEIGHTS AND MEASURES.

ABRIDGED FROM THE ABOVE WORK, FOR THE USE OF JUNIOR CLASSES.

*Twenty-eighth Thousand. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.*

3.

## A LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

FOR BEGINNERS.

COMPREHENDING

- I. A LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY ARRANGED ACCORDING TO SUBJECTS.
- II. A LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY ARRANGED ACCORDING TO ETYMOLOGY.
- III. A FIRST LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY TO PHÆDRUS, CORNELIUS NEPOS, AND CESAR'S GALLIC WAR.

*Second Edition. 12mo. 3s. 6d.*

This Work is designed to assist boys in acquiring a copious vocabulary of the Latin language, and in learning the derivation and formation of Latin words.

4.

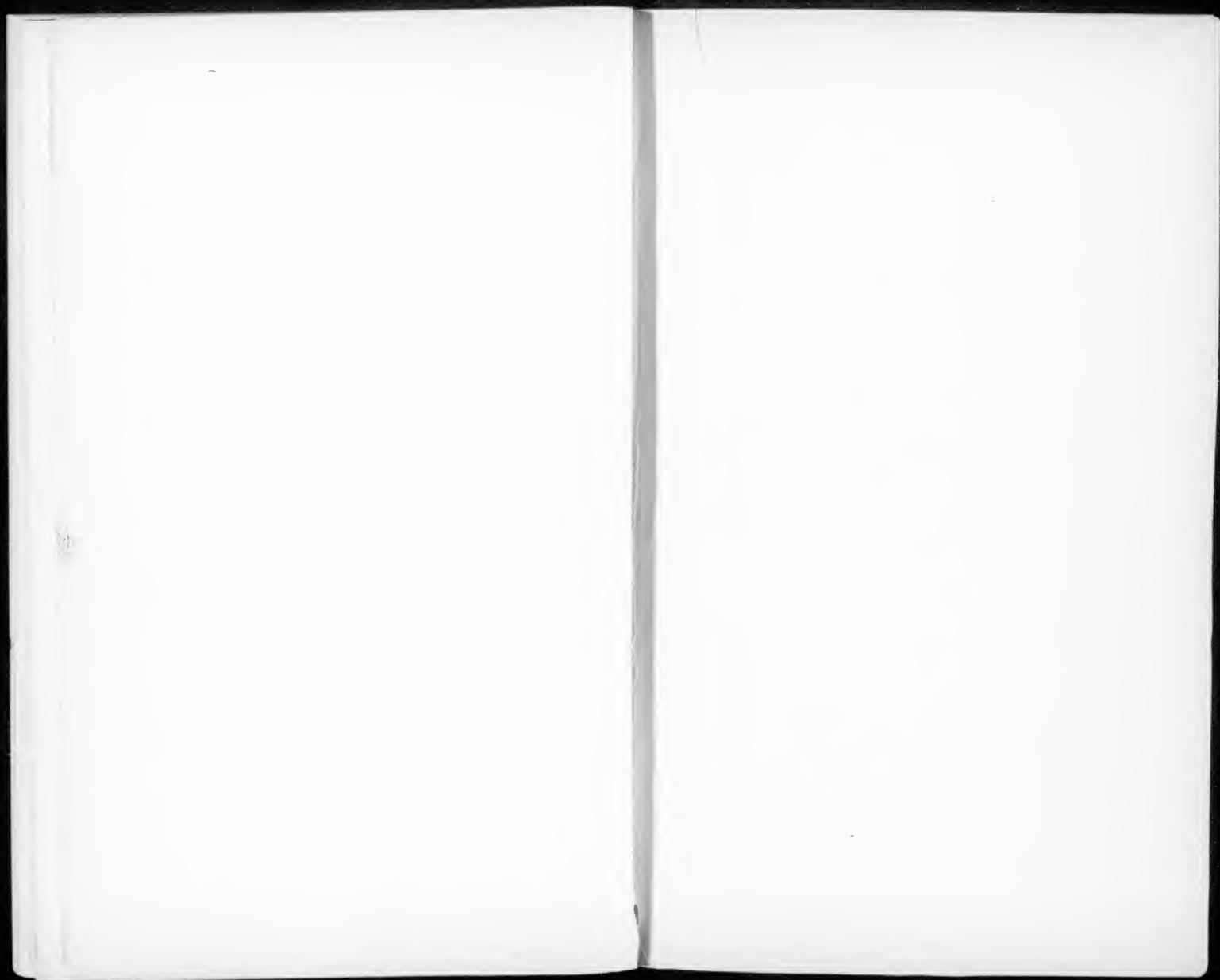
PREPARING FOR PUBLICATION.

## AN ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.

8vo. and 12mo.

UNIFORM WITH THE LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARIES.

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET.





[illegible]

Printed  
in USA

COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY



0026763338

06490056

06490050

877.5  
SM51 C1

STUDENTS LATIN GRAM